102102163

CALIFORNIA BUILDING STANDARDS COMMISSION

CALIFORNIA 2025 EXISTING BUILDING CODE

CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS | TITLE 24 PART 10

BASED ON THE 2024 INTERNATIONAL EXISTING BUILDING CODE®

2025 CALIFORNIA HISTORICAL BUILDING CODE | TITLE 24 PART 8

2025 CALIFORNIA REFERENCED STANDARDS CODE | TITLE 24 PART 12

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

CALIFORNIA BUILDING STANDARDS COMMISSION

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Act now to keep your code up-to-date. The purchase of this code includes a free subscription for all State-issued supplements and errata. To receive these important updates through 2027, you **MUST** register online **www.iccsafe.org/CAL25**

CALIFORNIA 2025 EXISTING BUILDING CODE

CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS ▯ TITLE 24 PART 10

BASED ON THE 2024 INTERNATIONAL EXISTING BUILDING CODE®

Effective January 1, 2026

For Errata and Supplement effective dates see the History Note Appendix

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2025 California Existing Building Code
California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 10

First Printing: July 2025

ISBN: 978-1-967590-12-4 (loose-leaf edition)
ISBN: 978-1-967590-13-1 (PDF download)

COPYRIGHT © 2025
by
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. This 2025 *California Existing Building Code* contains substantial copyrighted material from the 2024 *International Existing Building Code®*, first printing, which is a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council, Inc. ("ICC"). Without separate written permission from the copyright owner, no part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying or recording by or in an information storage and/or retrieval system). For information on use rights and permissions, please contact: ICC Publications, 4051 Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, Illinois 60478; 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233); https://www.iccsafe.org/about/periodicals-and-newsroom/icc-logo-license/.

Trademarks: "International Code Council," the "International Code Council" logo, "ICC," the "ICC" logo, "*International Existing Building Code*," "IEBC" and other names and trademarks appearing in this publication are registered trademarks of the International Code Council, Inc., and/or its licensors (as applicable), and may not be used without permission.

T031439

PRINTED IN THE USA

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

PREFACE

This document is Part 10 of thirteen parts of the official triennial compilation and publication of the adoptions, amendments and repeal of administrative regulations to *California Code of Regulations, Title 24,* also referred to as the *California Building Standards Code.* This part is known as the *California Existing Building Code.*

The *California Building Standards Code* is published in its entirety every three years by order of the California legislature, with supplements published in intervening years. The California legislature delegated authority to various state agencies, boards, commissions and departments to create building regulations to implement the State's statutes. These building regulations, or standards, have the same force of law, and take effect 180 days after their publication unless otherwise stipulated. The *California Building Standards Code* applies to occupancies in the State of California as annotated.

A city, county, or city and county may establish more restrictive building standards reasonably necessary because of local climatic, geological or topographical conditions. Findings of the local condition(s) and the adopted local building standard(s) must generally be filed with the California Building Standards Commission (or other filing if indicated) to become effective, and may not be effective sooner than the effective date of this edition of the *California Building Standards Code*. Local building standards that were adopted and applicable to previous editions of the *California Building Standards Code* do not apply to this edition without appropriate adoption and the required filing.

Should you find publication (e.g., typographical) errors or inconsistencies in this code or wish to offer comments toward improving its format, please address your comments to:

California Building Standards Commission
2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130
Sacramento, CA 95833-2936

Phone: (916) 263-0916
Email: cbsc@dgs.ca.gov

Web page: www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The 2025 *California Building Standards Code* (Code) was developed through the outstanding collaborative efforts of the Department of Housing and Community Development, Division of the State Architect, Office of the State Fire Marshal, Department of Health Care Access and Information, California Energy Commission, California Department of Public Health, California State Lands Commission, Board of State and Community Corrections, Department of Water Resources, State Historical Building Safety Board, Department of Consumer Affairs, State Librarian, Department of Food and Agriculture, and the California Building Standards Commission (Commission).

This collaborative effort included the assistance of the Commission's Code Advisory Committees and many other volunteers who worked tirelessly to assist the Commission in the production of this Code.

Governor Gavin Newsom

Members of the California Building Standards Commission

Secretary Amy Tong – Chair
Rajesh Patel – Vice-Chair

Erick Mikiten
Aaron Stockwell
Peter Santillan
Laura Rambin
Frank Ramirez
Elley Klausbruckner
Juvilyn Alegre
Kent Sasaki
James Haskin

Stoyan Bumbalov – Executive Director
Kevin Day – Deputy Executive Director

For questions on California state agency amendments, please refer to the contact list on page iv.

CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS, TITLE 24

California State Agency Contact List

The following state agencies may propose building standards for buildings, structures and applications under their authority for publication in Title 24. Notice of such proposals may be requested from each agency. See Sections 1.2 through 1.14 of the California Building Code (Part 2, T24) for detailed information on the regulatory authority of most state agencies summarized below. Note [agency acronyms] shown in banners/Matrix Adoption Tables in T24.

Board of State and Community Corrections [BSCC]
bscc.ca.gov — BSCC-Mail@bscc.ca.gov
(916) 445-5073 — *Local Detention Facilities*

Building Standards Commission [BSC, BSC-CG]
dgs.ca.gov/BSC — cbsc@dgs.ca.gov
(916) 263-0916 — *State Buildings including UC & CSU Nonresidential Green Buildings Standards*

Department of Consumer Affairs Boards/Bureaus:

Acupuncture Board [CA]
acupuncture.ca.gov — AcuPolicy@dca.ca.gov
(916) 515-5200 — *Acupuncture Offices*

Board of Pharmacy [CA]
pharmacy.ca.gov
(916) 518-3100 — *Pharmacies*

Board of Barbering and Cosmetology [CA]
barbercosmo.ca.gov — barbercosmo@dca.ca.gov
(916) 574-7570 — *Barber, Cosmetology & Electrolysis Establishments*

Bureau of Household Goods and Services [CA]
bhgs.dca.gov
(916) 999-2041 — *Insulation Testing*

Structural Pest Control Board [CA]
pestboard.ca.gov — pestboard@dca.ca.gov
(800) 737-8188 — *Structural Pest Control Locations*

Veterinary Medical Board [CA]
vmb.ca.gov — vmb@dca.ca.gov
(916) 515-5220 — *Veterinary Facilities*

Department of Food and Agriculture [AGR]
cdfa.ca.gov
(916) 900-5004 — *Rendering & Collection Centers*
(916) 900-5064 — *Meat & Poultry Packing Plants*
(916) 900-5008 — *Milk & Dairy Food Safety*

Department of Health Care Access and Information

Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development
[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6]
hcai.ca.gov — regsunit@hcai.ca.gov
(916) 440-8300 — *Hospital Standards, Skilled Nursing Facility Standards & Clinic Standards*

Department of Public Health [DPH]
cdph.ca.gov (Recreational Health)
(916) 449-5661 — *Food Establishments, Organized Camps, Public Swimming Pools*

Department of Housing and Community Development
[HCD 1, 2, 1-AC]
hcd.ca.gov — Title24@hcd.ca.gov
(800) 952-8356
Option 5 > Option 2 — *State Housing Law: including Housing Accessibility, Hotels/Motels, Apartments/Condominiums, Dormitories, Single-Family Dwellings, ADUs, Permanent Structures in Mobile Home Parks*
Option 5 > Option 4 — *Factory-Built Housing*
Option 5 > Option 5 — *Employee Housing*

Department of Water Resources [DWR]
water.ca.gov — DWRwebcomment@water.ca.gov
(916) 653-5791 — *Plumbing for Recycled Water, Floodplain Construction*

Division of the State Architect
dgs.ca.gov/DSA
(916) 445-8100

Access Compliance [DSA-AC]
(916) 445-5827 — DSAaccess@dgs.ca.gov
Access for Persons with Disabilities

Structural Safety [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]
Public Schools & Community Colleges, State Essential Services Buildings

State Historical Building Safety Board [SHBSB]
(916) 445-7627 — shbsb@dgs.ca.gov
Historical Building Rehabilitation, Preservation, Restoration or Relocation

Energy Commission [CEC]
energy.ca.gov — Title24@energy.ca.gov
(800) 772-3300 — *Building Energy Efficiency, Compliance Manual & Compliance Forms*

Office of the State Fire Marshal [SFM]
osfm.fire.ca.gov — codedevelopment@fire.ca.gov
(916) 568-3800 — *Fire & Life Safety*

State Lands Commission [SLC]
slc.ca.gov — MOTEMS.Public@slc.ca.gov
(510) 741-4950 — *Marine Oil Terminals*

State Librarian [SL]
library.ca.gov — csllaw@library.ca.gov
(916) 323-9843 — *Public Library Construction & Renovation*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

How to Distinguish Between Model Code Language and California Amendments

To distinguish between model code language and the incorporated California amendments, including exclusive California standards, California amendments will appear in italics.

***[BSC]** This is an example of a state agency acronym used to identify an adoption or amendment by the agency. The acronyms will appear at California Amendments and in the Matrix Adoption Tables. Sections 1.2 through 1.14 in Chapter 1, Division 1 of the California Building Code, explain the used acronyms, the application of state agency adoptions to building occupancies or building features, the enforcement agency as designated by state law (may be the state adopting agency or local building or fire official), the authority in state law for the state agency to make the adoption, and the specific state law being implemented by the agency's adoption. The following acronyms are used in Title 24 to identify the state adopting agency making an adoption.*

Legend of Acronyms of Adopting State Agencies

BSC	*California Building Standards Commission (see Section 1.2)*
BSC-CG	*California Building Standards Commission-CALGreen (see Section 1.2.2)*
BSCC	*Board of State and Community Corrections (see Section 1.3)*
SFM	*Office of the State Fire Marshal (see Section 1.11)*
HCD 1	*Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.1)*
HCD 2	*Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.3)*
HCD 1/AC	*Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.2)*
DSA-AC	*Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance (see Section 1.9.1)*
DSA-SS	*Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (see Section 1.9.2)*
DSA-SS/CC	*Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges (see Section 1.9.2.2)*
OSHPD 1	*Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.1)*
OSHPD 1R	*Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.1)*
OSHPD 2	*Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.2)*
OSHPD 3	*Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.3)*
OSHPD 4	*Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.4)*
OSHPD 5	*Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.5)*
OSHPD 6	*Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.6)*
DPH	*Department of Public Health (see Section 1.7)*
AGR	*Department of Food and Agriculture (see Section 1.6)*
CEC	*California Energy Commission (see Section 100 in Part 6, the California Energy Code)*
CA	*Department of Consumer Affairs (see Section 1.4):* *Board of Barbering and Cosmetology* *Board of Examiners in Veterinary Medicine* *Board of Pharmacy* *Acupuncture Board* *Bureau of Household Goods & Services* *Structural Pest Control Board (SPCB)*
SL	*State Library (see Section 1.12)*
SLC	*State Lands Commission (see Section 1.14)*
DWR	*Department of Water Resources (see Section 1.13 of Chapter 1 of the California Plumbing Code in Part 5 of Title 24)*

The state agencies are available to answer questions about their adoptions. Contact information is provided on page iv of this code.

To learn more about the use of this code refer to pages viii and ix. Training materials on the application and use of this code are available at the website of the California Building Standards Commission www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

California Matrix Adoption Tables

Format of the California Matrix Adoption Tables

The matrix adoption tables, examples of which follow, are non-regulatory aids intended to show the user which state agencies have adopted and/or amended given sections of the model code. An agency's statutory authority for certain occupancies or building applications determines which chapter or section may be adopted, repealed, amended or added. See Chapter 1, Division I, Sections 1.2 through 1.14 for agency authority, building applications and enforcement responsibilities.

The side headings identify the scope of state agencies' adoption as follows:

Adopt the entire IEBC chapter without state amendments.

If there is an "X" under a particular state agency's acronym on this row; this means that particular state agency has adopted the entire model code chapter without any state amendments.

Example:

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE-MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS
(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6							
Adopt entire chapter			X																				
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below								S	A	M	P	L	E										
Chapter/Section																							

Adopt the entire IEBC chapter as amended, state-amended sections are listed below:

If there is an "X" under a particular state agency's acronym on this row, it means that particular state agency has adopted the entire model code chapter; with state amendments.

Each section that a state agency has amended and/or added within a particular chapter is listed. There will be an "X" under an agency's acronym in the row of the amended and/or added section.

Example:

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6							
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																				
Adopt only those sections that are listed below								S	A	M	P	L	E										
Chapter 2																							
202			X																				

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

Adopt only those sections that are listed below:

If there is an "X" under a particular state agency's acronym on this row, it means that particular state agency is adopting only specific model code or state-amended sections within this chapter. There will be an "X" in the column under the agency's acronym, as well as an "X" by each section that the agency has adopted.

Example:

CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6							
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below					**X**	**X**		S	A	M	P	L	E										
Chapter/Section																							
202					X	X		S	A	M	P	L	E										
203					X	X			C	O	N	T.											

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

MARGINAL MARKINGS

Symbols in the margin indicate the status of code changes as follows:

‖ This symbol indicates that a change has been made to a California amendment.

> This symbol indicates deletion of California amendment language.

| This symbol indicates that a change has been made to International Code Council model language.

➡ This symbol indicates deletion of International Code Council model language.

A single asterisk [*] placed in the margin indicates that text or a table has been relocated within the code. A double asterisk [**] placed in the margin indicates that the text or table immediately following it has been relocated there from elsewhere in the code.

RELOCATION OF TEXT OR TABLES

The following table indicates relocation of sections and tables in the 2024 edition of the IEBC from the 2021 edition.

RELOCATIONS	
2024 LOCATION	**2021 LOCATION**
104.2.3	104.11
104.2.3.5	104.11.2
104.2.3.6	104.11.1
104.2.4	104.10
1041.2.4.1	104.10.1
104.6	104.3
104.7.2	104.4
503.2	503.18
804.4	804.11
804.1	804.9
804.13	804.1
1302 Applicability	New
1302.1-1302.1.6	1301.2-1301.2.6
Section 1303 Acceptance	New
1303.1-1303.1.3	1301.3-1301.3.3
Section 1304 Investigation and Evaluation	New
1304.1-1304.1.3	1301.4-1301.4.3
Section 1305 Scoring and Evaluation	New
1305.1-1305.2.21.3	1301.5-1301.6.21.3.1
Section 1306 Building Score	New
1306.1-1306.2	1301.7-1301.8
Section 1307 Evaluation of Building Safety	New
1307.1-1307.1.1	1301.9-1301.9.1
1503.1	1501.7
1504.1	1501.6
1504.1.1	1501.6.1
1504.1.2	1501.6.2
1504.1.3	1501.6.3
1504.1.4	1501.6.4
1504.1.4.1	1501.6.4.1
1504.1.5	1501.6.5
1504.1.6	1501.6.6
1504.1.7	1501.6.
1505	1502
1506	1503
1507	1504
1508	1505
1509	1506
1510	1507
1511	508
1512	1509

ABOUT THE I-CODES

The 2024 I-Codes, published by the ICC, are 15 fully compatible titles intended to establish provisions that adequately protect public health, safety and welfare; that do not unnecessarily increase construction costs; that do not restrict the use of new materials, products or methods of construction; and that do not give preferential treatment to particular types or classes of materials, products or methods of construction.

The I-Codes are updated on a 3-year cycle to allow for new construction methods and technologies to be incorporated into the codes. Alternative materials, designs and methods not specifically addressed in the I-Code can be approved by the building official where the proposed materials, designs or methods comply with the intent of the provisions of the code.

The I-Codes are used as the basis of laws and regulations in communities across the US and in other countries. They are also used in a variety of nonregulatory settings, including:

- Voluntary compliance programs.
- The insurance industry.
- Certification and credentialing for building design, construction and safety professionals.
- Certification of building and construction-related products.
- Facilities management.
- "Best practices" benchmarks for designers and builders.
- College, university and professional school textbooks and curricula.
- Reference works related to building design and construction.

Code Development Process

The code development process regularly provides an international forum for building professionals to discuss requirements for building design, construction methods, safety, performance, technological advances and new products. Proposed changes to the I-Codes, submitted by code enforcement officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties, are deliberated through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

Openness, transparency, balance, due process and consensus are the guiding principles of both the ICC Code Development Process and OMB Circular A-119, which governs the federal government's use of private-sector standards. The ICC process is open to anyone without cost. Remote participation is available through cdpAccess®, the ICC's cloud-based app.

In order to ensure that organizations with a direct and material interest in the codes have a voice in the process, the ICC has developed partnerships with key industry segments that support the ICC's important public safety mission. Some code development committee members were nominated by the following industry partners and approved by the ICC Board:

- American Gas Association (AGA)
- American Institute of Architects (AIA)
- American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE)
- International Association of Fire Chiefs (IAFC)
- National Association of Home Builders (NAHB)
- National Association of State Fire Marshals (NASFM)
- National Council of Structural Engineers Association (NCSEA)
- National Multifamily Housing Council (NMHC)
- Plumbing Heating and Cooling Contractors (PHCC)
- Pool and Hot Tub Alliance (PHTA) formerly The Association of Pool and Spa Professionals (APSP)

Code development committees evaluate and make recommendations regarding proposed changes to the codes. Their recommendations are then subject to public comment and council-wide votes. The ICC's governmental members—public safety officials who have no financial or business interest in the outcome—cast the final votes on proposed changes.

The I-Codes are subject to change through future code development cycles and by any governmental entity that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the ICC at iccsafe.org/products-and-services/i-codes/code-development/.

While the I-Code development procedure is thorough and comprehensive, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of the codes expressly disclaim any liability resulting from the publication or use of the I-Codes, or from compliance or noncompliance with their provisions. NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, IMPLIED, EXPRESSED OR STATUTORY, IS GIVEN WITH RESPECT TO THE I-CODES. The ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of the I-Codes.

Code Development Committee Responsibilities (Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)

In each cycle, proposed changes are considered by the Code Development Committee assigned to a specific code or subject matter. Committee Action Hearings result in recommendations regarding a proposal to the voting membership. Where changes to a code

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

section are not considered by that code's own committee, the code section is preceded by a bracketed letter designation identifying a different committee. Bracketed letter designations for the I-Code committees are:

[A] = Administrative Code Development Committee

[BE] = IBC—Egress Code Development Committee

[BF] = IBC—Fire Safety Code Development Committee

[BG] = IBC—General Code Development Committee

[BS] = IBC—Structural Code Development Committee

[E] = Developed under the ICC's Standard Development Process

[EB] = International Existing Building Code Development Committee

[F] = International Fire Code Development Committee

[FG] = International Fuel Gas Code Development Committee

[M] = International Mechanical Code Development Committee

[P] = International Plumbing Code Development Committee

[SP] = International Swimming Pool and Spa Code Development Committee

For the development of the 2027 edition of the I-Codes, the ICC Board of Directors approved a standing motion from the Board Committee on the Long-Term Code Development Process to revise the code development cycle to incorporate two committee action hearings for each code group. This change expands the current process from two independent 1-year cycles to a single continuous 3-year cycle. There will be two groups of code development committees and they will meet in separate years. The current groups will be reworked. With the energy provisions of the *International Energy Conservation Code*® (IECC®) and Chapter 11 of the *International Residential Code*® (IRC®) now moved to the Code Council's Standards Development Process, the reduced volume of code changes will be distributed between Groups A and B.

Code change proposals submitted for code sections that have a letter designation in front of them will be heard by the respective committee responsible for such code sections. Because different committees hold Committee Action Hearings in different years, proposals for most codes will be heard by committees in both the 2024 (Group A) and the 2025 (Group B) code development cycles. It is very important that anyone submitting code change proposals understands which code development committee is responsible for the section of the code that is the subject of the code change proposal.

Please visit the ICC website at iccsafe.org/products-and-services/i-codes/code-development/current-code-development-cycle for further information on the Code Development Committee responsibilities as it becomes available.

Coordination of the I-Codes

The coordination of technical provisions allows the I-Codes to be used as a complete set of complementary documents. Individual codes can also be used in subsets or as stand-alone documents. Some technical provisions that are relevant to more than one subject area are duplicated in multiple model codes.

INTRODUCTION TO THE INTERNATIONAL EXISTING BUILDING CODE

The IEBC establishes minimum requirements for existing buildings using prescriptive and performance-related provisions. It is founded on broad-based principles intended to encourage the use and reuse of existing buildings while requiring reasonable upgrades and improvements.

The IEBC is a model code in the International Code family of codes intended to provide requirements for repair and alternative approaches for alterations, changes of occupancy and additions to existing buildings. A large number of existing buildings and structures do not comply with the current building code requirements for new construction. Although many of these buildings are potentially salvageable, rehabilitation is often cost-prohibitive because compliance with all the requirements for new construction could require extensive changes that go well beyond the value of the building or the original scope of the alteration. At the same time, it is necessary to regulate construction in existing buildings that undergo additions, alterations, extensive repairs or change of occupancy. Such activity represents an opportunity to ensure that new construction complies with the current building codes and that existing conditions are maintained, at a minimum, to their current level of compliance or are improved as required to meet basic safety levels. To accomplish this objective, and to make the alteration process easier, this code allows for options for controlled departure from full compliance with the International Codes dealing with new construction, while maintaining basic levels for fire safety, structural and life safety features of the rehabilitated building.

This code provides three main options for a designer in dealing with alterations of existing buildings. These are laid out in Section 301 of this code:

Option 1: Work for alteration, change of occupancy or addition of all existing buildings shall be done in accordance with the Prescriptive Compliance Method given in Chapter 5. It should be noted that this method originates from the former Chapter 34 of the IBC (2012 and earlier editions).

Option 2: Work for alteration, change of occupancy or addition of all existing buildings shall be done in accordance with the Work Area Compliance Method given in Chapters 6 through 12.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

Option 3: Work for alteration, change of occupancy or addition of all existing buildings shall be done in accordance with the Performance Compliance Method given in Chapter 13. It should be noted that this option was also provided in the former Chapter 34 of the IBC (2012 and earlier editions).

Under limited circumstances, a building alteration can be made to comply with the laws under which the building was originally built, as long as the accessibility requirements are met, there has been no substantial structural damage and there will be limited structural alteration. Flood hazard provisions also must still be addressed where there is a substantial improvement.

Note that all repairs must comply with Chapter 4 and all relocated buildings are addressed by Chapter 14.

ARRANGEMENT AND FORMAT OF THE 2025 CEBC

The format of the CEBC allows each chapter to be devoted to a particular subject. The following table shows how the CEBC is divided. The subsequent table shows CEBC requirements that are correlated with other California Codes. The chapter synopses detail the scope and intent of the provisions of the CEBC.

CHAPTER TOPICS	
CHAPTER	**SUBJECTS**
1, 2	Administrative Requirements and Definitions
3	Provisions for all Compliance Methods
4	Repairs
5	Prescriptive Compliance Method for Existing Buildings
6–*11*	Work Area Compliance Method for Existing Buildings
13	Performance Compliance Method for Existing Buildings
14	Relocated Buildings
15	Construction Safeguards
16	Referenced Standards
Appendix A	Guidelines for Seismic Retrofit of Existing Buildings
Appendix B	Supplementary Accessibility Requirements for Existing Buildings
Appendix C	Guidelines for Wind Retrofit of Existing Buildings
Appendix D	Board of Appeals
Appendix E	Temporary Emergency Uses
Resource A	Guidelines on Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials and Assemblies

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE CORRELATED TOPICS

The CEBC requirements for construction safeguards are directly correlated to the requirements of the CBC. The following table shows chapters of the CBC that are correlated with the CEBC:

CEBC/CBC CORRELATED TOPICS		
CEBC CHAPTER/SECTION	**CBC CHAPTER/SECTION**	**SUBJECT**
Chapter 15	Chapter 33	Construction safeguards

Chapter 1 Scope and Administration.

Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

Chapter 2 Definitions.

Chapter 2 is the repository of the definitions of terms used in the body of the code. The user of the code should be familiar with and consult this chapter because the definitions are essential to the correct interpretation of the code and because the user may not be aware that a term is defined.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

Chapter 3 Provisions for All Compliance Methods.

Chapter 3 guides the use of the three compliance methods of the CEBC and provides requirements that apply globally. The globally applicable requirement include general requirements related to buildings materials and other applicable codes, storm shelters, structural loads, in-situ load tests, accessibility, smoke alarms, carbon monoxide detection and exterior wall coverings.

Chapter 3A Provisions for All Compliance Methods.

Chapter 3A controls the compliance options for alteration, repair, addition, evaluation and change of occupancy of existing structures regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development, which include hospitals and correctional treatment centers (applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 (OSHPD 1).

Chapter 4 Repairs.

Chapter 4, a chapter independent of the three compliance methods, governs the repair of existing buildings. The provisions define conditions under which repairs may be made using materials and methods like those of the original construction or the extent to which repairs must comply with requirements for new buildings.

Chapter 4A Repairs.

Chapter 4A governs the repair of existing buildings regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development, which include hospitals and correctional treatment centers (applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 (OSHPD 1).

Chapter 5 Prescriptive Compliance Method.

Chapter 5 provides one of the three main options of compliance available in the CEBC for buildings and structures undergoing alteration, addition or change of occupancy. The base requirements are more administrative in nature. The structural triggers for upgrades are consistent with the Work Area Method.

Chapter 5A Prescriptive Compliance Method.

Chapter 5A provides details for the prescriptive compliance method for alteration, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development, which include hospitals and correctional treatment centers (applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 (OSHPD 1).

Chapter 6 Classification of Work.

Chapter 6 provides an overview of the Work Area Method and defines the different classifications of work including alterations, change of occupancy, additions and historic buildings. Detailed requirements for all of these are given in subsequent Chapters 7 through 11.

Chapter 7 Alterations—Level 1.

Chapter 7 provides the technical requirements for those existing buildings that undergo Level 1 alterations as described in Section 602, which includes replacement or covering of existing materials, elements, equipment or fixtures using new materials for the same purpose. This chapter is distinguished from Chapters 8 and 9 by only involving replacement of building components with new components with no reconfiguration of space.

Chapter 8 Alterations—Level 2.

A Level 2 alteration is an alteration involving space reconfiguration that could be up to and including 50 percent of the area of the building or addition of a new building system. Level 2 alterations also include the extension or addition of any system or equipment. The purpose of Chapter 8 is to provide detailed requirements and provisions to identify the required improvements in the existing building elements, means of egress, fire protection, structural systems, energy efficiency, and other building systems include electrical, mechanical and plumbing when a building is being altered.

Chapter 9 Alterations—Level 3.

Chapter 9 provides the technical requirements for those existing buildings that undergo Level 3 alterations. Level 3 alterations are those involving alterations that cover 50 percent of the aggregate area of the building. Under certain situations, this chapter also intends to improve the safety of certain building features beyond the work area and in other parts of the building where no alteration work might be taking place.

Chapter 10 Change of Occupancy.

The purpose of Chapter 10 is to address existing buildings that are subject to a change of occupancy. This chapter is an assembly of requirements to upgrade safety without having to comply fully as a new building. A change of occupancy classification is considered a change of occupancy, however, it will involve a higher level of regulation since the use of the building has made a more significant change.

Chapter 11 Additions.

Chapter 11 provides the requirements for additions, which are considered new construction. The requirements focus on safely integrating the addition with the existing building. This includes issues such as limiting the overall height and area of the building where the addition is not separated by a fire wall.

Chapter 12 Historic Buildings—*Reserved*

Chapter 12 is not adopted by the State of California. Historic buildings and structures shall comply with Part 8, Title 24, California Code of Regulations.

Chapter 13 Performance Compliance Methods.

Chapter 13 allows for existing buildings to be evaluated to show that alterations or a change of occupancy, while not meeting new construction requirements, will provide a level of safety to demonstrate compliance. Provisions are based on a numerical scoring system involving 21 safety parameters where, when evaluated, such buildings must meet a minimum overall safety score.

Chapter 13 is not adopted by the State of California but may be available for adoption by local ordinance, see Section 1.1.11. See Section 104.11 for consideration of alternative means of compliance.

Chapter 14 Relocated or Moved Buildings.

Chapter 14 is applicable to any building that is moved or relocated. This chapter is independent of any of the three compliance methods and focuses on the structural loads where the building is being relocated.

Chapter 15 Construction Safeguards.

Chapter 15 establishes specific regulations in order to minimize the risk to the public and adjacent property during construction. Additionally, this chapter addresses fire and life safety and means of egress during the construction process. This includes requirements for a site safety plan. This chapter is also consistent with Chapter 33 of the CBC and Chapter 33 of the *California Fire Code* (CFC).

Chapter 16 Referenced Standards.

Chapter 16 lists all of the product and installation standards and codes that are referenced throughout Chapters 1 through 15 and includes identification of the promulgators and the section numbers in which the standards and codes are referenced. As stated in Section 102.4, these standards and codes become an enforceable part of the code (to the prescribed extent of the reference) as if printed in the body of the code.

Appendix A Guidelines for the Seismic Retrofit of Existing Buildings.

Appendix A provides guidelines for upgrading the seismic resistance capacity of different types of existing buildings. It is organized into separate chapters which deal with buildings of different types, including unreinforced masonry buildings, reinforced concrete and reinforced masonry wall buildings, and lightframe wood buildings. This appendix includes its own referenced standards.

Appendix B Supplementary Accessibility Requirements for Existing Buildings and Facilities.

Chapters 11A and 11B of the CBC contain provisions that set forth requirements for accessibility to buildings and their associated sites and facilities for people with physical disabilities. Appendix B was added to address accessibility in construction for items that are not typically enforceable through the traditional building code enforcement process.

Appendix C Guidelines for the Wind Retrofit of Existing Buildings.

The purpose of Appendix C is to provide voluntary prescriptive alternatives for addressing the retrofit of buildings in high-wind areas. Currently, there are two chapters which deal with the retrofit of gable ends and the fastening of roof decks, Appendix Chapters C1 and C2, respectively. This appendix includes its own referenced standards.

Appendix D Board of Appeals.

Appendix D contains the provisions for appeal and the establishment of a board of appeals. The provisions include the application for an appeal, the makeup of the board of appeals and the conduct of the appeal process.

Appendix E Temporary Emergency Uses.

Appendix E is intended to provide guidance for designers, engineers, architects and fire and building officials on allowing temporary emergency uses of existing buildings with respect to the minimum code requirements. This appendix is a template or checklist that references the relevant code requirement of concerns.

Resource A Guidelines on Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials and Assemblies.

In the process of repair and alteration of existing buildings, based on the nature and the extent of the work, the CEBC might require certain upgrades in the fire-resistance rating of building elements, at which time it becomes critical for the designers and the code

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

officials to be able to determine the fire-resistance rating of the existing building elements as part of the overall evaluation for the assessment of the need for improvements. These guidelines are based upon the *Guideline on Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials* published by the National Institute of Building Sciences (NIBS).

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 *ADMINISTRATION* 1-3

DIVISION I – CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION 1-3

1.1 General 1-3
1.2 Building Standards Commission 1-5
1.3 Board of State and Community Corrections 1-7
1.4 Department of Consumer Affairs 1-7
1.5 California Energy Commission 1-7
1.6 Department of Food and Agriculture 1-7
1.7 Department of Public Health 1-7
1.8 Department of Housing and Community Development 1-7
1.8.2 Authority and Abbreviations 1-7
1.8.3 Local Enforcing Agency 1-8
1.8.4 Permits, Fees, Applications and Inspections 1-9
1.8.5 Right of Entry for Enforcement 1-9
1.8.6 Local Modification by Ordinance or Regulation 1-10
1.8.7 Alternate Materials, Designs, Tests and Methods of Construction 1-10
1.8.8 Appeals Board 1-11
1.8.9 Unsafe Buildings or Structures 1-11
1.8.10 Other Building Regulations 1-12
1.9 Division of the State Architect 1-12
1.10 Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development 1-13
1.11 Office of the State Fire Marshal 1-15
1.12 State Librarian 1-20
1.13 Department of Water Resources 1-20
1.14 California State Lands Commission 1-20

DIVISION II – SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION *1-21*

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION 1-21

101 Scope and General Requirements 1-21
102 Applicability 1-22

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT 1-22

103 Code Compliance Agency 1-22
104 Duties and Powers of Code Official 1-22
105 Permits 1-25
106 Construction Documents 1-26
107 Temporary Uses, Equipment and Systems 1-28
108 Fees 1-28
109 Inspections 1-28
110 Certificate of Occupancy 1-30
111 Service Utilities 1-30
112 Means of Appeals 1-30
113 Violations 1-31
114 Stop Work Order 1-31
115 Unsafe Structures and Equipment 1-31
116 Emergency Measures 1-32
117 Demolition 1-32

CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS 2-3

201 General 2-3
202 General Definitions 2-3

CHAPTER 3 PROVISIONS FOR ALL COMPLIANCE METHODS 3-3

301 Administration 3-3
302 General Provisions 3-4
303 Storm Shelters 3-4
304 Structural Design Loads and Evaluation and Design Procedures 3-5
305 In-Situ Load Tests 3-6
306 Accessibility for Existing Buildings 3-6
307 Smoke Alarms 3-6
308 Carbon Monoxide Detection 3-6
309 Additions and Replacements of Exterior Wall Coverings and Exterior Wall Envelopes 3-7
310 [OSHPD 1R, 2 and 5] Services/Systems and Utilities 3-7
311 [OSHPD 1R, 2 and 5] Means of Egress 3-7
312 [OSHPD 1R] Hospital SPC and Freestanding Buildings Removed from General Acute Care Service Remaining under the Jurisdiction of OSHPD 3-7
313 [SFM] Existing Group R-1 and Group R-2 Occupancies 3-9
314 [SFM] Existing High-Rise Buildings 3-11
315 [SFM] Existing Group I Occupancies 3-13
316 [SFM] Existing Group L Occupancies 3-14
317 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Earthquake Evaluation and Design for Retrofit of Existing Buildings 3-16
318 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Definitions 3-18
319 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Seismic Criteria Selection for Existing Buildings 3-18
320 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Method A 3-21
321 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Method B 3-21
322 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Peer Review Requirements 3-21
323 [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Additional Requirements for Public Schools and Community Colleges 3-22

CHAPTER 3A [OSHPD 1] PROVISIONS FOR ALL COMPLIANCE METHODS 3A-3

301A Administration 3A-3
302A General Provisions 3A-3
303A Reserved 3A-4
304A Structural Design Loads and Evaluation and Design Procedures 3A-4
305A In-Situ Load Tests 3A-9
306A Accessibility for Existing Buildings 3A-9
307A Smoke Alarms 3A-9
308A Carbon Monoxide Detection 3A-9
309A Reserved 3A-10

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

310A Compliance Alternatives for Services/Systems and Utilities . . . 3A-10
311A Compliance Alternatives for Means of Egress . . . 3A-11
312A Removal of Hospital SPC and Freestanding Buildings from General Acute Care Service . . . 3A-12
313A Earthquake Monitoring Instruments for Existing Buildings . . . 3A-14

CHAPTER 4 REPAIRS . . . 4-3
401 General . . . 4-3
402 Building Elements and Materials . . . 4-3
403 Fire Protection . . . 4-3
404 Means of Egress . . . 4-3
405 Structural . . . 4-3
406 Electrical . . . 4-4
407 Mechanical . . . 4-4
408 Plumbing . . . 4-4

CHAPTER 4A [OSHPD 1] REPAIRS . . . 4A-3
401A General . . . 4A-3
402A Building Elements and Materials . . . 4A-3
403A Fire Protection . . . 4A-3
404A Means of Egress . . . 4A-3
405A Structural . . . 4A-3
406A Electrical . . . 4A-4
407A Mechanical . . . 4A-4
408A Plumbing . . . 4A-5

CHAPTER 5 PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE METHOD . . . 5-3
501 General . . . 5-3
502 Additions . . . 5-3
503 Alterations . . . 5-5
504 Fire Escapes . . . 5-7
505 Windows and Emergency Escape Openings . . . 5-8
506 Change of Occupancy . . . 5-9
507 Historic Buildings . . . 5-10

CHAPTER 5A [OSHPD 1] PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE METHOD . . . 5A-3
501A General . . . 5A-3
502A Additions . . . 5A-4
503A Alterations . . . 5A-5
504A Reserved . . . 5A-7
505A Reserved . . . 5A-7
506A Change of Occupancy . . . 5A-7

CHAPTER 6 CLASSIFICATION OF WORK . . . 6-3
601 General . . . 6-3
602 Alteration—Level 1 . . . 6-3
603 Alteration—Level 2 . . . 6-3
604 Alteration—Level 3 . . . 6-3
605 Change of Occupancy . . . 6-3
606 Additions . . . 6-3
607 Historic Buildings . . . 6-3

CHAPTER 7 ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 1 . . . 7-3
701 General . . . 7-3
702 Building Elements and Materials . . . 7-3
703 Fire Protection . . . 7-4
704 Means of Egress . . . 7-4
705 Reroofing . . . 7-4
706 Structural . . . 7-5
707 *Reserved* . . . 7-6
708 Energy Conservation . . . 7-6

CHAPTER 8 ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 2 . . . 8-3
801 General . . . 8-3
802 Building Elements and Materials . . . 8-3
803 Fire Protection . . . 8-5
804 Means of Egress . . . 8-5
805 Structural . . . 8-9
806 Electrical . . . 8-10
807 Mechanical . . . 8-10
808 *Reserved* . . . 8-10
809 Energy Conservation . . . 8-10

CHAPTER 9 ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 3 . . . 9-3
901 General . . . 9-3
902 Special Use and Occupancy . . . 9-3
903 Building Elements and Materials . . . 9-3
904 Fire Protection . . . 9-4
905 Means of Egress . . . 9-4
906 Structural . . . 9-4
907 Energy Conservation . . . 9-4
908 Emergency Responder Communications Enhancement System Coverage . . . 9-5

CHAPTER 10 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY . . . 10-3
1001 General . . . 10-3
1002 Special Use and Occupancy . . . 10-3
1003 Building Elements and Materials . . . 10-3
1004 Fire Protection . . . 10-3
1005 Means of Egress . . . 10-3
1006 Structural . . . 10-3
1007 Electrical . . . 10-4
1008 Mechanical . . . 10-4
1009 Plumbing . . . 10-4
1010 Other Requirements . . . 10-5
1011 Change of Occupancy Classification . . . 10-5

CHAPTER 11 ADDITIONS . . . 11-3
1101 General . . . 11-3
1102 Heights and Areas . . . 11-3
1103 Structural . . . 11-4
1104 Energy Conservation . . . 11-4

CHAPTER 12 HISTORIC BUILDINGS . . . 12-1

102102163

CHAPTER 13 PERFORMANCE COMPLIANCE METHODS . . 13-3
1301 General 13-3
1302 Applicability 13-3
1303 Acceptance 13-4
1304 Investigation and Evaluation 13-4
1305 Scoring and Evaluation 13-4
1306 Building Score 13-14
1307 Evaluation of Building Safety 13-16

CHAPTER 14 RELOCATED OR MOVED BUILDINGS 14-3
1401 General 14-3
1402 Requirements 14-3

CHAPTER 15 CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARDS 15-3
1501 General 15-3
1502 Owner's Responsibility for Fire Protection 15-3
1503 Sanitary 15-4
1504 Protection of Pedestrians 15-4
1505 Protection of Adjoining Property 15-5
1506 Temporary Use of Streets, Alleys and Public Property 15-6
1507 Fire Extinguishers 15-6
1508 Means of Egress 15-6
1509 Standpipes 15-6
1510 Automatic Sprinkler System 15-6
1511 Accessibility 15-7
1512 Water Supply for Fire Protection 15-7

CHAPTER 16 REFERENCED STANDARDS 16-3

APPENDIX A GUIDELINES FOR THE SEISMIC RETROFIT OF EXISTING BUILDINGS . . . . . APPENDIX A-3

CHAPTER A1 SEISMIC STRENGTHENING PROVISIONS FOR UNREINFORCED MASONRY BEARING WALL BUILDINGS . . . . . APPENDIX A-3
A100 Application . . . . . APPENDIX A-3
A101 Purpose . . . . . APPENDIX A-3
A102 Scope . . . . . APPENDIX A-3
A103 Definitions . . . . . APPENDIX A-4
A104 Symbols and Notations . . . . . APPENDIX A-5
A105 General Requirements . . . . . APPENDIX A-6
A106 Materials Requirements . . . . . APPENDIX A-6
A107 Quality Control . . . . . APPENDIX A-8
A108 Design Strengths . . . . . APPENDIX A-8
A109 Analysis and Design Procedure . . . . . APPENDIX A-10
A110 General Procedure . . . . . APPENDIX A-10
A111 Special Procedure . . . . . APPENDIX A-11
A112 Analysis and Design . . . . . APPENDIX A-14
A113 Detailed Building System Design Requirements . . . . . APPENDIX A-15
A114 Walls of Unburned Clay, Adobe or Stone Masonry . . . . . APPENDIX A-17

CHAPTER A2 EARTHQUAKE HAZARD REDUCTION IN EXISTING REINFORCED CONCRETE AND REINFORCED MASONRY WALL BUILDINGS WITH FLEXIBLE DIAPHRAGMS . . . . . APPENDIX A-21
A201 Purpose . . . . . APPENDIX A-21
A202 Scope . . . . . APPENDIX A-21
A203 Definitions . . . . . APPENDIX A-21
A204 Symbols and Notations . . . . . APPENDIX A-21
A205 General Requirements . . . . . APPENDIX A-21
A206 Analysis and Design . . . . . APPENDIX A-22
A207 Materials of Construction . . . . . APPENDIX A-23

CHAPTER A3 PRESCRIPTIVE PROVISIONS FOR SEISMIC STRENGTHENING OF CRIPPLE WALLS AND SILL PLATE ANCHORAGE OF LIGHT, WOOD-FRAME RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS. . . . . APPENDIX A-27
A301 General . . . . . APPENDIX A-27
A302 Definitions . . . . . APPENDIX A-27
A303 Structural Weaknesses . . . . . APPENDIX A-28
A304 Strengthening Requirements . . . . . APPENDIX A-28

CHAPTER A4 EARTHQUAKE RISK REDUCTION IN WOOD-FRAME RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS WITH SOFT, WEAK OR OPEN FRONT WALLS . . . . . APPENDIX A-45
A401 General . . . . . APPENDIX A-45
A402 Definitions . . . . . APPENDIX A-45
A403 Analysis and Design . . . . . APPENDIX A-45
A404 Prescriptive Measures for Weak Story . . APPENDIX A-47
A405 Materials of Construction . . . . . APPENDIX A-48
A406 Construction Documents . . . . . APPENDIX A-48
A407 Quality Control . . . . . APPENDIX A-49

CHAPTER A5 REFERENCED STANDARDS . . . . APPENDIX A-53
A501 Referenced Standards . . . . . APPENDIX A-53

APPENDIX B SUPPLEMENTARY ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES. . . . . APPENDIX B-3
B101 Qualified Historic Buildings and Facilities. . . . . APPENDIX B-3
B102 Fixed Transportation Facilities and Stations . . . . . APPENDIX B-3
B103 Dwelling Units and Sleeping Units. . . . . APPENDIX B-4
B104 Referenced Standards . . . . . APPENDIX B-4

APPENDIX C GUIDELINES FOR THE WIND RETROFIT OF EXISTING BUILDINGS . . . . . APPENDIX C-3

CHAPTER C1 GABLE END RETROFIT FOR HIGH-WIND AREAS . . . . . APPENDIX C-3
C101 General . . . . . APPENDIX C-3
C102 Definitions . . . . . APPENDIX C-3
C103 Materials of Construction . . . . . APPENDIX C-4
C104 Retrofitting Gable End Walls to Enhance Wind Resistance . . . . . APPENDIX C-5

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER C2 ROOF DECK FASTENING FOR HIGH-WIND AREAS . . . . . APPENDIX C-27
C201 General . . . . . APPENDIX C-27
C202 Roof Deck Attachment for Wood Roofs . . . . . APPENDIX C-27

CHAPTER C3 REFERENCED STANDARDS . . . . APPENDIX C-31
C301 Referenced Standards . . . . . APPENDIX C-31

APPENDIX D BOARD OF APPEALS . . . . . APPENDIX D-3
D101 General . . . . . APPENDIX D-3

APPENDIX E TEMPORARY EMERGENCY USES . . . . . APPENDIX E-3
E101 General . . . . . APPENDIX E-3
E102 Definitions . . . . . APPENDIX E-3
E103 Submittal Documents . . . . . APPENDIX E-3
E104 Conformance . . . . . APPENDIX E-3
E105 Permits . . . . . APPENDIX E-3
E106 General Standards for Emergency Uses . . . . . APPENDIX E-3
E107 Use of Specific Standards . . . . . APPENDIX E-4
E108 Referenced Standards . . . . . APPENDIX E-5

RESOURCE A GUIDELINES ON FIRE RATINGS OF ARCHAIC MATERIALS AND ASSEMBLIES . . . . RESOURCE A-3
Introduction . . . . . RESOURCE A-3
Purpose . . . . . RESOURCE A-3
1—Fire-Related Performance of Archaic Materials and Assemblies . . . . . RESOURCE A-4
2—Building Evaluation . . . . . RESOURCE A-5
3—Final Evaluation and Design Solution . . . . . RESOURCE A-8
4—Summary . . . . . RESOURCE A-14
APPENDIX . . . . . RESOURCE A-17
Introduction . . . . . RESOURCE A-17
Table of Contents . . . . . RESOURCE A-17
Purpose and Procedure . . . . . RESOURCE A-19
Section I—Walls . . . . . RESOURCE A-20
Section II—Columns . . . . . RESOURCE A-67
Section III—Floor/Ceiling Assemblies . . . . . RESOURCE A-91
Section IV—Beams . . . . . RESOURCE A-107
Section V—Doors . . . . . RESOURCE A-112
Bibliography . . . . . RESOURCE A-115

INDEX INDEX-1

HISTORY NOTE APPENDIX HIST-1

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 1 – ADMINISTRATION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	**X**		**X**	**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**								
Chapter / Section																								
Division I – California Administration																								
1.1	X		X	X	X		X	X	X															
1.2	X																							
1.8				X	X																			
1.9.1							X																	
1.9.1.1							X																	
1.9.2								X	X															
1.9.2.1								X																
1.9.2.2									X															
1.10.1										X	X													
1.10.2												X												
1.10.3													X											
1.10.4														X										
1.10.5															X									
1.10.6																X								
1.11			X																					
Division II – Scope and Administration																								
101.2				X	X																			
101.2.2			X																					
101.5 – 101.6			X																					
101.7	X			X	X			X	X															
102			X								X	X		X	X									
104											X	X		X	X									
105.1			X																					
105.2 Building: 1-6				X	X																			
105.2.1 – 105.2.2			X																					
105.3 – 105.3.1			X																					
105.5.1	X		X																					
105.6 – 105.7			X																					
106.1				X	X																			
106.2.1				X	X																			
106.2.3 – 106.2.6				X	X																			
106.2.5	X							X	X															
106.4 – 106.5			X																					
107			X																					
107.1										X	X	X		X	X									

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 1 – ADMINISTRATION—continued

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	**X**		**X**	**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**								
Chapter / Section																								
109.3 – 109.3.11				X	X																			
109.3.6	X		X					X	X															
109.3.7			X																					
110			X																					
111			X																					
113			X																					
114			X																					
115			X																					
116.1			X																					

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol : †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

CHAPTER

1 ADMINISTRATION

DIVISION I
CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION

SECTION 1.1—GENERAL

1.1.1 Title. *These regulations shall be known as the California Existing Building Code, may be cited as such and will be referred to herein as "this code." The California Existing Building Code is Part 10 of thirteen parts of the official compilation and publication of the adoption, amendment and repeal of building regulations to the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, also referred to as the California Building Standards Code. This part incorporates by adoption the 2024 International Existing Building Code of the International Code Council with necessary California amendments.*

1.1.2 Purpose. *The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, access to persons with disabilities, sanitation, adequate lighting and ventilation and energy conservation; safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment; and to provide safety to firefighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.*

1.1.3 Scope. *The provisions of this code shall apply to the construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal and demolition of every building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures throughout the State of California.* ***[HCD 1 & 2]*** *The provisions of this code shall apply to repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition to and relocation of every existing building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures throughout the State of California.*

1.1.3.1 Nonstate-regulated buildings, structures and applications. *Except as modified by local ordinance pursuant to Section 1.1.8, the following standards in the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Parts 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10 and 11 shall apply to all occupancies and applications not regulated by a state agency.*

1.1.3.2 State-regulated buildings, structures and applications. *The model code, state amendments to the model code and/or state amendments where there are no relevant model code provisions shall apply to the following buildings, structures and applications regulated by state agencies as specified in Sections 1.2 through 1.14, except where modified by local ordinance pursuant to Section 1.1.8. When adopted by a state agency, the provisions of this code shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the state legislature.*

Note: *See "How to Distinguish Between Model Code Language and California Amendments" in the front of the code.*

1. *State-owned buildings, including buildings constructed by the Trustees of the California State University, and to the extent permitted by California laws, buildings designed and constructed by the Regents of the University of California, and regulated by the Building Standards Commission. See Section 1.2 for additional scope provisions.*
2. *Section 1.3 is reserved for the Board of State Community Corrections.*
3. *Section 1.4 is reserved for the Department of Consumer Affairs.*
4. *Section 1.5 is reserved for the California Energy Commission.*
5. *Section 1.6 is reserved for the Department of Food and Agriculture.*
6. *Section 1.7 is reserved for the Department of Public Health.*
7. *Hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartments, dwellings, dormitories, condominiums, shelters for homeless persons, congregate residences, employee housing, factory-built housing and other types of dwellings containing sleeping accommodations with or without common toilets or cooking facilities. See Section 1.8.2.1.1 for additional scope provisions.*
8. *Accommodations for persons with disabilities in buildings containing newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings, new common use areas serving existing covered multifamily dwellings, additions to existing buildings where the addition alone meets the definition of covered multifamily dwelling, and new common-use areas serving new covered multifamily dwellings, which are regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Section 1.8.2.1.2 for additional scope provisions.*
9. *Permanent buildings and permanent accessory buildings or structures constructed within mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Section 1.8.2.1.3 for additional scope provisions.*
10. *Accommodations for persons with disabilities regulated by the Division of the State Architect. See Section 1.9.1 for additional scope provisions.*
11. *Public elementary and secondary schools, community college buildings and state-owned or state-leased essential service buildings regulated by the Division of the State Architect. See Section 1.9.2 for additional scope provisions.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® BUFF
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

12. *Qualified historical buildings and structures and their associated sites regulated by the State Historical Building Safety Board with the Division of the State Architect.*
13. *General acute care hospitals, acute psychiatric hospitals, skilled nursing and/or intermediate care facilities, clinics licensed by the Department of Public Health and correctional treatment centers regulated by the Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development. See Section 1.10 for additional scope provisions.*
14. *Applications regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal include, but are not limited to, the following in accordance with Section 1.11:*
    - 14.1. *Buildings or structures used or intended for use as an:*
        1. *Asylum, jail, prison*
        2. *Mental hospital, hospital, home for the elderly, children's nursery, children's home or institution, school or any similar occupancy of any capacity*
        3. *Theater, dancehall, skating rink, auditorium, assembly hall, meeting hall, nightclub, fair building or similar place of assemblage where 50 or more persons may gather together in a building, room or structure for the purpose of amusement, entertainment, instruction, deliberation, worship, drinking or dining, awaiting transportation, or education*
        4. *Small family day-care homes, large family day-care homes, residential facilities and residential facilities for the elderly, residential care facilities*
        5. *State institutions or other state-owned or state-occupied buildings*
        6. *High-rise structures*
        7. *Motion picture production studios*
        8. *Organized camps*
        9. *Residential structures*
    - 14.2. *Tents, awnings or other fabric enclosures used in connection with any occupancy*
    - 14.3. *Fire alarm devices, equipment and systems in connection with any occupancy*
    - 14.4. *Hazardous materials, flammable and combustible liquids*
    - 14.5. *Public school automatic fire detection, alarm and sprinkler systems*
    - 14.6. *Wildland-urban interface fire areas*
15. *Section 1.12 is reserved for the State Librarian.*
16. *Section 1.13 is reserved for the Department of Water Resources.*
17. *For applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, outdoor environments and uses shall be classified according to accessibility uses described in Chapter 11B contained in the California Building Code.*
18. *Section 1.14 is reserved for the California State Lands Commission.*

1.1.4 Appendices. *Provisions contained in the appendices of this code shall not apply unless specifically adopted by a state agency or adopted by a local enforcing agency in compliance with Health and Safety Code Section 18901 et seq. for Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17950 for State Housing Law and Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7 for Fire Protection Districts. See Section 1.1.8 of this code.*

1.1.5 Referenced codes. *The codes, standards and publications adopted and set forth in this code, including other codes, standards and publications referred to therein are, by title and date of publication, hereby adopted as standard reference documents of this code. When this code does not specifically cover any subject related to building design and construction, recognized architectural or engineering practices shall be employed. The National Fire Codes, standards and the Fire Protection Handbook of the National Fire Protection Association are permitted to be used as authoritative guides in determining recognized fire prevention engineering practices.*

1.1.6 Nonbuilding standards, orders and regulations. *Requirements contained in the California Existing Building Code, or in any other referenced standard, code or document, which are not building standards as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18909, shall not be construed as part of the provisions of this code. For nonbuilding standards, orders and regulations, see other titles of the California Code of Regulations.*

1.1.7 Order of precedence and use.

1.1.7.1 Differences. *In the event of any differences between these building standards and the standard reference documents, the text of these building standards shall govern.*

1.1.7.2 Specific provisions. *Where a specific provision varies from a general provision, the specific provision shall apply.*

1.1.7.3 Conflicts. *When the requirements of this code conflict with the requirements of any other part of the California Building Standards Code, Title 24 the most restrictive requirements shall prevail.*

1.1.7.3.1 Detached one- and two-family dwellings. *Detached one- and two-family dwellings, lodging houses, live/work units, townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress, and their accessory structures, may be designed and constructed in accordance with the California Residential Code or the California Building Code, but not both, unless the proposed structure(s) or element(s) exceed the design limitations established in the California Residential Code, and the code user is specifically directed by the California Residential Code to use the California Building Code.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

1.1.8 City, county, or city and county amendments, additions or deletions. *The provisions of this code do not limit the authority of city, county, or city and county governments to establish more restrictive and reasonably necessary differences to the provisions contained in this code pursuant to complying with Section 1.1.8.1. The effective date of amendments, additions or deletions to this code by a city, county, or city and county filed pursuant to Section 1.1.8.1 shall be the date filed. However, in no case shall the amendments, additions or deletions to this code be effective any sooner than the effective date of this code.*

Local modifications shall comply with Health and Safety Code Section 18941.5 for Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17958 for State Housing Law or Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7 for Fire Protection Districts.

1.1.8.1 Findings and filings.

1. *The city, county, or city and county shall make express findings for each amendment, addition or deletion based upon climatic, topographical or geological conditions.*

   Exception: *Hazardous building ordinances and programs mitigating unreinforced masonry buildings.*
2. *The city, county, or city and county shall file the amendments, additions or deletions expressly marked and identified as to the applicable findings. Cities, counties, cities and counties, and fire departments shall file the amendments, additions or deletions, and the findings with the California Building Standards Commission at 2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130, Sacramento, CA 95833.*
3. *Findings prepared by fire protection districts shall be ratified by the local city, county, or city and county and filed with the California Department of Housing and Community Development, Division of Codes and Standards, P.O. Box 278180, Sacramento, CA 95827-8180 or 9342 Tech Center Drive, Suite 500, Sacramento, CA 95826-2581.*

1.1.8.2 Locally adopted energy standards – California Energy Code, Part 6

In addition to the provisions of Section 1.1.8.1 of this Part, the provisions of this section shall apply to a city, county, and city and county adopting local energy standards applicable to buildings and structures subject to the California Energy Code, Part 6.

Applicable provisions of Public Resources Code Section 25402.1(h)(2) and applicable provisions of Section 10-106, Chapter 10 of the California Administrative Code, Part 1 apply to locally adopted energy standards amending the California Energy Code, Part 6.

1.1.9 Effective date of this code. *Only those standards approved by the California Building Standards Commission that are effective at the time an application for building permit is submitted shall apply to the plans and specifications for, and to the construction performed under, that permit. For the effective dates of the provisions contained in this code, see the History Note page of this code.*

Exceptions:

(1) ***[HCD 1 & HCD 2]*** *Retroactive permits issued in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 17958.12.*

(2) ***[HCD 1 & HCD 2]*** *Plans approved by the Department of Housing and Community Development or a Department-approved design approval agency for factory-built housing as defined by Health and Safety Code Section 19971. Approved plans, pursuant to the California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, Article 3, Section 3048 remain valid for a period of 36 months from the date of plan approval.*

1.1.10 Availability of codes. *At least one complete copy each of Titles 8, 19, 20, 24 and 25 with all revisions shall be maintained in the office of the building official responsible for the administration and enforcement of this code. Each state department concerned and each city, county, or city and county shall have an up-to-date copy of the code available for public inspection. See Health and Safety Code Section 18942(e)(1) and (2).*

1.1.11 Format. *This part fundamentally adopts the International Existing Building Code by reference on a chapter-by-chapter basis. When a specific chapter of the International Existing Building Code is not printed in the code and is marked "Reserved", such chapter of the International Existing Building Code is not adopted as a portion of this code. When a specific chapter of the International Existing Building Code is marked "Not adopted by the State of California" but appears in the code, it may be available for adoption by local ordinance, provided such ordinance and related model code provisions do not conflict with Title 24 provisions applicable to the subject occupancy or building feature.*

Note: *Matrix Adoption Tables at the front of each chapter may aid the code user in determining which chapter or sections within a chapter are applicable to buildings under the authority of a specific state agency, but they are not to be considered regulatory.*

1.1.12 Validity. *If any chapter, section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, contrary to statute, exceeding the authority of the state as stipulated by statutes or otherwise inoperative, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portion of this code.*

SECTION 1.2—BUILDING STANDARDS COMMISSION

1.2.1 BSC. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

1. State buildings for all occupancies.

Application—*State buildings (all occupancies), including buildings constructed by the Trustees of the California State University (CSU) and the Regents of the University of California (UC) where no state agency has the authority to adopt building standards applicable to such buildings.*

Enforcing agency—*State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 18934.5.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.5, commencing with Section 18901.*

2. University of California, California State Universities and California Community Colleges.

Application—*Standards for lighting for parking lots and primary campus walkways at the University of California, California State Universities and California Community Colleges.*

Enforcing agency—*State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.*

Authority cited—*Government Code Section 14617.*

Reference—*Government Code Section 14617.*

3. Existing state-owned buildings, including those owned by the University of California and by the California State University.

Application—*Building seismic retrofit standards including abating falling hazards of structural and nonstructural components and strengthening of building structures. See also Division of the State Architect.*

Enforcing agency—*State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 16600.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Sections 16600 through 16604.*

4. Unreinforced masonry-bearing wall buildings.

Application—*Minimum seismic strengthening standards for buildings specified in Appendix Chapter A1 of the California Existing Building Code, except for buildings subject to building standards pursuant to Health and Safety Code (commencing) with Section 17910.*

Enforcing agency—*State or local agency specified the applicable provisions of law.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 18934.7.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.5, commencing with Section 18901.*

1.2.1.1 State building. *For purposes of this code, a "state building" is a structure for which a state agency or state entity has authority to construct, alter, enlarge, replace, repair or demolish.*

1.2.1.2 Enforcement. *[CSU, UC, Judicial Council and California Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation] State agencies or state entities authorized to construct state buildings may appoint a building official who is responsible to the agency for enforcement of the provisions of the California Building Standards Code.*

Exception: *State buildings regulated by other sections of this code remain the enforcement responsibility of the designated entities.*

1.2.1.3 Enforcement. *Reserved for DGS.*

1.2.1.4 Adopting agency identification. *The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym* ***BSC****.*

1.2.2 BSC-CG. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

1. Green building standards for nonresidential occupancies.

Application—*All occupancies where no state agency has the authority to adopt green building standards applicable to those occupancies.*

Enforcing agency—*State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 18930.5(a), 18938 and 18940.5.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.5, commencing with Section 18901.*

2. Graywater systems for nonresidential occupancies.

Application—*The construction, installation and alteration of graywater systems for indoor and outdoor uses in nonresidential occupancies.*

Enforcing agency—*State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.*

Authority cited—*Health & Safety Code Section 18941.8.*

Reference—*Health & Safety Code Section 18941.8.*

1.2.2.1 Adopting agency identification. *The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym* ***BSC-CG****.*

1.2.3 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment. *The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be approved where the building official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety.*

1.2.3.1 Research reports. *Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.*

1.2.3.2 Tests. *Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the building official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the building official shall approve the testing procedures. Tests shall be performed by an approved agency. Reports of such tests shall be retained by the building official for the period required for retention of public records.*

SECTION 1.3—BOARD OF STATE AND COMMUNITY CORRECTIONS
RESERVED

SECTION 1.4—DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS
RESERVED

SECTION 1.5—CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION
RESERVED

SECTION 1.6—DEPARTMENT OF FOOD AND AGRICULTURE
RESERVED

SECTION 1.7—DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH
RESERVED

SECTION 1.8—DEPARTMENT OF HOUSING AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT

1.8.1 Purpose. *The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements necessary to protect the health, safety and general welfare of the occupants and the public by governing accessibility, erection, construction, reconstruction, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, moving, removal, demolition, occupancy, use, height, court, area, sanitation, ventilation, maintenance and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment.*

SECTION 1.8.2—AUTHORITY AND ABBREVIATIONS

1.8.2.1 General. *The Department of Housing and Community Development is authorized by law to promulgate and adopt building standards and regulations for several types of building applications. The applications under the authority of the Department of Housing and Community Development are listed in Sections 1.8.2.1.1 through 1.8.2.1.3.*

Note: *See the California Residential Code for detached one-and two-family dwellings and townhouses.*

1.8.2.1.1 Housing construction.

Application—*Hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartments, dwellings, dormitories, condominiums, shelters for homeless persons, congregate residences, employee housing, factory-built housing and other types of dwellings containing sleeping accommodations with or without common toilet or cooking facilities including accessory buildings, facilities and uses thereto. Sections of this code which pertain to applications listed in this section are identified using the abbreviation "HCD 1."*

Enforcing agency—*Local building department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 17040, 17920.9, 17921, 17921.5, 17921.6, 17921.10, 17922, 17922.6, 17922.12, 17922.14, 17922.15, 17926, 17927, 17928, 17958.12, 18938.3, 18944.11 and 19990; and Government Code Section 12955.1.*

Reference—*Business and Professions Code Division 5, Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17062.5, 17910 through 17995.5, 18200 through 18700, 18860 through 18874, 18938.6, 18941, 19890, 19891, 19892 and 19960 through 19997; Civil Code Sections 832, 1101.4, 1101.5 and 1954.201, 1954.202 and 5551; Government Code Sections 8698.4, 12955.1 and 12955.1.1. California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Sections 1605.1, 1605.3 and 1607.*

1.8.2.1.2 Housing accessibility.

Application—*Covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code, including but not limited to, lodging houses, dormitories, timeshares, condominiums, shelters for homeless persons, congregate residences, apartments, dwellings, employee housing, factory-built housing and other types of dwellings containing sleeping accommodations with or without common toilet or cooking facilities.*

Sections of this code identified by the abbreviation "HCD 1-AC" require specific accommodations for persons with disabilities as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code. The application of such provisions shall be in conjunction with other requirements of the California Building Code, and apply only to newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code. "HCD 1-AC" applications include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. *All newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.*
2. *New common use areas as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code, serving existing covered multifamily dwellings.*
3. *Additions to existing buildings, where the addition alone meets the definition of covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.*

4. *New common use areas serving new covered multifamily dwellings.*
5. *Where any portion of a building's exterior is preserved, but the interior of the building is removed, including all structural portions of floors and ceilings, the building is considered a new building for determining the application of Chapter 11A of the California Building Code.*

"HCD 1-AC" building standards generally do not apply to public use areas or public accommodations such as hotels and motels, and public housing. Public use areas, public accommodations and public housing, as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code, are subject to the Division of the State Architect (DSA-AC) in Chapter 11B of the California Building Code, and are referenced in Section 1.9.1.

Enforcing agency—*Local building department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 17040, 17920.9, 17921, 17921.5, 17921.6, 17921.10, 17922, 17922.6, 17922.12, 17922.14, 17926, 17927, 17928, 17958.12, 18938.3, 18944.11 and 19990; and Government Code Sections 12955.1 and 12955.1.1.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17062.5, 17910 through 17995.5, 18200 through 18700, 18860 through 18874, 18938.6, 18941 and Sections 19960 through 19997; Civil Code Sections 1101.4, 1101.5, 1954.201 and 1954.202; and Government Code Sections 12955.1 and 12955.1.1. California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Sections 1605.1, 1605.3 and 1607.*

1.8.2.1.3 Permanent buildings in mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks.

Application—*Permanent buildings, and permanent accessory buildings or structures, constructed within mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks that are under the control and ownership of the park operator. Sections of this code which pertain to applications listed in this section are identified using the abbreviation "HCD 2."*

Enforcing agency—*The Department of Housing and Community Development, local building department or other local agency that has assumed responsibility for the enforcement of Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 for mobilehome parks and Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 for special occupancy parks.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 17040, 17920.9, 17921, 17921.5, 17921.6, 17921.10, 17922, 17922.6, 17922.12, 17922.14, 17922.15, 17926, 17927, 17928, 17958.12, 18552, 18554, 18620, 18630, 18640, 18670, 18690, 18691, 18865, 18871.3, 18871.4, 18873, 18873.1 through 18873.5, 18938.3, 18944.11 and 19990; and Government Code Section 12955.1.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17062.5, 17910 through 17995.5, 18200 through 18700, 18860 through 18874, 18938.6, 18941, 19890, 19891, 19892 and Sections 19960 through 19997; Civil Code Sections 1101.4, 1101.5 and 1954.201; and Government Code Sections 12955.1 and 12955.1.1; and Title 25, Sections 1042 and 2042.*

SECTION 1.8.3—LOCAL ENFORCING AGENCY

1.8.3.1 Duties and powers. *The building department of every city, county, or city and county shall enforce all the provisions of law, this code, and the other rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development pertaining to the installation, erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, removal, demolition or arrangement of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses and dwellings, including accessory buildings, facilities and uses thereto.*

For additional information regarding the use and occupancy of existing buildings and appurtenant structures, see California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Article 1, Section 1.

1.8.3.2 Laws, rules and regulations. *Other than the building standards contained in this code, and notwithstanding other provisions of law, the statutory authority and location of the laws, rules and regulations to be enforced by local enforcing agencies are listed by statute in Sections 1.8.3.2.1 through 1.8.3.2.5 below:*

1.8.3.2.1 State Housing Law. *Refer to the State Housing Law, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1, for the erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, removal, demolition or arrangement of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses and dwellings, including accessory buildings, facilities and uses thereto.*

1.8.3.2.2 Mobilehome Parks Act. *Refer to the Mobilehome Parks Act, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000 for mobilehome park administrative and enforcement authority, permits, plans, fees, violations, inspections and penalties both within and outside mobilehome parks.*

Exception: *Mobilehome parks where the Department of Housing and Community Development is the enforcing agency.*

1.8.3.2.3 Special Occupancy Parks Act. *Refer to the Special Occupancy Parks Act, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000 for special occupancy park administrative and enforcement authority, permits, fees, violations, inspections and penalties both within and outside of special occupancy parks.*

Exception: *Special occupancy parks where the Department of Housing and Community Development is the enforcing agency.*

1.8.3.2.4 Employee Housing Act. *Refer to the Employee Housing Act, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600 for employee housing administrative and enforcement authority, permits, fees, violations, inspections and penalties.*

1.8.3.2.5 Factory-Built Housing Law. *Refer to the Factory-Built Housing Law, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6, commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000 for factory-built housing administrative and enforcement authority, permits, fees, violations, inspections and penalties.*

SECTION 1.8.4—PERMITS, FEES, APPLICATIONS AND INSPECTIONS

1.8.4.1 Permits. *A written construction permit shall be obtained from the enforcing agency prior to the erection, construction, reconstruction, installation, moving or alteration of any building or structure.*

Exceptions:

1. *Work exempt from permits as specified in Chapter 1, Division II, Scope and Administration, Section 105.2.*
2. *Changes, alterations or repairs of a minor nature not affecting structural features, egress, sanitation, safety or accessibility as determined by the enforcing agency.*
3. *Retroactive permits issued in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 17958.12.*

Exemptions from permit requirements shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of other provisions of law or this code.

1.8.4.2 Fees. *Subject to other provisions of law, the governing body of any city, county, or city and county may prescribe fees to defray the cost of enforcement of rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. The amount of the fees shall not exceed the amount reasonably necessary to administer or process permits, certificates, forms or other documents, or to defray the costs of enforcement. For additional information, see the State Housing Law, Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, Section 17951 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, Article 3, commencing with Section 6.*

1.8.4.3 Plan review and time limitations. *Subject to other provisions of law, provisions related to plan checking, prohibition of excessive delays and contracting with or employment of private parties to perform plan checking are set forth in the State Housing Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17960.1, and for employee housing, in Health and Safety Code Section 17021.*

1.8.4.3.1 Retention of plans. *The building department of every city, county, or city and county shall maintain an official copy, microfilm, electronic or other type of photographic copy of the plans of every building, during the life of the building, for which the department issued a building permit.*

Exceptions:

1. *Single or multiple dwellings not more than two stories and basement in height.*
2. *Garages and other structures appurtenant to buildings listed in Exception 1.*
3. *Farm or ranch buildings appurtenant to buildings listed in Exception 1.*
4. *Any one-story building where the span between bearing walls does not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm), except a steel frame or concrete building.*

All plans for common interest developments as defined in Section 4100 of the California Civil Code shall be retained. For additional information regarding plan retention and reproduction of plans by an enforcing agency, see Health and Safety Code Sections 19850 through 19852.

1.8.4.4 Inspections. *Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the building official, and such construction or work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until approved. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or other regulations of the Department of Housing and Community Development. Required inspections are listed in Chapter 1, Division II, Scope and Administration, Sections 109.3.1 through 109.3.11.*

SECTION 1.8.5—RIGHT OF ENTRY FOR ENFORCEMENT

1.8.5.1 General. *Subject to other provisions of law, officers and agents of the enforcing agency may enter and inspect public and private properties to secure compliance with the rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. For limitations and additional information regarding enforcement, see the following:*

1. *For applications subject to the State Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.1 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1.*
2. *For applications subject to the Mobilehome Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.2 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000.*
3. *For applications subject to the Special Occupancy Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.3 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000.*
4. *For applications subject to the Employee Housing Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.4 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

5. *For applications subject to the Factory-Built Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6, commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000.*

SECTION 1.8.6—LOCAL MODIFICATION BY ORDINANCE OR REGULATION

1.8.6.1 General. *Subject to other provisions of law, a city, county, or city and county may make changes to the provisions adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development. If any city, county, or city and county does not amend, add or repeal by local ordinances or regulations the provisions published in this code or other regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development, those provisions shall be applicable and shall become effective 180 days after publication by the California Building Standards Commission. Amendments, additions and deletions to this code adopted by a city, county, or city and county pursuant to California Health and Safety Code Sections 17958.5, 17958.7 and 18941.5, together with all applicable portions of this code, shall also become effective 180 days after publication of the California Building Standards Code by the California Building Standards Commission.*

1.8.6.2 Findings, filings and rejections of local modifications. *Prior to making any modifications or establishing more restrictive building standards, the governing body shall make express findings and filings, as required by California Health and Safety Code Section 17958.7, showing that such modifications are reasonably necessary due to local climatic, geological or topographical conditions. No modification shall become effective or operative unless the following requirements are met:*

1. *The express findings shall be made available as a public record.*
2. *A copy of the modification and express finding, each document marked to cross-reference the other, shall be filed with the California Building Standards Commission for a city, county, or city and county and with the Department of Housing and Community Development for fire protection districts.*
3. *The California Building Standards Commission has not rejected the modification or change.*

Nothing in this section shall limit the authority of fire protection districts pursuant to California Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7(a).

SECTION 1.8.7—ALTERNATE MATERIALS, DESIGNS, TESTS AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION

1.8.7.1 General. *The provisions of this code, as adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development are not intended to prevent the use of any alternate material, appliance, installation, device, arrangement, design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code. Consideration and approval of alternates shall comply with Section 1.8.7.2 for local building departments and Section 1.8.7.3 for the Department of Housing and Community Development.*

1.8.7.2 Local building departments. *The building department of any city, county, or city and county may approve alternates for use in the erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, removal, demolition or arrangement of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses, dwellings or accessory structures, except for the following:*

1. *Structures located in mobilehome parks as defined in California Health and Safety Code Section 18214.*
2. *Structures located in special occupancy parks as defined in California Health and Safety Code Section 18862.43.*
3. *Factory-built housing as defined in California Health and Safety Code Section 19971.*

1.8.7.2.1 Approval of alternates. *The consideration and approval of alternates by a local building department shall comply with the following procedures and limitations:*

1. *The approval shall be granted on a case-by-case basis.*
2. *Evidence shall be submitted to substantiate claims that the proposed alternate, in performance, safety and protection of life and health, conforms to, or is at least equivalent to, the standards contained in this code and other rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development.*
3. *The local building department may require tests performed by an approved testing agency at the expense of the owner or owner's agent as proof of compliance.*
4. *If the proposed alternate is related to accessibility in covered multifamily dwellings or in facilities serving covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code, the proposed alternate must also meet the threshold set for equivalent facilitation as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.*

For additional information regarding approval of alternates by a building department pursuant to the State Housing Law, see California Health and Safety Code Section 17951(e) and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1.

1.8.7.3 Department of Housing and Community Development. *The Department of Housing and Community Development may approve alternates for use in the erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, removal or demolition of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses, dwellings or accessory structures thereto and permanent buildings in mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks. The consideration and approval of alternates shall comply with the following:*

1. *The department may require tests at the expense of the owner or owner's agent to substantiate compliance with the California Building Standards Code.*
2. *The approved alternate shall, for its intended purpose, be at least equivalent in performance and safety to the materials, designs, tests or methods of construction prescribed by this code.*

102102163

SECTION 1.8.8—APPEALS BOARD

1.8.8.1 General. *Every city, county, or city and county shall establish a process to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions and determinations made by the enforcing agency relative to the application and interpretation of this code and other regulations governing construction, use, maintenance and change of occupancy. The governing body of any city, county, or city and county may establish a local appeals board and a housing appeals board to serve this purpose. Members of the appeals board(s) shall not be employees of the enforcing agency and shall be knowledgeable in the applicable building codes, regulations and ordinances as determined by the governing body of the city, county, or city and county.*

Where no such appeals boards or agencies have been established, the governing body of the city, county, or city and county shall serve as the local appeals board or housing appeals board as specified in California Health and Safety Code Sections 17920.5 and 17920.6.

1.8.8.2 Definitions. *The following terms shall for the purposes of this section have the meaning shown.*

HOUSING APPEALS BOARD. *The board or agency of a city, county, or city and county which is authorized by the governing body of the city, county, or city and county to hear appeals regarding the requirements of the city, county, or city and county relating to the use, maintenance and change of occupancy of buildings and structures, including requirements governing alteration, additions, repair, demolition and moving. In any area in which there is no such board or agency, "Housing appeals board" means the local appeals board having jurisdiction over the area.*

LOCAL APPEALS BOARD. *The board or agency of a city, county, or city and county which is authorized by the governing body of the city, county, or city and county to hear appeals regarding the building requirements of the city, county, or city and county. In any area in which there is no such board or agency, "Local appeals board" means the governing body of the city, county, or city and county having jurisdiction over the area.*

1.8.8.3 Appeals. *Except as otherwise provided in law, any person, firm or corporation adversely affected by a decision, order or determination by a city, county, or city and county relating to the application of building standards published in the California Building Standards Code, or any other applicable rule or regulation adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development, or any lawfully enacted ordinance by a city, county, or city and county, may appeal the issue for resolution to the local appeals board or housing appeals board as appropriate.*

The local appeals board shall hear appeals relating to new building construction and the housing appeals board shall hear appeals relating to existing buildings.

SECTION 1.8.9—UNSAFE BUILDINGS OR STRUCTURES

1.8.9.1 Authority to enforce. *Subject to other provisions of law, the administration, enforcement, actions, proceedings, abatement, violations and penalties for unsafe buildings and structures are contained in the following statutes and regulations:*

1. *For applications subject to the State Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.1 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1. For enforcement related to accessory dwelling units, see Health and Safety Code Section 17980.12 operative until January 1, 2035.*
2. *For applications subject to the Mobilehome Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.2 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000.*
3. *For applications subject to the Special Occupancy Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.3 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000.*
4. *For applications subject to the Employee Housing Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.4 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600.*
5. *For applications subject to the Factory-Built Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6, commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000.*

1.8.9.2 Actions and proceedings. *Subject to other provisions of law, punishments, penalties and fines for violations of building standards are contained in the following statutes and regulations:*

1. *For applications subject to the State Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.1 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1.*
2. *For applications subject to the Mobilehome Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.2 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000.*
3. *For applications subject to the Special Occupancy Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.3 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

4. *For applications subject to the Employee Housing Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.4 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600.*
5. *For applications subject to the Factory-Built Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6, commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000.*

SECTION 1.8.10—OTHER BUILDING REGULATIONS

1.8.10.1 Existing structures. *Notwithstanding other provisions of law, the replacement, retention and extension of original materials and the use of original methods of construction for any existing building or accessory structure, or portions thereof, shall be permitted in accordance with the provisions of this code as adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development. For additional information, see California Health and Safety Code, Sections 17912, 17920.3, 17922 and 17958.8.*

1.8.10.2 Moved structures. *Subject to the requirements of California Health and Safety Code Sections 17922, 17922.3 and 17958.9, local ordinances or regulations relating to a moved residential building or accessory structure thereto, shall permit the replacement, retention and extension of original materials and the use of original methods of construction so long as the structure does not become or continue to be a substandard building.*

SECTION 1.9—DIVISION OF THE STATE ARCHITECT

1.9.1 Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance - Reserved.

Buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2 (California Building Code), Chapter 1, Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance shall comply with Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 11A or 11B, as applicable under authority cited by CA Government Code Section 4450 and in reference cited by CA Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461, 12955.1(c), and CA Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

1.9.1.1 Adopting agency identification. *Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance amendments in this code appear preceded with the acronym [DSA-AC].*

1.9.2 Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety.

1.9.2.1 DSA-SS Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety.

Application—*Public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*

Enforcing agency—*The Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety [DSA-SS] has been delegated the responsibility and authority by the Department of General Services to review and approve the design and observe the construction of public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*

Authority cited—*Education Code Section 17310 and 81142 and Health and Safety Code Section 16022.*

Reference—*Education Code Sections 17280 through 17317, and 81130 through 81147 and Health and Safety Code Sections 16000 through 16023.*

1.9.2.1.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. ***Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations:***
   - 1.1. *Sections 4-301 through 4-355, Group 1, and Sections 4-401 through 4-435, Group 2, Chapter 4, for public elementary and secondary schools and community colleges.*
   - 1.2. *Sections 4-201 through 4-249, Chapter 4, for state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*
2. ***Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations:*** *[applies to public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services building(s)]:*
   - 2.1. *Sections 1.1 and 1.9.2.1 of Chapter 1, Division I.*
   - 2.2. *Sections 102.1, 102.2, 102.3, 102.4, 102.5, 106.1, 107.2.5 and 110.3.7 of Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. ***Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations:*** *[applies to public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services building(s)]:*
   - 3.1. *Sections 1.1 and 1.9.2.1 of Chapter 1, Division I.*
   - 3.2. *Sections 101.7, 106.2.5 and 109.3.6 of Chapter 1, Division II.*

1.9.2.1.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11 and 12, California Code of Regulations, for school buildings, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential service buildings.*

The provisions of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety [DSA-SS], shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.

The Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety [DSA-SS] adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10:

Chapters 1, 3 and 5.

BUFF
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

1.9.2.1.3 Amendments. Division of the State Architect—*Structural Safety amendments in this code appear preceded with the acronym [DSA-SS].*

Exception: *Chapter 3, Sections 317-323-DSA-SS adopts these sections without the use of the DSA-SS acronym.*

1.9.2.1.4 Reference to other chapters. *For public schools, where reference is made to sections in Chapters 16, 17, 18, 19, 21 or 22 of the California Building Code, the provisions in Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A of the California Building Code, respectively, shall apply instead.*

1.9.2.2 DSA-SS/CC Division of the State Architect- Structural Safety/Community Colleges.

Application—*Community Colleges. The Division of the State Architect has been delegated the authority by the Department of General Services to promulgate alternate building standards for application to community colleges, which a community college may elect to use in lieu of standards promulgated by DSA-SS in accordance with Section 1.9.2.1.*

Enforcing agency—*Division of the State Architect- Structural Safety/Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC].*

The Division of the State Architect has been delegated the authority by the Department of General Services to review and approve the design and oversee construction of community colleges electing to use the alternative building standards as provided in this section.

Authority cited*—Education Code Section 81053.*

Reference*—Education Code Sections 81052, 81053 and 81130 through 81147.*

1.9.2.2.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. ***Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations:***
   - *1.1. Sections 4-301 through 4-355, Group 1, and Sections 4-401 through 4-435, Group 2, Chapter 4.*
2. ***Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations:***
   - *2.1. Sections 1.1 and 1.9.2.2 of Chapter 1, Division I.*
   - *2.2. Sections 102.1, 102.2, 102.3, 102.4, 102.5, 106.1, 107.2.5 and 110.3.7 of Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. ***Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations:*** *[applies to public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services building(s)]:*
   - *3.1. Sections 1.1 and 1.9.2.1 of Chapter 1, Division I.*
   - *3.2. Sections 101.7, 106.2.5 and 109.3.6 of Chapter 1, Division II.*

1.9.2.2.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11 and 12, California Code of Regulations.*

The provisions of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC], shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

The Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC] adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10:

Chapters 1, 3 and 5.

1.9.2.2.3 Amendments. *Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges amendments in this code appear preceded with the acronym [DSA-SS/CC].*

Exception: *Chapter 3, Sections 317-323—DSA-SS/CC adopts these sections without the use of the DSA-SS/CC acronym.*

1.9.2.2.4 Reference to other chapters. *For community colleges, where reference is made to sections in Chapters 17 or 18 of the California Building Code, the provisions in Chapters 17A and 18A of the California Building Code, respectively, shall apply instead.*

SECTION 1.10—DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH CARE ACCESS AND INFORMATION/ OFFICE OF STATEWIDE HOSPITAL PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT

1.10.1 OSHPD 1 and OSHPD 1R. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

Application [OSHPD 1] *General acute care hospital buildings. [OSHPD 1R] Nonconforming hospital SPC or freestanding buildings that have been removed from acute care service.*

Enforcing agency—*Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD). The office shall enforce the California Energy Commission – Energy Regulations, the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance regulations, and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility types.*

1.10.1.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. *Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapters 6 and 7.*
2. *Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. *Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

1.10.1.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.*

The provisions of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

OSHPD 1 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10: Chapters 2, 3A, 4A, 5A and 16.

OSHPD 1R adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10: Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5 and 16.

1.10.1.3 Identification of amendments. *For applications listed in Section 1.10.1, amendments in this code appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 1], unless the entire chapter is applicable. For nonconforming hospital buildings removed from acute-care service, amendments are preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 1R].*

1.10.1.4 Reference to other chapters. *Where reference is made within the California Building Standards Code to sections in Chapters 3, 4 and 5, the respective section in Chapters 3A, 4A and 5A, shall apply instead for hospital buildings under OSHPD 1.*

Authority—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129850.*

References—*Health and Safety Code Sections 19958, 127010, 127015, 129680, 1275 and 129675 through 130070.*

1.10.2 OSHPD 2. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

Application—*Skilled nursing facility and intermediate care facility buildings.*

Enforcing agency—*Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD). The office shall enforce the California Energy Commission – Energy Regulations, the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance regulations, and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility types.*

1.10.2.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. *Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.*
2. *Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. *Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*

1.10.2.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.*

The provisions of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

OSHPD 2 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10: Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5 and 16.

1.10.2.3 Identification of amendments. *For applications listed in Section 1.10.2, amendments in this code appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 2], unless the entire chapter is applicable.*

Authority—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129850.*

References—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129680.*

1.10.3 OSHPD 3. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

Application—*Licensed clinics and any freestanding building under a hospital license where outpatient clinical services are provided.*

Enforcing agency—*Local building department.*

1.10.3.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. *Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.*
2. *Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. *Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*

1.10.3.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.*

The provisions of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.3.

OSHPD 3 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10: Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5 and 16.

Authority—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015 and 1226.*

References—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 129885 and 1226, Government Code Section 54350 and State Constitution Article 11, Section 7.*

1.10.4 OSHPD 4. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

Application—*Correctional treatment centers.*

Enforcing agency—*Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD). The office shall enforce the California Energy Commission – Energy Regulations, the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance regulations, and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility types.*

1.10.4.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. *Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

2. *Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. *Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*

1.10.4.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.*

The provisions of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

OSHPD 4 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10: Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5 and 16.

1.10.4.3 Identification of amendments. *For applications listed in Section 1.10.4, amendments in this code appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 4], unless the entire chapter is applicable.*

Authority—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129790.*

References—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129674 through 130070.*

1.10.5 OSHPD 5. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

Application—*Acute psychiatric hospital buildings.*

Enforcing agency—*Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD). The office shall enforce the California Energy Commission – Energy Regulations, the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance regulations, and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility types.*

1.10.5.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. *Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.*
2. *Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. *Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*

1.10.5.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.*

The provision of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

OSHPD 5 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10: Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5 and 16.

1.10.5.3 Identification of amendments*. For applications listed in Section 1.10.5, amendments appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 5].*

Authority—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129850.*

References—*Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 129680, 1275 and 129675 through 130070.*

1.10.6 OSHPD 6. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

Application—*Chemical dependency recovery hospital buildings and any freestanding building under a general acute care or acute psychiatric hospital license where chemical dependency recovery services are provided.*

Enforcing agency—*Local building department.*

1.10.6.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. *Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.*
2. *Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*
3. *Title 24, Part 10, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as adopted in Chapter 1, Division II.*

1.10.6.2 Applicable building standards. *California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.*

The provisions of Title 24, Part 10, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.6.

OSHPD 6 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 10: Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5 and 16.

1.10.6.3 Identification of amendments*. For applications listed in Section 1.10.6, amendments appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 6].*

Authority—*Health and Safety Code, Sections 1275, 18929, 129850.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code, Sections 1250.3, 1275, 129680, 129675-130070.*

SECTION 1.11—OFFICE OF THE STATE FIRE MARSHAL

1.11.1 SFM—Office of the State Fire Marshal. *Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.*

Application:

Institutional, educational or any similar occupancy. *Any building or structure used or intended for use as an asylum, jail, prison, mental hospital, hospital, sanitarium, home for the elderly, children's nursery, children's home or institution, school or any similar occupancy of any capacity.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Assembly or similar place of assemblage. *Any theater, dancehall, skating rink, auditorium, assembly hall, meeting hall, nightclub, fair building or similar place of assemblage where 50 or more persons may gather together in a building, room or structure for the purpose of amusement, entertainment, instruction, deliberation, worship, drinking or dining, awaiting transportation, or education.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Small family day-care homes.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 1597.45, 1597.54, 13143 and 17921.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Large family day-care homes.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 1597.46, 1597.54 and 17921.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Residential facilities and residential facilities for the elderly.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13133.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Any state institution or other state-owned or specified state-occupied building.

Specified state-occupied buildings. *Any building, structure or area that meets any of the following criteria:*

1. *A building where the state has contracted into a build-to-suit lease.*
2. *A courthouse holding facility or trial court with a detention area.*
3. *A building used by the Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation as a community correctional reentry center.*
4. *100 percent state occupied.*
5. *State-occupied areas in a state-leased building that is a high-rise and is 75 percent of the net area floor space or more occupied by state entities.*
6. *State-occupied areas that contain 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) or more space of a state-leased Group H or Group L occupancy.*
7. *A state-leased building with facilities with the primary purpose of housing state records and/or state artifacts of historical significance.*
8. *Properties leased by California State University (CSU).*
9. *State institutions and their real property.*
10. *CAL FIRE occupied areas in leased building.*
11. *State-leased facilities where the governing body's fire protection services rely on an all-volunteer fire department.*

Authority cited*—Health and Safety Code Sections 13108, 13145, 13146, 16022.5 and 17921.*

Reference*—Health and Safety Code Sections 13108, 13143, 13145, 13146, 16022.5 and 17921.*

High-rise structures.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13211.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Motion picture production studios.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.1.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Organized camps.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 18897.3.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Residential. *All hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartment houses and dwellings, including congregate residences and buildings and structures accessory thereto. Multiple-story structures existing on January 1, 1975, let for human habitation, including and limited to, hotels, motels and apartment houses, less than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest floor level having building access, wherein rooms used for sleeping are let above the ground floor.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 13143.2 and 17921.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Residential care facilities. *Certified family care homes, out-of-home placement facilities, halfway houses, drug and/or alcohol rehabilitation facilities and any building or structure used or intended for use as a home or institution for the housing of any person of any age when such person is referred to or placed within such home or institution for protective social care and supervision services by any governmental agency.*

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.6.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Tents, awnings or other fabric enclosures used in connection with any occupancy.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13116.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Fire alarm devices, equipment and systems in connection with any occupancy.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13114.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Hazardous materials.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.9.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Flammable and combustible liquids.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.6.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143.*

Public school automatic fire detection, alarm and sprinkler systems.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Section 13143 and California Education Code Article 7.5, Sections 17074.50, 17074.52 and 17074.54.*

Reference—*Government Code Section 11152.5, Health and Safety Code Section 13143 and California Education Code Chapter 12.5, Leroy F. Greene School Facilities Act of 1998, Article 1.*

Wildland-Urban interface fire area.

Authority cited—*Health and Safety Code Sections 13143, 13108.5(a) and 18949.2(b) and (c) and Government Code Section 51189.*

Reference—*Health and Safety Code Sections 13143, Government Code Sections 51176, 51177, 51178 and 51179 and Public Resources Code Sections 4201 through 4204.*

1.11.2 Duties and powers of the enforcing agency.

1.11.2.1 Enforcement.

1.11.2.1.1 *The responsibility for enforcement of building standards adopted by the State Fire Marshal and published in the California Building Standards Code relating to fire and panic safety and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal shall except as provided in Section 1.11.2.1.2 be as follows:*

1. *The city, county, or city and county with jurisdiction in the area affected by the standard or regulation shall delegate the enforcement of the building standards relating to fire and panic safety and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal as they relate to Group R-3 occupancies, as described in Section 1.1.3.1 or SFM Part 2 California Building Code, Section 310.1, to either of the following:*
    1.1. *The chief of the fire authority of the city, county or city and county, or an authorized representative.*
    1.2. *The chief building official of the city, county or city and county, or an authorized representative.*
2. *The chief of any city or county fire department or of any fire protection district, and authorized representatives, shall enforce within the jurisdiction the building standards and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal, except those described in Item 1 or 4.*
3. *The State Fire Marshal shall have authority to enforce the building standards and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal in areas outside of corporate cities and districts providing fire protection services.*
4. *The State Fire Marshal shall have authority to enforce the building standards and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal in corporate cities and districts providing fire protection services on request of the chief fire official or the governing body.*
5. *Any fee charged pursuant to the enforcement authority of this section shall not exceed the estimated reasonable cost of providing the service for which the fee is charged pursuant to Section 66014 of the Government Code.*

1.11.2.1.2 *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13108, and except as otherwise provided in this section, building standards adopted by the State Fire Marshal published in the California Building Standards Code relating to fire and panic safety shall be enforced by the State Fire Marshal in all state-owned buildings, state-occupied buildings and state institutions throughout the state. Upon the written request of the chief fire official of any city, county, or fire protection district, the State Fire Marshal may authorize such chief fire official and his or her authorized representatives, in their geographical area of responsibility, to make fire prevention inspections of state-owned or state-occupied buildings, other than state institutions, for the purpose of enforcing the regulations relating to fire and panic safety adopted by the State Fire Marshal pursuant to this section and building standards*

relating to fire and panic safety published in the California Building Standards Code. Authorization from the State Fire Marshal shall be limited to those fire departments or fire districts which maintain a fire prevention bureau staffed by paid personnel.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13108, any requirement or order made by any chief fire official who is authorized by the State Fire Marshal to make fire prevention inspections of state-owned or state-occupied buildings, other than state institutions, may be appealed to the State Fire Marshal. The State Fire Marshal shall, upon receiving an appeal and subject to the provisions of Chapter 5 (commencing with Section 18945) of Part 2.5 of Division 13 of the Health and Safety Code, determine if the requirement or order made is reasonably consistent with the fire and panic safety regulations adopted by the State Fire Marshal and building standards relating to fire and panic safety published in the California Existing Building Code.

Any person may request a code interpretation from the State Fire Marshal relative to the intent of any regulation or provision adopted by the State Fire Marshal. When the request relates to a specific project, occupancy or building, the State Fire Marshal shall review the issue with the appropriate local enforcing agency prior to rendering such code interpretation.

***1.11.2.1.3** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13112, any person who violates any order, rule or regulation of the State Fire Marshal is guilty of a misdemeanor punishable by a fine of not less than $100.00 or more than $500.00, or by imprisonment for not less than six months, or by both. A person is guilty of a separate offense each day during which he or she commits, continues or permits a violation of any provision of, or any order, rule or regulation of, the State Fire Marshal as contained in this code.*

Any inspection authority who, in the exercise of his or her authority as a deputy State Fire Marshal, causes any legal complaints to be filed or any arrest to be made shall notify the State Fire Marshal immediately following such action.

***1.11.2.2 Right of entry.** The fire chief of any city, county or fire protection district, or such person's authorized representative, may enter any state institution or any other state-owned or state-occupied building for the purpose of preparing a fire suppression preplanning program or for the purpose of investigating any fire in a state-occupied building.*

The State Fire Marshal, his or her deputies or salaried assistants, the chief of any city or county fire department or fire protection district and his or her authorized representatives may enter any building or premises not used for dwelling purposes at any reasonable hour for the purpose of enforcing this chapter. The owner, lessee, manager or operator of any such building or premises shall permit the State Fire Marshal, his or her deputies or salaried assistants and the chief of any city or county fire department or fire protection district and his or her authorized representatives to enter and inspect them at the time and for the purpose stated in this section.

1.11.2.3 More restrictive fire and panic safety building standards.

***1.11.2.3.1** Any fire protection district organized pursuant to Health and Safety Code Part 2.7 (commencing with Section 13800) of Division 12 may adopt building standards relating to fire and panic safety that are more stringent than those building standards adopted by the State Fire Marshal and contained in the California Building Standards Code. For these purposes, the district board shall be deemed a legislative body and the district shall be deemed a local agency. Any changes or modifications that are more stringent than the requirements published in the California Building Standards Code relating to fire and panic safety shall be subject to Section 1.1.8.1.*

***1.11.2.3.2** Any fire protection district that proposes to adopt an ordinance pursuant to this section shall, not less than 30 days prior to noticing a proposed ordinance for public hearing, provide a copy of that ordinance, together with the adopted findings made pursuant to Section 1.11.2.3.1, to the city, county, or city and county where the ordinance will apply. The city, county, or city and county may provide the district with written comments, which shall become part of the fire protection district's public hearing record.*

***1.11.2.3.3** The fire protection district shall transmit the adopted ordinance to the city, county, or city and county where the ordinance will apply. The legislative body of the city, county, or city and county may ratify, modify or deny an adopted ordinance and transmit its determination to the district within 15 days of the determination. Any modification or denial of an adopted ordinance shall include a written statement describing the reasons for any modifications or denial. No ordinance adopted by the district shall be effective until ratification by the city, county, or city and county where the ordinance will apply. Upon ratification of an adopted ordinance, the city, county, or city and county shall file a copy of the findings of the district, and any findings of the city, county, or city and county, together with the adopted ordinance expressly marked and identified to which each finding refers, in accordance with Section 1.1.8.1(3).*

***1.11.2.4 Request for alternate means of protection**. Requests for approval to use an alternative material, assembly or materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment or means of protection shall be made in writing to the enforcing agency by the owner or the owner's authorized representative and shall be accompanied by a full statement of the conditions. Sufficient evidence or proof shall be submitted to substantiate any claim that may be made regarding its conformance. The enforcing agency may require tests and the submission of a test report from an approved testing organization as set forth in Title 19, California Code of Regulation, to substantiate the equivalency of the proposed alternative means of protection.*

When a request for alternate means of protection involves hazardous materials, the authority having jurisdiction may consider implementation of the findings and recommendations identified in a Risk Management Plan (RMP) developed in accordance with Title 19, Division 5, Chapter 2, Article 3.

Approval of a request for use of an alternative material, assembly of materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment or means of protection made pursuant to these provisions shall be limited to the particular case covered by request and shall not be construed as establishing any precedent for any future request.

1.11.2.5 Appeals. *When a request for an alternate means of protection has been denied by the enforcing agency, the applicant may file a written appeal to the State Fire Marshal for consideration of the applicant's proposal. In considering such appeal, the State Fire Marshal may seek the advice of the State Board of Fire Services. The State Fire Marshal shall, after considering all of the facts presented, including any recommendations of the State Board of Fire Services, determine if the proposal is for the purposes intended, at least equivalent to that specified in these regulations in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety, and shall transmit such findings and any recommendations to the applicant and to the enforcing agency.*

1.11.3 Construction documents.

1.11.3.1 Public schools. *Plans and specifications for the construction, alteration or addition to any building owned, leased or rented by any public school district shall be submitted to the Division of the State Architect.*

1.11.3.2 Movable walls and partitions. *Plans or diagrams shall be submitted to the enforcing agency for approval before the installation of, or rearrangement of, any movable wall or partition in any occupancy. Approval shall be granted only if there is no increase in the fire hazard.*

1.11.3.3 New construction high-rise buildings.

1. *Complete plans or specifications, or both, shall be prepared covering all work required to comply with new construction high-rise buildings. Such plans and specifications shall be submitted to the enforcing agency having jurisdiction.*
2. *All plans and specifications shall be prepared under the responsible charge of an architect or a civil or structural engineer authorized by law to develop construction plans and specifications, or by both such architect and engineer. Plans and specifications shall be prepared by an engineer duly qualified in that branch of engineering necessary to perform such services. Administration of the work of construction shall be under the charge of the responsible architect or engineer except that where plans and specifications involve alterations or repairs, such work of construction may be administered by an engineer duly qualified to perform such services and holding a valid certificate under Chapter 7 (commencing with Section 65700) of Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code for performance of services in that branch of engineering in which said plans, specifications and estimates and work of construction are applicable.*

This section shall not be construed as preventing the design of fire-extinguishing systems by persons holding a C-16 license issued pursuant to Division 3, Chapter 9, Business and Professions Code. In such instances, however, the responsibility charge of this section shall prevail.

1.11.3.4 Existing high-rise buildings.

1. *Complete plans or specifications, or both, shall be prepared covering all work required by California Building Code Section 312 for existing high-rise buildings. Such plans or specifications shall be submitted to the enforcing agency having jurisdiction.*
2. *When new construction is required to conform with the provisions of these regulations, complete plans or specifications, or both, shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of this subsection. As used in this section, "new construction" is not intended to include repairs, replacements or minor alterations which do not disrupt or appreciably add to or affect the structural aspects of the building.*

1.11.3.5 Retention of plans. *Refer to Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Sections 19850 and 19851 for permanent retention of plans.*

1.11.4 Fees.

1.11.4.1 Other fees. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13146.2, a city, county or district which inspects a hotel, motel, lodging house or apartment house may charge and collect a fee for the inspection from the owner of the structure in an amount, as determined by the city, county or district, sufficient to pay its costs of that inspection.*

1.11.4.2 Large family day-care. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 1597.46, Large Family Day-Care Homes, the local government shall process any required permit as economically as possible, and fees charged for review shall not exceed the costs of the review and permit process.*

1.11.4.3 High-rise. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13217, High-rise Structure Inspection: Fees and costs, a local agency which inspects a high-rise structure pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13217 may charge and collect a fee for the inspection from the owner of the high-rise structure in an amount, as determined by the local agency, sufficient to pay its costs of that inspection.*

1.11.4.4 Fire clearance preinspection. *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13235, Fire Clearance Preinspection, fee, upon receipt of a request from a prospective licensee of a community care facility, as defined in Section 1502, of a residential care facility for the elderly, as defined in Section 1569.2, or of a child day-care facility, as defined in Section 1596.750, the local fire enforcing agency, as defined in Section 13244, or State Fire Marshal, whichever has primary jurisdiction, shall conduct a preinspection of the facility prior to the final fire clearance approval. At the time of the preinspection, the primary fire enforcing agency shall price consultation and interpretation of the fire safety regulations and shall notify the prospective licensee of the facility in writing of the specific fire safety regulations which shall be enforced in order to obtain fire clearance approval. A fee equal to, but not exceeding, the actual cost of the preinspection services may be charged for the preinspection of a facility.*

1.11.4.5 Care facilities. *The primary fire enforcing agency shall complete the final fire clearance inspection for a community care facility, residential care facility for the elderly, or child day-care facility within 30 days of receipt of the request for the final inspection, or as of the date the prospective facility requests the final prelicensure inspection by the State Department of Social Services, whichever is later.*

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13235, a preinspection fee equal to, but not exceeding, the actual cost of the preinspection services may be charged for the preinspection of a facility.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13131.5, a reasonable final inspection fee, not to exceed the actual cost of inspection services necessary to complete a final inspection may be charged for occupancies classified as residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFE).

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 1569.84, neither the State Fire Marshal nor any local public entity shall charge any fee for enforcing fire inspection regulations pursuant to state law or regulation or local ordinance, with respect to residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFE) which service six or fewer persons.

1.11.4.6 Requests of the Office of the State Fire Marshal. *Whenever a local authority having jurisdiction requests that the State Fire Marshal perform plan review and/or inspection services related to a building permit, the applicable fees for such shall be payable to the Office of the State Fire Marshal.*

1.11.5 Inspections. *Work performed subject to the provisions of this code shall comply with the inspection requirements of Sections 109.1, 109.3, 109.3.4, 109.3.5, 109.3.6, 109.3.7, 109.3.8, 109.3.9, 109.5 and 109.6 as adopted by the Office of the State Fire Marshal.*

1.11.5.1 Existing Group I-1 or R occupancies. *Licensed 24-hour care in a Group I-1 or R occupancy in existence and originally classified under previously adopted state codes shall be reinspected under the appropriate previous code, provided there is no change in the use or character which would place the facility in a different occupancy group.*

1.11.6 Certificate of Occupancy. *A Certificate of Occupancy shall be issued as specified in Title 24, Part 2, California Building Code, Section 111.*

Exception: *Certificates of occupancy are not required for work exempt from permits in accordance with Section 105.2 of the California Building Code.*

1.11.7 Temporary structures and uses. *See Section 107.*

1.11.8 Service utilities. *See Section 111.*

1.11.9 Stop work order. *See Section 114.*

1.11.10 Unsafe buildings, structures and equipment. *See Section 115.*

1.11.11 Adopting agency identification. *The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this Section 1.11 will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym SFM.*

SECTION 1.12—STATE LIBRARIAN
RESERVED

SECTION 1.13—DEPARTMENT OF WATER RESOURCES
RESERVED

SECTION 1.14—CALIFORNIA STATE LANDS COMMISSION
RESERVED

DIVISION II
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

Note: *Sections adopted or amended by state agencies are specifically indicated by an agency banner.*

Division II is not adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development except where specifically indicated.

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Administration (Sections 101–102) and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement (Sections 103–117). Section 101 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable.

This code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document, and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the registered design professional, contractor and property owner.

Section 104 was revised for the 2024 edition of the IEBC. For complete information, see the Relocations table in the Preface of this code.

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION 101—SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[A] 101.1 Title. These regulations shall be known as the *Existing Building Code* of [NAME OF JURISDICTION], herein-after referred to as "this code."

[A] 101.2 Scope. The provisions of this code shall apply to the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition to and relocation of existing buildings.

Exception: Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress, and their accessory structures not more than three stories above grade plane in height, shall comply with this code or the *California Residential Code.*

[A] 101.2.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted or referenced.

101.2.2 Application of fire code. Where work regulated by this code is also regulated by the construction requirements for existing buildings in Chapter 11 of the *California Fire Code,* such work shall comply with applicable requirements in both codes.

[A] 101.3 Purpose. The intent of this code is to provide flexibility to permit the use of alternative approaches to achieve compliance with minimum requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and general welfare insofar as they are affected by the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition and relocation of existing buildings.

[A] 101.4 Applicability. This code shall apply to the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition and relocation of existing buildings, regardless of occupancy, subject to the criteria of Sections 101.4.1 and 101.4.2.

[A] 101.4.1 Buildings not previously occupied. A building or portion of a building that has not been previously occupied or used for its intended purpose, in accordance with the laws in existence at the time of its completion, shall be permitted to comply with the provisions of the laws in existence at the time of its original permit unless such permit has expired. Subsequent permits shall comply with the *California Building Code* or *California Residential Code*, as applicable, for new construction.

[A] 101.4.2 Buildings previously occupied. The legal occupancy of any building existing on the date of adoption of this code shall be permitted to continue without change, except as is specifically covered in this code, the *California Fire Code*, or the *International Property Maintenance Code*, or as is deemed necessary by the code official for the general safety and welfare of the occupants and the public.

[A] 101.5 Safeguards during construction. Construction work covered in this code, including any related demolition, shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15.

[A] 101.6 Correction of violations of other codes. Repairs or alterations mandated by any property, housing or fire safety maintenance code, or mandated by any licensing rule or ordinance adopted pursuant to law, shall conform only to the requirements of that code, rule or ordinance, and shall not be required to conform to this code unless the code requiring such repair or alteration so provides.

101.7 Maintenance. [BSC, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, HCD 1, HCD 2] *Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards which are required by this code shall be maintained in conformance with the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.*

[BSC, HCD 1, HCD 2] *To determine compliance with this subsection, the building official shall have the authority to require a building or structure to be re-inspected.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 102—APPLICABILITY

[A] 102.1 General. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall be applicable. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

[A] 102.2 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

[A] 102.3 Application of references. References to chapter or section numbers or to provisions not specifically identified by number shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

[A] 102.4 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be considered part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections 102.4.1 and 102.4.2.

Exception: Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the listing of the equipment or appliance, the conditions of the listing shall govern.

[A] 102.4.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

[A] 102.4.2 Conflicting provisions. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

[A] 102.5 Partial invalidity. In the event that any part or provision of this code is held to be illegal or void, this shall not have the effect of making void or illegal any of the other parts or provisions.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION 103—CODE COMPLIANCE AGENCY

[A] 103.1 Creation of agency. The **[INSERT NAME OF DEPARTMENT]** is hereby created, and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the code official. The function of the agency shall be the implementation, administration and enforcement of the provisions of this code.

[A] 103.2 Appointment. The code official shall be appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction.

[A] 103.3 Deputies. In accordance with the prescribed procedures of this jurisdiction and with the concurrence of the appointing authority, the code official shall have the authority to appoint a deputy code official, other related technical officers, inspectors and other employees. Such employees shall have powers as delegated by the code official.

SECTION 104—DUTIES AND POWERS OF CODE OFFICIAL

[A] 104.1 General. The code official is hereby authorized and directed to enforce the provisions of this code.

[A] 104.2 Determination of compliance. The code official shall have the authority to determine compliance with this code, to render interpretations of this code and to adopt policies and procedures in order to clarify the application of this code's provisions. Such interpretations, policies, and procedures:

1. Shall be in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code.
2. Shall not have the effect of waiving requirements specifically provided for in this code.

[A] 104.2.1 Listed compliance. Where this code or a referenced standard requires equipment, materials, products or services to be *listed* and a listing standard is specified, the listing shall be based on the specified standard. Where a listing standard is not specified, the listing shall be based on an approved listing criteria. Listings shall be germane to the provision requiring the listing. Installation shall be in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions, and where required to verify compliance, the listing standard and manufacturer's instructions shall be made available to the code official.

[A] 104.2.2 Technical assistance. To determine compliance with this code, the code official is authorized to require the owner or owner's authorized agent to provide a technical opinion and report.

[A] 104.2.2.1 Cost. A technical opinion and report shall be provided without charge to the jurisdiction.

[A] 104.2.2.2 Preparer qualifications. The technical opinion and report shall be prepared by a qualified engineer, specialist, laboratory or fire safety specialty organization acceptable to the code official. The code official is authorized to require design submittals to be prepared by, and bear the stamp of, a registered design professional.

[A] 104.2.2.3 Content. The technical opinion and report shall analyze the properties of the design, operation or use of the building or premises and the facilities and appurtenances situated thereon to identify and propose necessary recommendations.

[A] 104.2.2.4 Tests. Where there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized test standards, the code official shall approve the testing procedures. Such tests shall be performed by a party acceptable to the code official.

[A] 104.2.3 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction, and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative is not specifically prohibited by this code and has been approved.

Exception: Performance-based alternative materials, designs or methods of construction and equipment complying with the ICC Performance Code. This exception shall not apply to alternative structural materials or to alternative structural designs.

[A] 104.2.3.1 Approval authority. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be approved where the code official finds that the proposed alternative is satisfactory and complies with Sections 104.2.3.2 through 104.2.3.7, as applicable.

[A] 104.2.3.2 Application and disposition. Where required, a request to use an alternative material, design or method of construction shall be submitted in writing to the code official for approval. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not approved, the code official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons the alternative was not approved.

[A] 104.2.3.3 Compliance with code intent. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall comply with the intent of the provisions of this code.

[A] 104.2.3.4 Equivalency criteria. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall, for the purpose intended, be not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code with respect to all of the following, as applicable:

1. Quality.
2. Strength.
3. Effectiveness.
4. Durability.
5. Safety, other than fire safety.
6. Fire safety.

[A] 104.2.3.5 Tests. Tests conducted to demonstrate equivalency in support of an alternative material, design or method of construction application shall be of a scale that is sufficient to predict performance of the end use configuration. Such tests shall be performed by a party acceptable to the code official.

[A] 104.2.3.5.1 Fire tests. Tests conducted to demonstrate equivalent fire safety in support of an alternative material, design or method of construction application shall be of a scale that is sufficient to predict fire safety performance of the end use configuration. Tests shall be performed by a party acceptable to the code official.

[A] 104.2.3.6 Reports. Supporting documentation, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall comply with Sections 104.2.3.6.1 and 104.2.3.6.2.

[A] 104.2.3.6.1 Evaluation reports. Evaluation reports shall be issued by an approved agency, and use of the evaluation report shall require approval by the code official for the installation. The alternate material, design or method of construction and product evaluated shall be within the scope of the code official's recognition of the approved agency. Criteria used for the evaluation shall be identified within the report and, where required, provided to the code official.

[A] 104.2.3.6.2 Other reports. Reports not complying with Section 104.2.3.6.1 shall describe criteria, including but not limited to any referenced testing or analysis, used to determine compliance with code intent and justify code equivalence. The report shall be prepared by a qualified engineer, specialist, laboratory or fire safety specialty organization acceptable to the code official. The code official is authorized to require design submittals to be prepared by, and bear the stamp of, a registered design professional.

[A] 104.2.3.7 Peer review. The code official is authorized to require submittal of a peer review report in conjunction with a request to use an alternative material, design or method of construction, prepared by a peer reviewer that is approved by the code official.

[A] 104.2.4 Modifications. Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, provided that the code official shall first find that one or more special individual reasons make the strict letter of this code impractical, and that the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code and that such modification does not lessen health, accessibility, life and fire safety, or structural requirements. The details of the written request for and action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the department of building safety.

[A] 104.2.4.1 Flood hazard areas. For existing buildings located in flood hazard areas for which repairs, alterations and additions constitute substantial improvement, the code official shall not grant modifications to provisions related to flood resistance unless a determination is made that:

1. The applicant has presented good and sufficient cause that the unique characteristics of the size, configuration or topography of the site render compliance with the flood-resistant construction provisions inappropriate.
2. Failure to grant the modification would result in exceptional hardship.
3. The granting of the modification will not result in increased flood heights, additional threats to public safety or extraordinary public expense; create nuisances; cause fraud on or victimization of the public; or conflict with existing laws or ordinances.
4. The modification is the minimum necessary to afford relief, considering the flood hazard.
5. A written notice will be provided to the applicant specifying, if applicable, the difference between the design flood elevation and the elevation to which the building is to be built, stating that the cost of flood insurance will be

commensurate with the increased risk resulting from the reduced floor elevation and that construction below the design flood elevation increases risks to life and property.

[A] 104.3 Applications and permits. The code official shall receive applications, review construction documents, issue permits, inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the provisions of this code.

[A] 104.3.1 Determination of substantially improved or substantially damaged existing buildings and structures in flood hazard areas. For applications for reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair, alteration, addition or other improvement of existing buildings or structures located in flood hazard areas, the code official shall determine where the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or repair of substantial damage. Where the code official determines that the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or repair of substantial damage, and where required by this code, the code official shall require the building to meet the requirements of Section 1612 of the *California Building Code,* or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

[A] 104.3.2 Preliminary meeting. When requested by the permit applicant or the code official, the code official shall meet with the permit applicant prior to the application for a construction permit to discuss plans for the proposed work or change of occupancy in order to establish the specific applicability of the provisions of this code.

Exception: Repairs and Level 1 alterations.

[A] 104.3.3 Building evaluation. The code official is authorized to require an existing building to be investigated and evaluated by a registered design professional based on the circumstances agreed on at the preliminary meeting. The design professional shall notify the code official if any potential noncompliance with the provisions of this code is identified.

[A] 104.4 Right of entry. Where it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the provisions of this code, or where the code official has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in a structure or on any premises a condition that is contrary to or in violation of this code that makes the structure or premises unsafe, dangerous or hazardous, the code official is authorized to enter the structure or premises at all reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed by this code. If such structure or premises is occupied, the code official shall present credentials to the occupant and request entry. If such structure or premises is unoccupied, the code official shall first make a reasonable effort to locate the owner, the owner's authorized agent or other person having charge or control of the structure or premises and request entry. If entry is refused, the code official shall have recourse to every remedy provided by law to secure entry.

[A] 104.4.1 Warrant. Where the code official has first obtained a proper inspection warrant or other remedy provided by law to secure entry, an owner, the owner's authorized agent, occupant or person having charge, care or control of the structure or premises shall not fail or neglect, after a proper request is made as herein provided, to permit entry therein by the code official for the purposes of inspection and examination pursuant to this code.

[A] 104.5 Identification. The code official shall carry proper identification when inspecting structures or premises in the performance of duties under this code.

[A] 104.6 Notices and orders. The code official shall issue necessary notices or orders to ensure compliance with this code. Notices of violations shall be in accordance with Section 113.

[A] 104.7 Official records. The code official shall keep official records as required by Sections 104.7.1 through 104.7.5. Such official records shall be retained for not less than 5 years or for as long as the structure or activity to which such records relate remains in existence, unless otherwise provided by other regulations.

[A] 104.7.1 Approvals. A record of approvals shall be maintained by the code official and shall be available for public inspection during business hours in accordance with applicable laws.

[A] 104.7.2 Inspections. The code official shall keep a record of each inspection made, including notices and orders issued, showing the findings and disposition of each.

[A] 104.7.3 Code alternatives and modifications. Application for alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment in accordance with Section 104.2.3; modifications in accordance with Section 104.2.4; and documentation of the final decision of the code official for either shall be in writing and shall be retained in the official records.

[A] 104.7.4 Tests. The code official shall keep a record of tests conducted to comply with Sections 104.2.2.4 and 104.2.3.5.

[A] 104.7.5 Fees. The code official shall keep a record of fees collected and refunded in accordance with Section 108.

[A] 104.8 Liability. The code official, member of the Board of Appeals, officer or employee charged with the enforcement of this code, while acting for the jurisdiction in good faith and without malice in the discharge of the duties required by this code or other pertinent law or ordinance, shall not thereby be rendered personally liable, either civilly or criminally, and is hereby relieved from personal liability for any damage accruing to persons or property as a result of any act or by reason of an act or omission in the discharge of official duties.

[A] 104.8.1 Legal defense. Any suit or criminal complaint instituted against any officer or employee because of an act performed by that officer or employee in the lawful discharge of duties and under the provisions of this code or other laws or ordinances implemented through the enforcement of this code shall be defended by legal representatives of the jurisdiction until the final termination of the proceedings. The code official or any subordinate shall not be liable for cost in any action, suit or proceeding that is instituted in pursuance of the provisions of this code.

[A] 104.9 Approved materials and equipment. Materials, equipment and devices approved by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

[A] 104.9.1 Materials and equipment reuse. Materials, equipment and devices shall not be reused unless such elements are in good working condition and approved.

SECTION 105—PERMITS

[A] 105.1 Required. Any owner or owner's authorized agent who intends to repair, add to, alter, relocate, demolish or change the occupancy of a building or to repair, install, add, alter, remove, convert or replace any electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system, the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause any such work to be performed, shall first make application to the code official and obtain the required permit.

[A] 105.1.1 Annual permit. Instead of an individual permit for each alteration to an already approved electrical, gas, mechanical, or plumbing installation, the code official is authorized to issue an annual permit on application therefor to any person, firm or corporation regularly employing one or more qualified trade persons in the building, structure, or on the premises owned or operated by the applicant for the permit.

[A] 105.1.2 Annual permit records. The person to whom an annual permit is issued shall keep a detailed record of alterations made under such annual permit. The code official shall have access to such records at all times, or such records shall be filed with the code official as designated.

[A] 105.2 Work exempt from permit. Exemptions from permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction. Permits shall not be required for the following:

Building:

1. Sidewalks and driveways not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade and not over any basement or story below and that are not part of an accessible route.
2. Painting, papering, tiling, carpeting, cabinets, counter tops and similar finish work.
3. Temporary motion picture, television, and theater stage sets and scenery.
4. Shade cloth structures constructed for nursery or agricultural purposes, and not including service systems.
5. Window awnings supported by an exterior wall of Group R-3 or Group U occupancies.
6. Nonfixed and movable cases, counters and partitions not over 5 feet 9 inches (1753 mm) in height.

Electrical:

1. **Repairs and maintenance:** Minor repair work, including the replacement of lamps or the connection of approved portable electrical equipment to approved permanently installed receptacles.
2. **Radio and television transmitting stations:** The provisions of this code shall not apply to electrical equipment used for radio and television transmissions, but do apply to equipment and wiring for power supply, the installations of towers and antennas.
3. **Temporary testing systems:** A permit shall not be required for the installation of any temporary system required for the testing or servicing of electrical equipment or apparatus.

Gas:

1. Portable heating appliance.
2. Replacement of any minor part that does not alter approval of equipment or make such equipment unsafe.

Mechanical:

1. Portable heating appliance.
2. Portable ventilation equipment.
3. Portable cooling unit.
4. Steam, hot or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling equipment regulated by this code.
5. Replacement of any part that does not alter its approval or make it unsafe.
6. Portable evaporative cooler.
7. Self-contained refrigeration system containing 10 pounds (4.54 kg) or less of refrigerant and actuated by motors of 1 horsepower (746 W) or less.

Plumbing:

1. The stopping of leaks in drains, water, soil, waste or vent pipe; provided, however, that if any concealed trap, drainpipe, water, soil, waste or vent pipe becomes defective and it becomes necessary to remove and replace the same with new material, such work shall be considered as new work, and a permit shall be obtained and inspection made as provided in this code.
2. The clearing of stoppages or the repairing of leaks in pipes, valves or fixtures, and the removal and reinstallation of water closets, provided that such repairs do not involve or require the replacement or rearrangement of valves, pipes or fixtures.

[A] 105.2.1 Emergency repairs. Where equipment replacements and repairs must be performed in an emergency situation, the permit application shall be submitted within the next working business day to the code official.

[A] 105.2.2 Repairs. Application or notice to the code official is not required for repairs to structures and items listed in Section 105.2 provided that such repairs do not include any of the following:

1. The cutting away of any wall, partition or portion thereof.
2. The removal or cutting of any structural beam or load-bearing support.
3. The removal or change of any required means of egress or rearrangement of parts of a structure affecting the egress requirements.
4. Any addition to, alteration of, replacement or relocation of any standpipe, water supply, sewer, drainage, drain leader, gas, soil, waste, vent or similar piping, or electric wiring.
5. Mechanical or other work affecting public health or general safety.

[A] 105.2.3 Public service agencies. A permit shall not be required for the installation, alteration or repair of generation, transmission, distribution or metering, or other related equipment that is under the ownership and control of public service agencies by established right.

[A] 105.3 Application for permit. To obtain a permit, the applicant shall first file an application therefor in writing on a form furnished by the Department of Building Safety for that purpose. Such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the work in accordance with Chapter 3 to be covered by the permit for which application is made.
2. Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, street address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work.
3. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed work is intended.
4. Be accompanied by construction documents and other information as required in Section 106.3.
5. State the valuation of the proposed work.
6. Be signed by the applicant or the applicant's authorized agent.
7. Give such other data and information as required by the code official.

[A] 105.3.1 Action on application. The code official shall examine or cause to be examined applications for permits and amendments thereto within a reasonable time after filing. If the application or the construction documents do not conform to the requirements of pertinent laws, the code official shall reject such application in writing, stating the reasons therefor. If the code official is satisfied that the proposed work conforms to the requirements of this code and laws and ordinances applicable thereto, the code official shall issue a permit therefor as soon as practicable.

[A] 105.3.2 Time limitation of application. An application for a permit for any proposed work shall be deemed to have been abandoned 180 days after the date of filing, unless such application has been pursued in good faith or a permit has been issued; except that the code official is authorized to grant one or more extensions of time for additional periods not exceeding 90 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated.

[A] 105.4 Validity of permit. The issuance or granting of a permit shall not be construed to be a permit for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of this code or of any other ordinance of the jurisdiction. Permits presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. The issuance of a permit based on construction documents and other data shall not prevent the code official from requiring the correction of errors in the construction documents and other data. The code official is authorized to prevent occupancy or use of a structure where in violation of this code or of any other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

[A] 105.5 Expiration. Every permit issued shall become invalid unless the work on the site authorized by such permit is commenced within 180 days after its issuance, or if the work authorized on the site by such permit is suspended or abandoned for a period of 180 days after the time the work is commenced. The code official is authorized to grant, in writing, one or more extensions of time for periods not more than 180 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated.

> ***105.5.1 Expiration.*** *On or after January 1, 2019, every permit issued shall become invalid unless the work on the site authorized by such permit is commenced within 12 months after its issuance or if the work authorized on the site by such permit is suspended or abandoned for a period of 12 months after the time the work is commenced. The building official is authorized to grant, in writing, one or more extensions of time for periods not more than 180 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated. (See Health and Safety Code Section 18938.5 and 18938.6).*

[A] 105.6 Suspension or revocation. The code official is authorized to suspend or revoke a permit issued under the provisions of this code wherever the permit is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate or incomplete information, or in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

[A] 105.7 Placement of permit. The building permit or copy shall be kept on the site of the work until the completion of the project.

SECTION 106—CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

[A] 106.1 General. Submittal documents consisting of construction documents, special inspection and structural observation programs, investigation and evaluation reports, and other data shall be submitted in two or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the code official, with each application for a permit. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered

design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the code official is authorized to require additional construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

Exception: The code official is authorized to waive the submission of construction documents and other data not required to be prepared by a registered design professional if it is found that the nature of the work applied for is such that reviewing of construction documents is not necessary to obtain compliance with this code.

[A] 106.2 Construction documents. Construction documents shall be in accordance with Sections 106.2.1 through 106.2.6.

[A] 106.2.1 Construction documents. Construction documents shall be dimensioned and drawn on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where approved by the code official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the code official. The work areas shall be shown.

[A] 106.2.2 Fire protection system(s) shop drawings. Shop drawings for the fire protection system(s) shall be submitted to indicate compliance with this code and the construction documents and shall be approved prior to the start of system installation. Shop drawings shall contain information as required by the referenced installation standards in Chapter 9 of the *California Building Code*.

[A] 106.2.3 Means of egress. The construction documents for Alterations—Level 2, Alterations—Level 3, additions and changes of occupancy shall show in sufficient detail the location, construction, size and character of all portions of the means of egress in compliance with the provisions of this code. The construction documents shall designate the number of occupants to be accommodated in every work area of every floor and in all affected rooms and spaces.

[A] 106.2.4 Exterior wall envelope. Construction documents for work affecting the exterior wall envelope shall describe the exterior wall envelope in sufficient detail to determine compliance with this code. The construction documents shall provide details of the exterior wall envelope as required, including windows, doors, flashing, intersections with dissimilar materials, corners, end details, control joints, intersections at roof, eaves or parapets, means of drainage, water-resistive barriers and details around openings.

The construction documents shall include manufacturer's installation instructions that provide supporting documentation that the proposed penetration and opening details described in the construction documents maintain the wind and weather resistance of the exterior wall envelope. The supporting documentation shall fully describe the exterior wall system that was tested, where applicable, as well as the test procedure used.

[A] 106.2.5 Exterior balconies and elevated walking surfaces. Where the scope of work involves balconies or other elevated walking surfaces have weather-exposed surfaces, and the structural framing is protected by an impervious moisture barrier, the construction documents shall include details for all elements of the impervious moisture barrier system. The construction documents shall include manufacturer's installation instructions.

[A] 106.2.6 Site plan. The construction documents submitted with the application for permit shall be accompanied by a site plan showing to scale the size and location of new construction and existing structures on the site, distances from lot lines, the established street grades, and the proposed finished grades; and it shall be drawn in accordance with an accurate boundary line survey. In the case of demolition, the site plan shall show construction to be demolished and the location and size of existing structures and construction that are to remain on the site or plot. The code official is authorized to waive or modify the requirement for a site plan where the application for permit is for alteration, repair or change of occupancy.

[A] 106.3 Examination of documents. The code official shall examine or cause to be examined the submittal documents and shall ascertain by such examinations whether the construction or occupancy indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances.

[A] 106.3.1 Approval of construction documents. Where the code official issues a permit, the construction documents shall be approved in writing or by stamp as "Reviewed for Code Compliance." One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the code official. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, shall be kept at the site of work, and shall be open to inspection by the code official or a duly authorized representative.

[A] 106.3.2 Previous approval. This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been issued and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

[A] 106.3.3 Phased approval. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for the construction of foundations or any other part of a building before the construction documents for the whole building or structure have been submitted, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with pertinent requirements of this code. The holder of such permit for the foundation or other parts of a building shall proceed at the holder's own risk with the building operation and without assurance that a permit for the entire structure will be granted.

[A] 106.3.4 Deferred submittals. Deferral of any submittal items shall have the prior approval of the code official. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall list the deferred submittals on the construction documents for review by the code official.

Submittal documents for deferred submittal items shall be submitted to the registered design professional in responsible charge who shall review them and forward them to the code official with a notation indicating that the deferred submittal docu-

ments have been reviewed and that they have been found to be in general conformance to the design of the building. The deferred submittal items shall not be installed until their deferred submittal documents have been approved by the code official.

[A] 106.4 Amended construction documents. Work shall be installed in accordance with the reviewed construction documents, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the approved construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

[A] 106.5 Retention of construction documents. One set of approved construction documents shall be retained by the code official for a period of not less than the period required for retention of public records.

[A] 106.6 Design professional in responsible charge. Where it is required that documents be prepared by a registered design professional, the code official shall be authorized to require the owner or the owner's authorized agent to engage and designate on the building permit application a registered design professional who shall act as the registered design professional in responsible charge. If the circumstances require, the owner or the owner's authorized agent shall designate a substitute registered design professional in responsible charge who shall perform the duties required of the original registered design professional in responsible charge. The code official shall be notified in writing by the owner or the owner's authorized agent if the registered design professional in responsible charge is changed or is unable to continue to perform the duties. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall be responsible for reviewing and coordinating submittal documents prepared by others, including phased and deferred submittal items, for compatibility with the design of the building. Where structural observation is required, the inspection program shall name the individual or firms who are to perform structural observation and describe the stages of construction at which structural observation is to occur.

SECTION 107—TEMPORARY USES, EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

[A] 107.1 General. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary uses, equipment and systems. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause. ***[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]*** *OSHPD shall only grant one extention when cause is demonstrated.*

[A] 107.2 Conformance. Temporary uses shall conform to the requirements of this code as necessary to ensure health, safety and general welfare.

[A] 107.3 Temporary service utilities. The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply service utilities in accordance with Section 111.

[A] 107.4 Termination of approval. The code official is authorized to terminate such permit for a temporary use and to order the same to be discontinued.

SECTION 108—FEES

[A] 108.1 Payment of fees. A permit shall not be valid until the fees prescribed by law have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

[A] 108.2 Schedule of permit fees. Where a permit is required, a fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

[A] 108.3 Permit valuations. The applicant for a permit shall provide an estimated value of the work for which the permit is being issued at time of application. Such estimated valuations shall include total value of work, including materials and labor for which the permit is being issued, such as electrical, gas, mechanical, plumbing equipment and permanent systems. Where, in the opinion of the code official, the valuation is underestimated, the permit shall be denied unless the applicant can show detailed estimates acceptable to the code official. The code official shall have the authority to adjust the final valuation for permit fees.

[A] 108.4 Work commencing before permit issuance. Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to a fee established by the code official that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

[A] 108.5 Related fees. The payment of the fee for the construction, alteration, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

[A] 108.6 Refunds. The code official is authorized to establish a refund policy.

SECTION 109—INSPECTIONS

[A] 109.1 General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the code official, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until approved. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the code official nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material required to allow inspection.

[A] 109.2 Preliminary inspection. Before issuing a permit, the code official is authorized to examine or cause to be examined buildings and sites for which an application has been filed.

[A] 109.3 Required inspections. The code official, on notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections 109.3.1 through 109.3.11.

[A] 109.3.1 Footing or foundation inspection. Footing and foundation inspections shall be made after excavations for footings are complete and any required reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. Materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except where concrete is ready-mixed in accordance with ASTM C94, the concrete need not be on the job.

[A] 109.3.2 Concrete slab or under-floor inspection. Concrete slab and under-floor inspections shall be made after in-slab or under-floor reinforcing steel and building service equipment, conduit, piping accessories and other ancillary equipment items are in place but before any concrete is placed or floor sheathing installed, including the subfloor.

[A] 109.3.3 Lowest floor elevation. For additions and substantial improvements to existing buildings in flood hazard areas, on placement of the lowest floor, including basement, and prior to further vertical construction, the elevation documentation required in the *California Building Code*, or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, shall be submitted to the code official.

[A] 109.3.4 Frame inspection. Framing inspections shall be made after the roof deck or sheathing, framing, fire blocking and bracing are in place and pipes, chimneys and vents to be concealed are complete and the rough electrical, plumbing, heating wires, pipes and ducts are approved.

109.3.4.1 Moisture content verification. [HCD] *Moisture content of framing members shall be verified in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.5.*

[A] 109.3.5 Lath or gypsum panel product inspection. Lath and gypsum panel inspections shall be made after lathing and gypsum panel products, interior and exterior, are in place but before any plastering is applied or before gypsum panel product joints and fasteners are taped and finished.

Exception: Gypsum panels that are not part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or a shear assembly.

[A] 109.3.6 Weather-exposed balcony and walking surface waterproofing. Where the scope of work involves balconies or other elevated walking surfaces that have weather-exposed surfaces and the structural framing is protected by an impervious moisture barrier, all elements of the impervious moisture barrier system shall not be concealed until inspected and approved.

Exception: ***[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]*** Where special inspections are provided in accordance with *Section 1705A.1.1, Item 3 or* Section 1705.1.1, Item 3, *as applicable,* of the *California Building Code*.

109.3.6.1 Weather-exposed balcony and walking surface (exterior elevated element) inspections for multifamily buildings with three or more dwelling units. [HCD 1 & HCD 2] *Weather-exposed balconies and walking surfaces extending beyond the exterior walls of a building, more than 6 feet (1828.8 mm) above ground level, and that rely on wood or wood-based products for structural support or stability shall be inspected. Inspections shall be conducted in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 17973(a) through (f) and (m). Weather-exposed balconies and walking surfaces found to be in need of repair or replacement shall be corrected in accordance with Section 17973(g) through (i). Continued and ongoing maintenance of weather-exposed balconies and walking surfaces shall be the responsibility of the building owner in accordance with Section 17973(k). See definition of "exterior elevated element" in Health and Safety Code Section 17973(b)(2) for additional details. See Civil Code Section 5551 for inspections of condominium projects.*

[A] 109.3.7 Fire- and smoke-resistant penetrations. Protection of joints and penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies, smoke barriers and smoke partitions shall not be concealed from view until inspected and approved.

[A] 109.3.8 Other inspections. In addition to the inspections specified in Sections 109.2 through 109.3.7, the code official is authorized to make or require other inspections of any construction work to ascertain compliance with the provisions of this code and other laws that are enforced by the department of building safety.

Note: *All noncompliant plumbing fixtures in any residential real property shall be replaced with water-conserving plumbing fixtures. Plumbing fixture replacement is required prior to issuance of a certificate of final completion, certificate of occupancy or final permit approval by the local building department. See Civil Code Section 1101.1, et seq., for the definition of a noncompliant plumbing fixture, types of residential buildings affected and other important enactment dates.*

[A] 109.3.9 Special inspections. Special inspections shall be required in accordance with the *California Building Code*.

[A] 109.3.10 Flood hazard documentation. Where a building is located in a flood hazard area, documentation of the elevation of the lowest floor or the elevation of dry floodproofing, if applicable, as required in the *California Building Code* or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, shall be submitted to the code official prior to the final inspection.

[A] 109.3.11 Final inspection. The final inspection shall be made after work required by the building permit is completed.

[A] 109.4 Inspection agencies. The code official is authorized to accept reports of approved inspection agencies, provided that such agencies satisfy the requirements as to qualifications and reliability.

[A] 109.5 Inspection requests. It shall be the duty of the holder of the building permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the code official when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for any inspections of such work that are required by this code.

[A] 109.6 Approval required. Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the code official. The code official, on notification, shall make the requested inspections and shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed or shall notify the permit holder or an agent of the permit holder

wherein the same fails to comply with this code. Any portions that do not comply shall be corrected and such portion shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the code official.

SECTION 110—CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY

[A] 110.1 Change of occupancy. A structure shall not be used or occupied in whole or in part, and a change of occupancy of a structure or portion thereof shall not be made until the code official has issued a certificate of occupancy therefor as provided herein. Issuance of a certificate of occupancy shall not be construed as an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Certificates presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid.

Exception: Certificates of occupancy are not required for work exempt from permits in accordance with Section 105.2.

[A] 110.2 Certificate issued. After the code official inspects the structure and does not find violations of the provisions of this code or other laws that are enforced by the department, the code official shall issue a certificate of occupancy that contains the following:

1. The permit number.
2. The address of the structure.
3. The name and address of the owner or the owner's authorized agent.
4. A description of that portion of the structure for which the certificate is issued.
5. A statement that the described portion of the structure has been inspected for compliance with the requirements of this code for the occupancy and division of occupancy and the use for which the proposed occupancy is classified.
6. The name of the code official.
7. The edition of the code under which the permit was issued.
8. The use and occupancy in accordance with the provisions of the *California Building Code*.
9. The type of construction as defined in the *California Building Code*.
10. The design occupant load and any impact the alteration has on the design occupant load of the area not within the scope of the work.
11. Where an automatic sprinkler system is provided, and whether an automatic sprinkler system is required.
12. Any special stipulations and conditions of the building permit.

[A] 110.3 Temporary occupancy. The code official is authorized to issue a temporary certificate of occupancy before the completion of the entire work covered by the permit, provided that such portion or portions shall be occupied safely. The code official shall set a time period during which the temporary certificate of occupancy is valid.

[A] 110.4 Revocation. The code official is authorized to suspend or revoke a certificate of occupancy or completion issued under the provisions of this code, in writing, wherever the certificate is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the building or structure or portion thereof is in violation of the provisions of this code or other ordinance of the jurisdiction.

SECTION 111—SERVICE UTILITIES

[A] 111.1 Connection of service utilities. A person shall not make connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel, power, water system or sewer system to any building or system that is regulated by this code for which a permit is required, until approved by the code official.

[A] 111.2 Temporary connection. The code official shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of the building or system to the utility, source of energy, fuel, power, water system or sewer system for the purpose of testing systems or for use under a temporary approval.

[A] 111.3 Authority to disconnect service utilities. The code official shall have the authority to authorize disconnection of utility service to the building, structure or system regulated by this code and the referenced codes and standards in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property or where such utility connection has been made without the approval required by Section 111.1 or 111.2. The code official shall notify the serving utility and, wherever possible, the owner or the owner's authorized agent and the occupant of the building, structure or service system of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the owner, the owner's authorized agent or occupant of the building, structure or service system shall be notified in writing, as soon as practical thereafter.

SECTION 112—MEANS OF APPEALS

[A] 112.1 General. In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the code official relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the applicable governing authority and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the code official.

[A] 112.2 Limitations on authority. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equivalent or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[A] 112.3 Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training on matters pertaining to the provisions of this code and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

[A] 112.4 Administration. The code official shall take action without delay in accordance with the decision of the board.

SECTION 113—VIOLATIONS

[A] 113.1 Unlawful acts. It shall be unlawful for any person, firm or corporation to *repair*, alter, extend, add, move, remove, demolish or change the occupancy of any building or equipment regulated by this code or cause same to be done in conflict with or in violation of any of the provisions of this code.

[A] 113.2 Notice of violation. The code official is authorized to serve a notice of violation or order on the person responsible for the repair, alteration, extension, addition, moving, removal, demolition or change in the occupancy of a building in violation of the provisions of this code or in violation of a permit or certificate issued under the provisions of this code. Such order shall direct the discontinuance of the illegal action or condition and the abatement of the violation.

[A] 113.3 Prosecution of violation. If the notice of violation is not complied with promptly, the code official is authorized to request the legal counsel of the jurisdiction to institute the appropriate proceeding at law or in equity to restrain, correct or abate such violation or to require the removal or termination of the unlawful occupancy of the building or structure in violation of the provisions of this code or of the order or direction made pursuant thereto.

[A] 113.4 Violation penalties. Any person who violates a provision of this code or fails to comply with any of the requirements thereof or who repairs or alters or changes the occupancy of a building or structure in violation of the approved construction documents or directive of the code official or of a permit or certificate issued under the provisions of this code shall be subject to penalties as prescribed by law.

SECTION 114—STOP WORK ORDER

[A] 114.1 Authority. Where the code official finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the code official is authorized to issue a stop work order.

[A] 114.2 Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property, the owner's authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.

[A] 114.3 Emergencies. Where an emergency exists, the code official shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

[A] 114.4 Failure to comply. Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to fines established by the authority having jurisdiction.

SECTION 115—UNSAFE STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT

[A] 115.1 Unsafe conditions. Structures or existing equipment that are or hereafter become unsafe, insanitary or deficient because of inadequate means of egress facilities, inadequate light and ventilation, or that constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare, or that involve illegal or improper occupancy or inadequate maintenance, shall be deemed an unsafe condition. Unsafe structures shall be taken down and removed or made safe as the code official deems necessary and as provided for in this code. A vacant structure that is not secured against unauthorized entry shall be deemed unsafe.

[A] 115.2 Record. The code official shall cause a report to be filed on an unsafe condition. The report shall state the occupancy of the structure and the nature of the unsafe condition.

[A] 115.3 Notice. If an unsafe condition is found, the code official shall serve on the owner of the structure or the owner's authorized agent a written notice that describes the condition deemed unsafe and specifies the required repairs or improvements to be made to abate the unsafe condition, or that requires the unsafe building to be demolished within a stipulated time. Such notice shall require the person thus notified to declare immediately to the code official acceptance or rejection of the terms of the order.

[A] 115.4 Method of service. Such notice shall be deemed properly served where a copy thereof is served in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. A copy is delivered to the owner or the owner's authorized agent personally.
2. A copy is sent by certified or registered mail addressed to the owner at the last known address with the return receipt requested.
3. A copy is delivered in any other manner as prescribed by local law.

If the certified or registered letter is returned showing that the letter was not delivered, a copy thereof shall be posted in a conspicuous place in or about the structure affected by such notice. Service of such notice in the foregoing manner on the owner's authorized agent shall constitute service of notice on the owner.

[A] 115.5 Restoration or abatement. The structure or equipment determined to be unsafe by the code official is permitted to be restored to a safe condition. The owner, the owner's authorized agent, operator or occupant of a structure, premises or equipment deemed unsafe by the code official shall abate or cause to be abated or corrected such unsafe conditions either by repair, rehabilitation, demolition or other approved corrective action. To the extent that repairs, alterations or additions are made, or a change of

occupancy occurs during the restoration of the structure, such repairs, alterations, additions or change of occupancy shall comply with the requirements of this code.

SECTION 116—EMERGENCY MEASURES

[A] 116.1 Imminent danger. Where, in the opinion of the code official, there is imminent danger of failure or collapse of a building that endangers life, or where any building or part of a building has fallen and life is endangered by the occupation of the building, or where there is actual or potential danger to the building occupants or those in the proximity of any structure because of explosives, explosive fumes or vapors, or the presence of toxic fumes, gases, or materials, or operation of defective or dangerous equipment, the code official is hereby authorized and empowered to order and require the occupants to vacate the premises forthwith. The code official shall cause to be posted at each entrance to such structure a notice reading as follows: "This Structure Is Unsafe and Its Occupancy Has Been Prohibited by the Code Official." It shall be unlawful for any person to enter such structure except for the purpose of securing the structure, making the required repairs, removing the hazardous condition, or of demolishing the same.

[A] 116.2 Temporary safeguards. Notwithstanding other provisions of this code, whenever, in the opinion of the code official, there is imminent danger due to an unsafe condition, the code official shall order the necessary work to be done, including the boarding up of openings, to render such structure temporarily safe whether or not the legal procedure herein described has been instituted; and shall cause such other action to be taken as the code official deems necessary to meet such emergency.

[A] 116.3 Closing streets. Where necessary for public safety, the code official shall temporarily close structures and close or order the authority having jurisdiction to close sidewalks, streets, public ways and places adjacent to unsafe structures, and prohibit the same from being utilized.

[A] 116.4 Emergency repairs. For the purposes of this section, the code official shall employ the necessary labor and materials to perform the required work as expeditiously as possible.

[A] 116.5 Costs of emergency repairs. Costs incurred in the performance of emergency work shall be paid by the jurisdiction. The legal counsel of the jurisdiction shall institute appropriate action against the owner of the premises or the owner's authorized agent where the unsafe structure is or was located for the recovery of such costs.

[A] 116.6 Hearing. Any person ordered to take emergency measures shall comply with such order forthwith. Any affected person shall thereafter, on petition directed to the appeals board, be afforded a hearing as described in this code.

SECTION 117—DEMOLITION

[A] 117.1 General. When the code official determines any structure is so old, dilapidated or has become so out of repair and is dangerous, unsafe, insanitary and otherwise unfit for human habitation or occupancy the code official can order either of the following:

1. The code official is permitted to authorize the owner or owner's authorized agent to make the structure safe by repairs in order to make the structure safe and sanitary. Where there has been a cessation of construction repairs of any structure for a period of more than 2 years, the structure will be ordered demolished and removed.
2. The code official is permitted to order the owner or owner's authorized agent to demolish and remove any such structure.

[A] 117.2 Notices and orders. Notices and orders shall comply with Section 113.

[A] 117.3 Failure to comply. If the owner or the owner's authorized agent of a premises fails to comply with a demolition order within the time prescribed, the code official shall cause the structure to be demolished and removed, either through an available public agency or by contract or arrangement with private persons, and the cost of such demolition and removal shall be charged against the real estate on which the structure is located and shall be a lien on such real estate.

[A] 117.4 Salvage materials. Where any structure has been ordered demolished and removed, the governing body or other designated officer under said contract or arrangement aforesaid shall have the right to sell the salvage and valuable materials at the highest price obtainable. The net proceeds of such sale, after deducting the expenses of such demolition and removal, shall be promptly remitted with a report of such sale or transaction, including the items of expense and the amounts deducted, for the person who is entitled thereto, subject to any order of a court. If such a surplus does not remain to be turned over, the report shall so state.

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter													X			X								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X					X	X	X		X	X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X			X		X	X															
Chapter / Section																								
201								X	X															
201.3										X	X	X		X	X									
ACCESSORY DWELLING UNIT				X	X																			
ADDITION			X																					
ALTERATION			X																					
APPROVED			X	X	X																			
BUILDING				X	X	X																		
BUILDING OFFICIAL	X			X	X			X	X	X	X	X		X	X									
CHANGE IN FUNCTION										X	X	X		X	X									
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY			X																					
CODE OFFICIAL			X	X	X					X	X	X		X	X									
CRITICAL CARE AREA										X														
DANGEROUS			X																					
ENFORCEMENT AGENCY	X							X	X															
EQUIPMENT OR FIXTURE			X																					
EXISTING BUILDING			X																					
EXISTING STRUCTURE			X																					
EXISTING STRUCTURE										X	X	X		X	X									
EXTERIOR ELEVATED ELEMENT				X	X																			
FACILITY			X																					
GENERAL ACUTE CARE HOSPITAL										X														
INCIDENTAL STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS OR REPAIRS										X	X	X		X	X									
MAJOR STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS										X	X	X		X	X									
MINOR STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS OR REPAIRS										X	X	X		X	X									
NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL			X																					
NONSTRUCTURAL ALTERATION										X	X	X		X	X									
PRIMARY FUNCTION			X																					
REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE			X																					
REPAIR			X					X	X															
REPAIR										X														

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter													**X**			**X**								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	**X**			**X**	**X**					**X**	**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			**X**			**X**		**X**	**X**															
Chapter / Section																								
REROOFING			X																					
ROOF COATING			X																					
ROOF RECOVER			X																					
ROOF REPAIR			X																					
ROOF REPLACEMENT			X																					
SPC SEISMIC SEPARATION										X	X													
SUBSTANDARD BUILDING				X	X																			
SUBSTANTIAL STRUCTURAL DAMAGE										X	X													
UNREINFORCED CONCRETE										X	X	X		X	X									
UNREINFORCED MASONRY										X	X	X		X	X									
UNSAFE			X	X	X																			
VOLUNTARY STRUCTURAL IMPROVEMENTS										X	X	X		X	X									
WORK AREA			X																					

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

CHAPTER

2 DEFINITIONS

About this chapter: Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purpose of the code.

SECTION 201—GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the other *California Codes*, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes. ***[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]*** *For terms not defined in this chapter, refer to Chapters 6 and 7 of the California Administrative Code, and Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.* ***[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]*** *Definitions of terms given in Section 4-207 or 4-314 of the California Administrative Code govern over those in Section 202.*

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this chapter, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202—GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ACCESSORY DWELLING UNIT. [HCD 1 & HCD 2] *An attached or detached residential dwelling unit that provides complete independent living facilities for one or more persons and is located on a lot with a proposed or existing primary residence. Accessory dwelling units shall include permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation on the same parcel as the single-family or multi-family dwelling is or will be situated. (See Government Code Section 66313.)*

[A] ADDITION. An extension or increase in floor area, number of stories, or height of a building or structure.

[A] ALTERATION. Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than a repair or addition.

[BG] AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY. Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to persons who are rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already incapable.

[A] APPROVED. Acceptable to the code official.

Exception: [HCD 1 & HCD 2] *"Approved" means meeting the approval of the Enforcing Agency, except as otherwise provided by law, when used in connection with any system, material, type of construction, fixture or appliance as the result of investigations and tests conducted by the agency, or by reason of accepted principles or tests by national authorities, or technical, health, or scientific organizations or agencies.*

Notes:

1. *See Health and Safety Code Section 17920 for "Approved" as applied to residential construction and buildings or structures accessory thereto as referenced in Section 1.8.2.*
2. *See Health and Safety Code Section 17921.1 for "Approved" as applied to the use of hotplates in residential construction as referenced in Section 1.8.2.*
3. *See Health and Safety Code Section 19966 for "Approved" as applied to Factory-Built Housing as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5.*
4. *See Health and Safety Code Section 18201 for "Approved" as applied to Mobilehome Parks as referenced in Section 1.8.2.*
5. *See Health and Safety Code Section 18862.1 for "Approved" as applied to Special Occupancy Parks as referenced in Section 1.8.2.*

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized organization that is regularly engaged in conducting tests, furnishing inspection services or furnishing product evaluation or certification where such organization has been approved by the code official.

[A] BUILDING. Any structure utilized or intended for supporting or sheltering any *use or* occupancy.

Exception: [HCD 1, HCD 2 & HCD 1-AC] *For applications listed in Section 1.8.2 regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development, "Building" shall not include the following:*

1. *Any mobilehome as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18008.*
2. *Any manufactured home as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18007.*
3. *Any commercial modular as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18001.8 or any special purpose commercial modular as defined in Section 18012.5.*
4. *Any recreational vehicle as defined in Health and Safety Code, Section 18010.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

5. *Any multifamily manufactured home as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18008.7.*

For additional information, see Health and Safety Code Section 18908.

Note: *Building shall have the same meaning as defined in Health and Safety Code Sections 17920 and 18908 for the applications specified in Section 1.11.*

BUILDING OFFICIAL. [BSC, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] *The individual within the agency or organization charged with responsibility for compliance with the requirements of this code. For some agencies this person is termed the "enforcement agent."*

BUILDING OFFICIAL. [HCD 1, HCD 2] [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.*

CHANGE IN FUNCTION. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *See California Building Code Section 1224.3.*

[A] CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. Any of the following shall be considered as a change of occupancy where the current *California Building Code* requires a greater degree of safety, accessibility, structural strength, fire protection, means of egress, ventilation or sanitation than is existing in the current building or structure:

1. Any change in the occupancy classification of a building or structure.
2. Any change in the purpose of, or a change in the level of activity within, a building or structure.
3. A change of use.

[A] CHANGE OF USE. A change in the use of a building or a portion of a building, within the same group classification, for which there is a change in application of the code requirements.

[A] CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code.

[HCD 1 & HCD 2] [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *"Code Official" shall mean "Building Official" as defined in this code.*

CRITICAL CARE AREA. [OSHPD 1] *See California Administrative Code Chapter 6.*

[BS] DANGEROUS. Any building, structure or portion thereof that meets any of the conditions described below shall be deemed dangerous:

1. The building or structure has collapsed, has partially collapsed, has moved off its foundation or lacks the necessary support of the ground.
2. There exists a significant risk of collapse, detachment or dislodgement of any portion, member, appurtenance or ornamentation of the building or structure under permanent, routine or frequent loads; under actual loads already in effect; or under snow, wind, rain, flood, earthquake aftershock or other environmental loads when such loads are imminent.

[A] DEFERRED SUBMITTAL. Those portions of the design that are not submitted at the time of the application and that are to be submitted to the code official within a specified period.

[BS] DISPROPORTIONATE EARTHQUAKE DAMAGE. A condition of earthquake-related damage where both of the following occur:

1. The 0.3-second spectral acceleration at the building site for the earthquake in question, as estimated by one of the following, is less than 30 percent of the mapped acceleration parameter S_S:
   1.1. The United States Geological Survey's algorithm for the data point closest to the site.
   1.2. As determined from peer-reviewed seismograph records from the site or from locations closer to the site than the algorithm-provided data points.
2. The vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system have suffered damage such that the lateral load-carrying capacity of any story in any horizontal direction has been reduced by more than 10 percent from its pre-earthquake condition.

[BE] EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING. An operable exterior window, door or other similar device that provides for a means of escape and access for rescue in the event of an emergency.

ENFORCEMENT AGENCY. [BSC, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] *The agency or organization charged with responsibility for agency or organization compliance with the requirements of this code, also known as the Authority Having Jurisdiction in ASCE 41.*

EQUIPMENT OR FIXTURE. Any plumbing, heating, electrical, ventilating, air conditioning, refrigerating and fire protection equipment; and elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, boilers, pressure vessels and other mechanical facilities; or installations that are related to building services. Equipment or fixture shall not include manufacturing, production or process equipment, but shall include connections from building service to process equipment.

[A] EXISTING BUILDING. A building erected prior to the date of adoption of the appropriate code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

[A] EXISTING STRUCTURE. A structure erected prior to the date of adoption of the appropriate code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

EXISTING STRUCTURE. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *A structure that has a valid certificate of occupancy issued by the building official.*

EXTERIOR ELEVATED ELEMENT. *See Government Code Section 17973(b)(2).*

[BF] EXTERIOR WALL COVERING. A material or assembly of materials applied on the exterior side of exterior walls for the purpose of providing a weather-resisting barrier, insulation or for aesthetics, including but not limited to, veneers, siding, exterior insulation and finish systems, architectural trim and embellishments, such as cornices, soffits, facias, gutters and leaders.

BUFF
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

[BF] EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE. A system or assembly of exterior wall components, including exterior wall finish materials, that provides protection of the building structural members, including framing and sheathing materials, and conditioned interior space from the detrimental effects of the exterior environment.

[A] FACILITY. All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements and pedestrian or vehicular routes located on a site.

[BS] FLOOD HAZARD AREA. The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any year.
2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

GENERAL ACUTE CARE HOSPITAL. [OSHPD 1] *See California Building Code Section 1224.3.*

[A] HISTORIC BUILDING. Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing, by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register, state designated or locally designated historic district.

INCIDENTAL STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS OR REPAIRS. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Alterations, additions or repairs which would not reduce the story lateral shear force-resisting capacity by more than 5 percent or increase the story shear by more than 5 percent in any existing story or a combination thereof with equivalent effect (not exceeding 5 percent total). The calculation of lateral shear force-resisting capacity and story shear shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction.*

[A] LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose. Terms that are used to identify listed equipment, products or materials include "listed," "certified," "classified" or other terms as determined appropriate by the listing organization.

[BS] LOWEST FLOOR. The lowest floor of the lowest enclosed area, including basement, but excluding any unfinished or flood-resistant enclosure, usable solely for vehicle parking, building access or limited storage provided that such enclosure is not built so as to render the structure in violation of Section 1612 of the *California Building Code* or Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

MAJOR STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS, OR REPAIRS. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Alterations, additions, or repairs of greater extent than minor structural alterations, additions, or repairs.*

MINOR STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS OR REPAIRS. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Alterations, additions, or repairs of greater extent than incidental structural additions or alterations which would not reduce the story shear lateral-force-resisting capacity by more than 10 percent or increase the story shear by more than 10 percent in any existing story or a combination thereof with equivalent effect (not exceeding 10 percent total). The calculation of lateral shear force-resisting capacity and story shear shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction.*

[BF] NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. A material that, under the conditions anticipated, will not ignite or burn when subjected to fire or heat. Materials that pass ASTM E136 are considered noncombustible materials.

NONSTRUCTURAL ALTERATION. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Nonstructural alteration is any alteration which neither affects existing structural elements nor requires new structural elements for vertical or lateral support and which does not increase the lateral shear force in any story by more than 5 percent.*

[BG] OCCUPIABLE ROOF. An exterior space on a roof that is designed for human occupancy, other than maintenance or repair, and which is equipped with a means of egress system meeting the requirements of this code.

[A] PEER REVIEW. An independent and objective technical review conducted by an approved third party.

[BS] PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM. A system that incorporates discrete photovoltaic panels, that converts solar radiation into electricity, including rack support systems.

PRIMARY FUNCTION. A primary function is a major activity for which the facility is intended. Areas that contain a primary function include, but are not limited to, the customer services lobby of a bank, the dining area of a cafeteria, the meeting rooms in a conference center, as well as offices and other work areas in which the activities of the public accommodation or other private entity using the facility are carried out. Mechanical rooms, boiler rooms, supply storage rooms, employee lounges or locker rooms, janitorial closets, entrances, corridors and restrooms are not areas containing a primary function.

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE. A registered design professional engaged by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to review and coordinate certain aspects of the project, as determined by the code official, for compatibility with the design of the building or structure, including submittal documents prepared by others, deferred submittal documents and phased submittal documents.

[A] RELOCATABLE BUILDING. A partially or completely assembled building constructed and designed to be reused multiple times and transported to different building sites.

[A] REPAIR. The reconstruction, replacement or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REPAIR. [OSHPD 1] *as used in this Code means all the design and construction work affecting existing or requiring new structural elements undertaken to restore or enhance the structural and nonstructural load-resisting system participating in vertical or lateral response of a structure primarily intended to correct the effects of deterioration or impending or actual failure, regardless of cause.*

[BS] REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "*Roof recover*" and "*Roof replacement*."

[BS] RISK CATEGORY. A categorization of buildings and other structures for determination of flood, wind, snow, ice and earthquake loads based on the risk associated with unacceptable performance, as provided in Section 1604.5 of the *California Building Code*.

[BS] ROOF COATING. A fluid-applied adhered coating used for roof maintenance, roof repair or as a component of a roof covering system or roof assembly.

[BS] ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over a prepared existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

[BS] ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purpose of correcting damage or restoring the predamage condition.

[BS] ROOF REPLACEMENT. The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

➡ ***SPC SEISMIC SEPARATION. [OSHPD 1 & 1R]*** *Means a building separation in accordance with the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6 Section 3.4.*

SUBSTANDARD BUILDING. [HCD 1, HCD 2] *See Health and Safety Code Section 17920.3.*

[BG] STORM SHELTER. A building, structure or portions thereof, constructed in accordance with ICC 500, designated for use during hurricanes, tornadoes or other severe windstorms.

[BS] SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE. For the purpose of determining compliance with the flood provisions of this code, damage of any origin sustained by a structure whereby the cost of restoring the structure to its before-damaged condition would equal or exceed 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the damage occurred.

[BS] SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT. For the purpose of determining compliance with the flood provisions of this code, any repair, alteration, addition or improvement of a building or structure, the cost of which equals or exceeds 50 percent of the market value of the structure, before the improvement or repair is started. If the structure has sustained substantial damage, any repairs are considered substantial improvement regardless of the actual repair work performed. The term does not, however, include either of the following:

1. Any project for improvement of a building required to correct existing health, sanitary or safety code violations identified by the code official and that is the minimum necessary to ensure safe living conditions.
2. Any alteration of a historic structure, provided that the alteration will not preclude the structure's continued designation as a historic structure.

[BS] SUBSTANTIAL STRUCTURAL ALTERATION. An alteration in which the gravity load-carrying structural elements altered within a 5-year period support more than 30 percent of the total floor and roof area of the building or structure. The areas to be counted toward the 30 percent shall include mezzanines, penthouses, and in-filled courts and shafts tributary to the altered structural elements.

[BS] SUBSTANTIAL STRUCTURAL DAMAGE. A condition where any of the following apply:

1. The vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system have suffered damage such that the lateral load-carrying capacity of any story in any horizontal direction has been reduced by more than 33 percent from its predamage condition.
2. The capacity of any vertical component carrying gravity load, or any group of such components, that has a tributary area more than 30 percent of the total area of the structure's floor(s) and roof(s) has been reduced more than 20 percent from its predamage condition, and the remaining capacity of such affected elements, with respect to all dead and live loads, is less than 75 percent of that required by the *California Building Code* for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.
3. The capacity of any structural component carrying snow load, or any group of such components, that supports more than 30 percent of the roof area of similar construction has been reduced more than 20 percent from its predamage condition, and the remaining capacity with respect to dead, live and snow loads is less than 75 percent of that required by the *California Building Code* for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.

For purposes of this definition, work done to implement repairs shall not be considered damage that reduces structural capacity.

SUBSTANTIAL STRUCTURAL DAMAGE. [OSHPD 1 & 1R] *A condition where any of the following apply:*

1. *The vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system have suffered damage such that the lateral load carrying capacity of any story in any horizontal direction has been reduced by more than 10 percent from its predamage condition.*
2. *The capacity of any vertical component carrying gravity load, or any group of such components, has a tributary area more than 15 percent of the total area of the structure's floor(s) and roof(s), has been reduced more than 10 percent from its predamage condition, and the remaining capacity of such affected elements, with respect to all dead and live loads, is less than 75 percent of that required by the California Building Code for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.*
3. *The capacity of any structural component carrying snow load, or any group of such components, that supports more than 15 percent of the roof area of similar construction, has been reduced more than 10 percent from its predamage condition, and the*

remaining capacity with respect to dead, live and snow loads is less than 75 percent of that required by the California Building Code for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.

TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE. An alteration of a facility that has little likelihood of being accomplished because the existing structural conditions require the removal or alteration of a load-bearing member that is an essential part of the structural frame, or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification or addition of elements, spaces or features which are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements for new construction and which are necessary to provide accessibility.

UNREINFORCED CONCRETE. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Unreinforced concrete as used in this chapter means plain concrete as defined in ACI 318 Section 2.3.*

UNREINFORCED MASONRY. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Unreinforced masonry as used in this chapter means masonry construction where reinforcements in any direction is less than minimum reinforcement specified in TMS 402 Section 7.3.2.6.*

UNSAFE. Buildings, structures or equipment that are unsanitary, or that are deficient due to inadequate means of egress facilities, inadequate light and ventilation, or that constitute a fire hazard, or in which the structure or individual structural members meet the definition of *"Dangerous,"* or that are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare, or that involve illegal or improper occupancy or inadequate maintenance shall be deemed unsafe. A vacant structure that is not secured against entry shall be deemed unsafe.

[HCD 1 & HCD 2] *An unsafe building, as defined in this chapter, shall be considered substandard.*

VOLUNTARY STRUCTURAL IMPROVEMENTS (VSIs). [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Voluntary structural improvements are any alterations of existing structural element(s) or addition of new structural elements which are not necessary for vertical or lateral support of other work and is initiated by the applicant primarily for the purpose of increasing the vertical or lateral load-carrying strength or stiffness of an existing building.*

WORK AREA. That portion or portions of a building consisting of all reconfigured spaces as indicated on the construction documents. Work area excludes other portions of the building where incidental work entailed by the intended work must be performed and portions of the building where work not initially intended by the owner is specifically required by this code.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 3 – PROVISIONS FOR ALL COMPLIANCE METHODS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter													**X**			**X**								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	**X**		**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**									
Chapter / Section																								
301.1 – 301.3.1			X								X	X		X	X									
301.1				X	X																			
301.1 *Exception 1*	X																							
301.1 *Exception 2*								X																
301.1 *Exception 3*									X															
301.1 *Exception 4*				X	X																			
301.1 *Exception 5*											X	X		X	X									
301.1.1	X							X	X															
301.3				X	X	X					X	X		X	X									
301.3.1 *Exception*											X	X		X	X									
301.3.2			X	X	X																			
301.3.3				X	X																			
301.4				X	X																			
302			X								X	X		X	X									
302.1.1	X																							
302.2				X	X																			
302.4				X																				
302.5	X																							
304				X	X						X	X		X	X									
304.1	X							X	X															
304.2	X							X	X															
305	X							X	X		X	X		X	X									
307 – 308			X																					
308.2				X	X																			
309.2.1			X																					
310 – 311											X	X			X									
312											X													
313 – 316			X																					
317 – 322	X							X	X															
323								X	X															

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

CHAPTER

3

PROVISIONS FOR ALL COMPLIANCE METHODS

About this chapter: Chapter 3 explains the three compliance options for alterations and additions available in the code. In addition, this chapter also lays out the methods to be used for seismic design and evaluation throughout this code. Finally, this chapter clarifies that provisions in other California Codes related to repairs, alterations, additions, relocation and changes of occupancy must also be addressed unless they conflict with this code. In that case, this code takes precedence.

SECTION 301—ADMINISTRATION

301.1 Applicability. The repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition or relocation of all existing buildings shall comply with Section 301.2, 301.3 or 301.4. The provisions of Sections 302 through 309 shall apply to all alterations, repairs, additions, relocation of structures and changes of occupancy regardless of compliance method. ***[OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 and 5]*** *Section 301.4 not permitted by OSHPD.*

Exceptions:

1. ***Existing state-owned structures. [BSC]*** *The repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition or relocation of all existing buildings shall comply with the provisions of Sections 317 through 322 as the minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for retrofit of existing state-owned structures, including buildings owned by the University of California, the California State University or the Judicial Council.*

   The provisions of Sections 317 through 322 may be adopted by a local jurisdiction for earthquake evaluation and design for retrofit of existing buildings.

2. ***Public school buildings [DSA-SS]*** *The provisions of Sections 317 through 323 establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for the rehabilitation of existing buildings for use as public school buildings under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety (DSA-SS, refer to Section 1.9.2.1) where required by Sections 4-307 and 4-309(c) of the California Administrative Code.*

   The provisions of Sections 317 through 323 also establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for rehabilitation of existing public school buildings currently under the jurisdiction of DSA-SS.

3. ***Community college buildings. [DSA-SS/CC]*** *The provisions of Sections 317 through 323 establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for the rehabilitation of existing buildings for use as community college buildings under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC, refer to Section 1.9.2.2) where required by Sections 4-307 and 4-309(c) of the California Administrative Code.*

   The provisions of Sections 317 through 323 also establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for rehabilitation of existing community college buildings currently under the jurisdiction of DSA-SS/CC.

4. ***[HCD 1]*** *In addition to the requirements in this chapter, maintenance, alteration, repair, addition or change of occupancy to existing buildings and accessory structures under the authority of the Department of Housing and Community Development, as provided in Section 1.8.2.1.1, shall comply with California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1.*

   Exceptions:

   1. ***[HCD 2]*** *For moved buildings and maintenance, alteration, repair, addition or change of occupancy to existing buildings and accessory structures in mobilehome parks or special occupancy parks as provided in Section 1.8.2.1.3, see California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapters 2 and 2.2.*
   2. ***[HCD 1]*** *Limited-density owner-built rural dwellings, as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Residential Code.*

5. ***Hospital buildings removed from acute care service, skilled nursing facilities, intermediate-care facilities, correctional treatment centers and acute-psychiatric hospitals [OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 and 5].*** *The provisions of adopted sections in Chapters 3 through 5 shall control the alteration, repair and change of occupancy or function of existing structures for applications listed in Section 1.10.1, 1.10.2, 1.10.4 and 1.10.5 regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD). Functional service spaces shall comply with the requirements in the California Building Code, Sections 1224, 1225, 1226, 1227 and 1228.*

301.1.1 Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands. Existing bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands shall comply with ICC 300.

301.2 Repairs. Repairs shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 4.

301.3 Alteration, addition or change of occupancy. The alteration, addition or change of occupancy of all existing buildings shall comply with one of the methods listed in Section 301.3.1, 301.3.2 or 301.3.3 as selected by the applicant. Sections 301.3.1 through 301.3.3 shall not be applied in combination with each other. ***[OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 and 5]*** *Sections 301.3.2 and 301.3.3, not adopted by OSHPD.*

Exception: Subject to the approval of the code official, alterations complying with the laws in existence at the time the building or the affected portion of the building was built shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code. New structural

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

members added as part of the alteration shall comply with the *California Building Code*. This exception shall not apply to the following:

1. Alterations for accessibility required by *the California Building Code, Chapter 11A.*
2. Alterations that constitute substantial improvement in flood hazard areas, which shall comply with Sections 503.2, 701.3 or 1303.1.3.
3. Structural provisions of Section 304, Chapter 5 or to the structural provisions of Sections 706, 805 and 906.

301.3.1 Prescriptive compliance. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy complying with Chapter 5 of this code in buildings complying with the *California Fire Code* shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code.

Exception: Hospital buildings removed from acute care service, skilled nursing facilities, intermediate-care facilities, correctional treatment centers and acute psychiatric hospitals [OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 and 5]. *The provisions of adopted sections in Chapters 3 through 5 shall control the alteration, repair and change of occupancy or function of existing structures for applications listed in Section 1.10.1, 1.10.2, 1.10.4 and 1.10.5 regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD). Refer to Chapter 3A for services, systems and utilities that serve OSHPD 1 buildings.*

301.3.2 Work area compliance method. *A*lterations, additions and changes of occupancy complying with the applicable requirements of Chapters 6 through 12 of this code shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code.

301.3.3 Performance compliance method. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy complying with Chapter 13 of this code shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code.

Note: [HCD 1 & HCD 2] *The provisions contained in Chapter 13 are not adopted by HCD, but may be available for adoption by a local ordinance. (See Section 1.1.11.)*

301.4 Relocated *or moved* buildings. Relocated *or moved* buildings shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 14.

SECTION 302—GENERAL PROVISIONS

302.1 Dangerous conditions. The code official shall have the authority to require the elimination of conditions deemed dangerous.

302.1.1 Dangerous conditions. [BSC] *Regardless of the extent of structural or nonstructural damage, the code official shall have the authority to require the elimination of conditions deemed dangerous.*

302.2 Additional codes. Alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions for alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in this code and the *California Energy Code*, *California Fire Code*, *California Mechanical Code*, *California Plumbing Code*, *California Residential Code* and *California Electrical Code*. Where provisions of the other codes conflict with provisions of this code, the provisions of this code shall take precedence.

302.2.1 Additional codes in health care. In existing Group I-2 occupancies, ambulatory health care facilities, outpatient clinics and hyperbaric facilities, alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall also comply with NFPA 99.

302.3 Existing materials. Materials already in use in a building in compliance with requirements or approvals in effect at the time of their erection or installation shall be permitted to remain in use unless determined by the code official to be unsafe.

302.4 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for repairs and alterations, provided that unsafe conditions are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not permit their use in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location. ***[HCD 1]*** *Local ordinances or regulations shall permit the replacement, retention and extension of original materials, and the use of original methods of construction, for any building or accessory structure, provided such building or structure complied with the building code provisions in effect at the time of original construction and the building or accessory structure does not become or continue to be a substandard building. For additional information, see Health and Safety Code Sections 17912, 17920.3, 17922(d), 17922.3, 17958.8 and 17958.9.*

Exception: *No replacement residential garage door shall be installed to connect the replacement door to an existing residential automatic garage door opener that does not have a battery backup function designed to keep the garage door operational without interruption during an electrical outage. See Health and Safety Code Section 19892.*

[BS] 302.4.1 New structural members and connections. New structural members and connections shall comply with the detailing provisions of the *California Building Code* for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.

Exception: Where alternative design criteria are specifically permitted.

302.5 Occupancy and use. Where determining the appropriate application of the referenced sections of this code, the occupancy and use of a building shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 3 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 303—STORM SHELTERS

303.1 General. This section applies to the design and construction of storm shelters for the purpose of providing protection during tornadoes, hurricanes and other severe windstorms.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

303.1.1 Construction. Storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with Section 423 of the *California Building Code* and ICC 500 and shall be designated as hurricane shelters, tornado shelters or combined hurricane and tornado shelters.

Exception: Storm shelters added to critical emergency operations facilities or Group E occupancies are not required to comply with the travel distance in Section 423.4.2 or 423.5.2 of the *California Building Code*.

303.2 Addition to a Group E occupancy. Where an addition is added to an existing Group E occupancy located in an area where the shelter design wind speed for tornadoes is 250 mph (402.3 km/h) in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500 and the occupant load in the addition is 50 or more, the addition shall have a storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

Exceptions:

1. Group E day care facilities.
2. Group E occupancies accessory to places of religious worship.
3. Additions meeting the requirements for shelter design in ICC 500.

303.2.1 Design occupant capacity. The required design occupant capacity of the storm shelter shall include all buildings on the site, and shall be the total occupant load of the classrooms, vocational rooms and offices in the Group E occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Where an addition is being added on an existing Group E site, and where the addition is not of sufficient size to accommodate the required design occupant capacity of the storm shelter for all of the buildings on-site, the storm shelter shall at a minimum accommodate the required capacity for the addition.
2. Where approved by the code official, the required design occupant capacity of the shelter shall be permitted to be reduced by the design occupant capacity of any existing storm shelters on the site.

303.3 Occupancy classification. The occupancy classification for storm shelters shall be determined in accordance with Section 423.3 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 304—STRUCTURAL DESIGN LOADS AND EVALUATION AND DESIGN PROCEDURES

[BS] 304.1 Live loads. Where an addition or alteration does not result in increased design live load, existing gravity load-carrying structural elements shall be permitted to be evaluated and designed for live loads approved prior to the addition or alteration. If the approved live load is less than that required by Section 1607 of the *California Building Code*, the area designated for the nonconforming live load shall be posted with placards of approved design indicating the approved live load. Where the addition or alteration results in increased design live load, the live load required by Section 1607 of the *California Building Code* shall be used.

[BS] 304.2 Snow loads on adjacent buildings. Where an alteration or addition changes the potential snow drift effects on an adjacent building, the code official is authorized to enforce Section 7.12 of ASCE 7.

[BS] 304.3 Seismic evaluation and design procedures. Where required, seismic evaluation or design shall comply with the procedures and criteria in this section, regardless of which compliance method is used. The scope of the required evaluation or design shall be as indicated in applicable provisions of Chapters 4 through *11*.

[BS] 304.3.1 Full seismic criteria. Where required, seismic evaluation or design shall comply with one of the following methodologies, which shall not be applied in combination with each other:

1. Section 1613 of the *California Building Code*. Where the existing seismic force-resisting system is a type that can be designated as "Ordinary," values of R, Ω_0 and C_d used for analysis in accordance with Chapter 16 of the *California Building Code* shall be those specified for structural systems classified as "Ordinary" in accordance with Table 12.2-1 of ASCE 7, unless it can be demonstrated that the structural system will provide performance equivalent to that of a "Detailed," "Intermediate" or "Special" system.
2. ASCE 41, using a Tier 3 procedure and both levels of the two-level performance objective in Table 304.3.1 for the applicable risk category.

[BS] TABLE 304.3.1—PERFORMANCE OBJECTIVES FOR USE IN ASCE 41 FOR COMPLIANCE WITH FULL SEISMIC CRITERIA

RISK CATEGORY (Based on IBC Table 1604.5)	STRUCTURAL PERFORMANCE LEVEL FOR USE WITH BSE-1N EARTHQUAKE HAZARD LEVEL	STRUCTURAL PERFORMANCE LEVEL FOR USE WITH BSE-2N EARTHQUAKE HAZARD LEVEL
I	Life Safety (S-3)	Collapse Prevention (S-5)
II	Life Safety (S-3)	Collapse Prevention (S-5)
III	Damage Control (S-2)	Limited Safety (S-4)
IV	Immediate Occupancy (S-1)	Life Safety (S-3)

[BS] 304.3.2 Reduced seismic criteria. Where required, seismic evaluation or design shall comply with one of the following methodologies, which shall not be applied in combination with each other:

1. Section 1613 of the *California Building Code* using 75 percent of the prescribed forces. Values of R, Ω_0 and C_d used for analysis shall be as specified in Section 304.3.1 of this code.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® BUFF
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

2. Applicable chapters of Appendix A of this code, for structures or portions of structures specified in Items 2.1 through 2.4 subject to the limitations of the respective chapter.
   2.1. Chapter A1 for unreinforced masonry bearing wall buildings assigned to Risk Category I or II.
   2.2. Chapter A2 for the wall anchorage system in reinforced concrete and reinforced masonry wall buildings with flexible diaphragms assigned to Risk Category I or II.
   2.3. Chapter A3 for cripple walls and sill plate anchorage in residential buildings of light-frame wood construction assigned to Risk Category I or II.
   2.4. Chapter A4 for soft, weak or open-front wall conditions in multiple-unit residential buildings of wood construction assigned to Risk Category I or II.
3. ASCE 41, using the performance objective in Table 304.3.2 for the applicable risk category.

[BS] TABLE 304.3.2—PERFORMANCE OBJECTIVES FOR USE IN ASCE 41 FOR COMPLIANCE WITH REDUCED CRITERIA FORCES

RISK CATEGORY (Based on IBC Table 1604.5)	STRUCTURAL PERFORMANCE LEVEL FOR USE WITH BSE-1E EARTHQUAKE HAZARD LEVEL	STRUCTURAL PERFORMANCE LEVEL FOR USE WITH BSE-2E EARTHQUAKE HAZARD LEVEL
I	Life Safety (S-3). See Note a	Collapse Prevention (S-5)
II	Life Safety (S-3). See Note a	Collapse Prevention (S-5)
III	Damage Control (S-2). See Note a	Limited Safety (S-4). See Note b
IV	Immediate Occupancy (S-1)	Life Safety (S-3). See Note c

a. For Risk Categories I, II and III, the Tier 1 and Tier 2 procedures need not be considered for the BSE-1E earthquake hazard level.
b. For Risk Category III, the Tier 1 screening checklists shall be based on the Collapse Prevention, except that checklist statements using the Quick Check provisions shall be based on *MS*-factors that are the average of the values for Collapse Prevention and Life Safety.
c. For Risk Category IV, the Tier 1 screening checklists shall be based on Collapse Prevention, except that checklist statements using the Quick Check provisions shall be based on *MS*-factors for Life Safety.

304.3.3 Criteria for incidental and minor structural alteration, additions, or repairs of pre-1973 code buildings. [OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Provisions of this section shall apply to hospital buildings which were originally designed to pre-1973 building codes, and had no major structural alterations, additions or repairs using 1973 California Building Standards Code or later editions with an OSHPD permit.*

1. Nonstructural components. *Component importance factor, I_p, shall be permitted to be 1.0.*

Exception: *Components required for life safety purposes after an earthquake, including emergency, standby or alternative power systems, mechanical smoke removal systems, fire protection sprinkler systems, fire alarm control panels and egress stairways shall have a component importance factor (I_p) of 1.5.*

SECTION 305—IN-SITU LOAD TESTS

[BS] 305.1 General. Where used, in-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 306—ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS

[DSA-AC] *Public buildings, public accommodations, commercial facilities and public housing regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance in Title 24, Part 2, California Building Code, Chapter 1, Section 1.9.1 shall comply with Title 24, Part 2, California Building Code, Chapter 11B.*

[HCD 1-AC] *Accessibility requirements for covered multifamily dwellings, as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code, are promulgated under HCD authority and are located in Chapter 11A of the California Building Code.*

SECTION 307—SMOKE ALARMS

307.1 Smoke alarms. Where an alteration, addition, change of occupancy or relocation of a building is made to an existing building or structure of a Group R and I-1 occupancy, the existing building shall be provided with smoke alarms in accordance with the *California Fire Code* or Section R310 of the *California Residential Code*.

Exception: Work classified as Level 1 Alterations in accordance with Chapter 7.

SECTION 308—CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTION

308.1 Carbon monoxide detection. Where an addition, alteration, change of occupancy or relocation of a building is made to an existing building, the existing building shall be provided with carbon monoxide detection in accordance with the *California Fire Code* or Section R311 of the *California Residential Code*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

308.2 Carbon monoxide alarms in existing portions of a building. [HCD 1 & HCD 2] *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 17926, carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in all existing Group R buildings, as required in Section 915 of the California Building Code or Section R315 of the California Residential Code, as applicable.*

308.2.1 Carbon monoxide detection in existing Group E occupancy buildings. *Where the new addition includes any of the conditions identified in the California Fire Code Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Section 915 of the California Fire Code. No person shall install, market, distribute, offer for sale, or sell any carbon monoxide device in the State of California unless the device and instructions have been approved and listed by the Office of the State Fire Marshal.*

SECTION 309—ADDITIONS AND REPLACEMENTS OF EXTERIOR WALL COVERINGS AND EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPES

309.1 General. The provisions of Section 309 apply to all alterations, repairs, additions, relocations of structures and changes of occupancy regardless of compliance method.

309.2 Additions and replacements. Where an exterior wall covering or exterior wall envelope is added or replaced, the materials and methods used shall comply with the requirements for new construction in Chapter 14 and Chapter 26 of the *California Building Code* if the added or replaced exterior wall covering or exterior wall envelope involves two or more contiguous stories and comprises more than 15 percent of the total wall area on any side of the building.

309.2.1 Automatic sprinkler systems. Combustible exterior wall covering or combustible exterior wall envelopes shall not be added to an existing high-rise building that is not protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.

Exceptions:

1. Where such material is located on a single story and is less than 15 percent of the wall area on any side of the building.
2. Water-resistive barriers installed in accordance with Section 1402.6 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 310 [OSHPD 1R, 2 AND 5]—SERVICES/SYSTEMS AND UTILITIES

310.1 Services/systems and utilities. *Services/systems and utilities shall only originate in, pass through or under structures which are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).*

SECTION 311 [OSHPD 1R, 2 AND 5]—MEANS OF EGRESS

311.1 General. *Means of egress through existing buildings shall be in accordance with the California Building Code, except as modified in this section.*

311.1.1 Jurisdiction. *Means of egress shall only pass through buildings that are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).*

SECTION 312 [OSHPD 1R]—HOSPITAL SPC AND FREESTANDING BUILDINGS REMOVED FROM GENERAL ACUTE CARE SERVICE REMAINING UNDER THE JURISDICTION OF OSHPD

312.1 General. *The provisions of this section shall apply to hospital SPC and freestanding buildings that have been removed from Acute Care Service in accordance with California Existing Building Code Section 312A but remain under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD). These buildings may house various occupancies, uses and functions in accordance with this section. The requirements for those various occupancies, uses and functions shall be in accordance with the provisions of the California Building Standards Code, specific to each. The designation OSHPD 1R shall be limited to provisions applicable to the overall hospital SPC or freestanding building.*

312.1.1 Non-general acute care hospital (non-GACH) SPC buildings. *Non-GACH SPC buildings shall conform to the requirements of Section 1.10.1 [OSHPD 1R].*

312.1.2 Freestanding buildings. *Application and enforcement of freestanding buildings removed from general acute care services but remaining under OSHPD jurisdiction shall be in accordance with Section 1.10.1 [OSHPD 1R].*

Freestanding hospital-owned clinics shall be permitted to be under the jurisdiction of OSHPD in accordance with the California Administrative Code Sections 7-2104, 7-2105 and 7-2106.

312.1.3 Non-General Acute Care Building (non-GACH SPC building) access. *All access points into hospital SPC buildings removed from general acute care service shall prominently display signage at each access point stating* ***"NO GENERAL ACUTE CARE SERVICES BEYOND THIS POINT."***

312.2 Definitions.

FREESTANDING. *Refer to Part 1, California Administrative Code, Chapter 7.*

SPC BUILDING. *Refer to Part 2, California Building Code, Chapter 2.*

312.3 Buildings to remain under OSHPD jurisdiction.

312.3.1 Freestanding buildings containing qualifying nonacute care services. *In order for a freestanding building, as defined in the California Administrative Code, Section 7-111, that is removed from general acute care service, to remain under OSHPD jurisdiction, it shall contain one or more qualifying nonacute care services. Qualifying nonacute care services include:*

a. Services considered "Outpatient Clinical Services" as defined in H&SC §129730(a):

i. Administrative space that directly supports hospital operations

ii. *Central sterile supply*
iii. *Storage*
iv. *Morgue and autopsy facilities*
v. *Employee dressing rooms and lockers*
vi. *Janitorial and housekeeping facilities*
vii. *Laundry*

b. *Outpatient portions of the following services (with no more than 25 percent in-patient use), including but not limited to:*
i. *Surgical*
ii. *Chronic dialysis*
iii. *Psychiatry*
iv. *Rehabilitation, occupational therapy or physical therapy*
v. *Maternity*
vi. *Dentistry*
viii. *Chemical dependency*

c. *Services that duplicate Basic Services, as defined in H&SC §1250, or services that are provided as part of a Basic Service, but are not required for facility licensure (with no more than 25 percent in-patient use).*

d. *Chemical dependency recovery services.*

All hospital support services listed in Section 312.3.1 Item a that are located in an SPC building at the time general acute care services are removed may remain, provided the California Department of Public Health certifies to the Office that it has received and approved a plan that demonstrates how the health facility will continue to provide all basic services in the event of any emergency when the SPC building may no longer remain functional. This certification shall be submitted by the hospital to the Office prior to approval of the application to remove the SPC building from general acute care service.

312.3.2 SPC non-GACH buildings containing nonacute care services under existing license. *The services listed in Section 312.3.2 shall be permitted as follows:*

a. *Existing approved nonacute care services shall be permitted to remain. The enforcement agency shall be permitted to require evidence that the existing occupancies and services were in compliance at the time they were located in the SPC building. All hospital support services listed in Section 312.3, Item a that are remaining in the SPC building removed from general acute care service shall be in excess of the minimum requirements for licensure and operation of the general acute care hospital. Prior approval by the California Department of Public Health shall be obtained by the hospital to maintain these services in the SPC building removed from acute care service.*

b. *New nonacute care services listed in Section 312.3.1, Item a shall be permitted, provided they are in excess of the minimum services required for licensure and operation of the general acute care hospital.*

c. *New nonacute care services listed in Section 312.3.1, Item b shall be permitted. These services require compliance with the current functional requirements for that service as defined in California Building Code, Section 1224.39, subject to the provisions of Section 506.1.*

d. *New nonacute care services listed in Section 312.3.1, Item c shall be permitted provided they are in excess of the minimum services required for licensure and operation of the general acute care hospital. If patients are served by this service, it must meet the current functional requirements for that service as defined in California Building Code, Section 1224.39, subject to the provisions of Section 506.1.*

312.3.3 SPC non-GACH buildings containing a change of licensed nursing services under existing license. *A change of service or function for all, or a portion, of the SPC building removed from general acute care service requires compliance with the current functional requirements for that service as defined in California Building Code, Section 1224, subject to the provisions of Section 506.1.*

312.3.3.1 Intermediate care and/or skilled nursing services. *When general acute care services are removed from an SPC building which is intended to be used for separate and distinct intermediate care and/or skilled nursing services, and the new services will be licensed under the existing license of the general acute care hospital, these new services shall comply with current functional requirements as defined in California Building Code, Section 1224.38 and/or 1224.40, and Section 310A.1.1.1.5 of this code for a nonconforming hospital building.*

312.3.3.2 Psychiatric nursing service. *When general acute care services are removed from an SPC building which is intended to be used for separate and distinct psychiatric nursing services, and the new services will be licensed under the existing license of the general acute care hospital, these new services shall comply with current functional requirements for that service as defined in California Building Code, Section 1228, and Section 310A.1.1.1.5 of this code for a nonconforming hospital building.*

312.3.4 SPC non-GACH buildings containing other occupancies and/or uses. *Other occupancies and/or uses shall comply with the occupancy/use requirements of the California Building Standards Code for that occupancy or use. Subject to the approval of the building official, the use or occupancy of existing buildings is allowed to be occupied for purposes in other groups, or within the same group, provided the new or proposed use is less hazardous, based on life and fire risk, than the existing use.*

312.3.5 Vacant space. *Spaces vacated through the removal of general acute care services that are intended to remain vacant must be in conformance with California Building Code, Section 116.1. The hospital shall submit a project to the Office to demonstrate remediation of potential unsafe and insanitary conditions.*

312.3.6 Chemical dependency recovery services. *Chemical dependency recovery services shall be permitted to be provided within a hospital building that has been removed from general acute care use.*

SECTION 313 [SFM]—EXISTING GROUP R-1 AND GROUP R-2 OCCUPANCIES

313.1 Scope. *The provisions of this section are intended to maintain or increase the current degree of public safety, health and general welfare in existing buildings classified as Group R Occupancies.*

313.1.1 Application. *In accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 13143.2, the provisions of Sections 313.2 through 313.12 shall only apply to multiple-story structures existing on January 1, 1975, let for human habitation, including, and limited to, apartment houses, hotels and motels wherein rooms used for sleeping are let above the ground floor.*

313.2 Number of exits. *Every apartment and every other sleeping room shall have access to not less than two exits when the occupant load is 10 or more (exits need not be directly from the apartment or sleeping room). A fire escape as specified herein may be used as one required exit.*

Subject to approval of the authority having jurisdiction, a ladder device as specified herein may be used in lieu of a fire escape when the construction feature or the location of the building on the property cause the installation of a fire escape to be impractical.

313.3 Stair construction. *All stairs shall have a minimum run of 9 inches (229 mm) and a maximum rise of 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum width exclusive of handrails of 30 inches (762 mm). Every stairway shall have at least one handrail. A landing having a minimum horizontal dimension of 30 inches (762 mm) shall be provided at each point of access to the stairway.*

313.4 Interior stairways. *Every interior stairway shall be enclosed with walls of not less than 1-hour fire-resistive construction. Where existing partitions form part of a stairwell enclosure, wood lath and plaster in good condition will be acceptable in lieu of 1-hour fire-resistive construction. Doors to such enclosures shall be protected by a self-closing door equivalent to a solid wood door with a thickness of not less than $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (44.5 mm).*

Enclosures shall include all landings between flights and any corridors, passageways or public rooms necessary for continuous exit to the exterior of the buildings. The stairway need not be enclosed in a continuous shaft if cut off at each story by the fire-resistive construction required by this subsection for stairwell enclosures. Enclosures shall not be required if an automatic sprinkler system is provided for all portions of the building except bedrooms, apartments and rooms accessory thereto. Interior stairs and vertical openings need not be enclosed in two-story buildings.

313.5 Exterior stairways. *Exterior stairways shall be noncombustible or of wood of not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness with solid treads and risers.*

313.6 Fire escapes, exit ladder devices. *Fire escapes may be used as one means of egress if the pitch does not exceed 60 degrees, the width is not less than 18 inches (457 mm), the treads are not less than 4 inches (102 mm) wide, and they extend to the ground or are provided with counterbalanced stairs reaching to the ground. Access shall be by an opening having a minimum dimension of 29 inches (737 mm) when open. The sill shall not be more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor and landing.*

A ladder device, when used in lieu of a fire escape, shall conform to Section 313.6.1 and the following:

1. *Serves an occupant load of nine people or less or a single dwelling unit or hotel room.*
2. *The building does not exceed three stories in height.*
3. *The access is adjacent to an opening as specified for emergency egress or rescue or from a balcony.*
4. *The device does not pass in front of any building opening below the unit being served.*
5. *The availability of activating the ladder device is accessible only to the opening or balcony served.*
6. *The device as installed will not cause a person using it to be within 12 feet (3658 mm) of exposed energized high-voltage conductors.*

313.6.1 Exit ladder devices.

313.6.1.1 Scope. *This standard for exit ladder devices is applicable where such devices are permitted by the building official for installation on existing apartment houses and hotels in conformance with the California Building Code.*

313.6.1.2 Instructions. *Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Instructions shall be illustrated and shall include directions and information adequate for attaining proper and safe installation of the product. Where exit ladder devices are intended for mounting on different support surfaces, specific installation instructions shall be provided for each surface.*

313.6.1.3 General design. *All load-bearing surfaces and supporting hardware shall be of noncombustible materials. Exit ladder devices shall have a minimum width of 12 inches (305 mm) when in the position intended for use. The design load shall not be less than 400 pounds (1780N) for 16-foot (4877 mm) length and 600 pounds (2699N) for 25-foot (7620 mm) length.*

313.6.1.4 Performance.

313.6.1.4.1 *Exit ladder devices shall be capable of withstanding an applied load of four times the design load when installed in the manner intended for use. Test loads shall be applied for a period of one hour.*

313.6.1.4.2 *Exit ladder devices of the retractable type shall, in addition to the static load requirements of Section 413.6.1.4.1 of the California Building Code, be capable of withstanding the following tests:*

1. *Rung strength.*
2. *Rung-to-side-rail shear strength.*
3. *Release mechanism.*
4. *Low temperature.*

313.6.1.5 Rung-strength test. *Rungs of retractable exit ladder devices shall be capable of withstanding a load of 1,000 pounds (4448N) when applied to a $3^1/_2$-inch-wide (89 mm) block resting at the center of the rung. The test load shall be applied for a period of 1 hour. The ladder shall remain operational following this test.*

313.6.1.6 Rung-to-side-rail shear test. *Rungs of retractable exit ladder devices shall be capable of withstanding 1,000 (4448N) when applied to a $3^1/_2$-inch-wide (89 mm) block resting on the center rung as near the side rail as possible. The test load shall be applied for a period of 1 hour. Upon removal of the test load the fasteners attaching the rung to the side rail shall show no evidence of failure. The ladder shall remain operational following the test.*

313.6.1.7 Release mechanism test. *The release mechanism of retractable exit ladder devices shall operate with an average applied force of not more than 5 pounds (22.2N) for hand-operated releasing mechanisms and an average applied force of not more than 25 pounds (111N) for foot-pedal types of releasing mechanisms. For these tests, a force gauge shall be applied to the release mechanism, and the average of three consecutive readings shall be computed.*

313.6.1.8 Low temperature operation test. *Representative samples of the exit ladder devices shall be subjected to a temperature of -40°C in an environmental chamber for a period of 24 hours. The release mechanism shall be operated immediately upon removal from the chamber. The ladder device shall function as intended without any restriction of operation.*

313.7 Doors and openings. *Exit doors and openings shall meet the requirements of Sections 1008.1.2, 1008.8.1.8, 1008.1.9 and 708.6 of the California Building Code. Doors shall not reduce the required width of stairway more than 6 inches (152 mm) when open. Transoms and openings other than doors from corridors to rooms shall be fixed closed and shall be covered with a minimum of $^3/_4$-inch (19 mm) plywood or $^1/_2$-inch (13 mm) gypsum wallboard or equivalent material.*

Exceptions:

1. *Existing solid-bonded wood-core doors $1^3/_8$ inches thick (34.9 mm), or their equivalent may be continued in use.*
2. *Where the existing frame will not accommodate a door complying with Section 708.6 of the California Building Code, a $1^3/_8$-inch-thick (35 mm) solid-bonded wood-core door may be used.*

313.8 Exit signs. *Every exit doorway or change of direction of a corridor shall be marked with a well-lighted exit sign having letters at least 5 inches (127 mm) high.*

313.9 Enclosure of vertical openings. *Elevators, shafts, ducts and other vertical openings shall be enclosed as required for stairways in Section 313.4 or by wired glass set in metal frames. Doors shall be noncombustible or as regulated in Section 313.4.*

313.10 Separation of occupancies. *Occupancy separations shall be provided as specified in Section 508 of the California Building Code. Lobbies and public dining rooms, not including cocktail lounges, shall not require a separation if the kitchen is so separated from the dining room. Every room containing a boiler or central heating plant shall be separated from the rest of the building by not less than a one-hour fire-resistive occupancy separation.*

Exception: *A separation shall not be required for such rooms with equipment serving only one dwelling unit.*

313.11 Equivalent protection. *In lieu of the separation of occupancies required by Section 313.10, equivalent protection may be permitted when approved by the enforcement agency.*

Exception: *The provisions of Sections 313.3 through 313.11 above shall not apply to any existing apartment house, hotel or motel having floors (as measured from the top of the floor surface) used for human occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest floor level having building access which is subject to the provisions of Section 314 and the California Fire Code,-relating to existing high-rise buildings.*

Note: *In accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 17920.7, the provisions of Sections 313.3 through 313.11 above shall apply only to multiple-story structures existing on January 1, 1975, let for human habitation including, and limited to, apartments, houses, hotels and motels wherein rooms used for sleeping are let above the ground floor.*

313.12 Fire alarms.

313.12.1 General. *Every apartment house three or more stories in height or containing more than 15 apartments, every hotel three or more stories in height or containing 20 or more guest rooms, shall have installed therein an automatic or manually operated fire alarm system. Such fire alarm systems shall be so designed that all occupants of the building may be warned simultaneously and shall be in accordance with the California Fire Code. See Section 314.14 for special requirements in buildings over 75 feet (22 860 mm) in height.*

Exception: *A fire alarm system need not be installed provided such apartment house or hotel is separated by an unpierced wall of not less than 4-hour fire resistance in buildings of Type IA, Type IIB, Type III or Type IV construction and 2-hour fire resistance in buildings of all other types of construction provided:*

1. *Areas do not exceed the number of apartments or guest rooms stipulated.*
2. *The fire-resistive wall conforms to the requirements of Section 706.6 of the California Building Code.*

3. *The wall complies with all other applicable provisions of the California Building Code.*
4. *The wall extends to all outer edges of horizontal projecting elements, such as balconies, roof overhangs, canopies, marquees or architectural projections.*
5. *No openings are permitted for air ducts or similar penetrations, except that openings for pipes, conduits and electrical outlets of copper, sheet steel or ferrous material shall be permitted through such wall and need not be protected, provided they do not unduly impair the required fire resistance of the assembly.*
6. *Tolerances around such penetrations shall be filled with approved noncombustible materials.*

313.12.2 Installation. *The installation of all fire alarm equipment shall be in accordance with the California Fire Code.*

313.13 Existing Group R Occupancy high-rise buildings.

313.13.1 General. *Regardless of other provisions of these regulations relating to existing high-rise buildings, requirements relative to existing Group R-1 or Group R-2 Occupancies shall not be less restrictive than those established pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143.2.*

313.13.2 Corridor openings. *Openings in corridor walls and ceilings shall be protected by not less than $1^{3}/_{4}$-inch (44.5 mm) solid-bonded wood-core doors, $^{1}/_{4}$-inch-thick (6 mm) wired glass conforming to Section 715.1 of the California Building Code, by approved fire dampers or by equivalent protection in lieu of any of these items. Transoms shall be fixed closed with material having a fire-resistive rating equal to $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) Type X gypsum wallboard or equivalent material installed on both sides of the opening.*

313.13.3 Fire alarm systems. *Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 403 of the California Building Code, every existing high-rise building used for the housing of a Group R-1 or Group R-2 Occupancies shall have installed therein a fire alarm system conforming to this subsection.*

313.13.3.1 General. *Every apartment house and every hotel shall have installed therein an automatic or manually operated fire alarm system. Such fire alarm systems shall be so designed that all occupants of the building may be warned simultaneously.*

313.13.3.2 Installation. *The installation of all fire alarm equipment shall be in accordance with the California Fire Code.*

313.13.3.3 Fire-extinguishing systems. *Automatic fire-extinguishing systems installed in any structure subject to these regulations shall have an approved flow indicator electrically interconnected to the required fire alarm system.*

SECTION 314 [SFM]—EXISTING HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS

314.1 Scope and definition. *The provisions of Sections 314.1 through 314.27 shall apply to every existing high-rise building of any type of construction or occupancy having floors (as measured from the top of the floor surface) used for human occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest floor level having building access.*

Exceptions:

1. *Hospitals, as defined in Section 1250 of the Health and Safety Code.*
2. *The following structures, while classified as high-rise buildings, shall not be subject to the provisions of Sections 314.1 through 314.27, but shall conform to all applicable provisions of these regulations.*
    - *2.1. Building used exclusively as open parking garages.*
    - *2.2. Buildings where all floors above the 75 foot (22 860 mm) level are used exclusively as open parking garages.*
    - *2.3. Floors of buildings used exclusively as open parking garages and located above all other floors used for human occupancy.*
    - *2.4. Buildings such as power plants, look-out towers, steeples, grain houses and similar structures, when so determined by the enforcing agency.*
    - *2.5. Buildings used exclusively for jails and prisons. For the purposes of this section, "building access" shall mean an exterior door opening conforming to all of the following:*
        - *2.5.1. Suitable and available for fire department use.*
        - *2.5.2. Located not more than 2 feet (610 mm) above the adjacent ground level.*
        - *2.5.3. Leading to a space, room or area having foot traffic communication capabilities with the remainder of the building.*
        - *2.5.4. Designed to permit penetration through the use of fire department forcible-entry tools and equipment unless other approved arrangements have been made with the fire authority having jurisdiction.*

"Existing high-rise structure" means a high-rise structure, the construction of which is commenced or completed prior to July 1, 1974.

For the purpose of this section, construction shall be deemed to have commenced when plans and specifications are more than 50 percent complete and have been presented to the local jurisdiction prior to July 1, 1974. Actual construction of such buildings shall commence on or before January 1, 1976, unless all provisions for new buildings have been met.

314.2 Compliance data. *Except as may be otherwise specified, existing high-rise building shall conform to the applicable requirements of these regulations by April 26, 1979.*

Exception: *The period of compliance may be extended upon showing of good cause for such extension if a systematic and progressive plan of correction is submitted to, and approved by, the enforcing agency. Such extension shall not exceed two years from the date of approval of such plan. Any plan of correction submitted pursuant to this exception shall be submitted and approved on or before April 26, 1979.*

314.3 Continued use. *Existing high-rise building may have their use continued if they conform, or are made to conform, to the intent of the provisions of Sections 314.5 through 314.27 to provide for the safety of the occupants of the high-rise buildings and person involved in fire-suppression activities.*

314.4 Alternate protection. *Alternate means of egress, fire walls or fire barriers, smoke barriers, automatic fire detection or fire-extinguishing systems, or other fire-protection devices, equipment or installations may be approved by the enforcing agency to provide reasonable and adequate life safety as intended by Sections 314.5 through 314.27 for existing high-rise buildings.*

314.5 Basic provisions. *The provisions outlined in Sections 314.1 through 314.27 are applicable to every existing highrise building.*

314.6 Minimum construction. *Existing wood lath and plaster, existing $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard, existing installations of $^1/_2$-inch thick (12.7 mm) wired glass which are or are rendered inoperative and fixed in a closed position, or other existing materials having similar fire-resistive capabilities shall be acceptable. All such assemblies shall be in good repair, free of any condition which would diminish their original fire-resistive characteristics.*

Where $1^3/_4$-inch (44.5 mm) solid-bonded wood-core doors are specified in these regulations for existing high-rise buildings, new or existing $1^3/_8$-inch (34.9 mm) doors shall be acceptable where existing framing will not accommodate a $1^3/_4$-inch (44.5 mm) door.

Note: *It is the intent of this provisions that existing wood frames may have their use continued.*

314.7 New construction. *All new construction shall be composed of materials and assemblies of materials conforming to the fire-resistive provisions of these regulations. In no case shall enclosure walls be required to be of more than one-hour fire-resistive construction.*

Exception: *When approved by the enforcing agency, materials specified in Section 314.6 may be used for new construction when necessary to maintain continuity of design and measurement of existing construction.*

314.8 Exits. *Every floor from an existing high-rise building shall have access to two separate means of egress, one of which, when approved by the enforcing agency, may be an existing exterior fire escape. New installations of smoke-proof enclosures shall not be required.*

Note: *In determining the adequacy of exits and their design, Chapter 10 of the California Building Code may be used as a guide. It is the intent of this section that every existing high-rise building need not mandatorily conform or be made to conform with the requirements for new high-rise buildings. Reasonable judgment in the application of requirements must be exercised by the enforcing agency.*

314.9 Fire escapes. *An existing fire escape in good structural condition may be acceptable as one of the required means of egress from each floor. Access to such fire escapes may be by any one of the following:*

1. *Through a room between the corridor and the fire escape if the door to the room is operable from the corridor side without the use of any key, special knowledge or effort.*
2. *By a door operable to a fire escape from the interior without the use of any key, special knowledge or effort.*
3. *By a window operable from the interior. Such window shall have a minimum dimension of 29 inches (737 mm) when open.*
4. *The sill shall not be more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor and landing.*

314.10 Protection of exterior openings. *When an existing fire escape is accepted as one of the require means of egress, openings onto the fire escape landing and openings within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the landings shall be protected in a manner acceptable to the enforcing agency.*

314.11 Locking of stairway doors. *When exit doors from corridors to exit stairways are locked to prohibit access from the stairway side, the locking mechanisms shall be retracted to the unlocked position upon failure of electrical power and a telephone or other two-way communication system connected to an approved emergency service that operates continuously shall be provided at not less than every fifth floor in each required stairway. In lieu thereof, master keys which will unlock all such doors from the stairway side shall be provided in such numbers and locations as approved by the enforcing agency.*

314.12 Enclosures. *Interior vertical shafts, including but not limited to, elevators, stairway and utility, shall be enclosed with construction as set forth in Section 314.6.*

314.13 Opening protection. *Doors in other than elevators, which shall be of a type acceptable to the enforcing agency, shall be approved one-hour, fire-rated, tight-fitting or gasketed doors or equivalent protection, and shall be of the normally closed type, self-closing or a type which will close automatically in accordance with Section 715 of the California Building Code.*

Exception: *In lieu of stairway enclosures, smoke barriers may be provided in such a manner that fire and smoke will not spread to other floors or otherwise impair exit facilities. In these instances, smoke barriers shall not be less than one-hour fire resistive with openings protected by not less than approved one-third-hour, fire-rated, tight-fitting or gasketed doors. Such doors shall be of the self-closing type or of a type which will close automatically in the manner specified in Section 715 of the California Building Code.*

Doors crossing corridors shall be provided with wired-glass vision panels set in approved steel frames. Doors for elevators shall not be of the open-grille type.

314.14 Fire alarm system. *Every existing high-rise building shall be provided with an approved fire alarm system. In department stores, retail sales stores and similar occupancies where the general public is admitted, such systems shall be of a type capable of alerting staff and employees. In office buildings and all other high-rise buildings, such systems shall be of a type capable of alerting all occupants simultaneously.*

Exceptions:

1. *In areas of public assemblage, the type and location of audible appliances shall be as determined by the enforcing agency.*
2. *When acceptable to the enforcing agency, the occupant voice notification system required by Section 314.20 may be used in lieu of the fire alarm system required by Section 314.14.*

314.15 Existing systems. *Existing fire systems, when acceptable to the enforcing agency, shall be deemed as conforming to the provisions of these regulations. For requirements for existing Group R-1 Occupancies, see Section 312.13.*

314.16 Annunciation. *When a new fire alarm system is installed, it shall be connected to an annunciator panel installed in a location approved by the enforcing agency. For purposes of annunciation, zoning shall be in accordance with Section 907.6.3 of the California Building Code.*

314.17 Monitoring. *Shall be in accordance with Section 907.6.5 of the California Building Code.*

314.18 Systems interconnection. *When an automatic fire detection system or automatic extinguishing system is installed, activation of such system shall cause the sounding of the fire alarm notification appliances at locations designated by the enforcing agency.*

314.19 Manual fire alarm boxes. *A manual fire alarm box shall be provided in the locations designated by the enforcing agency. Such locations shall be where boxes are readily accessible and visible and in normal paths of daily travel by occupants of the building.*

314.20 Emergency voice/alarm communication system. *An approved emergency voice/alarm system shall be provided in every existing high-rise building which exceeds 150 feet (45 720 mm) in height measured in the manner set forth in Section 312.1. Such system shall provide communication from a location available to and designated by the enforcing agency to not less than all public areas. The emergency voice/alarm system may be combined with a fire alarm system provide the combined system has been approved and listed by the State Fire Marshal. The sounding of a fire alarm signal in any given area or floor shall not prohibit voice communication to other areas of floors. Combination systems shall be designed to permit voice transmission to override the fire alarm signal, but the fire alarm signal shall not terminate in less than three minutes.*

314.21 Fire department system. *When it is determined by test that portable fire department communication equipment is ineffective, a communication system acceptable to the enforcing agency shall be installed within the building to permit emergency communication between fire-suppression personnel.*

314.22 Interior wall and ceiling finish. *Interior wall and ceiling finish of exitways shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 8 of the California Building Code. Where the materials used in such finishes do not conform to the provisions of Chapter 8 of the California Building Code, such finishes may be surfaced with an approved fire-retardant coating.*

314.23 Ventilation. *Natural or mechanical ventilation for the removal of products of combustion shall be provided in every story of an existing high-rise building. Such ventilation shall be any one or combination of the following: Panels or windows in the exterior wall which can be opened. Such venting facilities shall be provided at the rate of at least 20 square feet (1.86 m^2) of opening per 50 lineal feet (15 240 lineal mm) of exterior wall in each story, distributed around the perimeter at not more than 50-foot (15 240 mm) intervals on at least two sides of the building. Approved fixed tempered glass may be used in lieu of openable panels or windows. When only selected panels or windows are of tempered glass, they shall be clearly identified as required by the enforcing agency. Any other design which will produce equivalent results.*

314.24 Smoke control systems. *Existing air-circulation systems shall be provided with an override switch in a location approved by the enforcing agency which will allow for the manual control of shutdown of the systems.*

Exception: *Systems which serve only a single floor, or portion thereof, without any penetration by ducts or other means into adjacent floors.*

314.25 Elevator recall smoke detection. *Smoke detectors for emergency operation of elevators shall be provided as required by Section 3003 of the California Building Code.*

314.26 Exit signs and illumination. *Exits and stairways shall be provided with exit signs and illumination as required by Sections 1011.1 and 1011.2 of the California Building Code.*

314.27 Automatic sprinkler system–Existing high-rise buildings. *Regardless of any other provisions of these regulations, every existing high-rise building of Type II-B, Type III-B or Type V-B construction shall be provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system conforming to NFPA 13.*

SECTION 315 [SFM]—EXISTING GROUP I OCCUPANCIES

315.1 General. *Existing buildings housing existing protective social-care homes or facilities established prior to March 4, 1972 may have their use continued if they conform, or are made to conform, to the following provisions:*

315.2 Use of floors. *The use of floor levels in buildings of Type III, IV or V nonfire-rated construction may be as follows: Nonambulatory—first floor only; Ambulatory—not higher than the third-floor level, provided walls and partitions are constructed of materials equal in fireresistive quality to that of wood lath and plaster in good repair and all walls are firestopped at each floor level.*

315.3 Enclosure of exits and vertical openings. *Except for two-story structures housing ambulatory guests, all interior stairs shall be enclosed in accordance with Chapter 10 of the California Building Code. In lieu of stairway enclosures, floor separations or smoke barriers may be provided in such a manner that fire and smoke will not spread rapidly to floors above or otherwise impair exit facilities. In these instances, floor separations or smoke barriers shall have a fire resistance equal to not less than $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (13 mm) gypsum wall board on each side of wood studs with openings protected by not less than a $1^{3}/_{4}$-inch (44.5 mm) solid bonded wood-core door of the self-closing type. All other vertical openings shall be enclosed in accordance with the provisions of Section 314.6 and 314.13.*

315.4 Exit access. *Each floor or portion thereof of buildings used for the housing of existing protective social-care homes or facilities shall have access to not less than two exits in such a manner as to furnish egress from the building or structure in the event of an emergency substantially equivalent to the provisions of Chapter 10 of the California Building Code.*

315.5 Corridor openings. *Openings from rooms to interior corridors shall be protected by not less than $1^{3}/_{4}$-inch (44.5 mm) solid-bonded wood-core doors. Transoms and other similar openings shall be sealed with materials equivalent to existing corridor wall construction.*

315.6 Interior finishes. *Interior wall and ceiling finishes shall conform to the requirements for a Group R-1 Occupancy as specified in Chapter 8 of the California Building Code.*

315.7 Automatic fire sprinklers. *Automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in existing protective social-care occupancies in accordance with the provisions of Section 903.2.6 of the California Building Code.*

315.8 Fire alarm systems. *Automatic fire alarm systems shall be installed in existing protective social-care homes or facilities in accordance with the provisions of Section 907.2.6 of the California Building Code.*

> ***Exception:*** *When an approved automatic sprinkler system conforming to Section 903.2.6 of the California Building Code is installed, a separate fire alarm system as specified in this section need not be provided.*

SECTION 316 [SFM]—EXISTING GROUP L OCCUPANCIES

316.1 Repairs general. *Additions, alterations or repairs may be made to any building or structure without requiring the existing building or structure to comply with all the requirements of this code section, provided the addition, alteration or repair conforms to the requirements of this section.*

316.2 Unsafe condition. *Additions, repairs or alterations shall not be made to an existing building or structure that will cause the existing building or structure to be in violation of any of the provisions of this code, nor shall such additions or alterations cause the existing building or structure to become unsafe, or to be in violation of any of the provisions of this code. An unsafe condition shall be deemed to have been created if an addition or alteration will cause the existing building or structure to become structurally unsafe or overloaded; will not provide adequate egress in compliance with the provisions of this code or will obstruct existing exits; will create a fire hazard; will reduce required fire resistance or will otherwise create conditions dangerous to human life.*

316.3 Changes in use or occupancy. *Any buildings that have alternations or additions, which involves a change in use or occupancy, shall not exceed the height, number of stories and area permitted for new buildings.*

316.4 Buildings not in compliance with code. *Additions or alterations shall not be made to an existing building or structure when such existing building or structure is not in full compliance with the provisions of this code except when such addition or alteration will result in the existing building or structure being no more hazardous, based on life safety, fire safety and sanitation, than before such additions or alterations are undertaken.*

316.5 Maintenance of structural and fire resistive integrity. *Alterations or repairs to an existing building or structure that are nonstructural and do not adversely affect any structural member of any part of the building or structure having required fire resistance may be made with the same materials of which the building or structure is constructed. The installation or replacement of glass shall be as required for new installations.*

316.6 Continuation of existing use. *Buildings in existence at the time of the adoption of this code may have their existing use or occupancy continued if such use or occupancy was legal at the time of the adoption of this code, provided such continued use is not dangerous to life.*

316.7 Maximum allowable quantities. *Laboratory suites approved prior to January 1, 2008 shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities listed in Tables 316.1 and 316.2.*

TABLE 316.7(1)—EXEMPT AMOUNTS OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS, LIQUIDS AND CHEMICALS PRESENTING A PHYSICAL HAZARD BASIC QUANTITIES PER LABORATORY SUITE[1]
When two units are given, values within parentheses are in cubic feet (cu. ft) or pounds (lb)

CONDITION		STORAGE			USE CLOSED SYSTEMS			USE OPEN SYSTEMS		
MATERIAL	CLASS	Solid Pounds (cu. ft)	Liquid Gallons (lb)	Gas (cu. ft)	Solid Pounds (cu. ft)	Liquid Gallons (lb)	Gas (cu. ft)	Solid Pounds (cu. ft)	Liquid Gallons (lb)	Gas (cu. ft)
1.1 Combustible liquid	II	—	120[2]	—	—	120	—		30	—
	II-A	—	330[2]	—	—	330	—		80	—
	III-B	—	13,200[2]	—	—	13,200	—		3,300	—
1.2 Combustible dust lbs./1000 cu. ft.		1	—	—	1	—	—	1	—	—
1.3 Combustible fiber (loose) (baled)		(100) (1,000)	— —	— —	(100) (1,000)	— —	— —	(20) (200)	— —	— —
1.4 Cryogenic, flammable or oxidizing			45	—		45	—		10	—
2.1 Explosives		12	(1)[2]	—	1/4	(1/4)	—	1/4	(1/4)	—
3.1 Flammable solid		125[2]	—	—	25	—	—	25	—	—
3.2 Flammable gas (gaseous) (liquefied)		— —	— 15[2]	750[2] —	— —	— 15[2]	750[2] —	— —	— —	— —
3.3 Flammable liquid Combination I-A, I-B, I-C	I-A	—	30[2]	—	—	30	—	—	10	—
	I-B	—	60[2]	—	—	60	—	—	15	—
	I-C	—	90[2]	—	—	90	—	—	20	—
		—	120[2]	—	—	120	—	—	30	—
4.1 Organic peroxide, unclassified detonatable		1[2]	(1)[2]	—	1/4	(1/4)	—	1/4	(1/4)	—
4.2 Organic peroxide	I	5[2]	(5)[2]	—	(1)	(1)	—	1	1	—
	II	50[2]	(50)[2]	—	50	(50)	—	10	(10)	—
	III	125[2]	(125)[2]	—	125	(125)	—	25	(25)	—
	IV	500	(500)	—	500	(500)	—	100	(100)	—
	V	N.L.	N.L.	—	N.L.	N.L.	—	N.L.	N.L.	—
4.3 Oxidizer	4	1[2]	(1)[2]	—	1/4[2]	(1/4)	—	1/4	(1/4)	—
	3	10[2]	(10)[2]	—	2	(2)	—	2	(2)	—
	2	250[2]	(250)[2]	—	50	(250)	—	50	(50)	—
	1	1,000[2]	(1,000)[2]	—	1,000	(1,000)	—	200	(200)	—
4.4 Oxidizer.Gas (gaseous) (liquefied)		— —	— 15[2]	1,500[2] —	— —	— 15[2]	1,500[2] —	— —	— —	— —
5.1 Pyrophoric		4[2]	(4)[2]	50[2]	1	(1)	10[2]	0	0	0
6.1 Unstable (reactive)	4	1[2]	(1)[2]	10[2]	1/4	(1/4)	2[2]	1/4	(1/4)	0
	3	5[2]	(5)[2]	50[2]	1	(1)	10[2]	1	(1)	0
	2	50[2]	(50)[2]	250[2]	50	(50)	250[2]	10	(10)	0
	1	125[2]	(125)[2]	750[2]	125	(125)	750[2]	25	(25)	0
7.1 Water (reactive)	3	5[2]	(5)[2]	—	5	(5)	—	1	(1)	—
	2	50[2]	(50)[2]	—	50	(50)	—	10	(10)	—
	1	125[2]	(125)[2]	—	125	(125)[2]	—	25	(25)	—

1. A laboratory suite is a space up to 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) bounded by not less than a one-hour fire-resistive occupancy separation within which the exempt amounts of hazardous materials may be stored, dispensed, handled or used. Up through the third floor and down through the first basement floor, the quantity in this table shall apply. Fourth, fifth and sixth floors and the second and third basement floor level quantity shall be reduced to 75 percent of this table. The seventh through 10th floor and below the third basement floor level quantity shall be reduced to 50 percent of this table.
2. Quantities may be increased 100 percent when stored in approved exhausted gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures or fume hoods.

TABLE 316.7(2)—EXEMPT AMOUNTS OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS, LIQUIDS AND CHEMICALS PRESENTING A PHYSICAL HAZARD BASIC QUANTITIES PER LABORATORY SUITE[1]
When two units are given, values within parentheses are in pounds (lbs.)

MATERIAL	STORAGE			USE CLOSED SYSTEMS			USE OPEN SYSTEMS	
	Solid lb	Liquid Gallons (lb)	Gas cu. ft	Solid lb	Liquid Gallons (lb)	Gas (cu. ft)	Solid lb	Liquid Gallons (lb)
1. Corrosives	5,000	500	650[2]	5,000	500	650	1,000	100
2a. Highly toxics[2]	40	10	65	5	1	65	2	1/4
2b. Toxics	500	50	650[2]	500	50	650	5	1/2
3. Irritants	5,000	500	650	5,000	500	650	1,000	100
4. Sensitizers	5,000	500	650	5,000	500	650	1,000	100
5. Other health hazards	5,000	500	650	5,000	500	650	1,000	100

1. A laboratory suite is a space up to 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) bounded by not less than a 1-hour fire-resistive occupancy separation within which the exempt amounts of hazardous materials may be stored, dispensed, handled or used. Up through the third floor and down through the first basement floor, the quantity in this table shall apply. Fourth, fifth and sixth floors and the second and third basement floor level quantity shall be reduced to 75 percent of this table. The seventh through 10th floor and below the third basement floor level quantity shall be reduced to 50 percent of this table.
2. Permitted only when stored or used in approved exhausted gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures or fume hoods. Quantities of high toxics in use in open systems need not be reduced above the third floor or below the first basement floor level. Individual container size shall be limited to 2 pounds (0.91 kg) for solids and 1/4 gallon (0.95 L) for liquids.

SECTION 317 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]—EARTHQUAKE EVALUATION AND DESIGN FOR RETROFIT OF EXISTING BUILDINGS

317.1 Purpose.

317.1.1 Existing state-owned structures. [BSC] The provisions of Sections 317 through 322 establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for retrofit of existing state-owned structures, including buildings owned by the University of California and the California State University.

The provisions of Sections 317 through 323 may be adopted by a local jurisdiction for earthquake evaluation and design for retrofit of existing buildings.

317.1.2 Public school buildings. [DSA-SS] The provisions of Sections 317 through 323 establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for the rehabilitation of existing buildings for use as public school buildings under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety [DSA-SS], refer to Section 1.9.2.1.

The provisions of Section 317 through 323 also establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for rehabilitation of existing public buildings currently under the jurisdiction of DSA-SS.

317.1.2.1 Reference to other chapters. For public schools, where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 16, 17, 18, 19, 21 or 22 of the California Building Code, the provisions in Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A of the California Building Code, respectively, shall apply instead.

317.1.3 Community college buildings. [DSA-SS/CC] The provisions of Sections 317 through 323 establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for the rehabilitation of existing buildings for use as community college buildings under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC], refer to Section 1.9.2.2.

The provisions of Section 317 through 323 also establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for rehabilitation of existing community college buildings currently under the jurisdiction of DSA-SS/CC.

317.1.3.1 Reference to other chapters. For community colleges, where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 17 or 18 of the California Building Code, the provisions in Chapters 17A and 18A of the California Building Code, respectively, shall apply instead.

317.2 Scope. All alterations, structurally connected additions and/or repairs to existing structures or portions thereof shall, at a minimum, be designed and constructed to resist the effects of seismic ground motions as provided in this section. The structural system shall be evaluated by a registered design professional and, if not meeting or exceeding the minimum seismic design performance requirements of this section, shall be retrofitted in compliance with these requirements.

Exception: Those structures for which Section 317.3 determines that assessment is not required, or for which Section 317.4 determines that retrofit is not needed, then only the requirements of Section 317.11 apply.

317.3 Applicability.

317.3.1 Existing state-owned buildings. [BSC, DSA-SS] For existing state-owned structures including all buildings owned by the University of California and the California State University, the requirements of Section 317 apply whenever the structure is to be retrofitted, repaired or modified and any of the following apply:

1. Total construction cost, not including cost of furnishings, fixtures and equipment, or normal maintenance, for the building exceeds 25 percent of the construction cost for the replacement of the existing building. The changes are cumulative for past modifications to the building that occurred after adoption of the 1995 California Building Code and did not require seismic retrofit.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2. *There are changes in risk category.*
3. *The modification to the structural components increases the seismic forces in or strength requirements of any structural component of the existing structure by more than 10 percent cumulative since the original construction, unless the component has the capacity to resist the increased forces determined in accordance with Section 319. If the building's seismic base shear capacity has been increased since the original construction, the percent change in base shear may be calculated relative to the increased value.*
4. *Structural elements need repair where the damage has reduced the lateral-load-resisting capacity of the structural system by more than 10 percent.*
5. *Changes in live or dead load increase story shear by more than 10 percent.*

317.3.2 Public school buildings. [DSA-SS] *For public schools, the provisions of Section 317 apply when required in accordance with Sections 4-307 and 4-309(c) of the California Administrative Code.*

317.3.3 Community college buildings. [DSA-SS/CC] *For community colleges, the provisions of Section 317 apply when required in accordance with Sections 4-307 and 4-309(c) of the California Administrative Code.*

317.4 Evaluation required. *If the criteria in Section 317.3 apply to the project under consideration, the design professional of record shall provide an evaluation in accordance with Section 317 to determine the seismic performance of the building in its current configuration and condition. If the structure's seismic performance as required by Section 317.5 is evaluated as satisfactory and the peer reviewer(s), when Method B of Section 321 is used, concur, then no structural retrofit is required.*

317.5 Minimum seismic design performance levels for structural and nonstructural components. *Following the notations of ASCE 41, the seismic requirements for design and assessment are based upon a prescribed Seismic Hazard Level (BSE-1N, BSE-2N, BSE-1E, BSE-R or BSE-C), a specified structural performance level (S-1 through S-5) and a nonstructural performance level (N-A through N-E). The minimum seismic performance criteria are given in Table 317.5 according to the Building Regulatory Authority and the Risk Category as determined in Chapter 16 of the California Building Code or by the regulatory authority. The building shall be evaluated in accordance with a Tier 3 Systematic Evaluation and Retrofit per ASCE 41 Chapter 6 for both the Level 1 and Level 2 performance levels, and the more restrictive requirements shall apply.*

Exception: *If the floor area of an addition is greater than the larger of 50 percent of the floor area of the original building or 1,000 square feet (93 m^2), then the Table 317.5 entries for BSE-R (or BSE-1E) and BSE-C are replaced by BSE-1N and BSE-2N, respectively.*

TABLE 317.5—SEISMIC PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS[2, 3] BY BUILDING REGULATORY AUTHORITY AND RISK CATEGORY

BUILDING REGULATORY AUTHORITY	RISK CATEGORY	PERFORMANCE CRITERIA[1]	
		Level 1	Level 2
State-Owned [BSC]	I, II, III	BSE-R, S-3, N-C	BSE-C, S-5, N-D
State-Owned [BSC]	IV	BSE-R, S-1, N-B	BSE-C, S-3, N-D
Division of the State Architect - [DSA-SS]	I	BSE-1N, S-3, N-B	BSE-2N, S-5, N-D
Division of the State Architect - [DSA-SS]	II, III	BSE-1N, S-2, N-B	BSE-2N, S-4, N-D
Division of the State Architect - [DSA-SS][4]	IV	BSE-1N, S-1, N-A	BSE-2N, S-3, N-D
Division of the State Architect - [DSA-SS/CC]	I, II	BSE-1E, S-3, N-C	BSE-2N, S-5, N-D
Division of the State Architect - [DSA-SS/CC]	III	BSE-1E, S-3, N-B	BSE-2N, S-5, N-D
Division of the State Architect - [DSA-SS/CC]	IV	BSE-1E, S-1, N-B	BSE-2N, S-3, N-D

1. *ASCE 41 provides acceptance criteria (e.g., m-factor, rotation) for Immediate Occupancy (S1), Life Safety (S3) and Collapse Prevention (S5), and specifies in Table 2-1 the method to interpolate values for S-2 and S-4. When evaluating for the Hazards Reduced Nonstructural Performance Level, the requirements need not be greater than what would be required by ASCE 7 nonstructural provisions for new construction.*
2. *Buildings evaluated and retrofitted to meet the structural and nonstructural requirements for a new building as given in the California Building Code as adopted by DSA or BSC, as applicable, are deemed to meet the seismic performance requirements of this section.*
3. *Buildings complying with the requirements of the exception in Section 319.1 are deemed to meet the seismic performance requirements of this section.*
4. *State-owned and state-leased essential services buildings are subject to the regulatory authority of DSA-SS per Section 1.9.2.1.*

317.6 Retrofit required. *Where the evaluation indicates the building does not meet the required performance objectives of this section, the owner shall take appropriate steps to ensure that the building's structural system is retrofitted in accordance with the provisions of Section 317. Appropriate steps are either: 1) undertake the seismic retrofit as part of the additions, alterations and/or repairs of the structure; or 2) provide a plan, acceptable to the building official, to complete the seismic retrofit in a timely manner. The relocation or moving of an existing building is considered to be an alteration requiring filing of the plans and specifications approved by the building official.*

317.7 *The additions, alteration or repair to any existing building are permitted to be prepared in accordance with the structural and nonstructural requirements for a new building as given in the California Building Code, applied to the entire building.*

317.8 *The requirements of ASCE 41 Chapters 14 and 15 are to apply to the use of seismic isolation and passive energy systems, respectively, for the repair, voluntary lateral-force-resisting system modification or retrofit of an existing structure. When seismic isolation or passive energy dissipation is used, the project must have project peer review as prescribed in Section 322.*

317.9 *Any construction required by this chapter shall include structural observation by the registered design professional who is responsible for the structural design in accordance with Section 319.10.*

317.10 *Where Method B of Section 321 is used or is required by Section 319.7, the proposed method of building evaluation and design procedures must be accepted by the building official prior to the commencement of the work.*

317.11 Voluntary lateral-force-resisting system modifications. *Where the exception of Section 317.2 applies, modifications of existing structural components and additions of new structural components that are initiated for the purpose of improving the seismic performance of an existing structure and that are not required by other portions of this chapter are permitted under the requirements of Section 319.12.*

SECTION 318 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]—DEFINITIONS

318.1 *In addition to the definitions given in Section 202, for the purposes of Sections 317 through 323, certain terms are defined as follows:*

[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] *For the purposes of Section 317 through 323, definitions of terms given in Section 4-207 or 4-314 of the California Administrative Code govern over those in Section 202.*

ADDITION [BSC] *means any work that increases the floor or roof area or the volume of enclosed space of an existing building, and is structurally attached to the existing building by connections that are required for transmitting vertical or horizontal loads between the addition and the existing structure.*

ALTERATION [BSC] *means any change within or to an existing building, which does not increase and may decrease the floor or roof area or the volume of enclosed space.*

BSE-C RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETERS [BSC] *are the parameters (S_{XS} and S_{X1}) taken from 5-percent/50-year maximum direction spectral response acceleration curves or by a Site Specific Response Spectrum developed in accordance with ASCE 41, Section 2.3.3.*

BSE-R RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETERS [BSC] *are the parameters (S_{XS} and S_{X1}) taken from 20-percent /50-year maximum direction spectral response acceleration curves or by a Site Specific Response Spectrum developed in accordance with ASCE 41, Section 2.3.3.*

SECTION 319 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]—SEISMIC CRITERIA SELECTION FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS

319.1 Basis for evaluation and design. *This section determines what technical approach is to be used for the seismic evaluation and design for existing buildings. For those buildings or portions of buildings for which Section 317 requires action, the procedures and limitations for the evaluation of existing buildings and design of retrofit systems and/or repair thereof shall be implemented in accordance with this section.*

One of the following approaches must be used:

1. *Method A of Section 320;*
2. *Method B of Section 321, with independent review of a peer reviewer as required in Section 322; or*
3. *For state-owned buildings only, the use of one of the specific procedures listed in Section 319.1.1.*

When Method B is chosen it must be approved by the building official, and, where applicable, by the peer reviewer. All referenced standards in ASCE 41 shall be replaced by referenced standards listed in Chapter 35 of the California Building Code.

Exceptions:

1. ***[BSC]*** *For buildings constructed to the requirements of California Building Code, 2019 or later edition, as adopted by the governing jurisdiction, that code is permitted to be used in place of those specified in Section 319.1.*
2. ***[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]*** *For the conversion of nonconforming buildings to conforming school buildings in accordance with Section 4-307 of the California Administrative Code, nonconforming buildings constructed to the requirements of California Building Code, 2019 or later edition, that code as it was adopted by the governing jurisdiction is permitted to be used in place of those specified in Section 319.1 provided the building complies with Seismic Design Category D or higher.*

319.1.1 Specific procedures. [BSC] *For state-owned buildings, the following specific procedures located in Appendix A may be used, without peer review, for their respective types of construction to comply with the seismic performance requirements for Risk Category I, II or III buildings:*

1. *Seismic Strengthening Provisions for Unreinforced Masonry Bearing Wall Buildings (Chapter A1).*
2. *Earthquake Hazard Reduction in Existing Reinforced Concrete and Reinforced Masonry Wall Buildings with Flexible Diaphragms (Chapter A2).*

319.1.2 *When a design project is begun under Method B the selection of the peer reviewer is subject to the approval of the building official. Following approval by the peer reviewer, the seismic criteria for the project and the planned evaluation provisions must be approved by the building official. The approved seismic criteria and evaluation provisions shall apply. Upon approval of the building official these are permitted to be modified.*

319.1.3 *For state-owned and community college buildings, where unreinforced masonry is not bearing, it may be used only to resist applied lateral loads. Where unreinforced masonry walls are part of the structure they must be assessed for stability under the applicable nonstructural evaluation procedure.*

319.1.4 Public schools. [DSA-SS] *For public schools, unreinforced masonry shall not be used to resist in-plane or out-of-plane seismic forces or superimposed gravity loads.*

319.1.5 Public schools. [DSA-SS] *Wood horizontal diaphragms and wood vertical shear walls shall consist of either diagonal lumber sheathing or structural panel sheathing. Braced horizontal diaphragms may be acceptable when approved by DSA. Straight lumber sheathing may be used as diaphragms or shear walls only when overlain with structural panel sheathing. Let-in bracing, plaster (stucco), hollow clay tile, gypsum wallboard and particleboard sheathing shall not be relied upon to resist seismic forces.*

319.2 Existing conditions. *The existing condition and properties of the entire structure must be determined and documented by thorough inspection of the structure and site, review of all available related construction documents, review of geotechnical and engineering geologic reports, and performance of necessary testing and investigation. Where samples from the existing structure are taken or in situ tests are performed, they shall be selected and interpreted in a statistically appropriate manner to ensure that the properties determined and used in the evaluation or design are representative of the conditions and structural circumstances likely to be encountered in the structure as a whole. Adjacent structures or site features that may affect the retrofit design shall be identified.*

The entire load path of the seismic-force-resisting system shall be determined, documented and evaluated. The load path includes all the horizontal and vertical elements participating in the structural response: such as diaphragms, diaphragm chords, diaphragm collectors, vertical elements such as walls frames, braces; foundations and the connections between the components and elements of the load path. Repaired or retrofitted elements and the standards under which the work was constructed shall be identified.

Data collection in accordance with ASCE 41 shall meet the following minimum levels:

1. ***[BSC]*** *For state-owned buildings, the requirements shall be met following the data collection requirements of ASCE 41, Section 6.2.*
2. ***[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]*** *For public schools and community college buildings constructed in conformance with the Field Act, visual condition assessment and usual material testing is required unless a more extensive level is required by ASCE 41, Section 6.2.*
3. ***[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]*** *For public schools and community college buildings not constructed in conformance with the Field Act, comprehensive condition assessment and material testing is required, unless a more extensive level is required by ASCE 41, Section 6.2.*

Concrete material requirements and testing for public school and community college buildings shall also comply with Sections 1911A and 1909.5 of the California Building Code, respectively.

Qualified test data from the original construction may be accepted, in part or in whole, by the enforcement agency to fulfill the data collection requirements.

Exceptions:

1. *The number of samples for data collection may be adjusted with approval of the enforcement agency when it has been determined that adequate information has been obtained or additional information is required.*
2. *Welded steel moment frame connections of buildings that may have experienced potentially damaging ground motions shall be inspected in accordance with Chapters 3 and 4, FEMA 352, Recommended Post Earthquake Evaluation and Repair Criteria for Welded Moment-Frame Construction for Seismic Applications (July 2000).*

Where original building plans and specifications are not available, "as-built" plans shall be prepared that depict the existing vertical and lateral structural systems, exterior elements, foundations and nonstructural systems in sufficient detail to complete the design.

Data collection shall be directed and observed by the project structural engineer or design professional in charge of the design.

319.3 Site geology and soil characteristics. *Soil profile shall be assigned in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 18 of the California Building Code.*

319.4 Risk categories. *Each structure shall be placed in one of the Risk Categories in accordance with the requirements of the California Building Code.*

319.5 Configuration requirements. *Each structure shall be designated structurally regular or irregular. If the evaluation and retrofit is in accordance with Table 317.5, Footnote 2 or 3, the building shall be classified by application of ASCE 7, Section 12.3.2. If the evaluation and retrofit is in accordance with ASCE 41, the building shall be classified as irregular when an irregularity defined in ASCE 41, Sections 7.3.1.1.1 through 7.3.1.1.4 exists.*

319.6 General selection of the design method. *The requirements of Method B (Section 321) may be used for any existing building.*

319.7 Prescriptive selection of the design method. *The requirements of Method A per Section 320 or the specific procedures for applicable building types given in Section 319.1.1 are permitted to be used except if the building has one or more characteristics described in Sections 319.7.1 through 319.7.7, in which case Method B shall be used.*

319.7.1 *A building with prestressed or post- tensioned structural components (beams, columns, walls or slabs) or precast structural components (beams, columns, walls or flooring systems).*

319.7.2 *A building classified as irregular per Section 319.5.*

Exceptions:

1. *The retrofit design removes the configurational attributes that caused the building to be classified as irregular.*
2. *The irregularity is demonstrated not to affect the seismic performance of the building.*

319.7.3 *A building assigned to Risk Category IV per Section 319.4.*

319.7.4 *A building with an undefined or hybrid structural system.*

> ***319.7.5*** *A building with a seismic isolation or energy dissipation system, either as part of the existing structure or as part of the retrofit.*

319.7.6 *A building greater than 240 feet (73 m) in height.*

> ***319.7.7*** *A building evaluated per ASCE 41 and its application requires the use of a nonlinear analysis procedure.*

319.8 Strength requirements. *All components of the lateral-force-resisting system must have the strength to meet the acceptance criteria prescribed in ASCE 41, Chapter 7 or as prescribed in the applicable Appendix A chapter of this code if a specific procedure in Section 319.1.1 is used. Any component not having this strength shall have its capacity increased by modifying or supplementing its strength so that it exceeds the demand, or the demand is reduced to less than the existing strength by making other modifications to the structural system.*

Exception: *A component's strength is permitted to be less than that required by the specified seismic load combinations if it can be demonstrated that the associated reduction in seismic performance of the component or its removal due to the failure does not result in a structural system that does not comply with the required performance objectives of Section 317. If this exception is taken for a component, then it cannot be considered part of the primary lateral-load-resisting system.*

319.9 Nonstructural component requirements. *Where the nonstructural performance levels required by Section 317, Table 317.5 are N-D or higher, mechanical, electrical and plumbing components shall comply with the provisions of ASCE 41, Chapter 13, Section 13.2.*

Exception: *Modifications to the procedures and criteria may be made subject to approval by the building official, and concurrence of the peer reviewer if applicable. All reports and correspondence shall also be forwarded to the building official.*

319.10 Structural observation, testing and inspection. *Structural observation, testing and inspection as used in this section shall mean meeting the requirements of Chapter 17 of the California Building Code, with a minimum allowable level of investigation corresponding to seismic design category (SDC) D. Structural observation visits shall occur at significant construction stages and at the completion of the structural retrofit. Structural observation shall be provided for all structures.*

Additional requirements: [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] *For public schools and community colleges, construction material testing, inspection and observation during construction shall also comply with the California Administrative Code.*

319.10.1 *The requirement for structural observation shall be noted and prominently displayed on the front sheet of the approved plans and incorporated into the general notes on the approved plans.*

319.10.2 Preconstruction meeting. *A preconstruction meeting is mandatory for all projects which require structural observation. The meeting shall include, but is not limited to, the registered design professional, structural observer, general constructor, affected subcontractors, the project inspector and a representative of the enforcement agency (designated alternates may attend if approved by the structural observer). The structural observer shall schedule and coordinate this meeting. The purpose of the meeting is to identify and clarify all essential structural components and connections that affect the lateral and vertical load systems and to review scheduling of the required observations for the project's structural system retrofit.*

319.11 Temporary actions. *When compatible with the building use, and the time phasing for both use and the retrofit program, temporary shoring or other structural support is permitted to be considered. Temporary bracing, shoring and prevention of falling hazards are permitted to be used to qualify for Item 1 in Section 319.12 that allows inadequate capability in some existing components, as long as the required performance levels given in Section 317 can be provided by the permanent structure. The consideration for such temporary actions shall be noted in the design documents.*

319.12 Voluntary modifications to the lateral-force resisting system. *Where modifications of existing structural components and additions of new structural components are initiated for the purpose of improving the lateral-force resisting strength or stiffness of an existing structure and they are not required by other sections of this code, then they are permitted to be designed to meet an approved seismic performance criteria provided that an engineering analysis is submitted that follows:*

1. *The capacity of existing structural components required to resist forces is not reduced, unless it can be demonstrated that reduced capacity meets the requirements of Section 319.8.*
2. *The lateral loading to or strength requirement of existing structural components is not increased beyond their capacity.*
3. *New structural components are detailed and connected to the existing structural components as required by the California Building Code.*
4. *New or relocated nonstructural components are detailed and connected to existing or new structural components as required by the California Building Code.*
5. *A dangerous condition is not created.*

Use of ASCE 41 Tier 1 and Tier 2 deficiency only retrofit procedures are pre-approved for use where Section 317.3 does not require an assessment.

319.12.1 State-owned buildings. [BSC] *Voluntary modifications to lateral force-resisting systems conducted in accordance with Appendix A of this code and the referenced standards of the California Building Code shall be permitted.*

319.12.1.1 Design documents. [BSC] *When Section 319.12 is the basis for structural modifications, the approved design documents must clearly state the scope of the seismic modifications and the accepted criteria for the design. The approved design documents must clearly have the phrase "The seismic requirements of the California Existing Building Code have not been checked to determine if these structural modifications meet the full seismic evaluation and strengthening requirements of Sections 317-322: the modifications proposed are to a different seismic performance standard than would be required in Section 319 if they were not voluntary as allowed in Section 319.12."*

319.12.2 Public schools and community colleges. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] *When Section 319.12 is the basis for structural modifications, the approved design documents must clearly indicate the scope of modifications and the acceptance criteria for the design.*

SECTION 320 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]—METHOD A

320.1 General. *The retrofit design shall employ the Linear Static or Linear Dynamic Procedures of ASCE 41, Section 7.4.1 or 7.4.2, and comply with the applicable general requirements of ASCE 41, Chapters 6 and 7. The earthquake hazard level and performance level given specified in Section 317.5 for the building's risk category shall be used. Structures shall be designed for seismic forces coming from any horizontal direction.*

SECTION 321 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]—METHOD B

321.1 *The existing or retrofitted structure shall be demonstrated to have the capability to sustain the deformation response due to the specified earthquake ground motions and meet the seismic performance requirements of Section 317. The registered design professional shall provide an evaluation of the response of the existing structure in its modified configuration and condition to the ground motions specified. If the building's seismic performance is evaluated as satisfactory and the peer reviewer(s) and the enforcement agency concurs, then no further structural retrofit and/or repair of the lateral load-resisting system is required.*

When the evaluation indicates the building does not meet the required performance levels given in Table 317.5 for the risk category, then a retrofit and/or repair design shall be prepared that provides a structure that meets these performance objectives and reflects the appropriate consideration of existing conditions. Any approach to analysis and design is permitted to be used, provided that the approach shall be rational, shall be consistent with the established principals of mechanics and shall use the known performance characteristics of materials and assemblages under reversing loads typical of severe earthquake ground motions.

Exception: *Further consideration of the structure's seismic performance may be waived by the enforcement agency if both the registered design professional and peer reviewer(s) conclude that the structural system can be expected to perform at least as well as required by the provisions of this section without completing an analysis of the structure's compliance with these requirements. A detailed report shall be submitted to the responsible building official that presents the reasons and basis for this conclusion. This report shall be prepared by the registered design professional. The peer reviewer(s) shall concur in this conclusion and affirm to it in writing. The building official shall either approve this decision or require completion of the indicated work specified in this section prior to approval.*

321.2 *The approach, models, analysis procedures, assumptions on material and system behavior and conclusions shall be peer reviewed in accordance with the requirements of Section 322 and accepted by the peer reviewer(s).*

Exceptions:

1. *The enforcement agency may perform the work of peer review when qualified staff is available within the jurisdiction.*
2. *The enforcement agency may modify or waive the requirements for peer review when appropriate.*

321.2.1 *The approach used in the development of the design shall be acceptable to the peer reviewer and the enforcement agency and shall be the same method as used in the evaluation of the building. Approaches that are specifically tailored to the type of building, construction materials and specific building characteristics may be used, if they are acceptable to the independent peer reviewer. The use of Method A allowed procedures may also be used under Method B.*

321.2.2 *Any method of analysis may be used, subject to acceptance by the peer reviewer(s) and the building official. The general requirements given in ASCE 41, Chapters 6 and 7, shall be complied with unless exceptions are accepted by the peer reviewer(s) and building official. Use of other than ASCE 41 procedures in Method B requires building official concurrence before implementation.*

321.2.3 *Prior to implementation, the procedures, methods, material assumptions and acceptance/rejection criteria proposed by the registered design professional will be peer reviewed as provided in Section 322. Where nonlinear procedures are used, prior to any analysis, the representation of the seismic ground motion shall be reviewed and approved by the peer reviewer(s) and the building official.*

[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] *For public school and community college projects, the representation of the seismic ground motion shall be reviewed and approved by the California Geological Survey.*

321.2.4 *The conclusions and design decisions shall be reviewed and accepted by the peer reviewer(s) and the building official.*

SECTION 322 [BSC, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]—PEER REVIEW REQUIREMENTS

322.1 General. *Independent peer review is an objective, technical review by knowledgeable reviewer(s) experienced in the structural design, analysis and performance issues involved. The reviewer(s) shall examine the available information on the condition of the building, the basic engineering concepts employed and the recommendations for action.*

322.2 Timing of independent review. *The independent reviewer(s) shall be selected prior to initiation of substantial portions of the design and/or analysis work that is to be reviewed, and review shall start as soon as practical after Method B is adopted and sufficient information defining the project is available.*

322.3 Qualifications and terms of employment. *The reviewer(s) shall be independent from the design and construction team.*

322.3.1 *The reviewer(s) shall have no other involvement in the project before, during or after the review, except in a review capacity.*

322.3.2 *The reviewer(s) shall be selected and paid by the owner and shall have technical expertise in the evaluation and retrofit of buildings similar to the one being reviewed, as determined by the enforcement agency.*

322.3.3 *The reviewer (or in the case of review teams, the chair) shall be a California-licensed structural engineer who is familiar with the technical issues and regulations governing the work to be reviewed.*

Exception: *Other individuals with acceptable qualifications and experience may be a peer reviewer(s) with the approval of the building official.*

322.3.4 *The reviewer shall serve through completion of the project and shall not be terminated except for failure to perform the duties specified herein. Such termination shall be in writing with copies to the enforcement agency, owner and the registered design professional. When a reviewer is terminated or resigns, a qualified replacement shall be appointed within 10 working days, and the reviewer shall submit copies of all reports, notes and correspondence to the responsible building official, the owner and the registered design professional within 10 working days of such termination.*

322.3.5 *The peer reviewer shall have access in a timely manner to all documents, materials and information deemed necessary by the peer reviewer to complete the peer review.*

322.4 Scope of review. *Review activities shall include, where appropriate, available construction documents, design criteria and representative observations of the condition of the structure, all inspection and testing reports, including methods of sampling, analytical models and analyses prepared by the registered design professional and consultants, and the retrofit or repair design. Review shall include consideration of the proposed design approach, methods, materials, details and constructability.*

Changes observed during construction that affect the seismic-resisting system shall be reported to the reviewer in writing for review and recommendation.

322.5 Reports. *The reviewer(s) shall prepare a written report to the owner and building official that covers all aspects of the review performed, including conclusions reached by the reviewer(s). Reports shall be issued after the schematic phase, during design development, and at the completion of construction documents but prior to submittal of the project plans to the enforcement agency for plan review. When acceptable to the building official, the requirement for a report during a specific phase of the project development may be waived.*

Such reports should include, at the minimum, statements of the following:

1. *Scope of engineering design peer review with limitations defined.*
2. *The status of the project documents at each review stage.*
3. *Ability of selected materials and framing systems to meet performance criteria with given loads and configuration.*
4. *Degree of structural system redundancy and the deformation compatibility among structural and nonstructural components.*
5. *Basic constructability of the retrofit or repair system.*
6. *Other recommendations that would be appropriate to the specific project.*
7. *Presentation of the conclusions of the reviewer identifying any areas that need further review, investigation and/or clarification.*
8. *Recommendations.*

The last report prepared prior to submittal of permit documents to the enforcement agency shall include a statement indicating that the design is in conformance with the approved evaluation and design criteria.

322.6 Response and resolutions. *The registered design professional shall review the report from the reviewer(s) and shall develop corrective actions and responses as appropriate. Changes observed during construction that affect the seismic-resisting system shall be reported to the reviewer in writing for review and recommendations. All reports, responses and resolutions prepared pursuant to this section shall be submitted to the responsible enforcement agency and the owner along with other plans, specifications and calculations required. If the reviewer resigns or is terminated prior to completion of the project, then the reviewer shall submit copies of all reports, notes and correspondence to the responsible building official, the owner and the registered design professional within 10 working days of such termination.*

322.7 Resolution of conflicts. *When the conclusions and recommendations of the peer reviewer conflict with the registered design professional's proposed design, the enforcement agency shall make the final determination of the requirement for the design.*

SECTION 323 [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]—ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PUBLIC SCHOOLS AND COMMUNITY COLLEGES

The requirements of Section 323 apply only to public schools under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (DSA-SS, refer to Section 1.9.2.1) and community colleges under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC, refer to Section 1.9.2.2).

323.1 Evaluation and design criteria report. *During the schematic phase of the project, the owner or the registered design professional in charge of the design shall prepare and sign an Evaluation and Design Criteria Report in accordance with Sections 4-306 and 4-307(a) of the California Administrative Code. The report shall be submitted to the DSA for review and approval prior to proceeding with design development of the rehabilitation.*

The Evaluation and Design Criteria Report shall:

1. *Identify the building(s) structural and nonstructural systems, potential deficiencies in the elements or systems and the proposed method for retrofit.*

2. *Identify geological and site-related hazards.*
3. *Propose the methodology for evaluation and retrofit design.*
4. *Propose the complete program for data collection (Section 319.2).*
5. *Include existing or "as-built" building plans, reports and associated documents of the existing construction.*

323.2 Rehabilitation involving only portions of structures. *Where only a portion(s) of a structure is to be rehabilitated, the public school or community college portion of the structure shall:*

1. *Be seismically separated from the unrehabilitated portion in accordance with Chapter 16 of the California Building Code, or the entire structure shall be rehabilitated in accordance with this section. For structures in which the unrehabilitated portion is above or below the school or community college portion, the entire structure shall be rehabilitated in accordance with this division.*
2. *Be retrofitted as necessary to protect the occupants from falling hazards of the unrehabilitated portion of the building, and;*
3. *Be retrofitted as necessary to protect required exitways being blocked by collapse or falling hazards of the unrehabilitated portion.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 3A – PROVISIONS FOR ALL COMPLIANCE METHODS [OSHPD1]

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter										X														
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

3A

PROVISIONS FOR ALL COMPLIANCE METHODS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 3A controls the compliance options for alteration, repair, addition, evaluation and change of occupancy of existing structures regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development, which include hospitals and correctional treatment centers [applications listed in Section 1.10.1 (OSHPD 1)].*

SECTION 301*A*—ADMINISTRATION

301*A*.1 Applicability. *The provisions of this chapter shall control the alteration, repair, addition and change of occupancy of existing structures for applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 [OSHPD 1] regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).*

California Energy Commission, State Fire Marshal and DSA-AC requirements for existing structures shall be enforced by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).

301*A*.1.1 Bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating. Existing bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating shall comply with ICC 300.

301*A*.2 Repairs. Repairs shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 4*A*.

301*A*.3 Alteration, addition or change of occupancy. The alteration, addition or change of occupancy of all existing buildings *or structures* shall comply with one of the methods *or categories* listed in Section 301*A*.3.1, 301*A*.3.2 or 301*A*.3.3. *Section 304A.3.2 applies to all methods or categories.* Sections 301*A*.3.1 through 301*A*.3.3 shall not be applied in combination with each other*, except when permitted by the enforcement agency.*

Exception: Subject to the approval of the *enforcement agency,* alterations complying with the laws in existence at the time the building or the affected portion of the building was built shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code. New structural members added as part of the alteration shall comply with the *California Building Code*.

301*A*.3.1 Prescriptive compliance method. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy complying with Chapter 5*A* of this code *for existing* buildings *or structures* shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code.

301*A*.3.2 *Nonconforming buildings*. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy *to existing buildings or structures designed in accordance with the Pre-1973 building code* complying with *Section 304A.3.1 and* the applicable requirements *herein* shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code.

301*A*.3.3 Performance-*based* method. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy *to existing buildings or structures* complying with *Sections 304A.3.4 and 304A.3.5* of this code shall be considered in compliance with the provisions of this code.

301*A*.4 *Moved structures*. *Structures moved into or within the jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of the California Building Code for new structures.*

301A.5 Reserved.

301A.6 Peer review requirements. *Peer review requirements shall comply with California Building Code Section 1617A.1.41.*

301A.7 Earthquake monitoring instruments for existing buildings. *Earthquake monitoring instrumentation of existing buildings shall comply with Section 313A.*

301A.8 Compliance alternatives for services/systems and utilities*. Compliance alternatives for services/systems and utilities shall comply with Section 310A.*

301A.9 Compliance alternatives for means of egress. *Means of egress through existing buildings shall comply with Section 311A.*

301A.10 Removal of hospital buildings from general acute care services. *Removal of hospital buildings from General Acute Care Services shall comply with Section 312A.*

SECTION 302*A*—GENERAL PROVISIONS

302*A*.1 Dangerous conditions. The code official shall have the authority to require the elimination of conditions deemed dangerous.

302*A*.2 Additional codes. *Alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions for alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in the California Fire Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code and California Electrical Code. Where provisions of the other codes conflict with provisions of this chapter, the provisions of this chapter shall take precedence.*

302*A*.2.1 Additional codes in health care. In existing Group I-2 occupancies, ambulatory health care facilities, outpatient clinics and hyperbaric facilities, alterations, repairs, additions and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall also comply with NFPA 99.

302*A*.3 Existing materials *and equipment*. Materials *and equipment* already in use in a building in compliance with requirements or approvals in effect at the time of their erection or installation shall be permitted to remain in use unless determined by the code official to be unsafe *in accordance with California Building Code Section 116.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

302A.3.1 Existing seismic force-resisting systems. *Where the existing seismic force-resisting system is a type that can be designated ordinary or is a welded steel moment frame constructed under a permit issued prior to October 25, 1994, values of R, W0 and Cd for the existing seismic force-resisting system shall be those specified by the California Building Code for an ordinary system unless it is demonstrated that the existing system will provide performance equivalent to that of a detailed, intermediate or special system.*

302*A*.4 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials *and equipment* permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for repairs and alterations, provided *no hazard to life, health or property is* created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not permit their use in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

302*A*.4.1 New structural members and connections. New structural members and connections shall comply with the detailing provisions of the *California Building Code* for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.

Exception: Where alternative design criteria are specifically permitted.

302*A*.5 Occupancy and use. Where determining the appropriate application of the referenced sections of this code, the occupancy and use of a building shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 3 of the *California Building Code*.

302A.6 Maintenance. *Buildings and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards which are required by this code shall be maintained in conformance with the code edition under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's designated agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. To determine compliance with this subsection, the building official shall have the authority to require a building or structure to be re-inspected. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.*

302A.7 Construction documents for retrofit or rehabilitation. *The design loads and other information pertinent to the structural design required by California Building Code Section 1603A shall be included in the drawings. In addition to the information required by California Building Code Section 1603A.1.5, the drawings shall show the ground motion hazard used for the retrofit or rehabilitation as either a percentage of the California Building Code prescribed ground motion for new hospital buildings, or ASCE 41 seismic hazard designation, or a probability of exceedance in a specified time period, or a return period for exceedance of the specified ground motion.*

SECTION 303*A*—*RESERVED*

SECTION 304*A*—STRUCTURAL DESIGN LOADS AND EVALUATION AND DESIGN PROCEDURES

304*A*.1 Live loads. Where an addition or alteration does not result in increased design live load, existing gravity load-carrying structural elements shall be permitted to be evaluated and designed for live loads approved prior to the addition or alteration. If the approved live load is less than that required by Section 1607*A* of the *California Building Code*, the area designated for the nonconforming live load shall be posted with placards of approved design indicating the approved live load. Where the addition or alteration results in increased design live load, the live load required by Section 1607*A* of the *California Building Code* shall be used.

304*A*.2 Snow loads on adjacent buildings. Where an alteration or addition changes the potential snow drift effects on an adjacent building, the code official is authorized to enforce Section 7.12 of ASCE 7.

304*A*.3 *Additions, alterations, repairs and seismic retrofit to existing buildings or structures.*

304*A*.3.1 *Structures designed in accordance with pre-1973 building code.* *Provisions of this section shall apply to hospital buildings which were originally designed to pre-1973 building codes and not designated as SPC 3 or higher in accordance with Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code.*

304A.3.1.1 Incidental and minor structural alteration, additions, or repairs. *Incidental and minor structural additions shall be permitted, provided the additions meet the California Building Code for new construction using importance factor, I_e, equal to or greater than 1.0. Alterations or repair to existing gravity and lateral force-resisting systems shall be made to conform to the requirements of Section 503A or Chapter 4A, respectively, using importance factor, I_e, equal to or greater than 1.0.*

1. ***Nonstructural components.*** *Component importance factor, I_p, shall be permitted to be 1.0.*

   Exception: *Components required for life-safety purposes after an earthquake, including emergency and standby power systems, mechanical smoke removal systems, fire protection sprinkler systems, fire alarm control panels and egress stairways shall have a component importance factor (I_p) of 1.5.*

304A.3.1.2 Major structural alteration, additions or repairs. *Major structural alterations, additions or repairs shall be in accordance with Section 304A.3.4.1 or 304A.3.4.3 as applicable.*

304A.3.2 Seismic evaluation and retrofit of general acute care hospitals for compliance with the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6. *Notwithstanding any other requirements of this code, existing general acute care hospitals shall comply with the seismic evaluation requirements specified in Chapter 6, of the California Administrative Code, when applicable. Seismic retrofit to comply with requirements specified in Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code shall be permitted to be in accordance with these provisions. When load combinations which do not include seismic forces are required, the new building provisions of this code shall be applicable.*

304A.3.3 SPC-4D. *Nonconforming hospital buildings satisfying the following requirements and one of Sections 501A.3.1, 501A.3.2 or 304A.3.4.5, but not a combination thereof, shall be considered to satisfy the requirements of SPC-4D.*

1. *Approval of construction documents based on building characterization in accordance with the California Administrative Code (CAC) Chapter 6 Section 2.1.2.1, material properties in accordance with the CAC Chapter 6 Section 2.1.2.2 and Section 304A.5.3 of this code, and a complete rational structural analysis shall be required.*
2. *Where the SPC-4D upgrade involves construction, a building permit prior to construction shall be required.*
3. *Where multiple building permits are used to upgrade a building to SPC-4D, a complete rational structural analysis to justify compliance with SPC-4D, for the building in its final configuration, shall be submitted as part of the construction documents submittal to the Office for the last project.*
4. *Where the SPC-4D upgrade involves construction, buildings shall be assigned to SPC-4D after all projects required for SPC-4D are closed in compliance.*

304A.3.4 Performance objectives of performance-based methods. *Except for the modifications as set forth in Sections 304A.3.4, 304A.3.5 (for ASCE 41-13), and 304A.3.6 (for ASCE 41-23) of this code, all additions, alterations, repairs and seismic retrofit to existing structures or portions thereof shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with the provisions of ASCE 41-23.*

Use of ASCE 41-13 shall be limited to SPC-2 and SPC-4D buildings only.

When load combinations which do not include seismic forces are required, the new building code provisions of the California Building Code shall be applicable. Required building performance objectives under ASCE 41-23 shall be as follows:

304A.3.4.1 For general acute care hospital buildings along with all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress:

1. *Immediate Occupancy (IO) Structural Performance Level (S-1) in accordance with ASCE 41-23 Table 2-1 at Basic Safety Earthquake 1N (BSE-1N) Seismic Hazard Level; and*
2. *Life Safety (LS) Structural Performance Level (S-3) in accordance with ASCE 41-23 Table 2-1 at Basic Safety Earthquake 2N (BSE-2N) Seismic Hazard Level; and*
3. *The nonstructural components shall satisfy the requirements of this code for new construction.*

Exception: *Performance objectives for upgrading nonconforming hospital buildings to SPC-4D and for incidental or minor alterations or repairs of SPC-4D buildings shall be in accordance with Section 304A.3.4.5 of this code.*

304A.3.4.2 For incidental and minor additions, alterations or repairs of pre-1973 hospital buildings which will not be used for general acute care services after January 1, 2030 using ASCE 41-13:

1. *Life Safety Structural Performance (S-3) Level in accordance with ASCE 41-13 Section 2.3.1.3 at the Basic Safety Earthquake 1E (BSE-1E) Seismic Hazard Level; and*
2. *Collapse Prevention (CP) Building Performance Level (S-5) in accordance with ASCE 41-13 Section 2.3.3.4 at the Basic Safety Earthquake 2E (BSE-2E) Seismic Hazard Level; and*
3. *The nonstructural components shall satisfy the requirements of Position Retention Nonstructural Performance Level (N-B) in accordance with ASCE 41-13 Section 2.3.2.2 at BSE-1E Seismic Hazard Level.*

304A.3.4.3 All other hospital buildings:

1. *Immediate Occupancy Structural Performance level and Operational non-structural performance level (1-A) in accordance with Table 2-5 at Basic Safety Earthquake 1N (BSE-1N) Seismic Hazard Level; and*
2. *Life Safety (LS) Structural Performance Level (S-3) in accordance with Table 2-1 at Basic Safety Earthquake 2N (BSE-2N) Seismic Hazard Level.*

304A.3.4.4 SPC 2 using ASCE 41-13. *Structures shall be considered to comply with SPC 2 requirements of Table 2.5.3, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code, when all of the following are satisfied:*

1. *Life Safety Structural Performance Level (S-3) in accordance with Section 2.3.1.3 of ASCE 41-13 at BSE-1E; and*
2. *Items identified in Chapter 6, Article 10 of the California Administrative Code satisfying the requirements of Position Retention nonstructural Performance Level (N-B) in accordance with Section 2.3.2.2 of ASCE 41-13 at BSE-1E.*

304A.3.4.5 SPC-4D using ASCE 41-13. *Structures shall be deemed to comply with the SPC-4D requirements of Table 2.5.3, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code, when all of the following requirements in ASCE 41-13 are satisfied:*

1. *Damage control Structural Performance Level (S-2) in accordance with Section 2.3.1.2.1 of ASCE 41-13 at BSE-1E; and*
2. *Collapse Prevention Structural Performance Level (S-5) in accordance with Section 2.3.1.5 of ASCE 41-13 at BSE-2E; and*
3. *Items identified in Chapter 6, Article 10 of the California Administrative Code satisfy the requirements of Position Retention Nonstructural Performance Level (N-B) in accordance with ASCE 41-13 Section 2.3.2.2 at BSE-1E.*

304A.3.4.5.1 *Replace ASCE 41-13 § 7.2.13.2 with the following:*

A. Where the adjacent building was constructed using the 1989 or later edition of the California Building Code and built under OSHPD jurisdiction, the minimum building separation distance specified in Section 7.2.13.1 need not be evaluated for Structural Performance Level Damage Control or lower.

B. Where adjacent structure or building evaluated is not less than half as tall and adjacent structure has floors/levels that match those of the building being evaluated, the following exceptions apply:

1) For Structural Performance Level of Life Safety or lower, the seismic separation between the adjacent structure and the building being evaluated need not be evaluated.

2) For Structural Performance Level of Damage Control, buildings need not meet the minimum separation distance specified in Section 7.2.13.1 where either a) or b) applies:

a) Adjacent structure is more than 2 inches (50.8 mm) times the number of stories below that level away from the building being evaluated at all floor levels that align.

b) The adjacent building does not have any of the following structural deficiencies as defined in the California Administrative Code (CAC), Chapter 6, Article 3:

1) Load path (3.1)

2) Weak story (3.3.1)

3) Soft story (3.3.2)

4) Vertical discontinuity (3.3.5) or

5) Torsion (3.3.6)

C. Where an approved pounding analysis procedure that accounts for the change in dynamic response of the structures caused by impact is used, the evaluated and retrofitted buildings need not meet the minimum separation distance specified in Section 7.2.13.1. Such analysis shall demonstrate that:

1) The structures are capable of transferring forces resulting from impact for diaphragms located at the same elevation; or

2) The structures are capable of resisting all required vertical and lateral forces considering the loss of any elements or components damaged by impact of the structures.

304A.3.4.6 SPC 5 using ASCE 41-23. *Structures shall be considered to comply with SPC 5 requirements of Table 2.5.3, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code where all of the following are satisfied:*

1. *Immediate Occupancy Structural Performance Level (S-1) in accordance with ASCE 41-23 Table 2-1 at BSE-1N;*
2. *Life Safety Performance Level S-3 in accordance with ASCE 41-23 Table 2-1 at BSE-2N; and*
3. *Items identified in Chapter 6, Article 10 of the California Administrative Code, satisfying the requirements of Operational Nonstructural Performance Level (N-A) in accordance with ASCE 41-23 Table 2-2 at BSE-1N.*

304A.3.4.7 NPC-2 and NPC-3 using ASCE 41-23: *Operational Nonstructural Performance Level (N-A) and Position Retention Nonstructural Performance Level (N-B) of ASCE 41-23 at BSE-1N shall be considered equivalent to NPC 3/NPC 2 requirements, respectively, of Table 11.1, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code. For NPC 3/NPC 2, only components listed in Table 11.1, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code for NPC 3/NPC 2 need to satisfy the requirements specified above.*

Exception: *Evaluation procedure of Article 11, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code shall be used for seismic evaluation of NPC 2, NPC 3, NPC 4 or NPC 4D and NPC 5, where specific procedure is not outlined in ASCE 41-23. Administrative and permitting provisions outlined in Article 11, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code shall apply.*

304A.3.4.8 NPC-4 or NPC 4D and NPC-5 using ASCE 41-23: *Nonstructural components for Operational Nonstructural Performance Level (N-A) in ASCE 41-23 Table 2-2 or NPC-4/NPC 4D shall satisfy the requirements of the California Building Code for new construction. Nonstructural components for NPC-5 shall satisfy Operational Performance Level N-A/NPC-4/NPC 4D and California Building Code Section 1617A.1.40 Items 1 & 2.*

304A.3.5 Modifications to ASCE 41-13 for SPC-2 and SPC-4D. *The text of ASCE 41-13 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 304A.3.5.1 through 304A.3.5.17.*

304A.3.5.1 ASCE 41-13 Section 1.1. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 1.1 with the following:*

Seismic evaluations shall be performed for performance objective specified in Section 304A.3.4 of this code (CEBC) using procedure of this standard (ASCE 41) as follows:

1. *Structural components shall be evaluated in accordance with Tier 3 systematic evaluations procedure in Chapter 6.*
2. *Nonstructural components shall be evaluated in accordance with Chapter 13.*

Exception: *For general acute care hospitals, seismic evaluation shall be permitted to be in accordance with Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code (CAC) when required by provisions of that chapter.*

304A.3.5.2 ASCE 41-13 Section 2.4 Seismic Hazard. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 2.4 with the following:*

Response spectra and acceleration time histories shall be constructed in accordance with 2016 California Building Code (CBC) Sections 1613A, 1616A, and 1803A.6 or equivalent provision in later versions of the CBC.

304A.3.5.3 ASCE 41-13 Section 6.2. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 6.2 with the following:*

Data Collection Requirements. *The extent of data collection shall be at Comprehensive level for all structures, including structures upgraded to SPC-4D. A testing program for materials properties shall be approved by the enforcement agent prior to*

commencement of material testing work. Previously approved material test results shall be permitted to be used to satisfy part of the comprehensive data collection requirements.

***Exception:** Data collection at Usual level shall be permitted for structures with SPC-2 or lower target performance objective.*

Tension testing of reinforcing bars shall be in accordance with ASTM A615. All test specimens shall be the full section of the bar as rolled (8-in. gage length) and shall not be reduced.

At test sample locations, structural members, slabs and walls shall be repaired to a state that is equivalent to their original condition.

For buildings built under an OSHPD permit based on the 1976 or later edition of the CBC, where materials properties are shown on design drawings and original materials test data are available, no materials testing shall be required when approved by the enforcement agent.

***304A.3.5.4 ASCE 41-13 Section 7.2.8.1.** Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 7.2.8.1 with the following:*

For the evaluation of one-story light-framed walls with or without hold-downs, ASCE 41-13 Equation 7-6 is permitted to be used. If Equation 7-6 is satisfied, no further evaluation or retrofit of the existing hold-down, if any, is required. If Equation 7-6 is not satisfied, hold-down shall be provided or retrofitted using ASCE 41-13 Equations 7-36 and 7-37. Equation 7-6 shall not be used to limit forces to other elements along the load path to the subject light-frame wall. Other elements, such as the diaphragm, collector, shear wall, sill bolts, cripple wall, etc., shall be evaluated independently using ASCE 41-13 Equations 7-36 and 7-37 with the associated m or J factors listed under Chapter 12. Alternatively, if Equation 7-6 is not satisfied and retrofit is not performed, the wall contribution to the lateral resisting system shall be ignored. For all other building type conditions, Equation 7-6 shall not be used.

***304A.3.5.5 ASCE 41-13 Section 7.3.2.1.** Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 7.3.2.1 with the following:*

***Nonlinear Static Procedure.** If higher mode effects are significant and building is taller than 75 feet above the base, the Nonlinear Dynamic Procedure shall be used.*

***304A.3.5.6 ASCE 41-13 Section 7.5.1.** Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 7.5.1 with the following:*

***Acceptance Criteria – Drift Limitations.** The interstory drift ratio shall not exceed the drift limits for Risk Category IV buildings in ASCE 7 Table 12.12-1 due to forces corresponding to BSE-1E or BSE-1N, as applicable.*

***Exception:** Larger interstory drift ratios shall be permitted where justified by rational analysis that items identified in Chapter 6 Article 10 of the California Administrative Code can tolerate such drift and approved by the enforcement agent.*

***304A.3.5.7 ASCE 41-13 Section 7.5.1.4.** Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 7.5.1.4 by the following:*

***Material Properties.** Expected material properties are not permitted to be determined by multiplying lower bound values by the assumed factors specified in Chapters 8 through 12 and shall be based exclusively on materials tests.*

***304A.3.5.8 ASCE 41-13 Section 8.4.** Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 8.4 with the following:*

***Foundation Strength and Stiffness.** Foundation and soil strength shall be used to evaluate potential overturning, uplift and sliding for fixed base assumptions, and stiffness for flexible base assumptions, including deformations associated with those actions.*

***304A.3.5.9 ASCE 41-13 Section 8.4.1.1.** Replace ASCE 41-13 Section 8.4.1.1 as follows:*

***Prescriptive Expected Capacities.** Not permitted by OSHPD.*

***304A.3.5.10 ASCE 41-13 Section 8.4.2.3.2.1.** Modify ASCE 41-13 Sections 8.4.2.3.2.1 and 8.4.2.3.2.2 as follows:*

***8.4.2.3.2.1** Alternatively, when seismic evaluation is performed for foundation after global analysis of the superstructure is complete, both overturning and axial seismic pseudo force demands are permitted to be divided by the m-factors above, provided the foundation is analyzed as a beam on Winkler springs (soil does not resist tension). The vertical spring stiffness values may be determined either from Figure 8-2 or Equation 8-11, or as provided by the geotechnical engineer. Acceptance criteria for soil bearing shall be considered met, based on one of the following methods, either A or B:*

A) Soil spring reactions are limited by the ultimate soil bearing capacity, and the foundation system is stable under the applied loads.

B) The resisting soil pressure distribution under the footing is triangular such that the maximum soil bearing pressure at any point of the footing is less than the ultimate soil bearing capacity.

Subject to the approval of the authority having jurisdiction, higher soil pressures may be permitted when appropriately justified.

The evaluation of the foundation structural element shall be considered as force controlled in accordance with the material chapters using the bearing pressure distribution under the footing from the same method used for the soil bearing acceptance criteria.

***8.4.2.3.2.2** Alternatively, superstructure pseudo force overturning demands to the foundation are permitted to be divided by the appropriate m-factors above and applied to the mathematical model representing the foundation system only, re-analyzed as a beam on Winkler springs (soil does not resist tension). Acceptance criteria for soil bearing shall be considered met, based on one of the following methods, either A or B:*

A) Soil spring reactions are limited by the ultimate soil bearing capacity, and the foundation system is stable under the applied loads.

B) The resisting soil pressure distribution under the footing is triangular, and the maximum soil bearing pressure at any point of the footing is less than the ultimate soil bearing capacity.

Subject to the approval of the authority having jurisdiction, higher soil pressures may be permitted when appropriately justified.

The evaluation of the foundation structural element shall be considered as force controlled in accordance with the material chapters using the bearing pressure distribution under the footing from the same method used for the soil bearing acceptance criteria.

304A.3.5.11 ASCE 41-13 Section 8.5.1. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 8.5.1 with the following:*

The product of RRS_{bsa} x RRS_e, shall not be less than 0.7.

The combined effect of kinematic interaction and foundation damping shall meet the following:

1. *The site-specific response spectrum modified for soil-structure interaction effects shall not be taken as less than 80 percent of the spectral acceleration as determined from a site-specific response spectrum in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 21.3, or*
2. *The site-specific response spectrum modified for soil-structure interaction effects shall not be taken as less than 70 percent of the spectral acceleration as determined from the design response spectrum and MCE_R response spectrum in accordance with ASCE 7 Sections 11.4.5 and 11.4.6, respectively.*

Exception: *For the seismic retrofit of existing nonconforming buildings, design ground motion shall be consistent with performance objectives in Section 304A.3.4.*

304A.3.5.12 ASCE 41-13 Section 8.6. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 8.6 with the following:*

Seismic Earth Pressure. *Where the grade difference from one side of the building to another exceeds one-half story height, the seismic increment of earth pressure shall be added to the gravity lateral earth pressure to evaluate the building overturning and sliding stability and the lateral force-resisting system below grade in combination with the building seismic forces.*

304A.3.5.13 ASCE 41-13 Section 10.7.1.1. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 10.7.1.1 with the following:*

Monolithic Reinforced Concrete Shear Walls and Wall Segments. *For nonlinear procedures, shear walls or wall segments with axial loads greater than 0.35 Po shall be included in the model as primary elements with appropriate strength and stiffness degrading properties assigned to those components subject to the approval of the enforcement agent. For linear procedures, the effects of deformation compatibility shall be investigated using moment-curvature section analyses and cyclic testing results of similar components to determine whether strengthening is necessary to maintain the gravity load-carrying capacity of that component.*

Horizontal wall segments or spandrels reinforced similar to vertical wall segments or piers shall be classified as wall segments, not shear wall coupling beams, in Tables 10-19 through 10-22.

304A.3.5.14 ASCE 41-13 Section 10.12.3 *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 10.12.3 as follows:*

Exception: *Component actions that are deformation controlled are permitted to use their expected strengths for the acceptance criteria.*

304A.3.5.15 ASCE 41-13 Section 11.1. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 11.1 by the following:*

Scope: *Unreinforced masonry walls (including unreinforced infill walls) and partitions are not permitted for General Acute Care (GAC) hospital buildings.*

304A.3.5.16 ASCE 41-13 Section 14.1. *Modify ASCE 41-13 Section 14.1 by the following:*

Scope: *For buildings located in Seismic Design Category F, verification of the interstory lateral displacements, the strength adequacy of the seismic force-resisting system and anchorage to the foundation shall be accomplished using the Nonlinear Dynamic Procedure.*

304A.3.5.17 ASCE 41-13 Chapter 15 and 16. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

304A.3.6 Modifications to ASCE 41-23. *The text of ASCE 41-23 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 304A.3.6.1 through 304A.3.6.9.*

304A.3.6.1 ASCE 41-23 Section 2.1. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 2.1 with the following:*

Seismic evaluations shall be performed for performance objective specified in Section 304A.3.4 of this code (CEBC) using procedure of this standard (ASCE 41-23) as follows:

1. *Structural components shall be evaluated in accordance with Tier 3 systematic evaluations procedure in Chapter 6.*
2. *Nonstructural components shall be evaluated in accordance with Chapter 13.*

Exception: *For general acute care hospitals, seismic evaluation shall be permitted to be in accordance with Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code (CAC) when required by provisions of that chapter.*

304A.3.6.2 ASCE 41-23 Section 6.2. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 6.2 with the following:*

Data Collection Requirements. *The extent of data collection shall be at Comprehensive level for all structures, including structures upgraded to SPC-4D. A testing program for materials properties shall be approved by the enforcement agent prior to commencement of material testing work. Previously approved material test results shall be permitted to be used to satisfy part of the comprehensive data collection requirements.*

Tension testing of reinforcing bars shall be in accordance with ASTM A615. All test specimens shall be the full section of the bar as rolled (8-in. gage length) and shall not be reduced.

At test sample locations, structural members, slabs and walls shall be repaired to a state that is equivalent to their original condition.

For buildings built under an OSHPD permit based on the 1976 or later edition of the CBC, where materials properties are shown on design drawings and original materials test data are available, no materials testing shall be required when approved by the enforcement agent.

304A.3.6.3 ASCE 41-23 Section 7.2.9.1. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 7.2.9.1 with the following:*

For the evaluation of one-story light-framed walls with or without hold-downs, ASCE 41-23 Equation 7-6 is permitted to be used. If Equation 7-6 is satisfied, no further evaluation or retrofit of the existing hold-down, if any, is required. If Equation 7-6 is not satisfied, hold-down shall be provided or retrofitted using ASCE 41-23 Equations 7-39 and 7-40. Equation 7-6 shall not be used to limit forces to other elements along the load path to the subject light-frame wall. Other elements, such as the diaphragm, collector, shear wall, sill bolts, cripple wall, etc., shall be evaluated independently using ASCE 41-23 Equations 7-39 and 7-40 with the associated m or J factors listed under Chapter 12. Alternatively, if Equation 7-6 is not satisfied and retrofit is not performed, the wall contribution to the lateral resisting system shall be ignored. For all other building type conditions, Equation 7-6 shall not be used.

304A.3.6.4 ASCE 41-23 Section 7.5.1. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 7.5.1 with the following:*

Acceptance Criteria – Drift Limitations. *The interstory drift ratio shall not exceed the drift limits for Risk Category IV buildings in ASCE 7 Table 12.12-1 due to forces corresponding to BSE-1E or BSE-1N, as applicable.*

Exception: *Larger interstory drift ratios shall be permitted where justified by rational analysis that both structural and nonstructural elements can tolerate such drift and approved by the enforcement agent.*

304A.3.6.5 ASCE 41-23 Section 7.5.1.4. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 7.5.1.4 by the following:*

Material Properties. *Expected material properties are not permitted to be determined by multiplying lower bound values by the assumed factors specified in Chapters 8 through 12.*

304A.3.6.6 ASCE 41-23 Section 8.6.1. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 8.6.1 with the following:*

The product of RRS_{bsa} x RRS_e shall be not less than 0.7.

The combined effect of kinematic interaction and foundation damping shall meet the following:

1. *The site-specific response spectrum modified for soil-structure interaction effects shall not be taken as less than 80 percent of the spectral acceleration as determined from a site-specific response spectrum in accordance with ASCE 7 Section 21.3; or*
2. *The site-specific response spectrum modified for soil-structure interaction effects shall not be taken as less than 70 percent of the spectral acceleration as determined from the design response spectrum and M_{CER} response spectrum in accordance with ASCE 7 Sections 11.4.5 and 11.4.6, respectively.*

   Exception: *For the seismic retrofit of existing nonconforming buildings, design ground motion shall be consistent with performance objectives in Section 304A.3.4 of this code.*

304A.3.6.7 ASCE 41-23 Section 8.7. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 8.7 with the following:*

Seismic Earth Pressure. *Where the grade difference from one side of the building to another exceeds one-half story height, the seismic increment of earth pressure shall be added to the gravity lateral earth pressure to evaluate the building overturning and sliding stability and the lateral force-resisting system below grade in combination with the building seismic forces.*

304A.3.6.8 ASCE 41-23 Section 11.1. *Modify ASCE 41-23 Section 11.1 by the following:*

Scope: *Unreinforced masonry walls (including unreinforced infill walls) and partitions are not permitted for General Acute Care (GAC) hospital buildings.*

304A.3.6.9 ASCE 41-23 Chapter 16 and 17. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

SECTION 305*A* —IN-SITU LOAD TESTS

305*A*.1 General. Where used, in-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708*A* of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 306*A*—ACCESSIBILITY FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS

306*A*.1 Scope. *Accessibility requirements for existing buildings shall comply with the California Building Code, Part 2, Volume 1, Chapter 11B.*

SECTION 307*A*—SMOKE ALARMS

Shall comply with the California Building Standards Code.

SECTION 308*A*—CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTION

Shall comply with the California Building Standards Code.

SECTION 309*A*—*RESERVED*

SECTION 310A—COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES FOR SERVICES/SYSTEMS AND UTILITIES

310A.1 General. *The provisions of this section are intended to maintain or increase the current degree of public safety, health and general welfare in existing buildings while permitting repair, alteration, addition and change of occupancy without requiring full compliance with California Building Code Chapters 2 through 33, or Sections 302A.3 and 502A through 506A, except where compliance with other provisions of this code is specifically required in this section.*

Services/systems and utilities that originate in and pass through or under buildings and are necessary to the operation of the hospital buildings shall meet the structural requirements of this section. Examples of services/systems and utilities include but are not limited to normal power; emergency power; nurse call; fire alarm; communication and data systems; space-heating systems; process load systems; cooling systems; domestic hot and cold water systems; means of egress systems; fire-suppression systems; building drain and sewer systems; and medical gas systems that support basic and supplemental services.

After January 1, 2030, services/systems and utilities for acute care hospital buildings shall not originate in or pass through or under a nonhospital or hospital building unless it has approved performance categories of SPC-3 or higher and NPC-5.

310A.1.1 Services/systems and utilities. *Services/systems and utilities that are necessary to the operation of the hospital buildings shall meet the structural requirements of this section, based upon the approved Structural Performance Category (SPC) of the building receiving the services/systems and utilities.*

Services from a conforming building shall be permitted to serve a nonconforming building with prior approval of the Office. The services/systems and utilities in the nonconforming building shall be equipped with fail safe valves, switches or other equivalent devices that allow the nonconforming building to be isolated from the conforming building.

Exception: *Remodel projects that use available existing services/systems and utilities are exempted from the requirements of this section. The enforcing agency shall be permitted to exempt minor addition, minor alteration and minor remodel projects and projects to upgrade existing services/systems and utilities from the requirements of this section.*

310A.1.1.1 Services/systems and utilities for hospital buildings.

310A.1.1.1.1 New hospital buildings, additions, alterations and remodels of conforming (SPC-3, -4, -4D or -5) hospital buildings. *Services/systems and utilities for new hospital buildings and additions, alterations or remodels to existing conforming buildings shall originate in hospital buildings that are conforming or have approved performance categories of SPC-3 or higher, and NPC-4/NPC-4D or higher. The services/systems and utilities shall not pass through or under buildings that do not have approved performance categories of SPC-2 or higher and NPC-4/NPC-4D or higher.*

Exceptions:

Services/systems and utilities shall be permitted to pass through or under buildings that have approved nonstructural performance categories of NPC-3 or higher or NPC-2, provided that the building has an approved extension to the NPC-3 deadline. The services/systems and utilities feeding the new building addition, alteration or remodel shall conform to the new building provisions of this code and shall be deemed by OSHPD to be free of adverse seismic interactions that could be caused by potential failure of overhead or adjacent components.

310A.1.1.1.2 Additions, alterations and remodels of SPC-2 hospital buildings. *Services/systems and utilities for additions, alterations or remodels of SPC-2 hospital buildings shall be permitted to originate in and pass through or under SPC-2 or higher buildings that have an approved nonstructural performance category of NPC-3 or higher.*

Exception: *Services/systems and utilities shall be permitted to pass through or under buildings that have approved nonstructural performance categories of NPC-2, provided that the building has an approved extension to the NPC-3 deadline. Services/systems and utilities feeding the addition, alteration or remodel shall conform to the nonstructural bracing requirements for new buildings.*

310A.1.1.1.3 Alterations and remodels of SPC-1 hospital buildings. *Services/systems and utilities for alterations or remodels of SPC-1 hospital buildings shall be permitted to originate in and pass through or under SPC-1 or higher buildings that have an approved nonstructural performance category of NPC-2 or higher.*

310A.1.1.1.4 Buildings without SPC/NPC ratings. *When services/systems and utilities for new buildings, additions, alterations or remodels pass through or under hospital buildings which would not otherwise require evaluation for an SPC rating, such buildings shall be evaluated in accordance with the requirements of Section 1.3, Chapter 6, of the California Administrative Code, to determine the appropriate ratings, or shall be shown to meet the structural requirements of these regulations for new hospital buildings. The services/systems and utilities feeding the new building addition, alteration or remodel shall conform with new building provisions of this code and shall be deemed by OSHPD to be free of adverse seismic interactions that could be caused by potential failure of overhead or adjacent components.*

310A.1.1.1.5 Buildings removed from acute-care hospital service. *Services/systems and utilities for conforming acute care hospital buildings shall be permitted to pass through or under a building that has been removed from acute care hospital service until January 1, 2030, if the building removed from service meets the performance requirements of Section 310A.1.1.1.1. Services/systems and utilities for nonconforming nonacute care hospital buildings shall be permitted to pass*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

through or under a building that has been removed from acute care hospital service only if the building removed from service meets the performance requirements of Section 310A.1.1.1.2.

***Exception**: Service/system and utilities for acute care hospital buildings may pass through or under the buildings that have been removed from acute care service and which do not meet the performance requirements of Section 310A.1.1.1.1 or Section 310A.1.1.1.2, provided all the following are met:*

1. *The building removed from acute care service remains under the jurisdiction of OSHPD.*
2. *The service/system and utilities only support acute care services in SPC-1 or SPC-2 buildings, and where no critical care areas occur.*
3. *The SPC-1 or SPC-2 buildings supported by the service/system and utilities meet the nonstructural requirements of NPC-2, as defined in the California Administrative Code, Article 11, Table 11.1 and are served with essential power from a conforming building or source which does not pass through or under a building removed from acute care services.*
4. *The SPC-2 buildings supported by the service/system and utilities are removed from acute care service no later than January 1, 2026.*

***310A.1.2 Jurisdiction.** Services/systems and utilities shall originate in and only pass through or under buildings that are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).*

SECTION 311A—COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVES FOR MEANS OF EGRESS

***311A.1 General.** Means of egress through existing buildings shall be in accordance with the California Building Code, except as modified in this section.*

***311A.1.1 Means of egress.** Means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Sections 311A.1.1.1 and 311A.1.1.2.*

***Exception:** The enforcing agency shall be permitted to exempt minor additions, minor alterations and minor remodel projects from these requirements.*

***311A.1.1.1 Means of egress for hospital buildings.** Means of egress for hospital buildings shall comply with the requirements of Sections 311A.1.1.1.1 through 311A.1.1.1.6.*

***311A.1.1.1.1 New and existing conforming hospital buildings.** Means of egress for new hospital buildings and additions to existing conforming hospital buildings shall only pass through buildings that are conforming or comply with the requirements of SPC-3 or higher, and NPC-4/NPC-4D or higher.*

***Exception:** Existing means of egress that pass through hospital buildings that have approved nonstructural performance categories NPC-3, or NPC-2 if the building has an approved extension to the NPC-3 deadline, shall be permitted to remain for the duration of extension. The nonstructural components in the path of egress shall be braced in accordance with the new building provisions of the California Building Code.*

***311A.1.1.1.2 Existing SPC-2 hospital buildings.** Means of egress for additions to existing SPC-2 hospital buildings shall only pass through hospital buildings that have approved performance categories of SPC-2 or higher and NPC-4/NPC-4D or higher.*

***Exception:** The means of egress shall be permitted to pass through hospital buildings that have approved nonstructural performance categories of NPC-3, or NPC-2 if the building has an approved extension to the NPC-3 deadline. Nonstructural components in the path of egress shall be braced in accordance with the new building provisions of the California Building Code.*

***311A.1.1.1.3 Existing SPC-3 or higher hospital buildings.** Means of egress for remodels of existing SPC-3 or higher hospital buildings shall only pass through hospital buildings that have approved performance categories of SPC-2 or higher and NPC-4 / NPC-4D or higher.*

***Exception:** The means of egress shall be permitted to pass through hospital buildings that have approved nonstructural performance categories of NPC-3, or NPC-2 if the building has an approved extension to the NPC-3 deadline. Nonstructural components in the path of egress shall be braced in accordance with the new building provisions of the California Building Code.*

***311A.1.1.1.4 Existing SPC-1 hospital buildings.** Means of egress for remodels of existing SPC-1 hospital buildings shall only pass through hospital buildings that have approved performance categories of SPC-1 or higher and NPC-2 or higher.*

***Exception:** Means of egress for acute care service spaces for hospitals licensed pursuant to subdivision (a) of Section 1250 of the Health and Safety Code shall comply with the requirements of Section 311A.1.1.1.2.*

***311A.1.1.1.5 Other hospital buildings.** Hospital buildings that would not otherwise require evaluation for an SPC rating, which are used as a part of the means of egress for hospital buildings, shall be evaluated in accordance with the requirements of Section 1.3, Chapter 6, of the California Administrative Code to determine the appropriate rating, or shall meet the structural requirements of these regulations for conforming hospital buildings. Means of egress shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 311A.1.1.1.1 through 311A.1.1.1.4.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further BUFF

102102163

311A.1.1.1.6 Buildings removed from hospital service. *The means of egress for acute care hospitals shall be permitted to pass through buildings that are removed from hospital service only if the buildings remain under the jurisdiction of OSHPD, and only until January 1, 2030, subject to the following:*

1. *Egress for conforming hospital buildings shall be permitted to pass through buildings that have been removed from acute care hospital service that comply with the requirements of Section 311A.1.1.1.1 or 311A.1.1.1.3.*
2. *Egress for nonconforming hospital buildings shall be permitted to pass through buildings that have been removed from acute care hospital service that comply with the requirements of Section 311A.1.1.1.2 or 311A.1.1.1.4.*

After January 1, 2030, the means of egress for acute care hospital buildings shall only pass through hospital buildings that have approved performance categories of SPC-3 or higher and NPC-5.

311A.1.2 Jurisdiction. *Means of egress shall only pass through buildings that are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).*

SECTION 312A—REMOVAL OF HOSPITAL SPC AND FREESTANDING BUILDINGS FROM GENERAL ACUTE CARE SERVICE

312A.1 General. *The provisions of this section shall apply when hospital SPC or freestanding buildings are being removed from general acute care service, including when freestanding buildings are removed from OSHPD jurisdiction. Removal of these buildings shall satisfy the requirements of this section and the California Building Standards Code. OSHPD approval of construction documents and a building permit are required for removal.*

312A.1.1 Buildings without approved extensions. *An SPC-1 hospital building without an approved delay in compliance requirements in accordance with the California Administrative Code (CAC) Chapter 6 Section 1.5.2 or past the extension date granted in accordance with the CAC Chapter 6 Section 1.5.2 shall not be issued a building permit until a project to remove the subject SPC-1 building from general acute care services has been approved, permitted and closed in compliance by the Office.*

Exception: *Building permits for seismic compliance, maintenance and repair shall be permitted to be issued.*

312A.2 Definitions. *The following words and terms are applicable to this section only:*

BUILDING. *The area included within surrounding exterior walls or any combination of exterior walls and fire walls (as described in California Building Code Sections 202 and 706) exclusive of vent shafts and courts. Areas of the building not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the building area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above. A building may consist of one or more adjacent SPC buildings.*

GENERAL ACUTE CARE SERVICE. *Means basic and supplemental services, as defined in California Building Code Section 1224.3, provided in a general acute care building, as defined in California Building Code Section 202 and the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6, Section 1.2.*

STRUCTURAL SEPARATION. *Means a building separation in accordance with the California Building Code.*

312A.3 Establishing eligibility for removal from general acute care service. *In order to establish that one or more SPC buildings are eligible for removal from general acute care service, the hospital owner shall submit construction documents showing that after the SPC buildings are removed from general acute care service:*

1. *All basic acute care services or supplemental services on the hospital's license are provided in SPC buildings satisfying the requirements for SPC-2, SPC-3, SPC-4, SPC-4D or SPC-5.*

   Exception: *If the hospital includes SPC-1 buildings that are not being removed from general acute care service, and these SPC-1 buildings have an approved extension to the SPC-2 deadline, basic acute care services or supplemental services on the hospital's license are permitted to remain in these SPC buildings for the duration of their extension or until these SPC-1 buildings are removed from general acute care service, whichever comes first.*

2. *All basic acute care services or supplemental services on the hospital's license are provided in SPC buildings satisfying the requirements for NPC-3, NPC-4/NPC-4D or NPC-5.*

   Exception: *Services shall be permitted to be located in SPC buildings satisfying the requirements of NPC-2 if the SPC buildings have an approved extension to NPC-3 deadline.*

3. *The hospital complies with all egress requirements, including occupant load, number of required exits and travel distance to exits, and provides evidence that no egress from any acute care hospital building passes through the SPC buildings removed from general acute care service, SPC-1 buildings, or through buildings not under OSHPD jurisdiction.*

   Exceptions:

   1. *If the SPC building has an approved extension to the SPC-2 deadline, existing egress through the SPC-1 building shall be permitted for the duration of the extension or until the SPC-1 building is removed from general acute care service, whichever comes first.*
   2. *When permitted by Section 311A.1.1.1.6.*

4. *No SPC building removed from general acute care service is used as a smoke compartment for any acute care hospital building. Buildings not under OSHPD jurisdiction shall not be used as a smoke compartment for any acute care hospital building.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

5. *Structural separation shall satisfy the requirements of the California Building Standards Code and fire walls shall be constructed in accordance with the California Building Code, Section 706.*

   ***Exception:** A fire barrier constructed in accordance with the California Building Code, Section 707, and an SPC seismic separation in accordance with the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6, Section 3.4 shall be deemed to satisfy the building structural/seismic separation requirement in this section for SPC buildings that will remain under OSHPD jurisdiction.*

6. *If the SPC building removed from general acute care service shares a common fire alarm system with the acute care hospital, the main fire alarm control panel shall be located in an acute care hospital building. The SPC building removed from general acute care service shall be in a separate zone monitored by the main fire alarm control panel. Flexible connections shall be provided for conduits/conductors crossing structural or SPC seismic separation joints. If the intent is to place the SPC building under local jurisdiction, the building shall satisfy Section 312A.5.1.*

   ***Exception:** Flexible connections for fire alarm conduits/conductors crossing seismic separation joints between an SPC building removed from general acute care service and adjacent SPC-1 or SPC-2 buildings may be omitted, provided the fire alarm in the adjacent SPC-1 and SPC-2 buildings have no connection to any SPC-3, SPC-4, SPC-4D and SPC-5 buildings providing general acute care service.*

7. *If the SPC building removed from general acute care service shares the fire sprinkler system with the acute care hospital, an isolation valve with a tamper switch shall be provided to isolate the portion of the system serving the SPC building removed from acute care service. Flexible connections shall be provided in piping that crosses structural or SPC seismic separation joints. The fire sprinkler system shall not originate in the SPC building removed from general acute care service. If the intent is to place the building under local jurisdiction, the building shall satisfy Section 312A.5.1.*

   ***Exception:** Flexible connections for seismic separation joints and fail safe shutoff valves, and disconnects for utilities between an SPC building removed from general acute care service and adjacent SPC-1 or SPC-2 buildings may be omitted, provided utilities in the adjacent SPC-1 and SPC-2 buildings have no connection to any SPC-3, SPC-4, SPC-4D and SPC-5 buildings providing general acute care service.*

8. *Patient access as required by California Building Code Section 1224.4.7.5 does not pass through an SPC building removed from general acute care service or through buildings that are not under the jurisdiction of OSHPD.*

9. *The primary accessible entrance to the hospital is not through an SPC building removed from general acute care service or through buildings that are not under the jurisdiction of OSHPD.*

10. *No utilities servicing acute care hospital buildings originate in or pass through, over or under, an SPC building removed from general acute care service, except as permitted by Section 310A.1.1.1.5, or a building not under OSHPD jurisdiction.*

11. *If utilities originating in an acute care hospital building feed an SPC building removed from general acute care hospital service, fail safe shutoff valves and/or disconnects shall be provided that permit isolation of the SPC building removed from general acute care service from the hospital utilities. Flexible connections shall be provided for all utilities crossing structural or SPC seismic separation joints.*

    ***Exception:** Flexible connections for seismic separation joints and fail safe shutoff valves, and disconnects for utilities between an SPC building removed from general acute care service and adjacent SPC-1 or SPC-2 buildings may be omitted, provided utilities in the adjacent SPC-1 and SPC-2 buildings have no connection to any SPC-3, SPC-4, SPC-4D and SPC-5 buildings providing general acute care service.*

312A.4 Buildings remaining under OSHPD jurisdiction. *SPC and freestanding buildings removed from acute care service while remaining under the jurisdiction of OSHPD shall be subject to the provisions of Section 312.3.*

312A.5 Change in jurisdiction for buildings removed from general acute care service. *Except as provided by Section 312A.5.3, at the hospital's discretion, a building removed from general acute care service shall be permitted to be placed under the jurisdiction of the local enforcement agency. To be eligible for a change in jurisdiction, the building removed from general acute care service shall satisfy the requirements of Section 312A.5.1.*

312A.5.1 Eligibility for change in jurisdiction. *For a building removed from general acute care service to be eligible for a change in jurisdiction to the local enforcing agency, all the following criteria shall be satisfied:*

a. *The building removed from general acute care service shall be freestanding, as defined in the California Administrative Code, Section 7-111.*

b. *Any hospital support services located in the building removed from general acute care service, including administrative services, central sterile supply, storage, morgue and autopsy, employee dressing rooms and lockers, janitorial and housekeeping service, and laundry, shall be in excess of the minimum requirements for licensure and operation. Prior approval by the California Department of Public Health shall be obtained by hospital to locate these services in the building removed from general acute care service.*

c. *Services/systems and utilities (e.g., power, emergency power, communication/data/nurse-call systems, space-heating systems, fire alarm system, fire-sprinkler system, medical gas & plumbing systems) shall be separate and independent from those serving any buildings under OSHPD jurisdiction.*

d. *If the building being transferred to the jurisdiction of the local enforcing agency is adjacent to a building under OSHPD jurisdiction and fire-resistive construction separations are required, they shall be located in the building under OSHPD jurisdiction.*

312A.5.2 Modification of buildings removed from OSHPD jurisdiction. *The owner of the building shall be responsible for bringing the building into compliance with all requirements of the new authority having jurisdiction. If a building requires modification to become eligible for removal from OSHPD jurisdiction, the construction project shall be closed with compliance by OSHPD prior to the change in jurisdiction. All occupancy separation, set-back and allowable area requirements shall be enforced.*

312A.5.3 Buildings not eligible for change in jurisdiction. *The following freestanding buildings shall remain under OSHPD jurisdiction:*

a. Any building in which basic and/or supplementary services are provided for a general acute care hospital, acute psychiatric hospital and general acute care hospital providing only acute medical rehabilitation center services.

b. Any building which provides required patient access, egress or smoke compartment for a Building under OSHPD's jurisdiction.

c. Any building in which services under OSHPD jurisdiction are provided, including skilled nursing services, intermediate care services, acute psychiatric services and distinct part skilled nursing or intermediate care services.

d. Any building providing central plant or utility services to a building under OSHPD jurisdiction.

e. Any building through which utilities pass through, over or under, to serve a building under OSHPD jurisdiction.

312A.6 Vacated space. *Vacated spaces intended to remain vacant while under the jurisdiction of OSHPD shall be subject to the provisions of Section 312.3.5.*

312A.7 Demolition. *Demolition of SPC buildings to be removed from general acute care services shall be permitted when buildings remaining under OSHPD's jurisdiction, after demolition, satisfy the requirements of the California Building Standards Code and demolition activity does not impair the operation and/or safety of any buildings that remain under the OSHPD's jurisdiction. Demolition shall be in accordance with California Building Code Section 3303.*

SECTION 313A—EARTHQUAKE MONITORING INSTRUMENTS FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS

313.A.1 Earthquake recording instrumentation of existing buildings. *All owners of existing structures, selected by the enforcement agency for the installation of earthquake-recording instruments, shall provide space for the installation and access to such instruments. Location of said instruments shall be determined by the enforcement agency. The enforcement agency shall make arrangements to provide, maintain and service the instruments. Data shall be the property of the enforcement agency, but copies of individual records shall be made available to the public on request and the payment of an appropriate fee.*

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 4 – REPAIRS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter													**X**			**X**								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				**X**	**X**						**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	**X**	**X**	**X**																					
Chapter / Section																								
401.1			X								X	X		X	X									
401.1.1	X		X																					
401.1.2	X																							
401.2			X																					
401.3	X																							
402			X																					
402.2				X	X																			
402.3				X	X																			
403			X																					
404			X																					
405.2.1 – 405.2.5				†	†																			
405.2.3.1			X																					
405.2.6	X																							
406			X								†	†		†	†									
406.1	X																							
407.1	X		X	X	X																			
408			X																					
408.1	X	X		X	X																			
408.2	X	X		X	X																			
408.3				†	†																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

4 REPAIRS

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 4 provides requirements for repairs of existing buildings. The provisions define conditions under which repairs may be made using materials and methods like those of the original construction or the extent to which repairs must comply with requirements for new buildings.

SECTION 401—GENERAL

401.1 Scope. *R*epairs shall comply with the requirements of this chapter. Repairs to historic buildings *and structures shall* comply with *Part 8, Title 24, C.C.R.* ***[OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 & 5]*** *Repairs to historic buildings not adopted by OSHPD. Repairs shall comply with the requirements in the California Building Code, Sections 1224.2, 1225.2, 1226.2, 1227.2 and 1228.2 for functional requirements as applicable.*

401.1.1 Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands. Repairs to existing bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands shall comply with ICC 300.

401.1.2 Scope. [BSC] *For state-owned buildings, including those owned by the University of California and the California State University and the Judicial Council, the requirements of Sections 405.2.1 and 405.2.3 are replaced by the requirements of Sections 317 through 322.*

401.2 Compliance. The work shall not make the building less complying than it was before the repair was undertaken. Work on nondamaged components that is necessary for the required repair of damaged components shall be considered part of the repair and shall not be subject to requirements for alterations.

[BS] 401.3 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas, repairs that constitute substantial improvement shall require that the building comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

SECTION 402—BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS

402.1 Glazing in hazardous locations. Replacement glazing in hazardous locations shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of the *California Building Code* or *California Residential Code* as applicable.

Exception: Glass block walls, louvered windows and jalousies repaired with like materials.

402.2 Existing materials. [HCD] *Existing materials shall comply with Section 302.3.*

402.3 New and replacement materials. [HCD & HCD 2] *New and replacement materials used for repairs shall comply with Section 302.4.*

SECTION 403—FIRE PROTECTION

403.1 General. Repairs shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of fire protection provided.

SECTION 404—MEANS OF EGRESS

404.1 General. Repairs shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of protection provided for the means of egress.

SECTION 405—STRUCTURAL

[BS] 405.1 General. Structural damage shall be repaired in compliance with this section and Section 401.2.

405.1.1 Structural concrete. Repair of structural concrete shall be permitted to comply with ACI 562 Section 1.7, except where Section 405.2.2, 405.2.3 or 405.2.4.1 requires compliance with Section 304.3.

[BS] 405.2 Repairs to damaged buildings. Repairs to damaged buildings shall comply with this section.

[BS] 405.2.1 Repairs for less than substantial structural damage. Unless otherwise required by this section, for damage less than substantial structural damage, the damaged elements shall be permitted to be restored to their predamage condition.

[BS] 405.2.1.1 Snow damage. Structural components whose damage was caused by or related to snow load effects shall be repaired, replaced or altered to satisfy the requirements of Section 1608 of the *California Building Code*.

[BS] 405.2.2 Disproportionate earthquake damage. A building assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F that has sustained disproportionate earthquake damage shall be subject to the requirements for buildings with substantial structural damage to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system.

[BS] 405.2.3 Substantial structural damage to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system. A building that has sustained substantial structural damage to the vertical elements of its lateral force-resisting system shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 405.2.3.1, and either repaired in accordance with Section 405.2.3.2 or repaired and retrofitted in accordance with Section 405.2.3.3, depending on the results of the evaluation.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C whose substantial structural damage was not caused by earthquake need not be evaluated or retrofitted for load combinations that include earthquake effects.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2. One- and two-family dwellings need not be evaluated or retrofitted for load combinations that include earthquake effects.

[BS] 405.2.3.1 Evaluation. The building shall be evaluated by a registered design professional, and the evaluation findings shall be submitted to the code official. The evaluation shall establish whether the lateral force-resisting system of the damaged building, including its foundation, if repaired to its predamage state, would comply with the provisions of the *California Building Code* for load combinations that include wind effects, and with Section 304.3.2 of this code.

[BS] 405.2.3.2 Extent of repair for compliant buildings. If the evaluation establishes that the building in its predamage condition complies with the provisions of Section 405.2.3.1, then the damaged elements shall be permitted to be restored to their predamage condition.

[BS] 405.2.3.3 Extent of repair for noncompliant buildings. If the evaluation does not establish that the lateral force-resisting system of the building in its predamage condition complies with the provisions of Section 405.2.3.1, then the lateral force-resisting system, and its foundation, shall be retrofitted to comply with the provisions of this section. The wind loads for the repair and retrofit shall be those required by the building code in effect at the time of original construction, unless the damage was caused by wind, in which case the wind loads shall be in accordance with the *California Building Code*. The seismic retrofit shall comply with Section 304.3.2 of this code, but the earthquake loads shall not be less than those required by the building code in effect at the time of original construction.

[BS] 405.2.4 Substantial structural damage to gravity load-carrying components. Gravity load-carrying components that have sustained substantial structural damage shall be retrofitted to comply with the applicable provisions for dead, live and snow loads in the *California Building Code*. Undamaged gravity load-carrying components, including undamaged foundation components, that receive dead, live or snow loads from retrofitted components shall also be retrofitted if required to comply with these design loads.

[BS] 405.2.4.1 Lateral force-resisting elements. Regardless of the level of damage to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system, if substantial structural damage to gravity load-carrying components was caused primarily by wind or seismic effects, then the building shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 405.2.3.1 and, if noncompliant, retrofitted in accordance with Section 405.2.3.3.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C whose substantial structural damage was not caused by earthquake need not be evaluated or retrofitted for load combinations that include earthquake effects.
2. One- and two-family dwellings need not be evaluated or retrofitted for load combinations that include earthquake effects.

[BS] 405.2.5 Substantial structural damage to snow load-carrying components. Where substantial structural damage to any snow load-carrying components is caused by or related to snow load effects, any components required to carry snow loads on roof framing of similar construction shall be repaired, replaced or retrofitted to satisfy the requirements of Section 1608 of the *California Building Code*.

[BS] 405.2.6 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas, buildings that have sustained substantial damage shall be brought into compliance with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code* or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

SECTION 406—ELECTRICAL

[OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 & 5] *Not adopted by OSHPD. Existing electrical wiring and equipment undergoing repair shall be in accordance with Title 24 Part 3 California Electrical Code (CEC).*

406.1 General. Repairs to existing electrical wiring and equipment shall be in accordance with the *California Electrical Code.*

406.1.1 Reconditioned electrical equipment. Reconditioned electrical equipment shall comply with the *California Electrical Code*. Electrical equipment prohibited from being reconditioned by the applicable sections of the *California Electrical Code* shall not be reconditioned unless permitted by NFPA 99.

406.1.2 Health care facilities. Portions of electrical systems being repaired in Group I-2, ambulatory care facilities and outpatient clinics shall comply with NFPA 99 requirements for repairs.

SECTION 407—MECHANICAL

407.1 General. Existing mechanical systems undergoing repair shall not make the building less complying than it was before the damaged occurred. ***[HCD 1, HCD 2 & BSC]*** *Existing mechanical systems undergoing repair shall comply with the California Mechanical Code.*

SECTION 408—PLUMBING

408.1 Materials. Plumbing materials and supplies shall not be used for repairs that are prohibited in the *California Plumbing Code*. ***[HCD 1, HCD 2, BSC & BSC-CG]*** *Existing plumbing systems undergoing repair shall comply with the California Plumbing Code and Division 4.3 or Division 5.3 of the CALGreen Code, as applicable.*

408.2 Water closet replacement. The maximum water consumption flow rates and quantities for all replaced water closets shall be *1.28* gallons *(4.8* L*)* per flushing cycle.

408.3 Health care facilities. Portions of medical gas systems being repaired in Group I-2, ambulatory care facilities and outpatient clinics shall comply with NFPA 99 requirements for repairs.

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 4A – REPAIRS [OSHPD 1]

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter										X														
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

4A

REPAIRS

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 4A governs the repair of existing buildings regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development, which include hospitals and correctional treatment centers [applications listed in Section 1.10.1 (OSHPD 1)].*

SECTION 401*A*—GENERAL

401*A*.1 Scope. Repairs shall comply with the requirements of this chapter. *The provisions of this chapter shall apply to existing structures for applications listed in Section 1.10.1 [OSHPD 1] regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).*

401*A*.1.1 Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands. Repairs to existing bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands shall comply with ICC 300.

401*A*.2 Compliance. The work shall not make the building less complying than it was before the repair was undertaken. Work on nondamaged components that is necessary for the required repair of damaged components shall be considered part of the repair and shall not be subject to requirements for alterations.

401*A*.3 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas, repairs that constitute substantial improvement shall require that the building comply with Section 1612*A* of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 402*A*—BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS

402*A*.1 *Glass replacement.* *The installation or replacement of glass shall be as required for new installations in accordance with the California Building Code.*

SECTION 403*A*—FIRE PROTECTION

403*A*.1 General. *Fire protection shall comply with the California Building Standards Code.*

SECTION 404*A*—MEANS OF EGRESS

404*A*.1 General. Repairs shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of protection provided for the means of egress.

SECTION 405*A*—STRUCTURAL

405*A*.1 General. Structural damage shall be repaired in compliance with this section and Section 401*A*.2.

Exception: *Routine maintenance required by Chapter 3A, ordinary repairs exempt from permit in accordance with California Building Code Section 105.2, and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for repairs in this section.*

405*A*.1.1 Structural concrete. Repair of structural concrete shall be permitted to comply with ACI 562 Section 1.7, except where Section 405.2.2, 405.2.3 or 405.2.4.1 requires compliance with Section 304.3.

405*A*.2 Repairs to damaged buildings. Repairs to damaged buildings shall comply with this section.

405*A*.2.1 Repairs for less than substantial structural damage. Unless otherwise required by this section, for damage less than substantial structural damage, the damaged elements shall be permitted to be restored to their predamage condition. *New structural members and connections used for this repair shall comply with the detailing provisions of this code for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.*

405*A*.2.1.1 Snow damage. Structural components whose damage was caused by or related to snow load effects shall be repaired, replaced or altered to satisfy the requirements of Section 1608 of the *California Building Code*.

405*A*.2.2 Disproportionate earthquake damage. A building assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F that has sustained disproportionate earthquake damage shall be subject to the requirements for buildings with substantial structural damage to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system.

405*A*.2.3 Substantial structural damage to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system. A building that has sustained substantial structural damage to the vertical elements of its lateral force-resisting system shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 405*A*.2.3.1, and either repaired in accordance with Section 405*A*.2.3.2 or repaired and retrofitted in accordance with Section 405*A*.2.3.3, depending on the results of the evaluation.

405*A*.2.3.1 Evaluation. The building shall be evaluated by a registered design professional, and the evaluation findings shall be submitted to the *building* official. The evaluation shall establish whether the lateral force-resisting system of the damaged building, including its foundation, if repaired to its predamage state, would comply with the provisions of the *California Building Code* for load combinations that include wind *and earthquake* effects. *Earthquake loads for this evaluation, if required, shall*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

be permitted to be 75 percent of those prescribed in California Building Code Section 1613A. Alternatively, where the earthquake damage has not resulted in disproportionate earthquake damage or did not result in collapse, the earthquake load evaluation shall be permitted to be performed in accordance with Section 304A.3.4.4 for SPC-2 buildings and Section 304A.3.4.5 for buildings rated SPC-3, SPC-4D and SPC-4. SPC-5 buildings shall be permitted to be evaluated in accordance with Section 304A.3.4.6, except that the seismic hazard shall be permitted to be reduced to BSE-1E and BSE-2E.

405*A*.2.3.2 Extent of repair for compliant buildings. If the evaluation establishes that the building in its predamage condition complies with the provisions of Section 405.2.3.1, then the damaged elements shall be permitted to be restored to their predamage condition.

405*A*.2.3.3 Extent of repair for noncompliant buildings. If the evaluation does not establish that the lateral force-resisting system of the building in its predamage condition complies with the provisions of Section 405.2.3.1, then the lateral force-resisting system, and its foundation, shall be retrofitted to comply with the provisions of this section. The wind loads for the repair and retrofit shall be those required by the building code in effect at the time of original construction, unless the damage was caused by wind, in which case the wind loads shall be in accordance with the *California Building Code*. *The* earthquake loads shall not be less than those required by the building code in effect at the time of original construction *but not less than 75 percent of those prescribed in California Building Code Section 1613A. Alternatively, where the earthquake damage has not resulted in disproportionate earthquake damage or did not result in collapse, the retrofit shall be permitted to be performed in accordance with Section 304A.3.4.4 for SPC-2 buildings, Section 304A.3.4.5 for SPC-3, SPC-4D and SPC-4 buildings and Section 304A.3.4.6 for SPC-5 buildings. For SPC-5 buildings, the seismic hazard shall be permitted to be reduced to BSE-1E and BSE-2E. Use of Section 304A.3.4.5 to rehabilitate SPC-3, SPC-4D and SPC-4 buildings will result in re-classification of the building to SPC-4D. Noncompliant SPC-4 buildings may be rehabilitated to SPC-5 in accordance with Section 304A.3.4.6 using the reduced seismic hazard. New structural members and connections required by this rehabilitation design shall comply with the detailing provisions of this code for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.*

405*A*.2.4 Substantial structural damage to gravity load-carrying components. Gravity load-carrying components that have sustained substantial structural damage shall be retrofitted to comply with the applicable provisions for dead, live and snow loads in the *California Building Code*. Undamaged gravity load-carrying components, including undamaged foundation components, that receive dead, live or snow loads from retrofitted components shall also be retrofitted if required to comply with these design loads. *New structural members and connections required by this rehabilitation design shall comply with the detailing provisions of this code for new buildings of similar structure, purpose and location.*

405*A*.2.4.1 Lateral force-resisting elements. Regardless of the level of damage to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system, if substantial structural damage to gravity load-carrying components was caused primarily by wind or seismic effects, then the building shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 405*A*.2.3.1 and, if noncompliant, retrofitted in accordance with Section 405*A*.2.3.3.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C whose substantial structural damage was not caused by earthquake need not be evaluated or retrofitted for load combinations that include earthquake effects.
2. One- and two-family dwellings need not be evaluated or retrofitted for load combinations that include earthquake effects.

405*A*.2.5 Substantial structural damage to snow load-carrying components. Where substantial structural damage to any snow load-carrying components is caused by or related to snow load effects, any components required to carry snow loads on roof framing of similar construction shall be repaired, replaced or retrofitted to satisfy the requirements of Section 1608 of the *California Building Code*.

405*A*.2.6 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas, buildings that have sustained substantial damage shall be brought into compliance with Section 1612*A* of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 406*A*—ELECTRICAL

406*A*.1 General. *Existing electrical wiring and equipment undergoing repair shall be in accordance with Title 24 Part 3 California Electrical Code (CEC).*

406*A*.1.1 Reconditioned electrical equipment. Reconditioned electrical equipment shall comply with the *California Electrical Code*. Electrical equipment prohibited from being reconditioned by the applicable sections of the *California Electrical Code* shall not be reconditioned unless permitted by NFPA 99.

406*A*.1.2 Health care facilities. Portions of electrical systems being repaired in Group I-2, ambulatory care facilities and outpatient clinics shall comply with NFPA 99 requirements for repairs.

SECTION 407*A*—MECHANICAL

407*A*.1 General. Existing mechanical systems undergoing repair shall not make the building less complying than it was before the damaged occurred.

SECTION 408*A*—PLUMBING

408*A*.1 Materials. Plumbing materials and supplies shall not be used for repairs that are prohibited in the *Title 24 Part 5 California Plumbing Code (CPC).*

408*A*.2 Water closet replacement. The maximum water consumption flow rates and quantities for all replaced water closets shall be *1.28* gallons (*4.8* L) per flushing cycle.

408*A*.3 Health care facilities. Portions of medical gas systems being repaired in Group I-2, ambulatory care facilities and outpatient clinics shall comply with NFPA 99 requirements for repairs.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 5 – PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE METHOD

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter													X			X								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	X		X					X	X		X	X		X	X									
Chapter / Section																								
501											X	X		X	X									
501.1	X			X	X																			
501.1 – 501.3			X																					
501.1.2	X																							
501.3				†	†	†																		
501.4 – 501.5.1			X																					
501.5				X																				
502											X	X		X	X									
502.1	X		X	X	X																			
502.1.2			X																					
502.2 – 502.3	X																							
502.5	X		X	†	†	†																		
502.6				†	†	†																		
503											X	X		X	X									
503.1	X		X																					
503.2	X																							
503.3	X							X	X															
503.14			X	†	†	†																		
503.15			X																					
503.16 – 503.17			X	†	†	†																		
503.18				†	†	†																		
503.19			X	†	†	†																		
503.20			X																					
504			X	†	†	†					X	X		X	X									
505			X								X	X		X	X									
505.2				X	X																			
506											X	X		X	X									
506.1 – 506.1.1	X		X																					
506.1.2											X	X		X	X									
506.2 – 506.3	X		X																					
506.4			X																					
506.5 *Exception*	X																							
506.6				†	†	†																		

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

CHAPTER

5

PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE METHOD

About this chapter: Chapter 5 provides details for the prescriptive compliance method—one of the three main options of compliance available in this code for buildings and structures undergoing alteration, addition or change of occupancy.

SECTION 501—GENERAL

501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the alteration, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures, including historic buildings and structures, ***[BSC]*** *including state-regulated structures in accordance with Section 501.1.2. Historic buildings and structures shall comply with Part 8, Title 24, C.C.R.*

Exceptions:

1. ***[HCD 2]*** *For relocated or moved buildings and maintenance, alteration, repair, addition or change of occupancy to existing buildings and accessory structures in mobilehome parks or special occupancy parks as provided in Section 1.8.2.1.3. See California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapters 2 and 2.2.*
2. ***[HCD 1]*** *Limited-density owner-built rural dwellings.*

[HCD 1] *In addition to the requirements in this chapter, maintenance, alteration, repair, addition or change of occupancy to existing buildings and accessory structures under the authority of the Department of Housing and Community Development, as provided in Section 1.8.2.1.1, shall comply with California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1.*

501.1.1 Compliance with other methods. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy to existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions of this chapter or with one of the methods provided in Section 301.3.

501.1.2 Existing state-owned structures. [BSC] *The provisions of Sections 317 through 322 establish minimum standards for earthquake evaluation and design for retrofit of existing state-owned structures, including buildings owned by the University of California, the California State University and the Judicial Council.*

The provisions of Sections 317 through 322 may be adopted by a local jurisdiction for earthquake evaluation and design for retrofit of existing buildings.

501.2 Fire-resistance ratings. Where approved by the code official, in buildings where an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *California Building Code* has been added, and the building is now sprinklered throughout, the required fire-resistance ratings of building elements and materials shall be permitted to meet the requirements of the current building code. The building is required to meet the other applicable requirements of the *California Building Code*.

Plans, investigation and evaluation reports, and other data shall be submitted indicating which building elements and materials the applicant is requesting the code official to review and approve for determination of applying the current building code fire-resistance ratings. Any special construction features, including fire-resistance-rated assemblies and smoke-resistive assemblies, conditions of occupancy, means of egress conditions, fire code deficiencies, approved modifications or approved alternative materials, design and methods of construction, and equipment applying to the building that impact required fire-resistance ratings shall be identified in the evaluation reports submitted.

501.3 Health care facilities. In Group I-2 facilities, ambulatory care facilities and outpatient clinics, any altered or added portion of an existing electrical or medical gas systems shall be required to meet installation and equipment requirements in NFPA 99.

501.4 Existing Group R occupancies. [SFM] *See the California Residential Code for existing Group R-3 occupancies or Chapter 11 of the California Fire Code for all other existing Group R occupancies.*

501.5 Carbon monoxide alarms. [HCD 1, SFM] *Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 17926, carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in all existing Group R buildings, as required in Section 915 of the California Building Code or Section R315 of the California Residential Code, as applicable.*

501.5.1 Carbon monoxide detection in alterations to an existing Group E building. *Where the alteration adds any of the conditions identified in the California Fire Code Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6 to an existing Group E building, not previously required to be provided with carbon monoxide detection, new carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Section 915 of the California Fire Code.*

Exceptions:

1. *The alteration replaces an existing fossil-fuel burning appliance, fireplace or forced-air furnace, or any of the conditions identified in Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6 are already present.*
2. *The Group E building was constructed before the adoption of the 2016 California Building Standards Code.*

SECTION 502—ADDITIONS

502.1 General. Additions to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code or California Residential Code, as applicable,* for new construction. Alterations to the existing building or structure shall be made to ensure that

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

the existing building or structure together with the addition are not less complying with the provisions of the *California Building Code* than the existing building or structure was prior to the addition except that the structural elements need only comply with Sections 502.2 through 502.3. An existing building together with its additions shall comply with the height and area provisions of Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code*. Where a new occupiable roof is added to a building or structure, the occupiable roof shall comply with the provisions of the *California Building Code.**[OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** Structural elements shall comply with all the provisions of Section 502.*

Exceptions:

1. In-filling of floor openings and nonoccupiable appendages such as elevator and exit stairway shafts shall be permitted beyond that permitted by the *California Building Code.*
2. ***[BSC]** For state-owned buildings, including those owned by the University of California and the California State University and the Judicial Council, structural elements shall also comply with the requirements of Sections 317 through 322.*

[BS] 502.1.1 Risk category assignment. Where the addition and the existing building have different occupancies, the risk category of each existing and added occupancy shall be determined in accordance with Section 1604.5.1 of the *California Building Code*. Where application of that section results in a higher risk category for the existing building compared with the risk category for the existing building before the addition, such a change shall be considered a change of occupancy and shall comply with Section 506 of this code. Where application of that section results in a higher risk category for the addition compared with the risk category for the addition by itself, the addition and any systems in the existing building required to serve the addition shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for new construction for the higher risk category.

502.1.2 Creation or extension of nonconformity. An addition shall not create or extend any nonconformity in the existing building to which the addition is being made with regard to accessibility, structural strength, supports and attachments for nonstructural components, fire safety, means of egress or the capacity of mechanical, plumbing or electrical systems.

Exception: Nonconforming supports and attachments for nonstructural components that serve the addition from within the existing building need not be altered to comply with *California Building Code* Section 1613 unless the components are part of the addition's life-safety system or are required to serve an addition assigned to Risk Category IV.

[BS] 502.2 Flood hazard areas. For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, any addition that constitutes substantial improvement of the existing structure shall comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, and all aspects of the existing structure shall be brought into compliance with the requirements for new construction for flood design. For new foundations, foundations raised or extended upward, and replacement foundations, the foundations shall be in compliance with the requirements for new construction for flood design.

For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, any additions that do not constitute *substantial improvement* of the *existing structure* are not required to comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, provided that both of the following apply:

1. The addition shall not create or extend a nonconformity of the existing building or structure with the flood-resistant construction requirements.
2. The lowest floor of the addition shall be at or above the lower of the lowest floor of the existing building or structure or the lowest floor elevation required in Section 1612 of the *California Building Code* or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

[BS] 502.3 Existing structural elements carrying gravity load. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element for which an addition and its related alterations cause an increase in design dead, live or snow load, including snow drift effects, of more than 5 percent shall be replaced or altered as needed to carry the gravity loads required by the *California Building Code* for new structures. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element whose vertical load-carrying capacity is decreased as part of the addition and its related alterations shall be considered to be an altered element subject to the requirements of Section 503.3. Any existing element that will form part of the lateral load path for any part of the addition shall be considered to be an existing lateral load-carrying structural element subject to the requirements of Section 502.4.

Exception: Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and the addition together comply with the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.

[BS] 502.4 Existing structural elements carrying lateral load. Where the addition is structurally independent of the existing structure, existing lateral load-carrying structural elements shall be permitted to remain unaltered. Where the addition is not structurally independent of the existing structure, the lateral force-resisting system of the existing structure and its addition acting together as a single structure shall comply with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and with Section 304.3.1 of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Any existing lateral load-carrying structural element whose demand-capacity ratio with the addition considered is not more than 10 percent greater than its demand-capacity ratio with the addition ignored shall be permitted to remain unaltered. For purposes of calculating demand-capacity ratios, the demand shall consider applicable load combinations with design lateral loads or forces in accordance with Sections 1609 and 1613 of the *California Building Code*. For purposes of this exception, comparisons of demand-capacity ratios and calculation of design lateral loads, forces and capacities shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction. When calcu-

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

lating demand-capacity ratios for wind, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* or the code wind forces in effect at the time. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for earthquake, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 304.3.1 or the full seismic forces in effect at the time.

2. Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and the addition together comply with the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.

502.5 Smoke barriers in Group *R-2.1*. Where an addition to an existing Group *R-2.1* building adds sleeping areas that result in more than 50 care recipients on a story, smoke barriers shall be provided to subdivide such story into not fewer than two smoke compartments in accordance with Section 420.6 of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Where the existing building is divided into smoke compartments and the addition does not result in any individual smoke compartment exceeding the size and travel distance requirements in Section 420.6 of the *California Building Code*, additional smoke barriers are not required.

502.6 Enhanced classroom acoustics. In Group E occupancies, enhanced classroom acoustics shall be provided in all classrooms in the addition with a volume of 20,000 cubic feet (565 m^3) or less. Enhanced classroom acoustics shall comply with the reverberation time in Section 808 of ICC A117.1.

SECTION 503—ALTERATIONS

503.1 General. Alterations to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code or California Residential Code, as applicable,* for new construction. Alterations shall be such that the existing building or structure is not less complying with the provisions of the *California Building Code or California Residential Code, as applicable,* than the existing building or structure was prior to the alteration, except that the structural elements need only comply with Sections 503.2 through 503.12.

Exceptions:

1. An existing stairway shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 1011 of the *California Building Code* where the existing space and construction does not allow a reduction in pitch or slope.
2. Handrails otherwise required to comply with Section 1011.11 of the *California Building Code* shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 1014.7 of the *California Building Code* regarding full extension of the handrails where such extensions would be hazardous because of plan configuration.
3. Where provided in below-grade transportation stations, existing and new escalators shall be permitted to have a clear width of less than 32 inches (815 mm).
4. ***[BSC]*** *For state-owned buildings, including those owned by the University of California and the California State University and the judicial council, the requirements of Section 503.4 are replaced by the requirements of Sections 317 through 322.*

[BS] 503.2 Flood hazard areas. For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, any alteration that constitutes substantial improvement of the existing structure shall comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, and all aspects of the existing structure shall be brought into compliance with the requirements for new construction for flood design.

For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, any alterations that do not constitute substantial improvement of the existing structure are not required to comply with the flood design requirements for new construction.

[BS] 503.3 Existing structural elements carrying gravity load. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element for which an alteration causes an increase in design dead, live or snow load, including snow drift effects, of more than 5 percent shall be replaced or altered as needed to carry the gravity loads required by the *California Building Code* for new structures. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element whose gravity load-carrying capacity is decreased as part of the alteration shall be shown to have the capacity to resist the applicable design dead, live and snow loads including snow drift effects required by the *California Building Code* for new structures.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes where the altered building complies with the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.
2. Buildings in which the increased dead load is due entirely to the addition of a second layer of roof covering weighing 3 pounds per square foot (0.1437 kN/m^2) or less over an existing single layer of roof covering. ***[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]*** *Exception 2 is not permitted.*

[BS] 503.4 Existing structural elements carrying lateral load. Except as permitted by Section 503.13, where the alteration increases design lateral loads, results in a prohibited structural irregularity as defined in ASCE 7, or decreases the capacity of any existing lateral load-carrying structural element, the lateral force-resisting system of the altered building or structure shall meet the requirements of Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.2 of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Any existing lateral load-carrying structural element whose demand-capacity ratio with the alteration considered is not more than 10 percent greater than its demand-capacity ratio with the alteration ignored shall be permitted to remain

unaltered. For purposes of calculating demand-capacity ratios, the demand shall consider applicable load combinations with design lateral loads or forces in accordance with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.1 or 304.3.2 of this code. The same methodology shall be used for the altered and unaltered structures. For purposes of this exception, comparisons of demand-capacity ratios and calculation of design lateral loads, forces and capacities shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for wind, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* or the code wind forces in effect at the time. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for earthquake, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 304.3.1 or Section 304.3.2, Item 1 or 3, or the full or reduced seismic forces in effect at the time.

2. Buildings in which the increase in the demand-capacity ratio is due entirely to the addition of rooftop-supported mechanical equipment individually having an operating weight less than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) and where the total additional weight of all rooftop equipment placed after initial construction of the building is less than 10 percent of the roof dead load. For purposes of this exception, "roof" shall mean the roof level above a particular story.
3. Increases in the demand-capacity ratio due to lateral loads from seismic forces need not be evaluated for the installation of rooftop photovoltaic panel systems where the additional roof dead load due to the system, including ballast where applicable, does not exceed 5 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.2394 kN/m^2) and does not exceed 10 percent of the dead load of the existing roof.

[BS] 503.5 Seismic Design Category F. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, and where the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category F, the lateral force-resisting system of the altered building shall meet the requirements of Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.2 of this code. Supports and attachments for nonstructural components serving any portion of the building with a use included in Risk Category IV shall comply with Section 1613 of the *California Building Code* or shall comply with ASCE 41 using an objective of Position Retention nonstructural performance with the BSE-1E earthquake hazard level.

[BS] 503.6 Bracing for unreinforced masonry parapets on reroofing. Where the intended alteration requires a permit for reroofing and involves removal of roofing materials from more than 25 percent of the roof area of a building assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F that has parapets constructed of unreinforced masonry, the work shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of parapet bracing to resist out-of-plane seismic forces.

[BS] 503.7 Anchorage for concrete and reinforced masonry walls. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F and the building's structural system includes concrete or reinforced masonry walls with a flexible roof diaphragm, the alteration shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of wall anchors at the roof line.

[BS] 503.8 Anchorage for unreinforced masonry walls in major alterations. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F and the building's structural system includes unreinforced masonry bearing walls, the alteration shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of wall anchors at the floor and roof lines.

[BS] 503.9 Bracing for unreinforced masonry parapets in major alterations. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, and where the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, and the building has parapets constructed of unreinforced masonry, the alteration shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of parapet bracing to resist out-of-plane seismic forces.

[BS] 503.10 Anchorage of unreinforced masonry partitions in major alterations. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, or where the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, and the building has unreinforced masonry partitions and nonstructural walls, the alteration work shall include evaluation of the existing condition or removal, anchoring or alteration of any such partitions or walls within the work area and adjacent to egress paths from the work area, to comply with Section 304.3.2.

[BS] 503.11 Substantial structural alteration. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area and where work involves a substantial structural alteration, the lateral load-resisting system of the altered building shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.2 of this code. Where the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category D or F, supports and attachments for nonstructural components required to serve any portion of the building with a use included in Risk Category IV shall comply with Section 1613 of the *California Building Code* or shall comply with ASCE 41 using an objective of Position Retention nonstructural performance with the BSE-1E earthquake hazard level.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes that are altered based on the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or in compliance with the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.
2. Where the intended alteration involves structural components of the lowest story of a building, only the lateral load-resisting system above that story need not comply with this section.

[BS] 503.12 Roof diaphragms resisting wind loads in high-wind regions. Where the intended alteration requires a permit for reroofing and involves removal of roofing materials from more than 50 percent of the roof diaphragm of a building or section of a building located where the basic wind speed, *V*, is greater than 130 mph (58 m/s) in accordance with Figure 1609.3(2) of the *California*

Building Code, roof diaphragms, connections of the roof diaphragm to roof framing members, and roof-to-wall connections shall be evaluated for the wind loads specified in Section 1609 of the *California Building Code*, including wind uplift. If the diaphragms and connections in their current condition are not capable of resisting 75 percent of those wind loads, they shall be replaced or strengthened in accordance with the loads specified in Section 1609 of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Buildings that have been demonstrated to comply with the wind load provisions in ASCE 7—88 or later editions.

[BS] 503.13 Voluntary lateral force-resisting system alterations. Structural alterations that are intended exclusively to improve the lateral force-resisting system and are not required by other sections of this code shall not be subject to the structural requirements of Section 503, provided that all of the following apply:

1. With the alteration complete, the capacity of existing structural systems to resist forces is not reduced.
2. New structural elements are detailed and connected to existing or new structural elements as required by the selected design criteria.

   Exception: New lateral force-resisting systems designed in accordance with the *California Building Code* are permitted to be of a type designated as "Ordinary" or "Intermediate" where ASCE 7 Table 12.2-1 states these types of systems are not permitted.
3. Supports and attachments for nonstructural elements removed and reinstalled to facilitate the work comply with the *California Building Code* for new construction.
4. The alterations do not create a structural irregularity as defined in ASCE 7 or make an existing structural irregularity more severe.

   Exception: Condition 4 need not be satisfied where the work complies with Section 304.3.2, Item 3.

503.14 Smoke compartments. In Group I-2 occupancies where the alteration is on a story used for sleeping rooms for more than 30 care recipients, the story shall be divided into not less than two compartments by smoke barrier walls in accordance with Section 407.5 of the *California Building Code* as required for new construction.

503.15 Refuge areas. Where alterations affect the configuration of an area utilized as a refuge area, the capacity of the refuge area shall not be reduced below the required capacity of the refuge area for horizontal exits in accordance with Section 1026.4 of the *California Building Code*.

Where the horizontal exit also forms a smoke compartment, the capacity of the refuge area for Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies and ambulatory care facilities shall not be reduced below that required in Sections 407.5.3, 408.6.2, 420.6.1 and 422.3.2 of the *California Building Code,* as applicable.

503.16 Group *R-2.1* occupancies. Group *R-2.1* occupancies that are being altered and where the work area is greater than 50 percent of the aggregate building area shall be classified in accordance with Section *310.3.1* of the *California Building Code*.

503.16.1 Smoke Barriers in Group *R-2.1*, Condition 2. In Group *R-2.1* occupancies where the work area is on a story used for sleeping rooms for more than 30 care recipients, the story shall be divided into not less than two compartments by smoke barrier walls in accordance with Section 420.6 of the *California Building Code*.

503.17 Ambulatory care facilities. Where a work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area and the work area includes an existing ambulatory care facility, the following shall be provided:

1. A smoke compartment in accordance with Section 422.3 of the *California Building Code* where the alteration results in an ambulatory care facility greater than 10,000 square feet on one story.
2. Separation from adjacent spaces in accordance with Section 422.2 of the *California Building Code*, where any such facility has the potential for four or more care recipients are to be incapable of self-preservation at any time.

503.18 Enhanced classroom acoustics. In Group E occupancies, where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, enhanced classroom acoustics shall be provided in all classrooms with a volume of 20,000 cubic feet (565 m^3) or less. Enhanced classroom acoustics shall comply with the reverberation time in Section 808 of ICC A117.1.

503.19 Locking arrangements in educational occupancies. In Group E occupancies, Group B educational occupancies and Group I-4 occupancies, egress doors with locking arrangements designed to keep intruders from entering the room shall comply with Section 1010.2.8 of the *California Building Code*.

503.20 Two-way communications systems. Where the work area for alterations exceeds 50 percent of the building area and the building has elevator service, a two-way communication systems shall be provided where required by Section 1009.8 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 504—FIRE ESCAPES
(NOT ADOPTED BY HCD)

[BE] 504.1 Where permitted. Fire escapes shall be permitted only as provided for in Sections 504.1.1 through 504.1.4.

[BE] 504.1.1 New buildings. Fire escapes shall not constitute any part of the required means of egress in new buildings.

[BE] 504.1.2 Existing fire escapes. Existing fire escapes shall continue to be accepted as a component in the means of egress in existing buildings only.

[BE] 504.1.3 New fire escapes. New fire escapes for existing buildings shall be permitted only where exterior stairways cannot be utilized because of lot lines limiting stairway size or because of sidewalks, alleys or roads at grade level. New fire escapes shall not incorporate ladders or access by windows.

[BE] 504.1.4 Limitations. Fire escapes shall comply with this section and shall not constitute more than 50 percent of the required number of exits nor more than 50 percent of the required exit capacity.

[BE] 504.2 Location. Where located on the front of the building and where projecting beyond the building line, the lowest landing shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) or more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above grade, and shall be equipped with a counterbalanced stairway to the street. In alleyways and thoroughfares less than 30 feet (9144 mm) wide, the clearance under the lowest landing shall be not less than 12 feet (3658 mm).

[BE] 504.3 Construction. The fire escape shall be designed to support a live load of 100 pounds per square foot (4788 Pa) and shall be constructed of steel or other approved noncombustible materials. Fire escapes constructed of wood not less than nominal 2 inches (51 mm) thick are permitted on buildings of Type V construction. Walkways and railings located over or supported by combustible roofs in buildings of Type III and IV construction are permitted to be of wood not less than nominal 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

[BE] 504.4 Dimensions. Stairways shall be not less than 22 inches (559 mm) wide with risers not more than, and treads not less than, 8 inches (203 mm) and landings at the foot of stairways not less than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide by 36 inches (914 mm) long, located not more than 8 inches (203 mm) below the door.

[BE] 504.5 Opening protectives. Doors and windows within 10 feet (3048 mm) of fire escape stairways shall be protected with $^{3}/_{4}$-hour opening protectives.

Exception: Opening protection shall not be required in buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

SECTION 505—WINDOWS AND EMERGENCY ESCAPE OPENINGS

505.1 Replacement windows. The installation or replacement of windows shall be as required for new installations.

505.2 Window fall prevention on replacement windows. In Group *R-1,* R-2 or R-3 buildings containing dwelling *or sleeping* units, and one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses regulated by the *California Residential Code*, window opening control devices or other window fall prevention devices complying with ASTM F2090 shall be installed where an existing window is replaced and where all of the following apply to the replacement window:

1. The window is operable.
2. One of the following applies:
   - 2.1. The window replacement includes replacement of the sash and frame.
   - 2.2. The window replacement includes the sash only where the existing frame remains.
3. One of the following applies:
   - 3.1. In Group R-2 or R-3 buildings containing dwelling *or sleeping* units, the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening is at a height less than 36 inches (915 mm) above the finished floor.
   - 3.2. In one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses regulated by the *California Residential Code*, the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening is at a height less than 24 inches (610 mm) above the finished floor.
4. The window will permit openings that will allow passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere when the window is in its largest opened position.
5. The vertical distance from the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening to the finished grade or other surface below, on the exterior of the building, is greater than 72 inches (1829 mm).

Exception: Operable windows where the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below, on the exterior of the room, space or building, and that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2006.

505.3 Replacement window emergency escape and rescue openings. Where windows are required to provide emergency escape and rescue openings in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies and one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses regulated by the *California Residential Code,* replacement windows shall be exempt from the requirements of Section 1031.3 of the *California Building Code* and Section 319.2 of the *California Residential Code,* provided that the replacement window meets the following conditions:

1. The replacement window is the manufacturer's largest standard size window that will fit within the existing frame or existing rough opening. The replacement window shall be permitted to be of the same operating style as the existing window or a style that provides for an equal or greater window opening area than the existing window.
2. Where the replacement of the window is part of a change of occupancy, it shall comply with Section 1011.5.6.

505.3.1 Control devices. Window opening control devices or fall prevention devices complying with ASTM F2090 shall be permitted for use on windows required to provide emergency escape and rescue openings. After operation to release the control device allowing the window to fully open, the control device shall not reduce the net clear opening area of the window unit. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall be operational from the inside of the room without the use of keys or tools.

505.4 Bars, grilles, covers or screens. Bars, grilles, covers, screens or similar devices are permitted to be placed over emergency escape and rescue openings, bulkhead enclosure or window wells that serve such openings, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The minimum net clear opening size complies with the code that was in effect at the time of construction.
2. Such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the escape and rescue opening.
3. Where such devices are installed, they shall not reduce the net clear opening of the *emergency escape and rescue openings*.
4. Smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 506—CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY

506.1 Compliance. A change of occupancy shall not be made in any building unless that building is made to comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for the use or occupancy. Changes of occupancy in a building or portion thereof shall be such that the existing building is not less complying with the provisions of this code than the existing building or structure was prior to the change. Subject to the approval of the code official, changes of occupancy shall be permitted without complying with all of the requirements of this code for the new occupancy, provided that the new occupancy is less hazardous, based on life and fire risk, than the existing occupancy.

Exception: The building need not be made to comply with Chapter 16 of the *California Building Code* unless required by Section 506.5.

506.1.1 Change in the character of use. A change of occupancy with no change of occupancy classification shall not be made to any structure that will subject the structure to any special provisions of the applicable *California Codes*, without approval of the code official. Compliance shall be only as necessary to meet the specific provisions and is not intended to require the entire building be brought into compliance.

506.1.2 Change in function. [OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 and 5] *A change in function shall require compliance with all the functional requirements for new construction in the California Building Code, including requirements in Sections 1224, 1225, 1226, 1227 and 1228.*

Exception [OSHPD 1R]*: Hospital buildings removed from acute care service adapted for re-use as skilled nursing facilities, acute psychiatric hospitals or out-patient services of a hospital may be permitted to meet the minimum room clearances, areas and dimensions of the 2001 California Building Code for existing rooms re-used for a similar purpose, subject to the approval of OSHPD.*

506.2 Certificate of occupancy. A certificate of occupancy shall be issued where it has been determined that the requirements for the new occupancy classification have been met.

506.3 Stairways. An existing stairway shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 1011 of the *California Building Code* where the existing space and construction does not allow a reduction in pitch or slope.

506.4 Existing emergency escape and rescue openings. Where a change of occupancy would require an emergency escape and rescue opening in accordance with Section 1031.1 of the *California Building Code*, operable windows serving as the emergency escape and rescue opening shall comply with the following:

1. An existing operable window shall provide a minimum net clear opening of 4 square feet (0.38 m^2) with a minimum net clear opening height of 22 inches (559 mm) and a minimum net clear opening width of 20 inches (508 mm).
2. A replacement window where such window complies with both of the following:
   2.1. The replacement window meets the size requirements in Item 1.
   2.2. The replacement window is the manufacturer's largest standard size window that will fit within the existing frame or existing rough opening. The replacement window shall be permitted to be of the same operating style as the existing window or a style that provides for an equal or greater window opening area than the existing window.

[BS] 506.5 Structural. Any building undergoing a change of occupancy shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

Exception: [BSC] *For state-owned buildings, including those owned by the University of California and the California State University and the Judicial Council, the performance level requirements of Section 506.5 are replaced with the performance level requirements of Section 317.5.*

[BS] 506.5.1 Live loads. Structural elements carrying tributary live loads from an area with a change of occupancy shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1607 of the *California Building Code*. Design live loads for areas of new occupancy shall be based on Section 1607 of the *California Building Code*. Design live loads for other areas shall be permitted to use previously approved design live loads.

Exception: Structural elements whose demand-capacity ratio considering the change of occupancy is not more than 5 percent greater than the demand-capacity ratio based on previously approved live loads need not comply with this section.

[BS] 506.5.2 Snow and wind loads. Where a change of occupancy results in a structure being assigned to a higher risk category, the structure shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1608 and 1609 of the *California Building Code* for the new risk category.

Exception: Where the area of the new occupancy is less than 10 percent of the building area, compliance with this section is not required. The cumulative effect of occupancy changes over time shall be considered.

[BS] 506.5.3 Seismic loads (seismic force-resisting system). Where a change of occupancy results in a building being assigned to a higher risk category, or where the change is from a Group S or Group U occupancy to any occupancy other than Group S or

Group U, the lateral force-resisting system of the building shall comply with Section 304.3.1 for the new risk category. Where a change of occupancy results in a building being assigned to Risk Category IV and Seismic Design Category D or F, nonstructural components serving any portion of the building changed to Risk Category IV shall comply with the requirements of Section 1613 of the *California Building Code* or shall comply with ASCE 41 using an objective of Operational nonstructural performance with the BSE-1N earthquake hazard level.

Exceptions:

1. Where the area of the new occupancy is less than 10 percent of the building area, the occupancy is not changing from a Group S or Group U occupancy, and the new occupancy is not assigned to Risk Category IV, compliance with this section is not required. The cumulative effect of occupancy changes over time shall be considered.
2. Where a change of use results in a building being reclassified from Risk Category I or II to Risk Category III and the seismic coefficient, S_{DS}, is less than 0.33, compliance with this section is not required.
3. Unreinforced masonry bearing wall buildings assigned to Risk Category III and to Seismic Design Category A or B, shall be permitted to use Appendix Chapter A1 of this code.
4. Where the change is from a Group S or Group U occupancy and there is no change of risk category, compliance with Section 304.3.2 shall be permitted.

[BS] 506.5.4 Access to Risk Category IV. Any structure that provides operational access to an adjacent structure assigned to Risk Category IV as the result of a change of occupancy shall itself comply with Sections 1608 and 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.1 of this code. Where operational access to the Risk Category IV structure is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from either an interior lot line or from another structure, access protection from potential falling debris shall be provided.

506.6 Enhanced classroom acoustics. In Group E occupancies, where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area, enhanced classroom acoustics shall be provided in all classrooms with a volume of 20,000 cubic feet (565 m^3) or less. Enhanced classroom acoustics shall comply with the reverberation time in Section 808 of ICC A117.1.

SECTION 507—HISTORIC BUILDINGS

507.1 Historic buildings. The provisions of *the California Historical Building Code (Part 8, Title 24, C.C.R), shall apply to qualified historical buildings or properties.*

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 5A – PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE METHOD [OSHPD 1]

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter										X														
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

5A

PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE METHOD

User notes:

About this chapter: *Chapter 5A provides details for the prescriptive compliance method for alteration, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development, which include hospitals and correctional treatment centers [applications listed in Section 1.10.1 (OSHPD 1)].*

SECTION 501*A*—GENERAL

501*A*.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the alteration, addition and change of occupancy of existing buildings and structures. *The provisions of this chapter shall apply to existing structures for applications listed in Section 1.10.1 [OSHPD 1] regulated by the Department of Health Care Access and Information/Office of Statewide Hospital Planning and Development (OSHPD).*

501*A*.1.1 Compliance with other methods. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy to existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions of this chapter or with one of the methods *or procedures* provided in Section 301*A*.3.

501*A*.2 Fire-resistance ratings. *Fire-resistance ratings shall comply with the California Building Standards Code.*

501A.3 Prescriptive compliance provisions. *Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy to the following categories of existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions of this section.*

501A.3.1 Prescriptive compliance provisions for SPC-4D using the California Building Code, 1980 (CBC 1980). *Nonconforming buildings shall satisfy the following requirements:*

1. *The California Building Code, 1980 (CBC 1980), as used in this chapter, consists of the Uniform Building Code, 1979 (UBC 1979) along with requirements contained in:*
    a) *California Code of Regulations, Title 24- Building Standards, dated February 2, 1980 (Revision record for Register 80, No. 5).*
    b) *California Code of Regulations, Title 22 – Social Security, dated October 13, 1979 (Revision Record for Register 79, No 41).*
    c) *California Code of Regulations, Title 17 – Public Health, dated October 13, 1979 (Revision Record for Register 79, No 41-B).*
2. *All existing structural elements of Seismic Force Resisting System (SFRS) shall satisfy the detailing requirements in the CBC 1980 or demonstrate that the level of seismic performance is equivalent to that given in the CBC 1980, as determined by the building official.*
3. *A continuous load path or paths with adequate strength and stiffness to transfer all the forces from the point of origin to final point of resistance shall be justified by analysis.*
4. *Site data report in accordance with the CBC 1980 shall establish that seismically induced differential settlement does not exceed 1″ in 40′.*
5. *Adjacent buildings shall satisfy the SPC building separation requirements in accordance with the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6 Section 3.4.*
6. *The addition of new structural elements or strengthening of existing structural elements for retrofit of nonconforming buildings to SPC-4D shall comply with the following:*
    a) *The seismic demand (forces or displacements) shall be in accordance with the CBC 1980;*
    b) *Capacity, detailing and connections for new structural elements shall satisfy the requirements in the CBC 2025 for new construction; and*
    c) *The strengthening of existing structural elements shall use capacities determined in accordance with the CBC 2025 for new construction consistent with the detailing and connections used in the strengthened member.*
7. *All construction, quality assurance and quality control shall be in accordance with the new construction provisions of CBC 2025.*
8. *Elements not part of the Seismic Force-Resisting System (SFRS), including those identified in the California Administrative Code Chapter 6, Article 10, shall be evaluated using seismic forces and the requirements of the CBC 1980.*
9. *Any column or wall that forms part of two or more intersecting SFRS and is subjected to axial load due to seismic forces acting along either principal plan axis equaling or exceeding 20 percent of the axial design strength of the column or wall shall be evaluated for the most critical load effect due to application of seismic force in any direction. The most critical load effect may be deemed to be satisfied if members and their foundations are evaluated for 100 percent of the forces for one direction plus 30 percent of the forces for the perpendicular direction, whereby the combination produces the maximum effect.*

    Exceptions: *The following buildings (with structural irregularities or unusual configuration/system) shall not be eligible for the SPC-4D upgrade using the prescriptive provisions in this section:*

    1. *Buildings with prohibited irregularities in accordance with California Building Code 2022 Section 1617A.1.10.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2. *Buildings taller than 5 stories or 65' height above the base having horizontal or vertical irregularities in accordance with ASCE 7-10 Tables 12.3-1 Items #1a, 1b and 3 or 12.3-2 Items #1a, 1b, 5a and 5b.*
3. *Buildings with unusual configuration or structural system, as determined by the building official.*

501A.3.2 Prescriptive compliance provisions for SPC-4D using the new building design requirements of this code. *Structures satisfying the requirements of the California Building Code for new general acute care hospital buildings design shall be deemed to satisfy the SPC-4D requirements of Table 2.5.3, Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code.*

All existing structural elements of a Seismic Force-Resisting System (SFRS) shall satisfy the detailing requirements of the California Building Code for new construction or demonstrate that the level of seismic performance is equivalent, as determined by the building official. A demonstration of equivalence shall consider the regularity, overstrength, redundancy and ductility of the structure.

Elements not part of the Seismic Force-Resisting System (SFRS), including those identified in the California Administrative Code Chapter 6, Article 10, shall be evaluated using seismic forces and the requirements of this code for new general acute care hospital buildings.

501A.3.3 Prescriptive compliance provisions for NPC 2, NPC 3, NPC 4 or NPC 4D and NPC 5.

501A.3.3.1 *Supports and attachments of nonstructural components, except those listed in Section 501A.3.3.2 below, in buildings in seismic performance categories SPC 1 or SPC 2 with a performance level of NPC 3 or higher, and SPC 3, SPC 4 or SPC-4D, shall be permitted to comply with the provisions of Section 1630B of the 1998 California Building Code using an importance factor I_p=1.5. The capacity of welds, anchors and fasteners shall be determined in accordance with requirements of the California Building Code for new construction.*

501A.3.3.2 *Supports and attachments for systems listed under NPC-2 and NPC-5 (excluding those specifically listed for NPC-3 and NPC-4 or NPC-4D) in the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6, Table 11.1 shall satisfy the requirements of the California Building Code for new construction and Section 501A.3.3.1 above shall not be applicable.*

501A.3.3.3 *For NPC 3 and NPC 4 or NPC 4D in SPC 2, SPC 3, SPC 4 or SPC-4D buildings, the adequacy and design of nonstructural component or equipment supports and attachments may extend only to the connection of the component or equipment to the support when the total reaction at the point of support (including the application of F_p) is less than or equal to the following limits:*

1. *250 pounds for components or equipment attached to light frame walls. For the purposes of this requirement, the sum of the absolute value of all reactions due to component loads on a single stud shall not exceed 250 pounds.*
2. *1,000 pounds for components or equipment attached to roofs or walls of reinforced concrete or masonry construction.*
3. *2,000 pounds for components or equipment attached to floors or slabs-on-grade.*

Exception: *If the anchorage or bracing is configured in a manner that results in significant torsion on a supporting structural element, the effects of the nonstructural reaction force on the structural element shall be considered in the anchorage design.*

501*A*.*4* Health care facilities. In Group I-2 facilities, ambulatory care facilities and outpatient clinics, any altered or added portion of an existing electrical or medical gas systems shall be required to meet installation and equipment requirements in NFPA 99.

SECTION 502*A*—ADDITIONS

502*A*.1 General. Additions to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for new construction. Alterations to the existing building or structure shall be made to ensure that the existing building or structure together with the addition are not less complying with the provisions of the *California Building Code* than the existing building or structure was prior to the addition. An existing building together with its additions shall comply with the height and area provisions of Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code*. Where a new occupiable roof is added to a building or structure, the occupiable roof shall comply with the provisions of the *California Building Code.*

Exception: In-filling of floor openings and nonoccupiable appendages such as elevator and exit stairway shafts shall be permitted beyond that permitted by the *California Building Code.*

502*A*.1.1 Risk category assignment. Where the addition and the existing building have different occupancies, the risk category of each existing and added occupancy shall be determined in accordance with Section 1604*A*.5.1 of the *California Building Code*. Where application of that section results in a higher risk category for the existing building compared with the risk category for the existing building before the addition, such a change shall be considered a change of occupancy and shall comply with Section 506*A* of this code. Where application of that section results in a higher risk category for the addition compared with the risk category for the addition by itself, the addition and any systems in the existing building required to serve the addition shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for new construction for the higher risk category.

502*A*.1.2 Creation or extension of nonconformity. An addition shall not create or extend any nonconformity in the existing building to which the addition is being made with regard to accessibility, structural strength, supports and attachments for nonstructural components, fire safety, means of egress or the capacity of mechanical, plumbing or electrical systems.

Exception: Nonconforming supports and attachments for nonstructural components that serve the addition from within the existing building need not be altered to comply with *California Building Code* Section 1613*A* unless the components are part of the addition's life-safety system or are required to serve an addition assigned to Risk Category IV.

502*A*.2 Flood hazard areas. For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in *California Building Code*, Section 1612*A*.3, any addition that constitutes substantial improvement of the existing structure*, as defined in Chapter 2,* shall comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, and all aspects of the existing structure shall be brought into compliance with

the requirements for new construction for flood design. For new foundations, foundations raised or extended upward, and replacement foundations, the foundations shall be in compliance with the requirements for new construction for flood design.

For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in *California Building Code,* Section 1612*A*.3, any additions that do not constitute substantial improvement of the existing structure*, as defined in Chapter 2,* are not required to comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, provided that both of the following apply:

1. The addition shall not create or extend a nonconformity of the existing building or structure with the flood-resistant construction requirements.
2. The lowest floor of the addition shall be at or above the lower of the lowest floor of the existing building or structure or the lowest floor elevation required in Section 1612*A* of the *California Building Code*.

502*A*.3 Existing structural elements carrying gravity load. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element for which an addition and its related alterations cause an increase in design dead, live or snow load, including snow drift effects, of more than 5 percent shall be replaced or altered as needed to carry the gravity loads required by the *California Building Code* for new structures. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element whose vertical load-carrying capacity is decreased as part of the addition and its related alterations shall be considered to be an altered element subject to the requirements of Section 503*A*.3. Any existing element that will form part of the lateral load path for any part of the addition shall be considered to be an existing lateral load-carrying structural element subject to the requirements of Section *502A.4*.

502*A*.4 Existing structural elements carrying lateral load. Where the addition is structurally independent of the existing structure, existing lateral load-carrying structural elements shall be permitted to remain unaltered. Where the addition is not structurally independent of the existing structure, the lateral force-resisting system of the existing structure and its addition acting together as a single structure shall comply with Section 1609*A and 1613A* of the *California Building Code*.

Exceptions: *For incidental and minor additions:*

1. Any existing lateral load-carrying structural element whose demand-capacity ratio with the addition considered is not more than 10 percent greater than its demand-capacity ratio with the addition ignored shall be permitted to remain unaltered. For purposes of calculating demand-capacity ratios, the demand shall consider applicable load combinations with design lateral loads or forces in accordance with Sections 1609*A* and 1613*A* of the *California Building Code*. For purposes of this exception, comparisons of demand-capacity ratios and calculation of design lateral loads, forces and capacities shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for wind, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 1609*A* of the *California Building Code* or the code wind forces in effect at the time. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for earthquake, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section *304A.3.4 of this code* or the full seismic forces in effect at the time.
2. *Drift limits based on original design code shall be permitted to be used in lieu of the drift limits required by ASCE 7.*

SECTION 503*A*—ALTERATIONS

503*A*.1 General. Alterations to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for new construction. Alterations shall be such that the existing building or structure is not less complying with the provisions of the *California Building Code* than the existing building or structure was prior to the alteration.

Exceptions:

1. An existing stairway shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 1011 of the *California Building Code* where the existing space and construction does not allow a reduction in pitch or slope.
2. Handrails otherwise required to comply with Section 1011.11 of the *California Building Code* shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 1014.7 of the *California Building Code* regarding full extension of the handrails where such extensions would be hazardous because of plan configuration.

503*A*.2 Flood hazard areas. For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612*A*.3 of the *California Building Code*, any alteration that constitutes substantial improvement of the existing structure*, as defined in Chapter 2,* shall comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, and all aspects of the existing structure shall be brought into compliance with the requirements for new construction for flood design.

For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612*A*.3 of the *California Building Code* any alterations that do not constitute substantial improvement of the existing structure*, as defined in Chapter 2,* are not required to comply with the flood design requirements for new construction.

503*A*.3 Existing structural elements carrying gravity load. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element for which an alteration causes an increase in design dead, live or snow load, including snow drift effects, of more than 5 percent shall be replaced or altered as needed to carry the gravity loads required by the *California Building Code* for new structures. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element whose gravity load-carrying capacity is decreased as part of the alteration shall be shown to have the capacity to resist the applicable design dead, live and snow loads including snow drift effects required by the *California Building Code* for new structures.

503*A*.4 Existing structural elements carrying lateral load. Except as permitted by Section 503*A*.13, where the alteration increases design lateral loads, results in a prohibited structural irregularity as defined in the *California Building Code,* ASCE 7, or decreases the

capacity of any existing lateral load-carrying structural element, the lateral force-resisting system of the altered building or structure shall meet the requirements of Sections 1609*A and 1613A* of the *California Building Code*.

Exceptions: *For incidental and minor alterations:*

1. Any existing lateral load-carrying structural element whose demand-capacity ratio with the alteration considered is not more than 10 percent greater than its demand-capacity ratio with the alteration ignored shall be permitted to remain unaltered. For purposes of calculating demand-capacity ratios, the demand shall consider applicable load combinations with design lateral loads or forces in accordance with Sections 1609*A and 1613A* of the *California Building Code*. *Reduced seismic forces, to 75 percent of those in Section 1613A, shall be permitted.* The same methodology shall be used for the altered and unaltered structures. For purposes of this exception, comparisons of demand-capacity ratios and calculation of design lateral loads, forces and capacities shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for wind, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 1609*A* of the *California Building Code* or the code wind forces in effect at the time. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for earthquake, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section *304A.3.4 of this code*, or the full or reduced seismic forces in effect at the time.
2. Buildings in which the increase in the demand-capacity ratio is due entirely to the addition of rooftop-supported mechanical equipment individually having an operating weight less than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) and where the total additional weight of all rooftop equipment placed after initial construction of the building is less than 10 percent of the roof dead load. For purposes of this exception, "roof" shall mean the roof level above a particular story.
3. Increases in the demand-capacity ratio due to lateral loads from seismic forces need not be evaluated for the installation of rooftop photovoltaic panel systems where the additional roof dead load due to the system, including ballast where applicable, does not exceed 5 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.2394 kN/m^2) and does not exceed 10 percent of the dead load of the existing roof.
4. *Drift limits based on original design code shall be permitted to be used in lieu of the drift limits required by ASCE 7.*

503*A*.5 Seismic Design Category F. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.6 Bracing for unreinforced masonry parapets on reroofing. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.7 Anchorage for concrete and reinforced masonry walls. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.8 Anchorage for unreinforced masonry walls in major alterations. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.9 Bracing for unreinforced masonry parapets in major alterations. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.10 Anchorage of unreinforced masonry partitions in major alterations. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.11 Substantial structural alteration. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.12 Roof diaphragms resisting wind loads in high-wind regions. *Not permitted by OSHPD.*

503*A*.13 Voluntary lateral force-resisting system alterations. Structural alterations that are intended exclusively to improve the lateral force-resisting system and are not required by other sections of this code shall not be subject to the structural requirements of Section 503*A except as described below*, provided that all of the following apply:

1. With the alteration complete, the capacity of existing structural systems to resist forces is not reduced.
2. New structural elements are detailed and connected to existing or new structural elements as required by the selected design criteria *in accordance with Section 503A.4 or 304A.3.4 of this code.*

   Exception: New lateral force-resisting systems designed in accordance with the *California Building Code* are permitted to be of a type designated as "Ordinary" or "Intermediate" where ASCE 7 Table 12.2-1 states these types of systems are not permitted.
3. Supports and attachments for nonstructural elements removed and reinstalled to facilitate the work comply with the *California Building Code* for new construction.
4. The alterations do not create a structural irregularity as defined in ASCE 7 or make an existing structural irregularity more severe.

   Exception: Condition 4 need not be satisfied where the work complies with Section *304A.3.4 of this code.*

503*A*.14 Smoke compartments. *Shall comply with California Building Standards Code.*

503*A*.15 Refuge areas. *Shall comply with California Building Standards Code.*

503*A*.16 *Reserved.*

503*A*.17 Ambulatory care facilities. Where a work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area and the work area includes an existing ambulatory care facility, the following shall be provided:

1. A smoke compartment in accordance with Section 422.3 of the *California Building Code* where the alteration results in an ambulatory care facility greater than 10,000 square feet on one story.
2. Separation from adjacent spaces in accordance with Section 422.2 of the *California Building Code*, where any such facility has the potential for four or more care recipients are to be incapable of self-preservation at any time.

503*A*.18 *Reserved.*

503*A*.19 *Reserved.*

503*A*.20 Two-way communications systems. Where the work area for alterations exceeds 50 percent of the building area and the building has elevator service, a two-way communication systems shall be provided where required by Section 1009.8 of the *California Building Code.*

SECTION 504*A*
RESERVED

SECTION 505*A*
RESERVED

SECTION 506*A*—CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY

506*A*.1 Compliance. A change of occupancy shall not be made in any building unless that building is made to comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for the use or occupancy. Changes of occupancy in a building or portion thereof shall be such that the existing building is not less complying with the provisions of this code than the existing building or structure was prior to the change. Subject to the approval of the *building* official, changes of occupancy shall be permitted without complying with all of the requirements of this code for the new occupancy, provided that the new occupancy is less hazardous, based on life and fire risk, than the existing occupancy.

Exception: The building need not be made to comply with Chapter 16*A* of the *California Building Code* unless required by Section 506*A*.5.

506*A*.1.1 Change in *function*. *A change in function shall require compliance with all the functional requirements for new construction in the California Building Code, including requirements in California Building Code Section 1224.* Compliance shall be only as necessary to meet the specific provisions and is not intended to require the entire building be brought into compliance.

Exception: *Minimum room clearances, areas and dimensions may meet the requirements of the 2001 California Building Code for existing rooms re-used for a similar purpose, subject to the approval of OSHPD.*

506*A*.2 Certificate of occupancy. A certificate of occupancy shall be issued where it has been determined that the requirements for the new occupancy classification have been met.

506*A*.3 Stairways. An existing stairway shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 1011 of the *California Building Code* where the existing space and construction does not allow a reduction in pitch or slope.

506*A*.4 Existing emergency escape and rescue openings. Where a change of occupancy would require an emergency escape and rescue opening in accordance with Section 1031.1 of the *California Building Code*, operable windows serving as the emergency escape and rescue opening shall comply with the following:

1. An existing operable window shall provide a minimum net clear opening of 4 square feet (0.38 m^2) with a minimum net clear opening height of 22 inches (559 mm) and a minimum net clear opening width of 20 inches (508 mm).
2. A replacement window where such window complies with both of the following:
   - 2.1. The replacement window meets the size requirements in Item 1.
   - 2.2. The replacement window is the manufacturer's largest standard size window that will fit within the existing frame or existing rough opening. The replacement window shall be permitted to be of the same operating style as the existing window or a style that provides for an equal or greater window opening area than the existing window.

506*A*.5 Structural. Any building undergoing a change of occupancy shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

506*A*.5.1 Live loads. Structural elements carrying tributary live loads from an area with a change of occupancy shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1607*A* of the *California Building Code*. Design live loads for areas of new occupancy shall be based on Section 1607*A* of the *California Building Code*. Design live loads for other areas shall be permitted to use previously approved design live loads.

Exception: Structural elements whose demand-capacity ratio considering the change of occupancy is not more than 5 percent greater than the demand-capacity ratio based on previously approved live loads need not comply with this section.

506*A*.5.2 Snow and wind loads. Where a change of occupancy results in a structure being assigned to a higher risk category, the structure shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1608*A* and 1609*A* of the *California Building Code* for the new risk category.

Exception: Where the area of the new occupancy is less than 10 percent of the building area, compliance with this section is not required. The cumulative effect of occupancy changes over time shall be considered.

506*A*.5.3 Seismic loads (seismic force-resisting system). Where a change of occupancy results in a building being assigned to a higher risk category, the lateral force-resisting system of the building shall comply with *the California Building Code Section 1613A or* Section *304A.3.4 of this code* for the new risk category. Where a change of occupancy results in a building being assigned to Risk Category IV and Seismic Design Category D or F, nonstructural components serving any portion of the building changed to Risk Category IV shall comply with the requirements of Section 1613*A* of the *California Building Code* or shall comply with ASCE 41-*23* using an objective of Operational nonstructural performance with the BSE-1N earthquake hazard level.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 6 – CLASSIFICATION OF WORK

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter				X	X																			
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
601.1			X																					
601.1.1			X																					
607.1			X																					

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

6 CLASSIFICATION OF WORK

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 6 provides an overview of the Work Area Method available as an option for rehabilitation of a building. The chapter defines the different classifications of alterations and provides general requirements for alterations, change of occupancy, additions and historic buildings. Detailed requirements for all of these are given in Chapters 7 through 11.

SECTION 601—GENERAL

601.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall be used in conjunction with Chapters 7 through *11* and shall apply to the alteration, addition and change of occupancy of existing structures, as referenced in Section 301.3.2. The work performed on an existing building shall be classified in accordance with this chapter. *Historic buildings and structures shall comply with Part 8, Title 24, C.C.R.*

Exceptions:

1. ***[SFM]*** *Use of Chapters 6-11 is not permitted in H, I and L, R-2.1, R-3.1 occupancies and high-rise buildings.*
2. ***[BSC]*** *Use of Chapters 6-11 is not permitted in occupancies, buildings and applications regulated by Building Standards Commission and listed in Section 1.2.*

601.1.1 Compliance with other alternatives. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy to existing structures shall comply with the provisions of Chapters 7 through *11* or with one of the alternatives provided in Section 301.3.

601.2 Work area. The work area, as defined in Chapter 2, shall be identified on the construction documents.

SECTION 602—ALTERATION—LEVEL 1

602.1 Scope. Level 1 alterations include the removal and replacement or the covering of existing materials, elements, equipment or fixtures using new materials, elements, equipment or fixtures that serve the same purpose.

602.2 Application. Level 1 alterations shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.

SECTION 603—ALTERATION—LEVEL 2

603.1 Scope. Level 2 alterations include the addition or elimination of any door or window, the reconfiguration or extension of any system, or the installation of any additional equipment, and shall apply where the work area is equal to or less than 50 percent of the building area.

Exception: The movement or addition of nonfixed and movable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions not over 5 feet 9 inches (1753 mm) in height shall not be considered a Level 2 alteration.

603.2 Application. Level 2 alterations shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 7 for Level 1 alterations as well as the provisions of Chapter 8.

SECTION 604—ALTERATION—LEVEL 3

604.1 Scope. Level 3 alterations apply where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the building area.

604.2 Application. Level 3 alterations shall comply with the provisions of Chapters 7 and 8 for Level 1 and 2 alterations, respectively, as well as the provisions of Chapter 9.

SECTION 605—CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY

605.1 Scope. Change of occupancy provisions apply where the activity is classified as a change of occupancy as defined in Chapter 2.

605.2 Application. Changes of occupancy shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 10.

SECTION 606—ADDITIONS

606.1 Scope. Provisions for additions shall apply where work is classified as an addition as defined in Chapter 2.

606.2 Application. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 11.

SECTION 607—HISTORIC BUILDINGS

607.1 Scope. *The provisions of the California Historical Building Code (Part 8, Title 24, C.C.R) shall apply to qualified historical buildings or properties.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 7 – ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 1

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter				**X**	**X**																			
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			**X**																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
701.1			X																					
702.7			X																					
703.2			X																					
703.2.1			X																					
703.2.2			X																					
703.3			X																					
704.3				†	†																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

7 ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 1

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 7 provides the technical requirements for those existing buildings that undergo Level 1 alterations as described in Section 603, which includes replacement or covering of existing materials, elements, equipment or fixtures using new materials for the same purpose. This chapter, similar to other chapters of this code, covers all building-related subjects, such as structural, mechanical, plumbing, electrical and accessibility as well as the fire and life safety issues when the alterations are classified as Level 1. The purpose of this chapter is to provide detailed requirements and provisions to identify the required improvements in the existing building elements, building spaces and building structural system. This chapter is distinguished from Chapters 8 and 9 by involving only replacement of building components with new components. In contrast, Level 2 alterations involve more space reconfiguration, and Level 3 alterations involve more extensive space reconfiguration, exceeding 50 percent of the building area.

SECTION 701—GENERAL

701.1 Scope. Level 1 alterations as described in Section 602 shall comply with the requirements of this chapter. *Alterations* to historic buildings *and structures* shall comply with *Part 8, Title 24, C.C.R.*

701.2 Conformance. An existing building or portion thereof shall not be altered such that the building becomes less safe than its existing condition.

Exception: Where the current level of safety or sanitation is proposed to be reduced, the portion altered shall conform to the requirements of the *California Building Code*.

[BS] 701.3 Flood hazard areas. In flood hazard areas, alterations that constitute substantial improvement shall require that the building comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

SECTION 702—BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS

702.1 Interior finishes. Newly installed interior wall and ceiling finishes shall comply with Chapter 8 of the *California Building Code*.

702.2 Interior floor finish. New interior floor finish, including new carpeting used as an interior floor finish material, shall comply with Section 804 of the *California Building Code*.

702.3 Interior trim. Newly installed interior trim materials shall comply with Section 806 of the *California Building Code*.

702.4 Window fall prevention. In Group R-2 or R-3 buildings containing dwelling units and one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses regulated by the *California Residential Code*, window opening control devices or other window fall prevention devices complying with ASTM F2090 shall be installed where an existing window is replaced and where all of the following apply to the replacement window:

1. The window is operable.
2. One of the following applies:
   2.1. The window replacement includes replacement of the sash and frame.
   2.2. The window replacement includes the sash only where the existing frame remains.
3. One of the following applies:
   3.1. In Group R-2 or R-3 buildings containing dwelling units, the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening is at a height less than 36 inches (915 mm) above the finished floor.
   3.2. In one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses regulated by the *California Residential Code*, the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening is at a height less than 24 inches (610 mm) above the finished floor.
4. The window will permit openings that will allow passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere when the window is in its largest opened position.
5. The vertical distance from the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening to the finished grade or other surface below, on the exterior of the building, is greater than 72 inches (1829 mm).

Exception: Operable windows where the bottom of the clear opening of the window opening is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below, on the exterior of the room, space or building, and that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2006.

702.5 Replacement window for emergency escape and rescue openings. Where windows are required to provide emergency escape and rescue openings in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies and one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses regulated by the *California Residential Code*, replacement windows shall be exempt from the requirements of Section 1031.3 of the *California Building Code* and Section R310.2 of the *California Residential Code*, provided that the replacement window meets the following conditions:

1. The replacement window is the manufacturer's largest standard size window that will fit within the existing frame or existing rough opening. The replacement window shall be permitted to be of the same operating style as the existing window or a style that provides for an equal or greater window opening area than the existing window.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2. Where the replacement window is part of a change of occupancy it shall comply with Section 1011.5.6.

702.5.1 Control devices. Window opening control devices or fall prevention devices complying with ASTM F2090 shall be permitted for use on windows required to provide emergency escape and rescue openings. After operation to release the control device allowing the window to fully open, the control device shall not reduce the net clear opening area of the window unit. Emergency escape and rescue openings shall be operational from the inside of the room without the use of keys or tools.

702.6 Bars, grilles, covers or screens. Bars, grilles, covers, screens or similar devices are permitted to be placed over emergency escape and rescue openings, bulkhead enclosure or window wells that serve such openings, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The minimum net clear opening size complies with the code that was in effect at the time of construction.
2. Such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the escape and rescue opening.
3. Where such devices are installed, they shall not reduce the net clear opening of the *emergency escape and rescue openings*.
4. Smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11 of the *California Building Code*.

702.7 Materials and methods. New work shall comply with the materials and methods requirements in the *California Building Code*, *California Energy Code, California Mechanical Code* and *California Plumbing Code*, as applicable, that specify material standards, detail of installation and connection, joints, penetrations and continuity of any element, component or system in the building.

SECTION 703—FIRE PROTECTION

703.1 General. Alterations shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of fire protection provided.

703.2 Fire alarm and detection.

703.2.1 *Replacement devices, combinations of devices, appliances, and equipment shall be listed and approved.*

703.2.2 Systems out of service. *Existing fire alarm and detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with Section 901.7 of the California Fire Code, C.C.R. Title 24, Part 9.*

703.3 Construction in existing buildings. *On-site fire protection during construction shall be in accordance with Chapter 33 of the California Building Code, C.C.R. Title 24, Part 2, and California Fire Code, C.C.R. Title 24, Part 9.*

SECTION 704—MEANS OF EGRESS

704.1 General. Alterations shall be done in a manner that maintains the level of protection provided for the means of egress.

704.2 Casework. Addition, alteration or reconfiguration of nonfixed and movable cases, counters and partitions not over 5 feet 9 inches (1753 mm) in height shall maintain the required means of egress path.

704.3 Locking arrangements in educational occupancies. In Group E occupancies, Group B educational occupancies and Group I-4 occupancies, egress doors with locking arrangements designed to keep intruders from entering the room shall comply with Section 1010.2.7 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 705—REROOFING

[BS] 705.1 General. Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15 of the *California Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Roof replacement or roof recover of existing low-slope roof coverings shall not be required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of $^1/_4$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 1507 of the *California Building Code* for roofs that provide positive roof drainage and meet the requirements of Sections 1608.3 and 1611.2 of the *California Building Code*.
2. Recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall not be required to meet the requirement for secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers in Section 1502 of the *California Building Code* for roofs that provide for positive roof drainage and meet the requirements of Sections 1608.3 and 1611.2 of the *California Building Code*. For the purposes of this exception, existing secondary drainage or scupper systems required in accordance with this code shall not be removed unless they are replaced by secondary drains or scuppers designed and installed in accordance with Section 1502 of the *California Building Code*.

[BS] 705.2 Roof replacement. Roof replacement shall include the removal of all existing layers of roof coverings down to the roof deck.

Exceptions:

1. Where the existing roof assembly includes an ice barrier membrane that is adhered to the roof deck and the existing sheathing is not water-soaked or deteriorated to the point that it is not adequate as a base for additional roofing, the existing ice barrier membrane shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an additional layer of ice barrier membrane in accordance with Section 1507 of the *California Building Code* where permitted by the roof-covering manufacturer and new ice-barrier underlayment manufacturer.

2. Where the existing roof includes a self-adhered underlayment and the existing sheathing is not water-soaked or deteriorated to the point that it is not adequate as a base for additional roofing, the existing self-adhered underlayment shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an underlayment complying with Tables 1507.1.1(1), 1507.1.1(2) and 1507.1.1(3) of the *California Building Code*.
3. Where the existing roof includes one layer of self-adhered underlayment and the existing layer cannot be removed without damaging the roof deck, a second layer of self-adhered underlayment is permitted to be installed over the existing self-adhered underlayment provided all of the following conditions are met:
    3.1. It is permitted by the roof-covering manufacturer and self-adhered underlayment manufacturer.
    3.2. The existing sheathing is not water-soaked or deteriorated to the point that it is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.
    3.3. The second layer of self-adhered underlayment is installed such that buildup of material at walls, valleys, roof edges, end laps and side laps does not exceed two layers.

[BS] 705.3 Roof recover. The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. The new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering manufacturer's approved instructions.
2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof panel systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building's structural system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.
3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted to be installed over existing wood shake roofs when applied in accordance with Section 705.3.1.
4. The application of a new protective roof coating over an existing protective roof coating, a metal roof panel, built-up roof, spray polyurethane foam roofing system, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, modified bitumen roofing or thermoset and thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall be permitted without tear off of existing roof coverings.

Exception: A roof recover shall not be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water-soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.
2. Where the existing roof covering is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.
3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.

[BS] 705.3.1 Roof recovering over wood shingles or shakes. Where the application of a new roof covering over wood shingle or shake roofs creates a combustible concealed space, the entire existing surface shall be covered with gypsum panel products, mineral fiber, glass fiber or other approved materials securely fastened in place.

[BS] 705.4 Reinstallation of materials. Existing slate, clay or cement tile shall be permitted for reinstallation, except that damaged, cracked or broken slate or tile shall not be reinstalled. Existing vent flashing, metal edgings, drain outlets, collars and metal counterflashings shall not be reinstalled where rusted, damaged or deteriorated. Existing ballast that is damaged, cracked or broken shall not be reinstalled. Existing aggregate surfacing materials from built-up roofs shall not be reinstalled.

[BS] 705.5 Flashings. Flashings shall be reconstructed in accordance with approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Metal flashing to which bituminous materials are to be adhered shall be primed prior to installation.

SECTION 706—STRUCTURAL

[BS] 706.1 General. Where alteration work includes replacement of equipment that is supported by the building or where a reroofing permit is required, the provisions of this section shall apply.

[BS] 706.2 Addition or replacement of roofing or replacement of equipment. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element for which an alteration causes an increase in design dead, live or snow load, including snow drift effects, of more than 5 percent shall be replaced or altered as needed to carry the gravity loads required by the *California Building Code* for new structures.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes where the altered building complies with the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.
2. Buildings in which the increased dead load is due entirely to the addition of a second layer of roof covering weighing 3 pounds per square foot (0.1437 kN/m^2) or less over an existing single layer of roof covering.

[BS] 706.3 Additional requirements for reroof permits. The requirements of this section shall apply to alteration work requiring reroof permits.

[BS] 706.3.1 Bracing for unreinforced masonry bearing wall parapets. Where a permit is issued for reroofing for more than 25 percent of the roof area of a building assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F that has parapets constructed of unreinforced masonry, the work shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of parapet bracing.

[BS] 706.3.2 Roof diaphragms resisting wind loads in high-wind regions. Where roofing materials are removed from more than 50 percent of the roof diaphragm or section of a building located where the basic wind speed, *V*, is greater than 130 mph (58 m/s), in accordance with Figure 1609.3(2) of the *California Building Code*, roof diaphragms, connections of the roof diaphragm to roof

framing members, and roof-to-wall connections shall be evaluated for the wind loads specified in the *California Building Code*, including wind uplift. If the diaphragms and connections in their current condition are not capable of resisting 75 percent of those wind loads, they shall be replaced or strengthened in accordance with the loads specified in the *California Building Code.*

Exception: Buildings that have been demonstrated to comply with the wind load provisions in ASCE 7—88 or later editions.

SECTION 707—*RESERVED*

SECTION 708—ENERGY CONSERVATION

708.1 Minimum requirements. Level 1 alterations to existing buildings or structures *shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Energy Code (Part 6, Title 24, C.C.R).*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 8 – ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 2

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter				X	X																			
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
802.2.1			X																					
802.2.1 Exceptions 4 – 9 and 13-14				†	†																			
802.3				†	†																			
803.2			X																					
803.2.3				†	†																			
803.3 *Reserved*			X																					
803.4			X																					
803.4.1			X																					
804.3 *Reserved*			X																					
804.5			X																					
804.5.1.2			X																					
804.5.1.2.1			X																					
804.5.3				†	†																			
804.6.3			X																					
804.6.4				†	†																			
804.6.4.1			X																					
804.7.1			X																					
804.7.2			X																					
804.8			X																					
804.12				†	†																			
804.13			X																					
804.13.*1*			X	†	†																			
804.14.2 Exceptions				†	†																			
806.2			X	†	†																			
806.3			X	†	†																			
808 *Reserved*			X																					

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

8 ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 2

User notes:

About this chapter: Like Chapter 7, the purpose of this chapter is to provide detailed requirements and provisions to identify the required improvements in the existing building elements, building spaces and building structural system when a building is being altered. This chapter is distinguished from Chapters 7 and 9 by involving space reconfiguration that could be up to and including 50 percent of the area of the building. In contrast, Level 1 alterations (Chapter 7) do not involve space reconfiguration, and Level 3 alterations (Chapter 9) involve extensive space reconfiguration that exceeds 50 percent of the building area. Depending on the nature of alteration work, its location within the building, and whether it encompasses one or more tenants, improvements and upgrades could be required for the open floor penetrations, sprinkler system or the installation of additional means of egress such as stairs or fire escapes.

SECTION 801—GENERAL

801.1 Scope. Level 2 alterations as described in Section 603 shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

Exception: Buildings in which the reconfiguration is exclusively the result of compliance with the accessibility requirements of Section 306.7.1 shall be permitted to comply with Chapter 7.

801.2 Alteration Level 1 compliance. In addition to the requirements of this chapter, all work shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 7.

801.3 System installations. Requirements related to work area are not applicable where the Level 2 alterations are limited solely to one or more of the following:

1. Mechanical systems, electrical systems, fire protection systems and abatement of hazardous materials.
2. Windows, hardware, operating controls, electrical outlets and signs.
3. Alterations undertaken for the primary purpose of increasing the accessibility of a facility.

801.4 Compliance. New construction elements, components, systems and spaces shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Where windows are added they are not required to comply with the light and ventilation requirements of the *California Building Code*.
2. Newly installed electrical equipment shall comply with the requirements of Section 806.
3. The length of dead-end corridors in newly constructed spaces shall only be required to comply with the provisions of Section 804.8.
4. The minimum ceiling height of the newly created habitable and occupiable spaces and corridors shall be 7 feet (2134 mm).
5. Where provided in below-grade transportation stations, existing and new escalators shall be permitted to have a clear width of less than 32 inches (815 mm).
6. New structural members and connections shall be permitted to comply with alternative design criteria in accordance with Section 302.

SECTION 802—BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS

802.1 Scope. The requirements of this section are limited to work areas in which Level 2 alterations are being performed and shall apply beyond the work area where specified.

802.2 Vertical openings. Existing vertical openings shall comply with the provisions of Sections 802.2.1, 802.2.2 and 802.2.3.

802.2.1 Existing vertical openings. Existing interior vertical openings connecting two or more floors shall be enclosed with approved assemblies having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour with approved opening protectives.

Exceptions:

1. Where vertical opening enclosure is not required by the *California Building Code* or the *California Fire Code*.
2. Interior vertical openings other than stairways may be blocked at the floor and ceiling of the work area by installation of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of solid wood or equivalent construction.
3. The enclosure shall not be required where:
   - 3.1. Connecting the main floor and mezzanines; or
   - 3.2. All of the following conditions are met:
     - 3.2.1. The communicating area has a low-hazard occupancy or has a moderate-hazard occupancy that is protected throughout by an automatic sprinkler system.
     - 3.2.2. The lowest or next-to-the-lowest level is a street floor.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

3.2.3. The entire area is open and unobstructed in a manner such that it is reasonable to assume that a fire in any part of the interconnected spaces will be readily obvious to all of the occupants.

3.2.4. Exit capacity is sufficient to provide egress simultaneously for all occupants of all levels by considering all areas to be a single floor area for the determination of required exit capacity.

3.2.5. Each floor level, considered separately, has not less than one-half of its individual required exit capacity provided by an exit or exits leading directly out of that level without having to traverse another communicating floor level or be exposed to the smoke or fire spreading from another communicating floor level.

4. *Reserved.*
5. In Group B occupancies, a minimum 30-minute enclosure shall be provided to protect all vertical openings not exceeding three stories. This enclosure, or the enclosure specified in Section 802.2.1, shall not be required in the following locations:
   5.1. Buildings not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279 m^2) per floor.
   5.2. Buildings protected throughout by an approved automatic fire sprinkler system.
6. In Group E occupancies, the enclosure shall not be required for vertical openings not exceeding *two* stories where the building is protected throughout by an approved automatic fire sprinkler system.
7. In Group F occupancies, the enclosure shall not be required in the following locations:
   7.1. Vertical openings not exceeding *two* stories.
   7.2. Special-purpose occupancies where necessary for manufacturing operations and direct access is provided to not fewer than one protected stairway.
   7.3. Buildings protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system.
8. *Reserved.*
9. In Group M occupancies, a minimum 30-minute enclosure shall be provided to protect all vertical openings not exceeding three stories. This enclosure, or the enclosure specified in Section 802.2.1, shall not be required in the following locations:
   9.1. Openings connecting only two floor levels.
   9.2. Occupancies protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system.
10. *Reserved.*
11. *Reserved.*
12. One- and two-family dwellings.
13. Group S occupancies where connecting not more than two floor levels or where connecting not more than three floor levels and the structure is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system.
14. Group S occupancies where vertical opening protection is not required for open parking garages and ramps.

802.2.2 Supplemental shaft and floor opening enclosure requirements. Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, the enclosure requirements of Section 802.2 shall apply to vertical openings other than stairways throughout the floor.

Exception: Vertical openings located in tenant spaces that are entirely outside the work area.

802.2.3 Supplemental stairway enclosure requirements. Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, stairways that are part of the means of egress serving the work area shall, at a minimum, be enclosed with smoketight construction on the highest work area floor and all floors below.

Exception: Where stairway enclosure is not required by the *California Building Code* or the *California Fire Code*.

802.3 Smoke compartments. In Group I-2 occupancies where the work area is on a story used for sleeping rooms for more than 30 care recipients, the story shall be divided into not less than two compartments by smoke barrier walls in accordance with Section 407.5 of the *California Building Code* as required for new construction.

802.4 Interior finish. The interior finish and trim of walls and ceilings in exits and corridors in any work area shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Existing materials that do not comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* shall be permitted to be treated with an approved fire-retardant coating in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to achieve the required classification. Compliance with this section shall be demonstrated by testing the fire-retardant coating on the same material and achieving the required performance. Where the same material is not available, testing on a similar material shall be permitted.

802.4.1 Supplemental interior finish requirements. Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, Section 802.4 shall apply to the interior finish and trim in exits and corridors serving the work area throughout the floor.

Exception: Interior finish within tenant spaces that are entirely outside the work area.

802.5 Guards. The requirements of Sections 802.5.1 and 802.5.2 shall apply in all work areas.

802.5.1 Minimum requirement. Every portion of a floor, such as a balcony or a loading dock, that is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and is not provided with guards, or those in which the existing guards are judged to be in danger of collapsing, shall be provided with guards.

802.5.2 Design. Where there are no guards or where existing guards must be replaced, the guards shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *California Building Code*.

802.6 Fire-resistance ratings. Where approved by the code official, buildings where an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *California Building Code* has been added, and the building is now sprinklered throughout, the required fire-resistance ratings of building elements and materials shall be permitted to meet the requirements of the current building code. The building is required to meet the other applicable requirements of the *California Building Code*.

Plans, investigation and evaluation reports, and other data shall be submitted indicating which building elements and materials the applicant is requesting the code official to review and approve for determination of applying the current building code fire-resistance ratings. Any special construction features, including fire-resistance-rated assemblies and smoke-resistive assemblies, conditions of occupancy, means-of-egress conditions, fire code deficiencies, approved modifications or approved alternative materials, design and methods of construction, and equipment applying to the building that impact required fire-resistance ratings shall be identified in the evaluation reports submitted.

SECTION 803—FIRE PROTECTION

803.1 Scope. The requirements of this section shall be limited to work areas in which Level 2 alterations are being performed, and where specified they shall apply throughout the floor on which the work areas are located or otherwise beyond the work area.

803.1.1 Corridor ratings. Where an approved automatic sprinkler system is installed throughout the story, the required fire-resistance rating for any corridor located on the story shall be permitted to be reduced in accordance with the *California Building Code*. In order to be considered for a corridor rating reduction, such system shall provide coverage for the stairway landings serving the floor and the intermediate landings immediately below.

803.2 Automatic sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of *Section 903 of the California Building and California Fire Codes.*

803.3 *Reserved.*

803.4 Fire alarm and detection. An approved fire alarm system shall be installed in accordance with *California Fire Code Sections 907 and 1103.7.*

803.4.1 Systems out of service. *Existing fire alarm and detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with Section 901.7 of the California Fire Code. Site fire protection during construction shall be in accordance with Chapter 33 of the California Building and California Fire Codes.*

SECTION 804—MEANS OF EGRESS

804.1 Scope. The requirements of this section shall be limited to work areas that include exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant within the work area in which Level 2 alterations are being performed, and where specified they shall apply throughout the floor on which the work areas are located or otherwise beyond the work area.

804.2 General. The means of egress shall comply with the requirements of this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where the work area and the means of egress serving it complies with NFPA 101.
2. Means of egress complying with the requirements of the building code under which the building was constructed shall be considered to be compliant means of egress if, in the opinion of the code official, they do not constitute a distinct hazard to life.

804.3 *Reserved.*

804.4 Refuge areas. Where alterations affect the configuration of an area utilized as a refuge area, the capacity of the refuge area shall not be reduced below the required capacity of the refuge area for horizontal exits in accordance with Section 1026.4 of the *California Building Code*. Where the horizontal exit also forms a smoke compartment, the capacity of the refuge area for ambulatory care facilities shall not be reduced below that required in Sections 407.5.3, 408.6.2, 420.6.1 and 422.3.2 of the *California Building Code*, as applicable.

804.5 Number of exits. The number of exits or access to exits shall be in accordance with Sections 804.5.1 through 804.5.3.

804.5.1 Minimum number. Every story utilized for human occupancy on which there is a work area that includes exits or corridors shared by more than one tenant within the work area shall be provided with the minimum number of exits based on the occupancy and the occupant load in accordance with the *California Building Code*. In addition, the exits shall comply with Sections 804.5.1.1 and 804.5.1.2.

804.5.1.1 Single-exit buildings. A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted from spaces, any story or any occupiable roof where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The occupant load, number of dwelling units and exit access travel distance do not exceed the values in Table 804.5.1.1(1) or 804.5.1.1(2).

2. In Group R-1 or R-2, buildings without an approved automatic sprinkler system, individual single-story or multiple-story dwelling or sleeping units shall be permitted to have a single exit or access to a single exit from the dwelling or sleeping unit provided one of the following criteria are met:
    2.1. The occupant load is not greater than 10 and the exit access travel distance within the unit does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).
    2.2. The building is not more than three stories in height; all third-story space is part of dwelling with an exit access doorway on the second story; and the portion of the exit access travel distance from the door to any habitable room within any such unit to the unit entrance doors does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).
3. In buildings of Group R-2 occupancy of any number of stories with not more than four dwelling units per floor served by an interior exit stairway; with a smokeproof enclosure in accordance with Sections 909.20 and 1023.12 of the *California Building Code* or an exterior stairway as an exit; and where the portion of the exit access travel distance from the dwelling unit entrance door to the exit is not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm).

TABLE 804.5.1.1(1)—STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR R-2 OCCUPANCIES

STORY	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS	MAXIMUM EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE
Basement, first, second or third story above grade plane and occupiable roofs over the first or second floor above grade plane	R-2[a,b,c]	4 dwelling units	125 feet
Fourth story above grade plane and higher	NP	NA	NA

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.
NA = Not Applicable.
a. Buildings classified as Group R-2, equipped without an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and 903.3.1.2 of the *California Fire Code* and provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 1031 of the *California Building Code*.
b. This table is used for Group R-2 occupancies consisting of dwelling units. For Group R-2 occupancies consisting of sleeping units, use Table 1006.3.4(2) of the *California Building Code*.
c. This table is for occupiable roofs accessed through and serving individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies. For Group R-2 occupancies with occupiable roofs that are not accessed through and serving individual units, use Table 804.5.1.1(2).

TABLE 804.5.1.1(2)—STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR OTHER OCCUPANCIES

STORY OR OCCUPIABLE ROOF	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY	MAXIMUM EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet)
First story above or below grade plane or occupiable roofs over the first story above grade plane	B[b], F-2[b]	49	75
	S-2[a, b]	35	75
Second story above grade plane	B, F-2, S-2[a]	35	75
Third story above grade plane and higher	NP	NA	NA

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.
NA = Not Applicable.
a. The length of exit access travel distance in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be not more than 100 feet.
b. Group B, F and S occupancies in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *California Fire Code* or on the roof of such buildings shall have a maximum exit access travel distance of 100 feet.

➡ **804.5.1.2 Fire escapes required.** *Where* more than one exit is required, an existing fire escape complying with Section 804.5.1.2.1 shall be accepted as providing one of the required means of egress.

804.5.1.2.1 Fire escape access and details. Fire escapes shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. Occupants shall have unobstructed access to the fire escape without having to pass through a room subject to locking.
2. Access to a fire escape shall be through a door, except that windows shall be permitted to provide access from single dwelling units or sleeping units in Group R-1 *and* R-2 occupancies or to provide access from spaces having a maximum occupant load of 10 in other occupancy classifications.
    2.1. The window shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5.7 square feet (0.53 m^2) or 5 square feet (0.46 m^2) where located at grade.
    2.2. The minimum net clear opening height shall be 24 inches (610 mm) and net clear opening width shall be 20 inches (508 mm).
    2.3. The bottom of the clear opening shall not be greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor.
    2.4. The operation of the window shall comply with the operational constraints of the *California Building Code*.

102102163

3. Newly constructed fire escapes shall be permitted only where exterior stairways cannot be utilized because of lot lines.
4. Openings within 10 feet (3048 mm) of fire escape stairways shall be protected by fire assemblies having minimum $^{3}/_{4}$-hour fire-resistance ratings.

   Exception: Opening protection shall not be required in buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system.
5. In all buildings of Group E occupancy, up to and including the 12th grade, buildings of Group I occupancy, rooming houses and childcare centers, ladders of any type are prohibited on fire escapes used as a required means of egress.

804.5.1.2.2 Construction. The fire escape shall be designed to support a live load of 100 pounds per square foot (4788 Pa) and shall be constructed of steel or other approved noncombustible materials. Fire escapes constructed of wood not less than nominal 2 inches (51 mm) thick are permitted on buildings of Type V construction. Walkways and railings located over or supported by combustible roofs in buildings of Types III and IV construction are permitted to be of wood not less than nominal 2 inches (51 mm) thick.

804.5.1.2.3 Dimensions. Stairways shall be not less than 22 inches (559 mm) wide with risers not more than, and treads not less than, 8 inches (203 mm). Landings at the foot of stairways shall be not less than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide by 36 inches (914 mm) long and located not more than 8 inches (203 mm) below the door.

804.5.2 Mezzanines. Mezzanines in the work area and with an occupant load of more than 50 or in which the travel distance to an exit exceeds 75 feet (22 860 mm) shall have access to not fewer than two independent means of egress.

Exception: Two independent means of egress are not required where the travel distance to an exit does not exceed 100 feet (30 480 mm) and the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.

804.5.3 Main entrance—Group A. Buildings of Group A with an occupant load of 300 or more shall be provided with a main entrance capable of serving as the main exit with an egress capacity of not less than one-half of the total occupant load. The remaining exits shall be capable of providing one-half of the total required exit capacity.

Exception: Where a main exit is not well defined or where multiple main exits are provided, exits shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building provided that the total width of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required width.

804.6 Egress doorways. Egress doorways in any work area shall comply with Sections 804.6.1 through 804.6.5.

804.6.1 Two egress doorways required. Work areas shall be provided with two egress doorways in accordance with the requirements of Sections 804.6.1.1 and 804.6.1.2.

804.6.1.1 Occupant load and travel distance. In any work area, all rooms and spaces having an occupant load greater than 50 or in which the travel distance to an exit exceeds 75 feet (22 860 mm) shall have not fewer than two egress doorways.

Exceptions:

1. Storage rooms having a maximum occupant load of 10.
2. Where the work area is served by a single exit in accordance with Section 804.5.1.1.

804.6.2 Door swing. In the work area and in the egress path from any work area to the exit discharge, all egress doors serving an occupant load of 50 or more shall swing in the direction of exit travel.

804.6.2.1 Supplemental requirements for door swing. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, door swing shall comply with Section 804.6.2 throughout the floor.

Exception: Means of egress within or serving only a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

804.6.3 Door closing. In any work area, all doors opening onto an exit passageway at grade or an exit stairway shall be self-closing or automatic-closing by listed closing devices.

Exception: Where exit enclosure is not required by the *California Building Code*.

804.6.3.1 Supplemental requirements for door closing. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, doors shall comply with Section 804.6.3 throughout the exit stairway from the work area to, and including, the level of exit discharge.

804.6.4 Panic and fire exit hardware. In any work area, and in the egress path from any work area to the exit discharge, in buildings or portions thereof of Group A assembly occupancies with an occupant load greater than 100, all required exit doors equipped with latching devices shall be equipped with approved panic or fire exit hardware in accordance with Section 1010.2.8 of the *California Building Code*.

804.6.4.1 Supplemental requirements for panic hardware. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, panic hardware shall comply with Section 804.6.4 throughout the floor.

Exception: Means of egress within a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

804.7 Openings in corridor walls. Openings in corridor walls in any work area shall comply with Sections 804.7.1 through 804.7.4.

Exception: Openings in corridors where such corridors are not required to be rated in accordance with the *California Building Code*.

804.7.1 Corridor doors. Corridor doors in the work area shall not be constructed of hollow core wood and shall not contain louvers. Dwelling unit or sleeping unit corridor doors in work areas in buildings of Groups R-1 *and* R-2 shall be not less than $1^{3}/_{8}$-

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® BUFF
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

inch (35 mm) solid core wood or approved equivalent and shall not have any glass panels, other than approved wired glass or other approved glazing material in metal frames. Dwelling unit or sleeping unit corridor doors in work areas in buildings of Groups R-1 *and* R-2 shall be equipped with approved door closers. Replacement doors shall be $1^3/_4$-inch (44 mm) solid bonded wood core or approved equivalent.

Exceptions:

1. Corridor doors within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit.
2. *Reserved.*
3. Existing doors in buildings protected throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system shall be required only to resist smoke, be reasonably tight fitting and shall not contain louvers.
4. In group homes with not more than 15 occupants and that are protected with an approved automatic detection system, closing devices are not required.
5. Door assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 20 minutes.

804.7.2 Transoms. *A*ll transoms in corridor walls in work areas shall *have* a fire protection rating as required for the door and permanently secured in the closed position or sealed with materials consistent with the corridor construction.

804.7.3 Other corridor openings. In any work area, unless protected in accordance with Section 716 of the *California Building Code*, any other sash, grille or opening in a corridor, and any window in a corridor not opening to the outside air, shall be sealed with materials consistent with the corridor construction.

804.7.3.1 Supplemental requirements for other corridor opening. Where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, Section 804.7.3 shall be applicable to all corridor windows, grills, sashes and other openings on the floor.

Exception: Means of egress within or serving only a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

804.7.4 Supplemental requirements for corridor openings. Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of the floor area, the requirements of Sections 804.7.1 through 804.7.3 shall apply throughout the floor.

804.8 Dead-end corridors. Dead-end corridors in any work area shall not exceed 35 feet (10 670 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Where dead-end corridors of greater length are permitted by the *California Building Code*.
2. In other than Group A occupancies, the maximum length of an existing dead-end corridor shall be 50 feet (15 240 mm) in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic fire alarm system installed in accordance with the *California Building Code*.
3. In other than Group A occupancies, the maximum length of an existing dead-end corridor shall be 70 feet (21 356 mm) in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with the *California Building Code*.
4. In other than Group A occupancies, the maximum length of an existing, newly constructed, or extended dead-end corridor shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm) on floors equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with the *California Building Code*.

804.9 Means-of-egress lighting. Means-of-egress lighting shall be in accordance with this section, as applicable.

804.9.1 Artificial lighting required. Means of egress in all work areas shall be provided with artificial lighting in accordance with the requirements of the *California Building Code.*

804.9.2 Supplemental requirements for means-of-egress lighting. Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, means of egress throughout the floor shall comply with Section 804.9.1.

Exception: Means of egress within or serving only a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

804.10 Exit signs. Exit signs shall be in accordance with this section, as applicable.

804.10.1 Work areas. Means of egress in all work areas shall be provided with exit signs in accordance with the requirements of the *California Building Code*.

804.10.2 Supplemental requirements for exit signs. Where the work area on any floor exceeds 50 percent of that floor area, means of egress throughout the floor shall comply with Section 804.10.1.

Exception: Means of egress within a tenant space that is entirely outside the work area.

804.11 Stairways. An existing stairway shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 1011 of the *California Building Code* where the existing space and construction does not allow a reduction in pitch or slope.

804.12 Escalators. Where provided in below-grade transportation stations, existing and new escalators shall be permitted to have a clear width of less than 32 inches (813 mm).

804.13 Handrails. The requirements of Section 804.13.1 shall apply to handrails from the work area floor to, and including, the level of exit discharge.

804.13.*1* Design. Handrails shall be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of the *California Building Code*.

804.14 Guards. The requirements of 804.14.1 and 804.14.2 shall apply to guards from the work area floor to, and including, the level of exit discharge but shall be confined to the egress path of any work area.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

804.14.1 Minimum requirement. Every open portion of a stairway, landing, or balcony that is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and is not provided with guards, or those portions in which existing guards are judged to be in danger of collapsing, shall be provided with guards.

804.14.2 Design. Guards required in accordance with Section 804.14.1 shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *California Building Code*.

Exception: In Group *R-2.1* and I-2 facilities, required guards enclosing the occupiable roof areas shall be permitted to be greater than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the surface of the occupiable roof where the occupants, because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of a function of a psychiatric or cognitive treatment area.

SECTION 805—STRUCTURAL

[BS] 805.1 General. Structural elements and systems within buildings undergoing Level 2 alterations shall comply with this section.

[BS] 805.2 Existing structural elements carrying gravity loads. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element for which an alteration causes an increase in design dead, live or snow load, including snow drift effects, of more than 5 percent shall be replaced or altered as needed to carry the gravity loads required by the *California Building Code* for new structures. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element whose gravity load-carrying capacity is decreased as part of the alteration shall be shown to have the capacity to resist the applicable design dead, live and snow loads, including snow drift effects, required by the *California Building Code* for new structures.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes where the altered building complies with the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.
2. Buildings in which the increased dead load is attributable to the addition of a second layer of roof covering weighing 3 pounds per square foot (0.1437 kN/m^2) or less over an existing single layer of roof covering.

[BS] 805.3 Existing structural elements resisting lateral loads. Except as permitted by Section 805.4, where the alteration increases design lateral loads, or where the alteration results in prohibited structural irregularity as defined in ASCE 7, or where the alteration decreases the capacity of any existing lateral load-carrying structural element, the lateral force-resisting system of the altered building or structure shall meet the requirements of Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.2 of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Any existing lateral load-carrying structural element whose demand-capacity ratio with the alteration considered is not more than 10 percent greater than its demand-capacity ratio with the alteration ignored shall be permitted to remain unaltered. For purposes of calculating demand-capacity ratios, the demand shall consider applicable load combinations with design lateral loads or forces in accordance with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.1 or 304.3.2 of this code. The same methodology shall be used for the altered and unaltered structures. For purposes of this exception, comparisons of demand-capacity ratios and calculation of design lateral loads, forces and capacities shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for wind, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* or the code wind forces in effect at the time. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for earthquake, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 304.3.1 or 304.3.2 Item 1 or 3 or the full or reduced seismic forces in effect at the time.
2. Buildings in which the increase in the demand-capacity ratio is due entirely to the addition of rooftop-supported mechanical equipment individually having an operating weight less than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) and where the total additional weight of all rooftop equipment placed after initial construction of the building is less than 10 percent of the roof dead load. For purposes of this exception, "roof" shall mean the roof level above a particular story.
3. Increases in the demand-capacity ratio due to lateral loads from seismic forces need not be evaluated for the installation of rooftop photovoltaic panel systems where the additional roof dead load due to the system, including ballast where applicable, does not exceed 5 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.2394 kN/m^2) and does not exceed 10 percent of the dead load of the existing roof.

[BS] 805.4 Voluntary lateral force-resisting system alterations. Structural alterations that are intended exclusively to improve the lateral force-resisting system and are not required by other sections of this code shall not be subject to the structural requirements of this chapter or Chapter 7, provided that the following conditions are met:

1. With the alteration complete, the capacity of existing structural systems to resist forces is not reduced.
2. New structural elements are detailed and connected to existing or new structural elements as required by the selected design criteria.

   Exception: New lateral force-resisting systems designed in accordance with the *California Building Code* are permitted to be of a type designated as "Ordinary" or "Intermediate" where ASCE 7 Table 12.2-1 states these types of systems are not permitted.

3. Supports and attachments for nonstructural elements removed and reinstalled to facilitate the work comply with the *California Building Code* for new construction.
4. The alterations do not create a structural irregularity as defined in ASCE 7 or make an existing structural irregularity more severe.

Exception: Condition 4 need not be satisfied where the work complies with Section 304.3.2 Item 3.

SECTION 806—ELECTRICAL

806.1 New installations. Newly installed electrical equipment and wiring relating to work done in any work area shall comply with all applicable requirements of *the California Electrical Code* except as provided for in Section 806.4.

806.2 Existing installations. Existing wiring in all work areas in Group A-1, A-2 *and* A-5 occupancies shall be upgraded to meet the materials and methods requirements of Chapter 7.

806.3 *Reserved.*

806.4 Residential occupancies. In Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies and buildings regulated by the *California Residential Code*, the requirements of Sections 806.4.1 through 806.4.7 shall be applicable only to work areas located within a dwelling unit.

806.4.1 Enclosed areas. Enclosed areas, other than closets, kitchens, basements, garages, hallways, laundry areas, utility areas, storage areas and bathrooms shall have not fewer than two duplex receptacle outlets or one duplex receptacle outlet and one ceiling or wall-type lighting outlet.

806.4.2 Kitchens. Kitchen areas shall have not fewer than two duplex receptacle outlets.

806.4.3 Laundry areas. Laundry areas shall have not fewer than one duplex receptacle outlet located near the laundry equipment and installed on an independent circuit.

806.4.4 Ground fault circuit interruption. Newly installed receptacle outlets shall be provided with ground fault circuit interruption as required by *the California Electrical Code*.

806.4.5 Minimum lighting outlets. Not fewer than one lighting outlet shall be provided in every bathroom, hallway, stairway, attached garage and detached garage with electric power, and to illuminate outdoor entrances and exits.

806.4.6 Utility rooms and basements. Not fewer than one lighting outlet shall be provided in utility rooms and basements where such spaces are used for storage or contain equipment requiring service.

806.4.7 Clearance for equipment. Clearance for electrical service equipment shall be provided in accordance with *the California Electrical Code.*

SECTION 807—MECHANICAL

807.1 Reconfigured or converted spaces. Reconfigured spaces intended for occupancy and spaces converted to habitable or occupiable space in any work area shall be provided with natural or mechanical ventilation in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

Exception: Existing mechanical ventilation systems shall comply with the requirements of Section 807.2.

807.2 Altered existing systems. In mechanically ventilated spaces, existing mechanical ventilation systems that are altered, reconfigured or extended shall provide not less than 5 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.0024 m^3/s) per person of outdoor air and not less than 15 cfm (0.0071 m^3/s) of ventilation air per person, or not less than the amount of ventilation air determined by the Indoor Air Quality Procedure of ASHRAE 62.1.

807.3 Local exhaust. Newly introduced devices, equipment or operations that produce airborne particulate matter, odors, fumes, vapor, combustion products, gaseous contaminants, pathogenic and allergenic organisms, and microbial contaminants in such quantities as to affect adversely or impair health or cause discomfort to occupants shall be provided with local exhaust.

SECTION 808—*RESERVED*

SECTION 809—ENERGY CONSERVATION

809.1 Minimum requirements. Level 2 alterations to existing buildings or structures*shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Energy Code (Part 6, Title 24, C.C.R).*

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 9 – ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 3

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter				**X**	**X**																			
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			**X**																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
901.2 Exception				†	†																			
902.1 *Reserved*			X																					
902.2 – 902.2.1			X																					
902.2 – 902.3				†	†																			
903.4				†	†																			
904.1			X																					
904.2			X																					
904.2.1			X																					
908				†	†																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

9 ALTERATIONS—LEVEL 3

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 9 provides the technical requirements for those existing buildings that undergo Level 3 alterations. The purpose of this chapter is to provide detailed requirements and provisions to identify the required improvements in the existing building elements, building spaces and building structural system. This chapter is distinguished from Chapters 7 and 8 by involving alterations that cover 50 percent or more of the aggregate area of the building. In contrast, Level 1 alterations do not involve space reconfiguration, and Level 2 alterations involve extensive space reconfiguration that does not exceed 50 percent of the building area. Depending on the nature of alteration work, its location within the building, and whether it encompasses one or more tenants, improvements and upgrades could be required for the open floor penetrations, sprinkler system or the installation of additional means of egress such as stairs or fire escapes. At times and under certain situations, this chapter also is intended to improve the safety of certain building features beyond the work area and in other parts of the building where no alteration work might be taking place.

SECTION 901—GENERAL

901.1 Scope. Level 3 alterations as described in Section 604 shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

901.2 Compliance. In addition to the provisions of this chapter, work shall comply with all of the requirements of Chapters 7 and 8. The requirements of Sections 802, 803, 804 and 805 shall apply within all work areas whether or not they include exits and corridors shared by more than one tenant and regardless of the occupant load.

Exception: Buildings in which the reconfiguration of space affecting exits or shared egress access is exclusively the result of compliance with the accessibility requirements of Section 306.7.1 shall not be required to comply with this chapter.

SECTION 902—SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY

902.1 ***Reserved.***

902.2 Group *R-2.1* occupancies. Group *R-2.1* occupancies shall be classified in accordance with Section 308.2 of the *California Building Code*.

902.2.1 Smoke barriers in Group *R-2.1*. In Group *R-2.1* occupancies where the work area is on a story used for sleeping rooms for more than 30 care recipients, the story shall be divided into not fewer than two compartments by smoke barrier walls in accordance with Section 420.6 of the *California Building Code*.

902.3 Ambulatory care facilities. Where a Level 3 work area includes an existing ambulatory care facility, the following shall be provided:

1. A smoke compartment in accordance with Section 422.3 of the *California Building Code*, where the alteration results in an ambulatory care facility greater than 10,000 square feet on one story.
2. Separation from adjacent spaces in accordance with Section 422.2 of the *California Building Code*, where any such facility has the potential for four or more care recipients incapable of self-preservation at any time.

SECTION 903—BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS

903.1 Existing shafts and vertical openings. Existing stairways that are part of the means of egress shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 802.2.1 from the highest work area floor to, and including, the level of exit discharge and all floors below.

903.2 Fire partitions in Group R-3. Fire separation in Group R-3 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 903.2.1.

903.2.1 Separation required. Where the work area is in any attached dwelling unit in Group R-3 or any multiple single-family dwelling (townhouse), walls separating the dwelling units that are not continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof sheathing shall be constructed to provide a continuous fire separation using construction materials consistent with the existing wall or complying with the requirements for new structures. Work shall be performed on the side of the dwelling unit wall that is part of the work area.

Exception: Where alterations or repairs do not result in the removal of wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure, walls are not required to be continuous through concealed floor spaces.

903.3 Interior finish. Interior finish in exits serving the work area shall comply with Section 802.4 between the highest floor on which there is a work area to the floor of exit discharge.

903.4 Enhanced classroom acoustics. In Group E occupancies, where the work area is a Level 3 alteration, enhanced classroom acoustics shall be provided in all classrooms with a volume of 20,000 cubic feet (565 m^3) or less. Enhanced classroom acoustics shall comply with the reverberation time in Section 808 of ICC A117.1.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 904—FIRE PROTECTION

904.1 Automatic sprinkler systems. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in *accordance with Section 903 of the California Building and California Fire Codes.*

➡ **904.2 Fire alarm and detection systems.** Fire alarm and detection shall be provided in accordance with Section 907 of the *California Building Code* as required for new construction *in accordance with California Fire Code Sections 907 and 1103.7.*

904.2.1 Systems out of service. *Existing fire alarm and detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with Section 901.7 of the California Fire Code. Site fire protection during construction shall be in accordance with Chapter 33 of the California Building and California Fire Codes.*

➡

SECTION 905—MEANS OF EGRESS

905.1 General. The means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Section 804 except as specifically required in Sections 905.2 and 905.3.

905.2 Means-of-egress lighting. Means of egress from the highest work area floor to the floor of exit discharge shall be provided with artificial lighting within the exit enclosure in accordance with the requirements of the *California Building Code*.

905.3 Exit signs. Means of egress from the highest work area floor to the floor of exit discharge shall be provided with exit signs in accordance with the requirements of the *California Building Code*.

905.4 Two-way communications systems. In buildings with elevator service, a two-way communication system shall be provided where required by Section 1009.8 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 906—STRUCTURAL

[BS] 906.1 General. Where buildings are undergoing Level 3 alterations, the provisions of this section shall apply.

[BS] 906.2 Existing structural elements resisting lateral loads. Where work involves a substantial structural alteration,the lateral load-resisting system of the altered building shall be shown to satisfy the requirements of Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.2 of this code. Where the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category D or F, supports and attachments for nonstructural components required to serve any portion of the building with a use included in *Risk Category* IV shall comply with Section 1613 of the *California Building Code* or shall comply with ASCE 41 using an objective of Position Retention nonstructural performance with the BSE-1E earthquake hazard level.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes that are altered based on the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or in compliance with the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.
2. Where the intended alteration involves only the lowest story of a building, structural components of the lateral load resisting system above that story need not comply with this section.

[BS] 906.3 Seismic Design Category F. Where the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category F, the lateral force-resisting system of the altered building shall meet the requirements of Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.2 of this code. Supports and attachments for nonstructural components serving any portion of the building with a use included in *Risk Category* IV shall comply with Section 1613 of the *California Building Code* or shall comply with ASCE 41 using an objective of Position Retention nonstructural performance with the BSE-1E earthquake hazard level.

[BS] 906.4 Anchorage for concrete and masonry buildings. For any building assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F with a structural system that includes concrete or reinforced masonry walls with a flexible roof diaphragm, the alteration shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of wall anchors at the roof line of all subject buildings and at the floor lines of unreinforced masonry.

[BS] 906.5 Anchorage for unreinforced masonry walls. For any building assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F with a structural system that includes unreinforced masonry bearing walls, the alteration shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of wall anchors at the roof line.

[BS] 906.6 Bracing for unreinforced masonry parapets. Parapets constructed of unreinforced masonry in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall comply with Section 304.3.2 by evaluation of the existing condition or by installation of parapet bracing.

[BS] 906.7 Anchorage of unreinforced masonry partitions. Where the building is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, unreinforced masonry partitions and nonstructural walls within the work area and adjacent to egress paths from the work area shall have their existing conditions evaluated or shall be anchored, removed or altered to resist out-of-plane seismic forces to comply with Section 304.3.2.

SECTION 907—ENERGY CONSERVATION

907.1 Minimum requirements. Level 3 alterations to existing buildings or structures *shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Energy Code (Part 6, Title 24, C.C.R).*

SECTION 908—EMERGENCY RESPONDER COMMUNICATIONS ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM COVERAGE

908.1 Emergency responder communication enhancement system coverage. The existing building shall undergo an evaluation of the emergency responder communication signal strength and coverage area within the entire building in accordance with Sections 908.1.1 and 908.1.2.

Exception: Where it is determined by the fire code official that the emergency responder communication enhancement system (ERCES) is not needed.

908.1.1 Evaluation. The evaluation shall determine the current signal strength and coverage capabilities of the public safety communication systems utilized by the jurisdiction, measured at the exterior of the building.

908.1.2 Compliance. The evaluation report shall be submitted for approval by the fire code official and the frequency license holder. Where the coverage area, signal strength or DAQ does not comply with Section 510 of the *California Fire Code*, the existing building shall be provided with ERCES coverage. The fire code official is authorized to establish the timeframe for such installation or modification.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 10 – CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter				**X**	**X**																			
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			**X**																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	**X**																							
Chapter / Section																								
1006.3 Exception 3	X																							
1007				†	†																			
1007.1			X																					
1009.2 – 1009.4				†	†																			
1011.2.1			X																					
1011.2.2			X																					
1011.4				†	†																			
1011.5.1			X																					
1011.5.1 Exception 8				†	†																			
Table 1011.5			X																					
1011.5.2			X																					
1011.5.2 Exception 2				†	†																			
1011.5.4			X																					
1011.5.5			X																					
1011.6.1 Exception 1				†	†																			
1011.7.1 Exception				†	†																			
1011.8.2			X																					

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

10 CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY

User notes:

About this chapter: The purpose of this chapter is to provide regulations for the circumstances where an existing building is subject to a change of occupancy or a change of occupancy classification. A change of occupancy is not to be confused with a change of occupancy classification. The *California Building Code* defines different occupancy classifications in Chapter 3 and special occupancy requirements in Chapter 4. Within specific occupancy classifications there can be many different types of actual activities that can take place. For instance, a Group A-3 occupancy classification deals with a wide variation of different types of activities, including bowling alleys and courtrooms, indoor tennis courts and dance halls. When a facility changes use from, for example, a bowling alley to a dance hall, the occupancy classification remains A-3, but the different uses could lead to drastically different code requirements. Therefore, this chapter deals with the special circumstances that are associated with a change in the use of a building within the same occupancy classification as well as a change of occupancy classification.

SECTION 1001—GENERAL

1001.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shalle a change of occupancy occurs, as defined in Section 202.

1001.2 Certificate of occupancy. A change of occupancy or a change of occupancy within a space where there is a different fire protection system threshold requirement in Chapter 9 of th apply where current *California Building Code* than exists in the current building or space shall not be made to any structure without the approval of the code official. A certificate of occupancy shall be issued where it has been determined that the requirements for the change of occupancy have been met.

1001.2.1 Change of use. Any work undertaken in connection with a change in use shall conform to the applicable requirements for the work as classified in Chapter 6 and to the requirements of Sections 1002 through 1010.

1001.2.2 Change of occupancy classification. Where a building undergoes a change of occupancy classification, the provisions of Sections 1002 through 1011 shall apply.

1001.2.2.1 Partial change of occupancy. Where a portion of an existing building undergoes a change of occupancy classification, Section 1011 shall apply.

1001.3 Certificate of occupancy required. A certificate of occupancy shall be issued where a change of occupancy occurs that results in a different occupancy classification as determined by the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 1002—SPECIAL USE AND OCCUPANCY

1002.1 Compliance with the building code. Where an existing building or part of an existing building undergoes a change of occupancy to one of the special use or occupancy categories as described in Chapter 4 in the *California Building Code*, the building shall comply with all of the requirements of Chapter 4 of the *California Building Code* applicable to the special use or occupancy.

1002.2 Incidental uses. Where a portion of a building undergoes a change of occupancy to one of the incidental uses listed in Table 509.1 of the *California Building Code*, the incidental use shall comply with Section 509 of the *California Building Code* applicable to the incidental use.

SECTION 1003—BUILDING ELEMENTS AND MATERIALS

1003.1 General. Building elements and materials in portions of buildings undergoing a change of occupancy classification shall comply with Section 1011.

SECTION 1004—FIRE PROTECTION

1004.1 General. Fire protection requirements in Section 1011 shall apply where either of the following occur:

1. A building or portion thereof undergoes a change of occupancy.
2. A building or portion thereof undergoes a change of occupancy and there is a different fire protection system threshold requirement in Chapter 9 of the current *California Building Code* than exists in the current building or portion thereof.

SECTION 1005—MEANS OF EGRESS

1005.1 General. Means of egress in portions of buildings undergoing a change of occupancy classification shall comply with Section 1011.

SECTION 1006—STRUCTURAL

[BS] 1006.1 Live loads. Structural elements carrying tributary live loads from an area with a change of occupancy shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1607 of the *California Building Code*. Design live loads for areas of new occupancy shall be based on Section 1607 of the *California Building Code*. Design live loads for other areas shall be permitted to use previously approved design live loads.

Exception: Structural elements whose demand-capacity ratio considering the change of occupancy is not more than 5 percent greater than the demand-capacity ratio based on previously approved live loads.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] 1006.2 Snow and wind loads. Where a change of occupancy results in a structure being assigned to a higher risk category, the structure shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1608 and 1609 of the *California Building Code* for the new risk category.

Exception: Where the area of the new occupancy is less than 10 percent of the building area. The cumulative effect of occupancy changes over time shall be considered.

[BS] 1006.3 Seismic loads. Where a change of occupancy results in a building being assigned to a higher risk category, or where the change is from a Group S or Group U occupancy to any occupancy other than Group S or Group U, the lateral force-resisting system of the building shall comply with Section 304.3.1 for the new risk category. Where a change of occupancy results in a building being assigned to Risk Category IV and Seismic Design Category D or F, nonstructural components serving any portion of the building changed to Risk Category IV shall comply with the requirements of Section 1613 of the *California Building Code* or shall comply with ASCE 41 using an objective of operational nonstructural performance with the BSE-1N earthquake hazard level.

Exceptions:

1. Where a change of use results in a building being reclassified from Risk Category I or II to Risk Category III and the seismic coefficient, S_{DS}, is less than 0.33, compliance with this section is not required.
2. Where the area of the new occupancy is less than 10 percent of the building area, the occupancy is not changing from a Group S or Group U occupancy, and the new occupancy is not assigned to Risk Category IV, compliance with this section is not required. The cumulative effect of occupancy changes over time shall be considered.
3. *Reserved.*
4. Where the change is from a Group S or Group U occupancy and there is no change of risk category, compliance with Section 304.3.2 shall be permitted.

[BS] 1006.4 Access to Risk Category IV. Any structure that provides operational access to an adjacent structure assigned to *Risk Category* IV as the result of a change of occupancy shall itself comply with Sections 1608 and 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.1 of this code. Where operational access to *Risk Category* IV is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from either an interior lot line or from another structure, access protection from potential falling debris shall be provided.

SECTION 1007—ELECTRICAL

1007.1 Special occupancies. Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed to one of the following special occupancies as described in *the California Electrical Code*, the electrical wiring and equipment of the building or portion thereof that contains the proposed occupancy shall comply with the applicable requirements of *the California Electrical Code*:

1. Hazardous locations.
2. Commercial garages, repair and storage.
3. Aircraft hangars.
4. Gasoline dispensing and service stations.
5. Bulk storage plants.
6. Spray application, dipping and coating processes.
7. *Reserved.*
8. Places of assembly.
9. Theaters, audience areas of motion picture and television studios, and similar locations.
10. Motion picture and television studios and similar locations.
11. Motion picture projectors.
12. Agricultural buildings.

1007.2 Unsafe conditions. Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed, all unsafe conditions shall be corrected without requiring that all parts of the electrical system comply with *the California Electrical Code*.

1007.3 Service upgrade. Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed, electrical service shall be upgraded to meet the requirements of *the California Electrical Code* for the new occupancy.

1007.4 Number of electrical outlets. Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed, the number of electrical outlets shall comply with *the California Electrical Code* for the new occupancy.

SECTION 1008—MECHANICAL

1008.1 Mechanical requirements. Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed such that the new occupancy is subject to different kitchen exhaust requirements or to increased mechanical ventilation requirements in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*, the new occupancy shall comply with the respective *California Mechanical Code* provisions.

SECTION 1009—PLUMBING

1009.1 Increased demand. Where the occupancy of an existing building or part of an existing building is changed such that the new occupancy is subject to increased or different plumbing fixture requirements or to increased water supply requirements in accor-

dance with the *California Plumbing Code*, the new occupancy shall comply with the intent of the respective *California Plumbing Code* provisions.

Exception: Only where the occupant load of the story is increased by more than 20 percent, plumbing fixtures for the story shall be provided in quantities specified in the *California Plumbing Code* based on the increased occupant load.

1009.2 Food-handling occupancies. If the new occupancy is a food-handling establishment, all existing sanitary waste lines above the food or drink preparation or storage areas shall be panned or otherwise protected to prevent leaking pipes or condensation on pipes from contaminating food or drink. New drainage lines shall not be installed above such areas and shall be protected in accordance with the *California Plumbing Code*.

1009.3 Interceptor required. If the new occupancy will produce grease or oil-laden wastes, interceptors shall be provided as required in the *California Plumbing Code*.

1009.4 Chemical wastes. If the new occupancy will produce chemical wastes, the following shall apply:

1. If the existing piping is not compatible with the chemical waste, the waste shall be neutralized prior to entering the drainage system or the piping shall be changed to a compatible material.
2. Chemical waste shall not discharge to a public sewer system without the approval of the sewage authority.

SECTION 1010—OTHER REQUIREMENTS

1010.1 Light and ventilation. Light and ventilation shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for the new occupancy.

SECTION 1011—CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION

1011.1 General. The provisions of this section shall apply to buildings or portions thereof undergoing a change of occupancy classification. This includes a change of occupancy classification within a group as well as a change of occupancy classification from one group to a different group. The provisions of this section shall also apply where there is a change of occupancy within a building or portion thereof and there is a different fire protection system threshold requirement in Chapter 9 of the current *California Building Code* than exists in the current building or space. Such buildings shall also comply with Sections 1002 through 1010 of this code.

1011.2 Fire protection systems. Fire protection systems shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1011.2.1 and 1011.2.2.

1011.2.1 Automatic sprinkler system. The installation of an automatic sprinkler system shall be required where there is a change of occupancy classification and Chapter 9 of the current *California Building Code* requires an automatic sprinkler system based on the new occupancy or where there is a change of occupancy within the space where there is a different fire protection system threshold requirement in Chapter 9 of the current *California Building Code* than exists in the current building or space. The installation of the automatic sprinkler system shall be required within the area of the change of occupancy and areas of the building not separated *by a fire wall* from the change of occupancy.

1011.2.1.1 Nonrequired automatic sprinkler systems. The code official is authorized to permit the removal of an existing automatic sprinkler system where all of the following conditions exist:

1. The system is not required for new construction.
2. Portions of the system that are exposed to the public are removed.
3. The system was not installed as part of any special construction features, including fire-resistance-rated assemblies and smoke-resistive assemblies, conditions of occupancy, means of egress conditions, fire code deficiencies, approved modifications or approved alternative materials, design and methods of construction, and equipment applying to the building.

1011.2.1.1.1 Approval. Plans, investigation and evaluation reports, and other data shall be submitted documenting compliance with Section 1011.2.1.1 for review and approval in support of a determination authorizing the removal of the automatic sprinkler system by the code official.

1011.2.2 Fire alarm and detection system. Where a change in occupancy classification occurs or where there is a change of occupancy within a space where there is a different fire protection system threshold requirement in Chapter 9 of the current *California Building Code* than exists in the current building or space that requires a fire alarm and detection system to be provided based on the new occupancy, such system shall be *in accordance with Chapter 11 and Section 907 of the California Fire Code.*

1011.3 Interior finish. In areas of the building undergoing the change of occupancy classification, the interior finish of walls and ceilings shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for the new occupancy classification.

1011.4 Enhanced classroom acoustics. In Group E occupancies, where the work area is a Level 3 alteration, enhanced classroom acoustics shall be provided in all classrooms with a volume of 20,000 cubic feet (565 m^3) or less. Enhanced classroom acoustics shall comply with the reverberation time in Section 808 of ICC A117.1.

1011.5 Means of egress, general. Hazard categories in regard to life safety and means of egress shall be in accordance with Table 1011.5.

TABLE 1011.5—MEANS OF EGRESS HAZARD CATEGORIES	
RELATIVE HAZARD	**OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATIONS**
1 (Highest Hazard)	H *(Not Allowed)*
2	I-2; I-3; I-4 *(Not Allowed)*
➡ 3	A; E; M; R-1; R-2; R-4
➡ 4	B; F-1; R-3; R-4, S-1
5 (Lowest Hazard)	F-2; S-2; U

1011.5.1 Means of egress for change to a higher-hazard category. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to a higher-hazard category (lower number) as shown in Table 1011.5, the means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10 of the *California Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Stairways shall be enclosed in compliance with the applicable provisions of Section 903.1.
2. Existing stairways including handrails and guards complying with the requirements of Chapter 9 shall be permitted for continued use subject to approval of the code official.
3. Any stairway replacing an existing stairway within a space where the pitch or slope cannot be reduced because of existing construction shall not be required to comply with the maximum riser height and minimum tread depth requirements.
4. Existing corridor walls constructed on both sides of wood lath and plaster in good condition or $^{1}/_{2}$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard shall be permitted. Such walls shall either terminate at the underside of a ceiling of equivalent construction or extend to the underside of the floor or roof next above.
5. Existing corridor doorways, transoms and other corridor openings shall comply with the requirements in Sections 804.7.1, 804.7.2 and 804.7.3.
6. Existing dead-end corridors shall comply with the requirements in Section 804.8.
7. An operable window complying with Section 1011.5.6 shall be accepted as an emergency escape and rescue opening.
8. In Group *R-2.1* and I-2 facilities, required guards enclosing the occupiable roof areas shall be permitted to be greater than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the surface of the occupiable roof where the occupants, because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of a function of a psychiatric or cognitive treatment area.

1011.5.2 Means of egress for change of use to an equal or lower-hazard category. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to an equal or lesser-hazard category (higher number) as shown in Table 1011.5, existing elements of the means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Section 905 for the new occupancy classification. Newly constructed or configured means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10 of the *California Building Code*.

Exceptions:

➡ 1. Any stairway replacing an existing stairway within a space where the pitch or slope cannot be reduced shall not be required to comply with the maximum riser height and minimum tread depth requirements.
2. In Group *R-2.1* and I-2 facilities, required guards enclosing the occupiable roof areas shall be permitted to be greater than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the surface of the occupiable roof where the occupants, because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of a function of a psychiatric or cognitive treatment area.

1011.5.3 Egress capacity. Egress capacity shall meet or exceed the occupant load as specified in the *California Building Code* for the new occupancy.

➡ **1011.5.4 Handrails.** Existing stairways shall comply with the handrail requirements of Section 804.13.

➡ **1011.5.5 Guards.** Existing guards shall comply with the requirements in Section 804.12.

1011.5.6 Existing emergency escape and rescue openings. Where a change of occupancy would require an emergency escape and rescue opening in accordance with Section 1031 of the *California Building Code*, operable windows serving as the emergency escape and rescue opening shall comply with the following:

1. An existing operable window shall provide a minimum net clear opening of 4 square feet (0.38 m^2) with a minimum net clear opening height of 22 inches (559 mm) and a minimum net clear opening width of 20 inches (508 mm).
2. A replacement window where such window complies with both of the following:
   2.1. The replacement window meets the size requirements in Item 1.
   2.2. The replacement window is the manufacturer's largest standard size window that will fit within the existing frame or existing rough opening. The replacement window shall be permitted to be of the same operating style as the existing window or a style that provides for an equal or greater window opening area than the existing window.

1011.6 Heights and areas. Hazard categories in regard to height and area shall be in accordance with Table 1011.6.

TABLE 1011.6—HEIGHTS AND AREAS HAZARD CATEGORIES	
RELATIVE HAZARD	**OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATIONS**
1 (Highest Hazard)	H
2	A-1; A-2; A-3; A-4; I; R-1; R-2; R-4, Condition 2
3	E; F-1; S-1; M
4 (Lowest Hazard)	B; F-2; S-2; A-5; R-3; R-4, Condition 1; U

1011.6.1 Height and area for change to a higher-hazard category. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to a higher-hazard category as shown in Table 1011.6, heights and areas of buildings and structures shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code* for the new occupancy classification.

Exceptions:

1. For high-rise buildings constructed in compliance with a previously issued permit, the type of construction reduction specified in Section 403.2.1 of the *California Building Code* is permitted. This shall include the reduction for columns. The high-rise building is required to be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *California Building Code*.
2. Buildings that were constructed in compliance with a previously issued permit that have floor assemblies with a 1-$^1/_2$-hour fire resistance rating shall not be required to comply with Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code* where all of the following apply:
    2.1. Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code* requires Type IB construction.
    2.2. The building does not include Group H occupancies.
    2.3. The building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance Section 903.3.1.1 of the *California Building Code.*

1011.6.1.1 Fire wall alternative. In other than Groups H, F-1 and S-1, fire barriers and horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Sections 707 and 711, respectively, of the *California Building Code* shall be permitted to be used in lieu of fire walls to subdivide the building into separate buildings for the purpose of complying with the area limitations required for the new occupancy where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *California Fire Code*.
2. The maximum allowable area between fire barriers, horizontal assemblies or any combination thereof shall not exceed the maximum allowable area determined in accordance with Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code* without an increase allowed for an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 506 of the *California Building Code*.
3. The fire-resistance rating of the fire barriers and horizontal assemblies shall be not less than that specified for fire walls in Table 706.4 of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Where horizontal assemblies are used to limit the maximum allowable area, the required fire-resistance rating of the horizontal assemblies shall be permitted to be reduced by 1 hour provided that the height and number of stories increases allowed for an automatic sprinkler system by Section 504 of the *California Building Code* are not used for the buildings.

1011.6.2 Height and area for change to an equal or lesser-hazard category. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to an equal or lesser-hazard category as shown in Table 1011.6, the height and area of the existing buildingshall be deemed acceptable.

1011.6.3 Fire barriers. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to a higher-hazard category as shown in Table 1011.6, fire barriers in separated mixed use buildings shall comply with the fire-resistance requirements of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Where the fire barriers are required to have a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, existing wood lath and plaster in good condition or existing $^1/_2$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard shall be permitted.

1011.7 Exterior wall fire-resistance ratings. Hazard categories in regard to fire-resistance ratings of exterior walls shall be in accordance with Table 1011.7.

TABLE 1011.7—EXPOSURE OF EXTERIOR WALLS HAZARD CATEGORIES	
RELATIVE HAZARD	**OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION**
1 (Highest Hazard)	H
2	F-1; M; S-1
3	A; B; E; I; R
4 (Lowest Hazard)	F-2; S-2; U

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1011.7.1 Exterior wall rating for change of occupancy classification to a higher-hazard category. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to a higher hazard category as shown in Table 1011.7, exterior walls shall have fire-resistance, exterior opening areas and opening protectives as required by the *California Building Code*.

Exception: A 2-hour fire-resistance rating shall be allowed where the building does not exceed three stories in height and is classified as one of the following groups: A-2 and A-3 with an occupant load of less than 300, B, F, M or S.

1011.7.2 Exterior wall rating for change of occupancy classification to an equal or lesser-hazard category. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to an equal or lesser-hazard category as shown in Table 1011.7, existing exterior walls, including openings, shall be accepted.

1011.7.3 Opening protectives. Openings in exterior walls shall be protected as required by the *California Building Code*. Where openings in the exterior walls are required to be protected because of their distance from the lot line, the sum of the area of such openings shall not exceed 50 percent of the total area of the wall in each story.

Exceptions:

1. Where the *California Building Code* permits openings in excess of 50 percent.
2. Protected openings shall not be required in buildings of Group R occupancy that do not exceed three stories in height and that are located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the lot line.
3. Exterior opening protectives are not required where an automatic sprinkler system has been installed throughout.
4. Exterior opening protectives are not required where the change of occupancy group is to an equal or lower hazard classification in accordance with Table 1011.7.

1011.8 Enclosure of vertical shafts. Enclosure of vertical shafts shall be in accordance with Sections 1011.8.1 through 1011.8.4.

1011.8.1 Minimum requirements. Vertical shafts shall be designed to meet the *California Building Code* requirements for atriums or the requirements of this section.

1011.8.2 Stairways. Where a change of occupancy classification is made to a higher-hazard category as shown in Table 1011.5, interior stairways shall be enclosed as required by the *California Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Group I occupancies, an enclosure shall not be required for openings serving only one adjacent floor and that are not connected with corridors or stairways serving other floors.
2. Unenclosed existing stairways need not be enclosed in a continuous vertical shaft if each story is separated from other stories by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction and all exit corridors are sprinklered in accordance with the *California Building Code*. The openings between the corridor and the tenant space shall have not fewer than one sprinkler above the openings on the tenant side.
3. Existing penetrations of stairway enclosures shall be accepted if they are protected in accordance with the *California Building Code*.

1011.8.3 Other vertical shafts. Interior vertical shafts other than stairways, including but not limited to elevator hoistways and service and utility shafts, shall be enclosed as required by the *California Building Code* where there is a *change of use* to a higher-hazard category as specified in Table 1011.5.

Exceptions:

1. Existing 1-hour interior shaft enclosures shall be accepted where a higher rating is required.
2. Vertical openings, other than stairways, in buildings of other than Group I occupancy and connecting less than six stories shall not be required to be enclosed if the entire building is provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

1011.8.4 Openings. Openings into existing vertical shaft enclosures shall be protected by fire assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour and shall be maintained self-closing or shall be automatic-closing by actuation of a smoke detector. Other openings shall be fire protected in an approved manner. Existing fusible link-type automatic door-closing devices shall be permitted in all shafts except stairways if the fusible link rating does not exceed 135°F (57°C).

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 11 – ADDITIONS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter				**X**	**X**																			
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			**X**																					
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
1101.1			X																					
1101.5			X	†	†																			
1101.6				†	†																			
1102.2			X																					
1102.3 Exception				†	†																			
1102.4			X																					

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

11 ADDITIONS

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 11 provides the requirements for additions, which correlate to the code requirements for new construction. There are, however, some exceptions that are specifically stated within this chapter. An "Addition" is defined in Chapter 2 as "an extension or increase in the floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure." Chapter 11 contains the minimum requirements for an addition that is not separated from the existing building by a fire wall.

SECTION 1101—GENERAL

1101.1 Scope. An addition to a building or structure shall comply with the *California Building Standards* Codes as adopted for new construction without requiring the existing building or structure to comply with any requirements of those codes or of these provisions, except as required by this chapter. Where an addition *or alteration* impacts the existing building or structure, *the result of the addition or alteration shall not put the existing building or structure out of compliance with the California Building or Residential Code as applicable. The provisions of height and area of the California Building or Residential Code shall apply to the entire existing building with the additions.*

1101.2 Creation or extension of nonconformity. An addition shall not create or extend any nonconformity in the existing building to which the addition is being made with regard to accessibility, structural strength, supports and attachments for nonstructural components, fire safety, means of egress or the capacity of mechanical, plumbing or electrical systems.

Exception: Nonconforming supports and attachments for nonstructural components that serve the addition from within the existing building need not be altered to comply with *California Building Code* Section 1613 unless the components are part of the addition's life safety system or are required to serve an addition assigned to Risk Category IV.

[BS] 1101.3 Risk category assignment. Where the addition and the existing building have different occupancies, the risk category of each existing and added occupancy shall be determined in accordance with Section 1604.5.1 of the *California Building Code*. Where application of that section results in a higher risk category for the existing building compared with the risk category for the existing building before the addition, such a change shall be considered a change of occupancy and shall comply with Chapter 10 of this code. Where application of that section results in a higher risk category for the addition compared with the risk category for the addition by itself, the addition and any systems in the existing building required to serve the addition shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* for new construction for the higher risk category.

1101.4 Other work. Any repair or alteration work within an existing building to which an addition is being made shall comply with the applicable requirements for the work as classified in Chapter 6.

1101.5 Smoke barriers in Group *R-2.1*. Where an addition to an existing Group *R-2.1* building adds sleeping areas that result in more than 50 care recipients on a story, smoke barriers shall be provided to subdivide such story into not fewer than two smoke compartments in accordance with Section 420.6 of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Where the existing building is divided into smoke compartments and the addition does not result in any individual smoke compartment exceeding the size and travel distance requirements in Section 420.6 of the *California Building Code*, additional smoke barriers are not required.

1101.6 Enhanced classroom acoustics. In Group E occupancies, enhanced classroom acoustics shall be provided in all classrooms in the addition with a volume of 20,000 cubic feet (565 m^3) or less. Enhanced classroom acoustics shall comply with the reverberation time in Section 808 of ICC A117.1.

1101.7 Occupiable roofs. Where a new occupiable roof is added to a building or structure, the occupiable roof shall comply with the provisions of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 1102—HEIGHTS AND AREAS

1102.1 Height limitations. An addition shall not increase the height of an existing building beyond that permitted under the applicable provisions of Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code* for new buildings.

1102.2 Area limitations. An addition shall not increase the area of an existing building beyond that permitted under the applicable provisions of Chapter 5 of the *California Building Code* for new buildings unless fire separation as required by the *California Building Code* is provided.

1102.3 Fire protection systems. Existing fire areas increased by the addition shall comply with Chapter 9 of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Nonoccupiable appendages, such as elevator and exit stairway shafts, shall be permitted beyond that permitted by the *California Building Code*.

1102.4 Systems out of service. *Existing fire alarm and detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with Section 901.7 of the California Fire Code. Site fire protection during construction shall be in accordance with Chapter 33 of the California Building and California Fire Codes.*

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 1103—STRUCTURAL

[BS] 1103.1 Additional gravity loads. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element for which an addition and its related alterations cause an increase in design dead, live or snow load, including snow drift effects, of more than 5 percent shall be replaced or altered as needed to carry the gravity loads required by the *California Building Code* for new structures. Any existing gravity load-carrying structural element whose gravity load-carrying capacity is decreased as part of the addition and its related alterations shall be considered to be an altered element subject to the requirements of Section 805.2. Any existing element that will form part of the lateral load path for any part of the addition shall be considered to be an existing lateral load-carrying structural element subject to the requirements of Section 1103.2.

Exception: Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling units or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and the addition together comply with the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.

[BS] 1103.2 Lateral force-resisting system. Where the addition is structurally independent of the existing structure, existing lateral load-carrying structural elements shall be permitted to remain unaltered. Where the addition is not structurally independent of the existing structure, the lateral force-resisting system of the existing structure and its addition acting together as a single structure shall comply with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.1 of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Group R occupancy with not more than five dwelling or sleeping units used solely for residential purposes where the existing building and the addition comply with the conventional light-frame construction methods of the *California Building Code* or the provisions of the *California Residential Code*.
2. Any existing lateral load-carrying structural element whose demand-capacity ratio with the addition considered is not more than 10 percent greater than its demand-capacity ratio with the addition ignored shall be permitted to remain unaltered. For purposes of calculating demand-capacity ratios, the demand shall consider applicable load combinations with design lateral loads or forces in accordance with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* and Section 304.3.1 of this code*. For purposes of this exception, comparisons of demand-capacity ratios and calculation of design lateral loads, forces and capacities shall account for the cumulative effects of additions and alterations since original construction.*

When calculating demand-capacity ratios for wind, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 1609 of the *California Building Code* or the code wind forces in effect at the time. When calculating demand-capacity ratios for earthquake, the date of original construction shall be permitted to be taken as the date of completion of a prior addition, alteration or repair in compliance with Section 304.3.1 or the full seismic forces in effect at the time.

[BS] 1103.3 Flood hazard areas. Additions and foundations in flood hazard areas shall comply with the following requirements:

1. For horizontal additions that are structurally interconnected to the existing building:
   - 1.1. If the addition and all other proposed work, when combined, constitute substantial improvement, the existing building and the addition shall comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.
   - 1.2. If the addition constitutes substantial improvement, the existing building and the addition shall comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.
   - 1.3. If the addition does not constitute substantial improvement, the addition is not required to comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, provided that both of the following apply:
     - 1.3.1. The addition shall not create or extend any nonconformity of the existing building with the flood-resistant construction requirements.
     - 1.3.2. The lowest floor of the addition shall be at or above the lower of the lowest floor of the existing building or the lowest floor elevation required in Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.
2. For horizontal additions that are not structurally interconnected to the existing building:
   - 2.1. The addition shall comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.
   - 2.2. If the addition and all other proposed work, when combined, constitute substantial improvement, the existing building and the addition shall comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.
3. For vertical additions and all other proposed work that, when combined, constitute substantial improvement, the existing building shall comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.
4. For a new foundation, replacement foundation or a foundation raised or extended upward, the foundation shall comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code,* or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

SECTION 1104—ENERGY CONSERVATION

1104.1 Minimum requirements. Additions to existing buildings shall *comply with applicable provisions of the California Energy Code (Part 6, Title 24, C.C.R).*

CHAPTER
12

HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Chapter 12 is not adopted by the State of California.
Historic buildings and structures shall comply with Part 8, Title 24, California Code of Regulations.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 13 – PERFORMANCE COMPLIANCE METHODS

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)
(See Section 104.11 for consideration of alternative means of compliance.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER
13

PERFORMANCE COMPLIANCE METHODS

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)
(See Section 104.11 for consideration of alternative means of compliance.)

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 13 allows for existing buildings to be evaluated so as to show that alterations, while not meeting new construction requirements, will improve the current existing situation. Provisions are based on a numerical scoring system involving 21 various safety parameters and the degree of code compliance for each issue.

SECTION 1301—GENERAL

1301.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the alteration, addition and change of occupancy of existing structures, including historic structures, as referenced in Section 301.3.3. The provisions of this chapter are intended to maintain or increase the current degree of public safety, health and general welfare in existing buildings while permitting, alteration, addition and change of occupancy without requiring full compliance with Chapters 6 through 12, except where compliance with the prescriptive method of Chapter 5 or the work area method of other provisions of this code is specifically required in this chapter.

1301.1.1 Compliance with other methods. Alterations, additions and changes of occupancy to existing structures shall comply with the provisions of this chapter or with one of the methods provided in Section 301.3.

SECTION 1302—APPLICABILITY

1302.1 General. Existing buildings in which there is work involving additions, alterations or changes of occupancy shall be made to conform to the requirements of this chapter or the provisions of Chapters 6 through 12. The provisions of Sections 1302.1.1 through 1302.1.6 shall apply to existing occupancies that will continue to be, or are proposed to be, in Groups A, B, E, F, I-2, M, R and S. These provisions shall also apply to Group U occupancies where such occupancies are undergoing a change of occupancy or a partial change in occupancy with separations in accordance with Section 1302.1.2. These provisions shall not apply to buildings with occupancies in Group H, I-1, I-3 or I-4.

1302.1.1 Change in occupancy. Where an existing building is changed to a new occupancy classification and this section is applicable, the provisions of this section for the new occupancy shall be used to determine compliance with this code.

1302.1.2 Partial change in occupancy. Where a portion of the building is changed to a new occupancy classification and that portion is separated from the remainder of the building with fire barrier or horizontal assemblies having a fire-resistance rating as required by Table 508.4 of the *International Building Code* or Section R302 of the *International Residential Code* for the separate occupancies, or with approved compliance alternatives, the portion changed shall be made to conform to the provisions of this section. Only the portion separated shall be required to be evaluated for compliance.

Where a portion of the building is changed to a new occupancy classification and that portion is not separated from the remainder of the building with fire barriers or horizontal assemblies having a fire-resistance rating as required by Table 508.4 of the *International Building Code* or Section R302 of the *International Residential Code* for the separate occupancies, or with approved compliance alternatives, the provisions of this section which apply to each occupancy shall apply to the entire building. Where there are conflicting provisions, those requirements which secure the greater public safety shall apply to the entire building or structure.

1302.1.3 Additions. Additions to existing buildings shall comply with the requirements of the *International Building Code* or the *International Residential Code* for new construction. The combined height and area of the existing building and the new addition shall not exceed the height and area allowed by Chapter 5 of the *International Building Code*. Where a fire wall that complies with Section 706 of the *International Building Code* is provided between the addition and the existing building, the addition shall be considered a separate building. Where a new occupiable roof is added to a building or structure, the occupiable roof shall comply with the provisions of the *International Building Code*.

Exception: In-filling of floor openings and nonoccupiable appendages, such as elevator and exit stairway shafts, shall be permitted beyond that permitted by the *International Building Code*.

1302.1.4 Alterations. An existing building or portion thereof shall not be altered in such a manner that results in the building being less safe or sanitary than such building is currently.

Exception: Where the current level of safety or sanitation is proposed to be reduced, the portion altered shall conform to the requirements of the *International Building Code*.

1302.1.5 Escalators. Where escalators are provided in below-grade transportation stations, existing and new escalators shall be permitted to have a clear width of less than 32 inches (815 mm).

1302.1.6 Plumbing fixtures. Plumbing fixtures shall be provided in accordance with Section 1009 for a change of occupancy and Section 808 for alterations. Plumbing fixtures for additions shall be in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION 1303—ACCEPTANCE

1303.1 General. For repairs, alterations, additions and changes of occupancy to existing buildings that are evaluated in accordance with this section, compliance with this section shall be accepted by the code official.

1303.1.1 Hazards. Where the code official determines that an unsafe condition exists as provided for in Section 115, such unsafe condition shall be abated in accordance with Section 115.

1303.1.2 Compliance with other codes. Buildings that are evaluated in accordance with this section shall comply with the *International Fire Code* and *International Property Maintenance Code*.

[BS] 1303.1.3 Compliance with flood hazard provisions. In flood hazard areas, buildings that are evaluated in accordance with this section shall comply with Section 1612 of the *International Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable, if the work covered by this section constitutes substantial improvement. If the work covered by this section is a structurally connected horizontal addition that does not constitute substantial improvement, the addition is not required to comply with the flood design requirements for new construction, provided that both of the following apply.

1. The addition shall not create or extend any nonconformity of the existing building with the flood-resistant construction requirements.
2. The lowest floor of the addition shall be at or above the lower of the lowest floor of the existing building or the lowest floor elevation required in Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* or Section R306 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

SECTION 1304—INVESTIGATION AND EVALUATION

1304.1 General. For proposed work covered by this chapter, the building owner shall cause the existing building to be investigated and evaluated in accordance with the provisions of Sections 1304.1 through 1307.1.

[BS] 1304.1.1 Structural analysis. The owner shall have a structural analysis of the existing building made to determine adequacy of structural systems for the proposed alteration, addition or change of occupancy. The analysis shall demonstrate that the building with the work completed is capable of resisting the loads specified in Chapter 16 of the *International Building Code*.

1304.1.2 Submittal. The results of the investigation and evaluation as required in Section 1304.1, along with proposed compliance alternatives, shall be submitted to the code official.

1304.1.3 Determination of compliance. The code official shall determine whether the existing building, with the proposed addition, alteration or change of occupancy, complies with the provisions of this section in accordance with the evaluation process in Sections 1305.1 through 1307.1.

SECTION 1305—SCORING AND EVALUATION

1305.1 Safety categories. The evaluation shall be composed of three categories: fire safety, means of egress and general safety, as defined in Sections 1305.1.1 through 1305.1.3.

1305.1.1 Fire safety. Included within the fire safety category are the structural fire resistance, automatic fire detection, fire alarm, automatic sprinkler system and fire suppression system features of the facility.

1305.1.2 Means of egress. Included within the means of egress category are the configuration, characteristics and support features for means of egress in the facility.

1305.1.3 General safety. Included within the general safety category are the fire safety parameters and the means of egress parameters.

1305.2 Evaluation process. The evaluation process specified herein shall be followed in its entirety to evaluate existing buildings in Groups A, B, E, F, M, R, S and U. For existing buildings in Group I-2, the evaluation process specified herein shall be followed and applied to each and every individual smoke compartment. Table 1306.1 shall be utilized for tabulating the results of the evaluation. References to other sections of this code or other codes indicate that compliance with those sections is required in order to gain credit in the evaluation herein outlined. In applying this section to a building with mixed occupancies, where the separation between the mixed occupancies does not qualify for any category indicated in Section 1305.2.16, the score for each occupancy shall be determined, and the lower score determined for each section of the evaluation process shall apply to the entire building or to each smoke compartment for Group I-2 occupancies.

Where the separation between the mixed occupancies qualifies for any category indicated in Section 1305.2.16, the score for each occupancy shall apply to each portion or smoke compartment of the building based on the occupancy of the space.

1305.2.1 Building height and number of stories. The value for building height and number of stories shall be the lesser value determined by the formula in Section 1305.2.1.1. Section 504 of the *International Building Code* shall be used to determine the allowable height and number of stories of the building. Subtract the actual building height from the allowable height and divide by 12.5 feet (3810 mm). Enter the height value and its sign (positive or negative) in Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.1, Building Height, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. The maximum score for a building shall be 10.

1305.2.1.1 Height formula. The following formulas shall be used in computing the building height value.

Equation 13-1 $$\text{Height value, feet} = \frac{(AH) - (EBH)}{12.5} \times CF$$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

Equation 13-2 Height value, stories = (*AS* – *EBS*) × CF

where:

AH = Allowable height in feet (mm) from Section 504 of the *International Building Code*.

EBH = Existing building height in feet (mm).

AS = Allowable height in stories from Section 504 of the *International Building Code*.

EBS = Existing building height in stories.

CF = 1 if (*AH*) – (*EBH*) is positive.

CF = Construction-type factor shown in Table 1305.2.6(2) if (*AH*) – (*EBH*) is negative.

Note: Where mixed occupancies are separated and individually evaluated as indicated in Section 1305.2, the values *AH*, *AS*, *EBH* and *EBS* shall be based on the height of the occupancy being evaluated.

1305.2.2 Building area. The value for building area shall be determined by the formula in Section 1305.2.2.2. Section 506 of the *International Building Code* and the formula in Section 1305.2.2.1 shall be used to determine the allowable area of the building. Enter the area value and its sign (positive or negative) in Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.2, Building Area, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. In determining the area value, the maximum permitted positive value for area is 50 percent of the fire safety score as listed in Table 1306.2, Mandatory Safety Scores. Group I-2 occupancies shall be scored zero.

1305.2.2.1 Allowable area formula. The following formula shall be used in computing allowable area:

Equation 13-3 $A_a = A_t + (NS \times I_f)$

where:

A_a n= Allowable building area per story (square feet).

A_t = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S1, S13R, or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2 of the *International Building Code*.

NS = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 of the *International Building Code* for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).

I_f = Area factor increase due to frontage as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3 of the *International Building Code*.

1305.2.2.2 Area formula. The following formulas shall be used in computing the area value. Equation 13-4 shall be used for a single occupancy buildings and Equation 13-5 shall be used for multiple occupancy buildings. Determine the area value for each occupancy floor area on a floor-by-floor basis. For multiple occupancy buildings with the minimum area value of the set of values obtained for the particular occupancy shall be used as the area value for that occupancy. ⬅

For single occupancy buildings:

Equation 13-4 Area value$_i$ = (Allowable area – Actual area)/1200 square feet

For multiple occupancy buildings:

Equation 13-5
$$\text{Area value}_i = \frac{\text{Allowable area}_i}{1200\,\text{square feet}}\left[1 - \left(\frac{\text{Actual area}_i}{\text{Allowable area}_i} + \ldots + \frac{\text{Actual area}_n}{\text{Allowable area}_n}\right)\right]$$

where:

i = Value for an individual separated occupancy on a floor.

n = Number of separated occupancies on a floor.

1305.2.3 Compartmentation. Evaluate the compartments created by fire barriers or horizontal assemblies which comply with Sections 1305.2.3.2 and 1305.2.3.3and which are exclusive of the wall elements considered under Sections 1305.2.4 and 1305.2.5. Conforming compartments shall be figured as the net area and do not include shafts, chases, stairways, walls or columns. Using Table 1305.2.3, determine the appropriate compartmentation value (CV) and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.3, Compartmentation, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.3—COMPARTMENTATION VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES[a]				
	a	b	c	d	e
A-1, A-3	0	6	10	14	18
A-2	0	4	10	14	18
A-4, B, E, S-2	0	5	10	15	20
F, M, R, S-1	0	4	10	16	22
I-2	0	2	8	10	14

a. For compartment sizes between categories, the compartmentation value shall be obtained by linear interpolation.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

1305.2.3.1 Categories. The categories for compartment separations are:

1. Category a—Compartment size of 15,000 square feet (1394 m^2) or more.
2. Category b—Maximum compartment size of 10,000 square feet (929 m^2).
3. Category c—Maximum compartment size of 7,500 square feet (697 m^2).
4. Category d—Maximum compartment size of 5,000 square feet (464 m^2).
5. Category e—Maximum compartment size of 2,500 square feet (232 m^2).

1305.2.3.2 Wall construction. A wall used to create separate compartments shall be a fire barrier conforming to Section 707 of the *International Building Code* with a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is not divided into more than one compartment, the compartment size shall be taken as the total floor area on all floors. Where there is more than one compartment within a story, each compartmented area on such story shall be provided with a horizontal exit conforming to Section 1026 of the *International Building Code*. The fire door serving as the horizontal exit between compartments shall be so installed, fitted and gasketed that such fire door will provide a substantial barrier to the passage of smoke.

1305.2.3.3 Floor/ceiling construction. A floor/ceiling assembly used to create compartments shall conform to Section 711 of the *International Building Code* and shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

1305.2.4 Tenant and dwelling unit separations. Evaluate the fire-resistance rating of floors and walls separating tenants, including dwelling units, and not evaluated under Sections 1305.2.3 and 1305.2.5. Group I-2 occupancies shall evaluate the rating of the separations between care recipient sleeping rooms.

Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.4, determine the appropriate value and enter that value in Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.4, Tenant and Dwelling Unit Separations, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. The value shall be zero for single tenant buildings and buildings without dwelling units.

TABLE 1305.2.4—SEPARATION VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES				
	a	b	c	d	e
A-1	0	0	0	0	1
A-2	-5	-3	0	1	3
R	-4	-2	0	2	4
A-3, A-4, B, E, F, M, S-1	-4	-3	0	2	4
I-2	0	1	2	3	4
S-2	-5	-2	0	2	4

1305.2.4.1 Categories. The categories for tenant and dwelling unit separations are:

1. Category a—No fire partitions; incomplete fire partitions; no doors; doors not self-closing or automatic-closing.
2. Category b—Fire partitions or floor assemblies with less than 1-hour fire-resistance ratings or not constructed in accordance with Section 708 or 711 of the *International Building Code*, respectively.
3. Category c—Fire partitions with 1-hour or greater fire-resistance ratings constructed in accordance with Section 708 of the *International Building Code* and floor assemblies with 1-hour but less than 2-hour fire-resistance ratings constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *International Building Code* or with only one tenant within the floor area.
4. Category d—Fire barriers with 1-hour but less than 2-hour fire-resistance ratings constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *International Building Code* and floor assemblies with 2-hour or greater fire-resistance ratings constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *International Building Code*.
5. Category e—Fire barriers and floor assemblies with 2-hour or greater fire-resistance ratings and constructed in accordance with Sections 707 and 711 of the *International Building Code*, respectively.

1305.2.5 Corridor walls. Evaluate the fire-resistance rating and degree of completeness of walls which create corridors serving the floor and that are constructed in accordance with Section 1020 of the *International Building Code*. This evaluation shall not include the wall elements considered under Sections 1305.2.3 and 1305.2.4. Under the categories and groups in Table 1305.2.5, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.5, Corridor Walls, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

TABLE 1305.2.5—CORRIDOR WALL VALUES				
OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES			
	a	b	c[a]	d[a]
A-1	-10	-4	0	2
A-2	-30	-12	0	2
A-3, F, M, R, S-1	-7	-3	0	2
A-4, B, E, S-2	-5	-2	0	5
I-2	-10	0	1	2

a. Corridors not providing at least one-half the exit access travel distance for all occupants on a floor shall use Category b.

1305.2.5.1 Categories. The categories for corridor walls are:

1. Category a—No fire partitions; incomplete fire partitions; no doors; or doors not self-closing.
2. Category b—Less than 1-hour fire-resistance rating or not constructed in accordance with Section 708.4 of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—1-hour to less than 2-hour fire-resistance rating, with doors conforming to Section 716 of the *International Building Code* or corridors as permitted by Section 1020 of the *International Building Code* to be without a fire-resistance rating.
4. Category d—2-hour or greater fire-resistance rating, with doors conforming to Section 716 of the *International Building Code*.

1305.2.6 Vertical openings. Evaluate the fire-resistance rating of interior exit stairways or ramps, hoistways, escalator openings and other shaft enclosures within the building, and openings between two or more floors. Table 1305.2.6(1) contains the appropriate protection values. Multiply that value by the construction-type factor found in Table 1305.2.6(2). Enter the vertical opening value and its sign (positive or negative) in Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.6, Vertical Openings, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. If the structure is a one-story building or if all the unenclosed vertical openings within the building conform to the requirements of Section 712 of the *International Building Code*, enter a value of 2. The maximum positive value for this requirement (VO) shall be 2.

TABLE 1305.2.6(1)—VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION VALUE	
PROTECTION	VALUE
None (unprotected opening)	-2 times number of floors connected
Less than 1 hour	-1 times number of floors connected
1 to less than 2 hours	1
2 hours or more	2

TABLE 1305.2.6(2)—CONSTRUCTION-TYPE FACTOR									
FACTOR	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
	IA	IB	IIA	IIB	IIIA	IIIB	IV	VA	VB
	1.2	1.5	2.2	3.5	2.5	3.5	2.3	3.3	7

1305.2.6.1 Vertical opening formula. The following formula shall be used in computing vertical opening value.

Equation 13-6 $VO = PV \times CF$

where:

VO = Vertical opening value. The calculated value shall not be greater than positive 2.0.

PV = Protection value from Table 1305.2.6(1).

CF = Construction-type factor from Table 1305.2.6(2).

1305.2.7 HVAC systems. Evaluate the ability of the HVAC system to resist the movement of smoke and fire beyond the point of origin. Under the categories in Section 1305.2.7.1, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.7, HVAC Systems, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. Facilities in Group I-2 occupancies meeting Category a, b or c shall be considered to fail the evaluation.

1305.2.7.1 Categories. The categories for HVAC systems are:

1. Category a—Plenums not in accordance with Section 602 of the *International Mechanical Code*. -10 points.
2. Category b—Air movement in egress elements not in accordance with Section 1020.6 of the *International Building Code*. -5 points.
3. Category c—Both Categories a and b are applicable. -15 points.
4. Category d—Compliance of the HVAC system with Section 1020.6 of the *International Building Code* and Section 602 of the *International Mechanical Code*. 0 points.
5. Category e—Systems serving one story; or a central boiler/chiller system without ductwork connecting two or more stories or where systems have no ductwork. +5 points.

1305.2.8 Automatic fire detection. Evaluate the smoke detection capability based on the location and operation of automatic fire detectors in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* and Section 907 of the *International Building Code.* Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.8, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.8, Automatic Fire Detection, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. Facilities in Group I-2 occupancies meeting Category a, b or c shall be considered to fail the evaluation.

TABLE 1305.2.8—AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES					
	a	b	c	d	e	f
A-1, A-3, F, M, R, S-1	-10	-5	0	2	6	NA
A-2	-25	-5	0	5	9	NA
A-4, B, E, S-2	-4	-2	0	4	8	NA
I-2	NP	NP	NP	4	5	2

NA = Not Applicable.
NP = Not Permitted.

1305.2.8.1 Categories. The categories for automatic fire detection are:

1. Category a—None.
2. Category b—Existing smoke detectors in HVAC systems and maintained in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.
3. Category c—Smoke detectors in HVAC systems. The detectors are installed in accordance with the requirements for new buildings in the *International Mechanical Code*.
4. Category d—Smoke detectors throughout all floor areas other than individual sleeping units, tenant spaces and dwelling units.
5. Category e—Smoke detectors installed throughout the floor area.
6. Category f—Smoke detectors in corridors only.

1305.2.9 Fire alarm systems. Evaluate the capability of the fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907 of the *International Building Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.9, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.9, Fire Alarm System, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.9—FIRE ALARM SYSTEM VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES			
	a	b[a]	c	d
A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, B, E, R	-10	-5	0	5
F, M, S	0	5	10	15
I-2	-4	1	2	5

a. For buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system, add 2 points for activation by a sprinkler water-flow device.

1305.2.9.1 Categories. The categories for fire alarm systems are:

1. Category a—None.
2. Category b—Fire alarm system with manual fire alarm boxes in accordance with Section 907.4 of the *International Building Code* and alarm notification appliances in accordance with Section 907.5.2 of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—Fire alarm system in accordance with Section 907 of the *International Building Code*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

4. Category d—Category c plus a required emergency voice/alarm communications system and a fire command station that conforms to Section 911 of the *International Building Code* and contains the emergency voice/alarm communications system controls, fire department communication system controls, and any other controls specified in Section 911 of the *International Building Code* where those systems are provided.

1305.2.10 Smoke control. Evaluate the ability of a natural or mechanical venting, exhaust or pressurization system to control the movement of smoke from a fire. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.10, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.10, Smoke Control, for means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.10—SMOKE CONTROL VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES					
	a	b	c	d	e	f
A-1, A-2, A-3	0	1	2	3	6	6
A-4, E	0	0	0	1	3	5
B, M, R	0	2[a]	3[a]	3[a]	3[a]	4[a]
F, S	0	2[a]	2[a]	3[a]	3[a]	3[a]
I-2	-4	0	0	0	3	0

a. This value shall be 0 if compliance with Category d or e in Section 1305.2.8.1 has not been obtained.

1305.2.10.1 Categories. The categories for smoke control are:

1. Category a—None.
2. Category b—The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system. Openings are provided in exterior walls at the rate of 20 square feet (1.86 m^2) per 50 linear feet (15 240 mm) of exterior wall in each story and distributed around the building perimeter at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm). Such openings shall be readily openable from the inside without a key or separate tool and shall be provided with ready access thereto. In lieu of operable openings, clearly and permanently marked tempered glass panels shall be used.
3. Category c—One enclosed exit stairway, with ready access thereto, from each occupied floor of the building. The stairway has operable exterior windows, and the building has openings in accordance with Category b.
4. Category d—One smokeproof enclosure and the building has openings in accordance with Category b.
5. Category e—The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system. Each floor area is provided with a mechanical air-handling system designed to accomplish smoke containment. Return and exhaust air shall be moved directly to the outside without recirculation to other floor areas of the building under fire conditions. The system shall exhaust not less than six air changes per hour from the floor area. Supply air by mechanical means to the floor area is not required. Containment of smoke shall be considered as confining smoke to the floor area involved without migration to other floor areas. Any other tested and approved design that will adequately accomplish smoke containment is permitted.
6. Category f—Each stairway shall be one of the following: a smokeproof enclosure in accordance with Section 1023.12 of the *International Building Code*; pressurized in accordance with Section 909.20.4 of the *International Building Code*; or shall have operable exterior windows.

1305.2.11 Means of egress capacity and number. Evaluate the means of egress capacity and the number of exits available to the building occupants. In applying this section, the means of egress are required to conform to the following sections of the *International Building Code*: 1003.7, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1016.2, 1026.1, 1028.3, 1028.5, 1030.2, 1030.3, 1030.4 and 1031. The number of exits credited is the number that is available to each occupant of the area being evaluated. Existing fire escapes shall be accepted as a component in the means of egress when conforming to Section 504.

Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.11, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.11, Means of Egress, for means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.11—MEANS OF EGRESS VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES				
	a[a]	b	c	d	e
A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4, E, I-2	-10	0	2	8	10
M	-3	0	1	2	4
B, F, S	-1	0	0	0	0
R	-3	0	0	0	0

a. The values indicated are for buildings six stories or less in height. For buildings over six stories above grade plane, add an additional -10 points.

1305.2.11.1 Categories. The categories for means-of-egress capacity and number of exits are:

1. Category a—Compliance with the minimum required means-of-egress capacity or number of exits is achieved through the use of a fire escape in accordance with Section 504.
2. Category b—Capacity of the means of egress complies with Section 1005 of the *International Building Code*, and the number of exits complies with the minimum number required by Section 1006 of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—Capacity of the means of egress is equal to or exceeds 125 percent of the required means-of-egress capacity, the means of egress complies with the minimum required width dimensions specified in the *International Building Code*, and the number of exits complies with the minimum number required by Section 1006 of the *International Building Code*.
4. Category d—The number of exits provided exceeds the number of exits required by Section 1006 of the *International Building Code*. Exits shall be located a distance apart from each other equal to not less than that specified in Section 1007 of the *International Building Code*.
5. Category e—The area being evaluated meets both Categories c and d.

1305.2.12 Dead ends. In spaces required to be served by more than one means of egress, evaluate the length of the exit access travel path in which the building occupants are confined to a single path of travel. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.12, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.12, Dead Ends, for means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.12—DEAD-END VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES[a]			
	a	b	c	d
A-1, A-3, A-4, B, F, M, R, S	-2	0	2	-4
A-2, E	-2	0	2	-4
I-2	-2	0	2	-6

a. For dead-end distances between categories, the dead-end value shall be obtained by linear interpolation.

1305.2.12.1 Categories. The categories for dead ends are:

1. Category a—Dead end of 35 feet (10 670 mm) in nonsprinklered buildings or 70 feet (21 340 mm) in sprinklered buildings.
2. Category b—Dead end of 20 feet (6096 mm); or 50 feet (15 240 mm) in Group B in accordance with Section 1020.5, Exception 2, of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—No dead ends; or ratio of length to width (l/w) is less than 2.5:1.
4. Category d—Dead ends exceeding Category a.

1305.2.13 Maximum exit access travel distance to an exit. Evaluate the length of exit access travel to an *approved* exit. Determine the appropriate points in accordance with the following equation and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.13, Maximum Exit Access Travel Distance, for means of egress and general safety. The maximum allowable exit access travel distance shall be determined in accordance with Section 1017 of the *International Building Code*.

Equation 13-7

$$\text{Points} = 20 \times \frac{\text{Maximum allowable travel distance} - \text{Maximum actual travel distance}}{\text{Maximum allowable travel distance}}$$

1305.2.14 Elevator control. Evaluate the passenger elevator equipment and controls that are available to the fire department to reach all occupied floors. Emergency recall and in-car operation of elevators shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.14, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.14, Elevator Control, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. The values shall be zero for a single-story building.

TABLE 1305.2.14—ELEVATOR CONTROL VALUES

ELEVATOR TRAVEL	CATEGORIES			
	a	b	c	d
Less than 25 feet of travel above or below the primary level of elevator access for emergency firefighting or rescue personnel	-2	0	0	+2
Travel of 25 feet or more above or below the primary level of elevator access for emergency firefighting or rescue personnel	-4	NP	0	+4

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NP = Not Permitted.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1305.2.14.1 Categories. The categories for elevator controls are:

1. Category a—No elevator.
2. Category b—Any elevator without Phase I emergency recall operation and Phase II emergency in-car operation.
3. Category c—All elevators with Phase I emergency recall operation and Phase II emergency in-car operation as required by the *International Fire Code*.
4. Category d—All meet Category c; or Category b where permitted to be without Phase I emergency recall operation and Phase II emergency in-car operation; and at least one elevator that complies with new construction requirements serves all occupied floors.

1305.2.15 Means of egress emergency lighting. Evaluate the presence of and reliability of means of egress emergency lighting. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.15, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.15, Means of Egress Emergency Lighting, for means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.15—MEANS OF EGRESS EMERGENCY LIGHTING VALUES

NUMBER OF EXITS REQUIRED BY SECTION 1006 OF THE *INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE*	CATEGORIES		
	a	b	c
Two or more exits	NP	0	4
Minimum of one exit	0	1	1

NP = Not Permitted.

1305.2.15.1 Categories. The categories for means of egress emergency lighting are:

1. Category a—Means-of-egress lighting and exit signs not provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Category b—Means of egress lighting and exit signs provided with emergency power in accordance with Section 2702 of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—Emergency power provided to means of egress lighting and exit signs, which provides protection in the event of power failure to the site or building.

1305.2.16 Mixed occupancies. Where a building has two or more occupancies that are not in the same occupancy classification, the separation between the mixed occupancies shall be evaluated in accordance with this section. Where there is no separation between the mixed occupancies or the separation between mixed occupancies does not qualify for any of the categories indicated in Section 1305.2.16.1, the building shall be evaluated as indicated in Section 1305.2, and the value for mixed occupancies shall be zero. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.16, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.16, Mixed Occupancies, for fire safety and general safety. For buildings without mixed occupancies, the value shall be zero. Facilities in Group I-2 occupancies meeting Category a shall be considered to fail the evaluation.

TABLE 1305.2.16—MIXED OCCUPANCY VALUES[a]

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES		
	a	b	c
A-1, A-2, R	-10	0	10
A-3, A-4, B, E, F, M, S	-5	0	5
I-2	NP	0	5

NP = Not Permitted.
a. For fire-resistance ratings between categories, the value shall be obtained by linear interpolation.

1305.2.16.1 Categories. The categories for mixed occupancies are:

1. Category a—Occupancies separated by minimum 1-hour fire barriers or minimum 1-hour horizontal assemblies, or both.
2. Category b—Separations between occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4 of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—Separations between occupancies having a fire-resistance rating of not less than twice that required by Section 508.4 of the *International Building Code*.

1305.2.17 Automatic sprinklers. Evaluate the ability to suppress or control a fire based on the installation of an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1 of the *International Building Code*. "Required sprinklers" shall be based on the requirements of the *International Building Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.17, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.17, Automatic Sprinklers, for fire safety, means

of egress divided by 2, and general safety. High-rise buildings defined in Chapter 2 of the *International Building Code* that undergo a change of occupancy to Group R shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 403 of the *International Building Code* and Chapter 9 of the *International Building Code*. Facilities in Group I-2 occupancies meeting Category a, b, c or f shall be considered to fail the evaluation.

TABLE 1305.2.17—SPRINKLER SYSTEM VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES					
	a[a]	b[a]	c	d	e	f
A-1, A-3, F, M, R, S-1	-6	-3	0	2	4	6
A-2	-4	-2	0	1	2	4
A-4, B, E, S-2	-12	-6	0	3	6	12
I-2	NP	NP	NP	8	10	NP

NP = Not Permitted.
a. These options cannot be taken if Category a in Section 1305.2.18 is used.

1305.2.17.1 Categories. The categories for automatic sprinkler system protection are:

1. Category a—An approved automatic sprinkler system is required throughout; an approved automatic sprinkler system is not provided.
2. Category b—An approved automatic sprinkler system is required in a portion of a building; an approved automatic sprinkler system is not provided; the sprinkler system design is not adequate for the hazard protected in accordance with Chapter 9 of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—An approved automatic sprinkler system is not required; none are provided.
4. Category d—An approved automatic sprinkler system is required in a portion of a building; an approved automatic sprinkler system is provided in a portion of a building in accordance with Chapter 9 of the *International Building Code*.
5. Category e—An approved automatic sprinkler system is required throughout; an approved automatic sprinkler system is provided throughout in accordance with Chapter 9 of the *International Building Code*.
6. Category f—An approved automatic sprinkler system is not required throughout; an approved automatic sprinkler system is provided throughout in accordance with Chapter 9 of the *International Building Code*.

1305.2.18 Standpipes. Evaluate the ability to initiate attack on a fire by making a supply of water readily available through the installation of standpipes in accordance with Section 905 of the *International Building Code*. "Required Standpipes" shall be based on the requirements of the *International Building Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.18, determine the appropriate value and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.18, Standpipes, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.18—STANDPIPE SYSTEM VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES			
	a[a]	b	c	d
A-1, A-3, F, M, R, S-1	-6	0	4	6
A-2	-4	0	2	4
A-4, B, E, S-2	-12	0	6	12
I-2	-2	0	1	2

a. This option cannot be taken if Category a or Category b in Section 1305.2.17 is used.

1305.2.18.1 Standpipe categories. The categories for standpipe systems are:

1. Category a—Standpipes are required; standpipe is not provided or the standpipe system design is not in compliance with Section 905.3 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Category b—Standpipes are not required; none are provided.
3. Category c—Standpipes are required; standpipes are provided in accordance with Section 905 of the *International Building Code*.
4. Category d—Standpipes are not required; standpipes are provided in accordance with Section 905 of the *International Building Code*.

1305.2.19 Incidental uses. Evaluate the protection of incidental uses in accordance with Section 509.4.2 of the *International Building Code*. Do not include those where this code requires automatic sprinkler systems throughout the building including

covered and open mall buildings, high-rise buildings, public garages and unlimited area buildings. Assign the lowest score from Table 1305.2.19 for the building or floor area being evaluated and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.19, Incidental Use, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. If there are no specific occupancy areas in the building or floor area being evaluated, the value shall be zero.

TABLE 1305.2.19—INCIDENTAL USE AREA VALUES

PROTECTION REQUIRED BY TABLE 509.1 OF THE *INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE*	PROTECTION PROVIDED						
	None	1 hour	AS	AS with CRS	1 hour and AS	2 hours	2 hours and AS
2 hours and AS	-4	-3	-2	-2	-1	-2	0
2 hours, or 1 hour and AS	-3	-2	-1	-1	0	0	0
1 hour and AS	-3	-2	-1	-1	0	-1	0
1 hour	-1	0	-1	-1	0	0	0
1 hour, or AS with CRS	-1	0	-1	-1	0	0	0
AS with CRS	-1	-1	-1	-1	0	-1	0
1 hour or AS	-1	0	0	0	0	0	0

AS = Automatic Sprinkler System.
CRS = Construction capable of resisting the passage of smoke. (See Section 509.4.2 of the *International Building Code*.)

1305.2.20 Smoke compartmentation. Evaluate the smoke compartments for compliance with Section 407.5 of the *International Building Code*. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.20, determine the appropriate smoke compartmentation value (SCV) and enter that value into Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.20, Smoke Compartmentation, for fire safety, means of egress and general safety. Facilities in Group I-2 occupancies meeting Category b or c shall be considered to fail the evaluation.

TABLE 1305.2.20—SMOKE COMPARTMENTATION VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES[a]		
	a	b	c
A, B, E, F, M, R and S	0	0	0
I-2	0	-10	NP

NP = Not Permitted.
a. For areas between categories, the smoke compartmentation value shall be obtained by linear interpolation.

1305.2.20.1 Categories. Categories for smoke compartment size are:

1. Category a—Smoke compartment complies with Section 407.5 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Category b—Smoke compartment are provided but do not comply with Section 407.5 of the *International Building Code*.
3. Category c—Smoke compartments are not provided.

1305.2.21 Care recipient ability, concentration, smoke compartment location and ratio to attendant. In I-2 occupancies, the ability of care recipients, their concentration and ratio to attendants shall be evaluated and applied in accordance with this section. Evaluate each smoke compartment using the categories in Sections 1305.2.21.1, 1305.2.21.2 and 1305.2.21.3 and enter the value in Table 1306.1. To determine the safety factor, multiply the three values together; if the product is less than 6, compliance has failed.

1305.2.21.1 Care recipient ability for self-preservation. Evaluate the ability of the care recipients for self-preservation in each smoke compartment in an emergency. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.21.1, determine the appropriate value and enter that value in Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.21.1, Care Recipient Ability for Self-preservation, for means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.21.1—CARE RECIPIENT ABILITY VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES		
	a	b	c
I-2	3	2	1

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1305.2.21.1.1 Categories. The categories for care recipient ability for self-preservation are:

1. Category a—(mobile) Care recipients are capable of self-preservation without assistance.
2. Category b—(not mobile) Care recipients rely on assistance for evacuation or relocation.
3. Category c—(not movable) Care recipients cannot be evacuated or relocated.

1305.2.21.2 Care recipient concentration. Evaluate the concentration of care recipients in each smoke compartment under Section 1305.2.21.2. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.21.2 determine the appropriate value and enter that value in Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.21.2, Care Recipient Concentration, for means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.21.2—CARE RECIPIENT CONCENTRATION VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES		
	a	b	c
I-2	3	2	1

1305.2.21.2.1 Categories: The categories for care recipient concentration are:

1. Category a—smoke compartment has 1 to 10 care recipients.
2. Category b—smoke compartment has more than 10 to 40 care recipients.
3. Category c—smoke compartment has more than 40 care recipients.

1305.2.21.3 Attendant-to-care recipients ratio. Evaluate the attendant-to-care recipients ratio for each compartment under Section 1305.2.21.3. Under the categories and occupancies in Table 1305.2.21.3 determine the appropriate value and enter that value in Table 1306.1 under Safety Parameter 1305.2.21.3, Attendant-to-Care Recipients Ratio, for means of egress and general safety.

TABLE 1305.2.21.3—ATTENDANT-TO-CARE RECIPIENTS RATIO VALUES

OCCUPANCY	CATEGORIES		
	a	b	c
I-2	3	2	1

1305.2.21.3.1 Categories. The categories for attendant-to-care recipient concentrations are:

1. Category a—attendant-to-care recipients concentration is 1:5 or no care recipients.
2. Category b—attendant-to-care recipients concentration is 1:6 to 1:10.
3. Category c—attendant-to-care recipients concentration is greater than 1:10.

SECTION 1306—BUILDING SCORE

1306.1 Scoring process. After determining the appropriate data from Section 1305.2, enter those data in Table 1306.1 and total the building score.

TABLE 1306.1—SUMMARY SHEET—BUILDING CODE

Existing occupancy:_____		Proposed occupancy: _____	
Year building was constructed: _____		Number of stories: _____ Height in feet: _____	
Type of construction: _____		Area per floor: _____	
Percentage of open perimeter increase: _____ %			
Completely suppressed:	Yes _____No _____	Corridor wall rating:_____	
		Type:_____	
Compartmentation:	Yes _____No _____	Required door closers:	Yes _____No _____
Fire-resistance rating of vertical opening enclosures: _____			
Type of HVAC system:_____, serving number of floors: _____			
Automatic fire detection:	Yes _____No _____	Type and location: _____	
Fire alarm system:	Yes _____No _____	Type: _____	
Smoke control:	Yes _____No _____	Type: _____	

TABLE 1306.1—SUMMARY SHEET—BUILDING CODE—continued			
Adequate exit routes:	Yes _____No _____	Dead ends: _____	Yes _____No _____
Maximum exit access travel distance: _____		Elevator controls:	Yes _____No _____
Means of egress emergency lighting:	Yes _____No _____	Mixed occupancies:	Yes _____No _____
Standpipes:	Yes _____No _____	Care recipients ability for self-preservation: _____	
Incidental use:	Yes _____No _____	Care recipients concentration: _____	
Smoke compartmentation less than 22,500 ft^2 (2092 m^2):	Yes _____No _____	Attendant-to-care recipients ratio: _____	
SAFETY PARAMETERS	**FIRE SAFETY (FS)**	**MEANS OF EGRESS (ME)**	**GENERAL SAFETY (GS)**
1305.2.1 Building height			
1305.2.2 Building area			
1305.2.3 Compartmentation			
1305.2.4 Tenant and dwelling unit separations			
1305.2.5 Corridor walls			
1305.2.6 Vertical openings			
1305.2.7 HVAC systems			
1305.2.8 Automatic fire detection			
1305.2.9 Fire alarm system			
1305.2.10 Smoke control	* * * *		
1305.2.11 Means of egress	* * * *		
1305.2.12 Dead ends	* * * *		
1305.2.13 Maximum exit access travel distance	* * * *		
1305.2.14 Elevator control			
1305.2.15 Means of egress emergency lighting	* * * *		
1305.2.16 Mixed occupancies		* * * *	
1305.2.17 Automatic sprinklers		÷ 2 =	
1305.2.18 Standpipes			
1305.2.19 Incidental use			
1305.2.20 Smoke compartmentation			
1305.2.21.1 Care recipients ability for self-preservation[a]	* * * *		
1305.2.21.2 Care recipients concentration[a]	* * * *		
1305.2.21.3 Attendant-to-care recipients ratio[a]	* * * *		
Building score–total value			

* * * *No applicable value to be inserted.
a. Only applicable to Group I-2 occupancies.

1306.2 Safety scores. The values in Table 1306.2 are the required mandatory safety scores for the evaluation process listed in Section 1305.2.

TABLE 1306.2—MANDATORY SAFETY SCORES[a]

OCCUPANCY	FIRE SAFETY(MFS)	MEANS OF EGRESS (MME)	GENERAL SAFETY (MGS)
A-1	20	31	31
A-2	21	32	32
A-3	22	33	33
A-4, E	29	40	40
B	30	40	40
F	24	34	34
I-2	19	34	34
M	23	40	40
R	21	38	38
S-1	19	29	29
S-2	29	39	39

a. MFS = Mandatory Fire Safety.
MME = Mandatory Means of Egress.
MGS = Mandatory General Safety.

SECTION 1307—EVALUATION OF BUILDING SAFETY

1307.1 Final safety score. The mandatory safety score in Table 1306.2 shall be subtracted from the building score in Table 1306.1 for each category in accordance with the evaluation formulas in Table 1307.1. Where the final score for any category equals zero or more, the building is in compliance with the requirements of this section for that category. Where the final score for any category is less than zero, the building is not in compliance with the requirements of this section.

TABLE 1307.1—EVALUATION FORMULAS[a]

FORMULA	TABLE 1306.1	TABLE 1306.2		SCORE	PASS	FAIL
FS – MFS ≥ 0	_____(FS) –	_____(MFS)	=	_____	_____	_____
ME – MME ≥ 0	_____(ME) –	_____(MME)	=	_____	_____	_____
GS – MGS ≥ 0	_____(GS) –	_____(MGS)	=	_____	_____	_____

a. FS = Fire Safety.
ME = Means of Egress.
GS = General Safety.
MFS = Mandatory Fire Safety.
MME = Mandatory Means of Egress.
MGS = Mandatory General Safety.

1307.1.1 Mixed occupancies. For mixed occupancies, the following provisions shall apply:

1. Where the separation between mixed occupancies does not qualify for any category indicated in Section 1305.2.16, the mandatory safety scores for the occupancy with the lowest general safety score in Table 1306.2 shall be utilized (see Section 1305.2).
2. Where the separation between mixed occupancies qualifies for any category indicated in Section 1305.2.16, the mandatory safety scores for each occupancy shall be placed against the evaluation scores for the appropriate occupancy. An evaluation is not required for areas of the building with separated occupancies in accordance with Table 508.4 of the *California Building Code* in which there are no alterations or change of occupancy.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 14 – RELOCATED OR MOVED BUILDINGS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				**X**	**X**	**X**																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
1401.1				X	X																			
1401.2				X	X																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

14

RELOCATED OR MOVED BUILDINGS

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 14 is applicable to any building that is moved or relocated. The relocation of a building will automatically cause an inspection and evaluation process that enables the jurisdiction to determine the level of compliance with the *California Fire Code* and the *California Existing Building Code*. These two codes, by their scope, are applicable to existing buildings. This is the case regardless of any repair, remodeling, alteration work or change of occupancy occurring (see the *California Fire Code* and *California Existing Building Code.*

SECTION 1401—GENERAL

1401.1 Scope. This chapter provides requirements for relocated or moved structures, including relocatable buildings as defined in Chapter 2. ***[HCD]*** *The provisions of Chapter 14 are not applicable to commercial modulars, manufactured homes, mobilehomes, multi-unit manufactured housing and special purpose commercial modulars as defined in Health and Safety Code Sections 18001.8, 18007, 18008, 18008.7 and 18012.5, respectively. These structures are subject to installation/reinstallation requirements specified in the Mobilehome Parks Act (Health and Safety Code Section 18200 et seq.) and the California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2. Manufactured homes must meet unit identification (data plate) and certification label requirements as specified in the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 24, Subtitle B, Chapter XX, Part 3280 and Health and Safety Code Section 18032. Commercial modulars and special purpose commercial modulars must meet identification requirements in the California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 2.*

1401.1.1 Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands. Relocated or moved bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands shall comply with ICC 300.

1401.2 Conformance. The building shall be safe for human occupancy as determined by the *California Fire Code* and the *International Property Maintenance Code*. Any repair, alteration or change of occupancy undertaken within the moved structure shall comply with the requirements of this code applicable to the work being performed. Any field-fabricated elements shall comply with the requirements of the *California Building Code* or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable. ***[HCD 1 & HCD 2]*** *After July 1, 1978, local ordinances or regulations for relocated or moved apartment houses and dwellings shall permit the retention of existing materials and methods of construction, provided the apartment house or dwelling complies with the building standards for foundations applicable to new construction and does not become or continue to be a substandard building. For additional information, see Health and Safety Code Section 17958.9.*

SECTION 1402—REQUIREMENTS

1402.1 Location on the lot. The building shall be located on the lot in accordance with the requirements of the *California Building Code* or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

[BS] 1402.2 Foundation. The foundation system of relocated buildings shall comply with the *California Building Code* or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

[BS] 1402.2.1 Connection to the foundation. The connection of the relocated building to the foundation shall comply with the *California Building Code* or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

[BS] 1402.3 Wind loads. Buildings shall comply with *California Building Code* or *California Residential Code* wind provisions, as applicable.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and Group U occupancies where wind loads at the new location are not higher than those at the previous location.
2. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 10 percent.

[BS] 1402.4 Seismic loads. Buildings shall comply with *California Building Code* or *California Residential Code* seismic provisions at the new location, as applicable.

Exceptions:

1. Structures in Seismic Design Categories A and B and detached one- and two-family dwellings in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C where the seismic loads at the new location are not higher than those at the previous location.
2. Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 10 percent.

[BS] 1402.5 Snow loads. Structures shall comply with *California Building Code* or *California Residential Code* snow loads, as applicable, where snow loads at the new location are higher than those at the previous location.

Exception: Structural elements whose stress is not increased by more than 5 percent.

[BS] 1402.6 Flood hazard areas. If relocated or moved into a flood hazard area, structures shall comply with Section 1612 of the *California Building Code*, or Section R306 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] 1402.7 Required inspection and repairs. The code official shall be authorized to inspect, or to require approved professionals to inspect at the expense of the owner, the various structural parts of a relocated building to verify that structural components and connections have not sustained structural damage. Any repairs required by the code official as a result of such inspection shall be made prior to the final approval.

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 15 – CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARDS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter	**X**		**X**																					
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below				**X**	**X**																			
Chapter / Section																								
1501				X	X																			
1505				X	X																			
1506				X	X																			
1508				X	X																			
1511				X	X																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER

15 CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARDS

User notes:

About this chapter: Chapter 15 looks to the construction process. Parameters are provided for demolition and for protecting adjacent property during demolition and construction. Issues such as how to provide egress and adequate water supply while the building is growing, the timing of standpipe and sprinkler installation, and protection of pedestrians are addressed. Note that this chapter is consistent with Chapter 33 of the *California Building Code* and Chapter 33 of the *California Fire Code.*

SECTION 1501—GENERAL

[BG] 1501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern safety during construction and the protection of adjacent public and private properties. Fire safety during construction shall also comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 33 of the *California Fire Code.*

[BG] 1501.2 Storage and placement of construction equipment and materials. Construction equipment and materials shall be stored and placed so as not to endanger the public, the workers or adjoining property for the duration of the construction project.

[BS] 1501.3 Roof loads. Structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof-covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the system.

[BG] 1501.4 Maintenance of exits, existing structural elements, fire protection devices and sanitary safeguards. Required exits, existing structural elements, fire protection devices and sanitary safeguards shall be maintained at all times during alterations, repairs or additions to any building or structure.

Exceptions:

1. Where such required elements or devices are being altered or repaired, adequate substitute provisions shall be made.
2. Maintenance of such elements and devices is not required where the existing building is not occupied.

[BG] 1501.5 Removal of waste materials. Waste materials shall be removed in a manner that prevents injury or damage to persons, adjoining properties and public rights-of-way.

SECTION 1502—OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITY FOR FIRE PROTECTION

[F] 1502.1 Site safety plan. The owner or owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the development, implementation and maintenance of an approved, written site safety plan establishing a fire prevention program at the project site applicable throughout all phases of the construction, repair, alteration or demolition work. The plan shall be submitted and approved before a building permit is issued, Any changes to the plan shall address the requirements of this chapter and other applicable portions of the *California Fire Code*, the duties of staff and staff training requirements. The plan shall be submitted for approval in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

[F] 1502.1.1 Components of site safety plans. Site safety plans shall include the following as applicable:

1. Name and contact information of site safety director.
2. Documentation of the training of the site safety director and fire watch personnel.
3. Procedures for reporting emergencies.
4. Fire department vehicle access routes.
5. Location of fire protection equipment, including portable fire extinguishers, standpipes, fire department connections and fire hydrants.
6. Smoking and cooking policies, designated areas to be used where approved and signage locations in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.
7. Location and safety considerations for temporary heating equipment.
8. Hot work permit plan.
9. Plans for control of combustible waste material.
10. Locations and methods for storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids and other hazardous materials.
11. Provisions for site security and, where required, for a fire watch.
12. Changes that affect this plan.
13. Other site-specific information required by the *California Fire Code*.

[F] 1502.2 Site safety director. The owner shall designate a person to be the site safety director. The site safety director shall be responsible for ensuring compliance with the site safety plan. The site safety director shall have the authority to enforce the provisions of this chapter and other provisions as necessary to secure the intent of this chapter. Where guard service is provided in accordance with the *California Fire Code*, the site safety director shall be responsible for the guard service.

[F] 1502.3 Daily fire safety inspection. The site safety director shall be responsible for completion of a daily fire safety inspection at the project site. Each day, all building and outdoor areas shall be inspected to ensure compliance with the inspection list in this

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

section. The results of each inspection shall be documented and maintained on-site until a certificate of occupancy has been issued. Documentation shall be immediately available on-site for inspection and review.

1. Any contractors entering the site to perform hot work each day have been instructed in the hot work safety requirements in the *California Fire Code*, and hot work is performed only in areas approved by the site safety director.
2. Temporary heating equipment is maintained away from combustible materials in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's instructions.
3. Combustible debris, rubbish and waste material is removed from the building in areas where work is not being performed.
4. Temporary wiring does not have exposed conductors.
5. Flammable liquids and other hazardous materials are stored in locations that have been approved by the site safety director when not involved in work that is being performed.
6. Fire apparatus access roads required by the *California Fire Code* are maintained clear of obstructions that reduce the width of the usable roadway to less than 20 feet (6096 mm).
7. Fire hydrants are clearly visible from access roads and are not obstructed.
8. The location of fire department connections to standpipe and in-service sprinkler systems are clearly identifiable from the access road and such connections are not obstructed.
9. Standpipe systems are in service and continuous to the highest work floor, as specified in Section 1509.
10. Portable fire extinguishers are available in locations required by Section 1507 and for roofing operations in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.
11. Where a fire watch is required, fire watch records complying with the *California Fire Code* are up-to-date.

[F] 1502.3.1 Violations. Failure to properly conduct, document and maintain documentation required by this section shall constitute an unlawful act in accordance with Section 113.1 and shall result in the issuance of a notice of violation to the site safety director in accordance with Section 113.2. Upon the third offense, the code official is authorized to issue a stop work order in accordance with Section 114, and work shall not resume until satisfactory assurances of future compliance have been presented to and approved by the code official.

SECTION 1503—SANITARY

[BG] 1503.1 Facilities required. Sanitary facilities shall be provided during construction or demolition activities in accordance with the *California Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 1504—PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

[BS] 1504.1 Protection of pedestrians. Pedestrians shall be protected during construction and demolition activities as required by Sections 1504.1.1 through 1504.1.7 and Table 1504.1. Signs shall be provided to direct pedestrian traffic.

TABLE 1504.1—PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

HEIGHT OF CONSTRUCTION	DISTANCE OF CONSTRUCTION TO LOT LINE	TYPE OF PROTECTION REQUIRED
8 feet or less	Less than 5 feet	Construction railings
	5 feet or more	None
More than 8 feet	Less than 5 feet	Barrier and covered walkway
	5 feet or more, but not more than one-fourth the height of construction	Barrier and covered walkway
	5 feet or more, but between one-fourth and one-half the height of construction	Barrier
	5 feet or more, but exceeding one-half the height of construction	None

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

[BS] 1504.1.1 Walkways. A walkway shall be provided for pedestrian travel in front of every construction and demolition site unless the applicable governing authority authorizes the sidewalk to be fenced or closed. A walkway shall be provided for pedestrian travel that leads from a building entrance or exit of an occupied structure to a public way. Walkways shall be of sufficient width to accommodate the pedestrian traffic, but shall be not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Walkways shall be provided with a durable walking surface and shall be accessible in accordance with Chapter 11*A* of the *California Building Code*. Walkways shall be designed to support all imposed loads and the design live load shall be not less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) (7.2 kN/m^2).

[BS] 1504.1.2 Directional barricades. Pedestrian traffic shall be protected by a directional barricade where the walkway extends into the street. The directional barricade shall be of sufficient size and construction to direct vehicular traffic away from the pedestrian path.

[BS] 1504.1.3 Construction railings. Construction railings shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height and shall be sufficient to direct pedestrians around construction areas.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

[BS] 1504.1.4 Barriers. Barriers shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in height and shall be placed on the side of the walkway nearest the construction. Barriers shall extend the entire length of the construction site. Openings in such barriers shall be protected by doors that are normally kept closed.

[BS] 1504.1.4.1 Barrier design. Barriers shall be designed to resist loads required in Chapter 16 of the *California Building Code* unless constructed as follows:

1. Barriers shall be provided with 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) top and bottom plates.
2. The barrier material shall be boards not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) in thickness or wood structural use panels not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) in thickness.
3. Wood structural use panels shall be bonded with an adhesive identical to that for exterior wood structural use panels.
4. Wood structural use panels $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) or $^{5}/_{16}$ inch (7.9 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.
5. Wood structural use panels $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) or $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center, provided that a 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) stiffener is placed horizontally at mid-height where the stud spacing is greater than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.
6. Wood structural use panels $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm) or thicker shall not span over 8 feet (2438 mm).

[BS] 1504.1.5 Covered walkways. Covered walkways shall have a clear height of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) as measured from the floor surface to the canopy overhead. Adequate lighting shall be provided at all times. Covered walkways shall be designed to support all imposed loads. The design live load shall be not less than 150 psf (7.2 kN/m^2) for the entire structure.

Exception: Roofs and supporting structures of covered walkways for new, light-frame construction not exceeding two stories above grade plane are permitted to be designed for a live load of 75 psf (3.6 kN/m^2) or the loads imposed on them, whichever is greater. In lieu of such designs, the roof and supporting structure of a covered walkway are permitted to be constructed as follows:

1. Footings shall be continuous 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) members.
2. Posts not less than 4 inches by 6 inches (102 mm by 152 mm) shall be provided on both sides of the roof and spaced not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) on center.
3. Stringers not less than 4 inches by 12 inches (102 mm by 305 mm) shall be placed on edge on the posts.
4. Joists resting on the stringers shall be not less than 2 inches by 8 inches (51 mm by 203 mm) and shall be spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.
5. The deck shall be planks not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick or wood structural panels with an exterior exposure durability classification not less than $^{23}/_{32}$ inch (18.3 mm) thick nailed to the joists.
6. Each post shall be knee-braced to joists and stringers by members not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm); 4 feet (1219 mm) in length.
7. A curb that is not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) shall be set on edge along the outside edge of the deck.

[BS] 1504.1.6 Repair, maintenance and removal. Pedestrian protection required by Section 1504.1 shall be maintained in place and kept in good order for the entire length of time pedestrians are subject to being endangered. The owner or the owner's authorized agent, on completion of the construction activity, shall immediately remove walkways, debris and other obstructions and leave such public property in as good a condition as it was before such work was commenced.

[BS] 1504.1.7 Adjacent to excavations. Every excavation on a site located 5 feet (1524 mm) or less from the street lot line shall be enclosed with a barrier not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height. Where located more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the street lot line, a barrier shall be erected where required by the code official. Barriers shall be of adequate strength to resist wind pressure as specified in Chapter 16 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION 1505—PROTECTION OF ADJOINING PROPERTY

[BS] 1505.1 Protection required. Adjoining public and private property shall be protected from damage during construction and demolition work. Protection must be provided for footings, foundations, party walls, chimneys, skylights and roofs. Provisions shall be made to control water runoff and erosion during construction or demolition activities. The person making or causing an excavation to be made shall provide written notice to the owners of adjoining buildings advising them that the excavation is to be made and that the adjoining buildings should be protected. Said notification shall be delivered not less than 10 days prior to the scheduled starting date of the excavation.

[BS] 1505.2 Excavation retention systems. Where a retention system is used to provide support of an excavation for protection of adjacent structures, the system shall conform to the requirements in Section 1505.2.1 through 1505.2.3.

[BS] 1505.2.1 Excavation retention system design. Excavation retention systems shall be designed by a registered design professional to provide vertical and lateral support.

[BS] 1505.2.2 Excavation retention system monitoring. The retention system design shall include requirements for monitoring of the system and adjacent structures for horizontal and vertical movement.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® BUFF
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

[BS] 1505.2.3 Retention system removal. Elements of the system shall only be removed or decommissioned where adequate replacement support is provided by backfill or by the new structure. Removal or decommissioning shall be performed in such a manner that protects the adjacent property.

SECTION 1506—TEMPORARY USE OF STREETS, ALLEYS AND PUBLIC PROPERTY

[BG] 1506.1 Storage and handling of materials. The temporary use of streets or public property for the storage or handling of materials or equipment required for construction or demolition, and the protection provided to the public shall comply with the provisions of the applicable governing authority and this chapter.

[BG] 1506.2 Obstructions. Construction materials and equipment shall not be placed or stored so as to obstruct access to fire hydrants, standpipes, fire or police alarm boxes, catch basins or manholes, nor shall such material or equipment be located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of a street intersection, or placed so as to obstruct normal observations of traffic signals or to hinder the use of public transit loading platforms.

[BG] 1506.3 Utility fixtures. Building materials, fences, sheds or any obstruction of any kind shall not be placed so as to obstruct free approach to any fire hydrant, fire department connection, utility pole, manhole, fire alarm box or catch basin, or so as to interfere with the passage of water in the gutter. Protection against damage shall be provided to such utility fixtures during the progress of the work, but sight of them shall not be obstructed.

SECTION 1507—FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

[F] 1507.1 Where required. Structures under construction, alteration or demolition shall be provided with not fewer than one approved portable fire extinguisher in accordance with Section 906 of the *California Fire Code* and sized for not less than ordinary hazard as follows:

1. At each stairway on all floor levels where combustible materials have accumulated.
2. In every storage and construction shed.
3. Additional portable fire extinguishers shall be provided where special hazards exist, such as the storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids.

[F] 1507.2 Fire hazards. The provisions of this code and of the *California Fire Code* shall be strictly observed to safeguard against all fire hazards attendant upon construction operations.

SECTION 1508—MEANS OF EGRESS

[BE] 1508.1 Stairways required. Where building construction exceeds 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, a temporary or permanent stairway shall be provided. As construction progresses, such stairway shall be extended to within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured decking or flooring.

[F] 1508.2 Maintenance of means of egress. Means of egress and required accessible means of egress shall be maintained at all times during construction, demolition, remodeling or alterations and additions to any building.

Exception: Existing means of egress need not be maintained where approved temporary means of egress and accessible means of egress systems and facilities are provided.

SECTION 1509—STANDPIPES

[F] 1509.1 Where required. In buildings required to have standpipes by Section 905.3.1 of the *California Building Code*, not less than one standpipe shall be provided for use during construction. Such standpipes shall be installed prior to construction exceeding 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. Such standpipes shall be provided with fire department hose connections at locations adjacent to stairways, complying with Section 1508.1. As construction progresses, such standpipes shall be extended to within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured decking or flooring.

[F] 1509.2 Buildings being demolished. Where a building or portion of a building is being demolished and a standpipe is existing within such a building, such standpipe shall be maintained in an operable condition so as to be available for use by the fire department. Such standpipe shall be demolished with the building but shall not be demolished more than one floor below the floor being demolished.

[F] 1509.3 Detailed requirements. Standpipes shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 9 of the *California Building Code*.

Exception: Standpipes shall be either temporary or permanent in nature, and with or without a water supply, provided that such standpipes conform to the requirements of Section 905 of the *California Building Code* as to capacity, outlets and materials.

SECTION 1510—AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM

[F] 1510.1 Completion before occupancy. In buildings where an automatic sprinkler system is required by this code or the *California Building Code*, it shall be unlawful to occupy any portions of a building or structure until the automatic sprinkler system installation has been tested and approved, except as provided in Section 110.3.

[F] 1510.2 Operation of valves. Operation of sprinkler control valves shall be permitted only by properly authorized personnel and shall be accompanied by notification of duly designated parties. When the sprinkler protection is being regularly turned off and on to

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

facilitate connection of newly completed segments, the sprinkler control valves shall be checked at the end of each work period to ascertain that protection is in service.

SECTION 1511—ACCESSIBILITY

[BE] 1511.1 Construction sites. Structures, sites and equipment directly associated with the actual process of construction, including, but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, material hoists, material storage or construction trailers, are not required to be accessible.

SECTION 1512—WATER SUPPLY FOR FIRE PROTECTION

[F] 1512.1 When required. An approved water supply for fire protection, either temporary or permanent, shall be made available as soon as combustible building material arrives on the site, on commencement of vertical combustible construction, and on installation of a standpipe system in buildings under construction, in accordance with Sections 1512.1 through 1512.5.

Exception: The fire code official is authorized to reduce the fire-flow requirements for isolated buildings or a group of buildings in rural areas or small communities where the development of full fire-flow requirements is impractical.

[F] 1512.2 Combustible building materials. When combustible building materials of the building under construction are delivered to a site, a minimum fire flow of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m) shall be provided. The fire hydrant used to provide this fire flow supply shall be within 500 feet (152 m) of the combustible building materials as measured along an approved fire apparatus access lane. Where the site configuration is such that one fire hydrant cannot be located within 500 feet (152 m) of all combustible building materials, additional fire hydrants shall be required to provide coverage in accordance with this section.

[F] 1512.3 Vertical construction of Types III, IV and V construction. Prior to commencement of vertical construction of Type III, IV or V buildings that utilize any combustible building materials, the fire flow required by Sections 1512.3.1 through 1512.3.3 shall be provided, accompanied by fire hydrants in sufficient quantity to deliver the required fire flow and proper coverage.

[F] 1512.3.1 Fire separation up to 30 feet. Where a building of Type III, IV or V construction has a fire separation distance of less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from property lot lines, and an adjacent property has an existing structure or otherwise can be built on, the water supply shall provide either a minimum of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m), or the entire fire flow required for the building when constructed, whichever is greater.

[F] 1512.3.2 Fire separation of 30 feet up to 60 feet. Where a building of Type III, IV or V construction has a fire separation distance of 30 feet (9144 mm) up to 60 feet (18 288 mm) from property lot lines, and an adjacent property has an existing structure or otherwise can be constructed upon, the water supply shall provide a minimum of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m), or 50 percent of the fire flow required for the building when constructed, whichever is greater.

[F] 1512.3.3 Fire separation of 60 feet or greater. Where a building of Type III, IV or V construction has a fire separation of 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater from a property lot line, a water supply of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m) shall be provided.

[F] 1512.4 Vertical construction, Types I and II construction. If combustible construction materials are delivered to the construction site, water supply in accordance with Section 1509.2 shall be provided. Additional water supply for fire flow is not required prior to commencing vertical construction of Type I and II buildings.

[F] 1512.5 Standpipe supply. Regardless of the presence of combustible building materials, the construction type or the fire separation distance, where a standpipe is required in accordance with Section 1509, a water supply providing a minimum flow of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m) shall be provided. The fire hydrant used for this water supply shall be located within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of the fire department connection supplying the standpipe.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
CHAPTER 16 – REFERENCED STANDARDS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter													**X**			**X**								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	**X**		**X**	**X**	**X**			**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**		**X**	**X**									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
ASCE/SEI 7—2016										X	X	X		X	X									
ASCE/SEI 7—2022								X	X	X	X	X		X	X									
ASCE/SEI 41—*2013*										X														
ASCE/SEI 41—2017	†			†	†			†	†	†	†	†		†	†									
ASCE/SEI 41—*2023*	X			X	X			X	X	X	X	X		X	X									
ASTM A615—15 22										X														
ICC A117.1—2017				†	†	†																		
ICC CBC—25										X														
NFPA 72—*24*			X																					

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

CHAPTER

16 REFERENCED STANDARDS

About this chapter:

This code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. Chapter 16 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code, including the appendices. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard. Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the building code official, contractor, designer and owner.

This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.4*, or California Administration Division 1, as applicable.* ***[OSHPD 1] Reference to other chapters.*** *In addition to the code sections referenced, the standards listed in this chapter are applicable to the respective code sections in Chapters 3A, 4A and 5A.*

ACI

American Concrete Institute, 38800 Country Club Drive, Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3439

562—21: Assessment, Repair, and Rehabilitation of Existing Concrete Structures—Code Requirements
405.1.1

ASCE/SEI

American Society of Civil Engineers Structural Engineering Institute, 1801 Alexander Bell Drive, Reston, VA 20191-4400

7—1988: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
503.12, 706.3.2

7—1993: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
503.12, 706.3.2

7—1995: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
503.12, 706.3.2

7—1998: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
503.12, 706.3.2

7—2002: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
503.12, 706.3.2

7—2005: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
503.12, 706.3.2

7—2010: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures
304A.3.5.6, 304A.3.5.11, 503.12, *501A.3.1,* 706.3.2

7—2016 with Supplement 1: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures *[OSHPD 1] with Supplement 3*
503.12, 706.3.2

7—2022: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 and 5, DSS-SS, DSA-SS/CC] with Supplement 1*
304.2, 304.3.1, *304A.2, 304A.3.6.4, 304A.3.6.6,* 503.4, 503.12, 503.13, *501A.3, 502A.5, 503A.4, 503A.13,* 706.3.2, 805.3, 805.4

41—*2013*: *[OSHPD 1]* Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings
304.3.1, Table 304.3.1, 304.3.2, Table 304.3.2, 503.5, 503.11, 506.5.3, 906.2, 906.3, 1006.3

41—2017: Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings
304.3.1, Table 304.3.1, 304.3.2, Table 304.3.2, 503.5, 503.11, 506.5.3, 906.2, 906.3, 1006.3

41—*2023*: *[BSC, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, HCD, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 and 5]* Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings
304.3.1, Table 304.3.1, 304.3.2, Table 304.3.2, *317.5, Table 317.5, 317.8, 318.1, 319.1, 319.2, 319.5, 319.7.7, 319.8, 319.9, 319.12, 320.1, 321.2.2, 304A.3.4, 304A.3.6,* 503.5, 503.11, 506.5.3, *506A.5.3,* 906.2, 906.3, 1006.3

ASHRAE

ASHRAE, 180 Technology Parkway, Peachtree Corners, GA 30092

62.1—2022: Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
807.2

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL® Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

102102163

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016

A17.1—2022/CSA B44—2022: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators

A17.3—2023: Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators

A18.1—2023: Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chair Lifts

ASTM

ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

A615—22: Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

303A.3.5.3

C94/C94M—21b: Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete

109.3.1

E108—20a: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings

1204.5

E136—22: Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C

202

F2006—21: Standard Safety Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices for Non-Emergency Escape (Egress) and Rescue (Ingress) Windows

505.2, 702.4

F2090—21: Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices with Emergency (Egress) Release Mechanisms

505.2, 505.3.1, 702.4, 702.5.1

ICC

International Code Council, Inc., 200 Massachusetts Avenue, NW, Suite 250, Washington, DC 20001

CBC—25: California Building Code

101.4.1, 104.3.1, 106.2.2, 109.3.3, 109.3.6, 109.3.9, 109.3.10, 110.2, *201A.3,* 202, *202A, 301A.1, 301A.5,* 301.3, *302A.4,* 302.4.1, 302.5, 303.1, *303A.1,* 303.3, 304.1, *304A.1,* 304.3.1, 304.3.2, 305.1, 306, 309.2, 309.2.1, *310A.1, 311A.1, 312A.2, 312A.3, 312A.7, 401.1,* 401.3, *402A.1,* 402.1, *405A.1,* 405.2.1.1, 405.2.3.1, 405.2.3.3, 405.2.4, 405.2.5, 405.2.6, 501.2, *501A.3, 502A.1,* 502.1, 502.1.1, 502.1.2, 502.2, 502.3, 502.4, 502.5, 503.1, 503.2, 503.3, 503.4, 503.5, 503.11, 503.12, 503.13, 503.14, 503.15, 503.16, 503.17, 503.19, 503.20, 505.3, 505.4, 506.1, 506.3, 506.4, 506.5.1, 506.5.2, 506.5.3, 506.5.4, 507.3, 701.2, 701.3, 702.1, 702.2, 702.3, 702.5, 702.6, 702.7, 704.3, 705.1, 705.2, 706.2, 706.3.2, 802.2.1, 802.2.3, 802.3, 802.4, 802.5.2, 802.6, 803.1.1, 803.2, 804.4, 804.5.1, 804.5.1.1, Table 804.5.1.1(1), 804.5.1.2.1, 804.6.3, 804.6.4, 804.7, 804.7.3, 804.8, 804.9.1, 804.10.1, 804.11, 804.14.2, 805.2, 805.3, 805.4, 904.2, 904.2.1, 905.2, 905.3, 905.4, 906.2, 906.3, 906.6, 1001.2, 1001.3, 1002.1, 1002.2, 1004.1, 1006.1, 1006.2, 1006.3, 1006.4, 1010.1, 1011.1, 1011.2.1, 1011.2.2, 1011.3, 1011.5.1, 1011.5.2, 1011.5.3, 1011.5.6, 1011.6.1, 1011.6.1.1, 1011.6.3, 1011.7.1, 1011.7.2, 1011.7.3, 1011.8.1, 1011.8.2, 1011.8.3, 1101.2, 1101.3, 1101.5, 1101.7, 1102.1, 1102.2, 1102.3, 1103.1, 1103.2, 1103.3, 1302.1.2, 1302.1.3, 1302.1.4, 1303.1.3, 1304.1.1, 1305.2.1, 1305.2.1.1, 1305.2.2, 1305.2.2.1, 1305.2.3.2, 1305.2.3.3, 1305.2.4.1, 1305.2.5, 1305.2.5.1, 1305.2.6, 1305.2.7.1, 1305.2.8, 1305.2.9, 1305.2.9.1, 1305.2.10, 1305.2.10.1, 1305.2.11, 1305.2.11.1, 1305.2.12.1, 1305.2.13, Table 1305.2.15, 1305.2.15.1, 1305.2.16.1, 1305.2.17, 1305.2.17.1, 1305.2.18, 1305.2.18.1, 1305.2.19, Table 1305.2.19, 1305.2.20, 1305.2.20.1, 1307.1.1, 1401.2, 1402.1, 1402.2, 1402.2.1, 1402.3, 1402.4, 1402.5, 1402.6, 1504.1.1, 1504.1.4.1, 1504.1.7, 1509.1, 1509.3, 1510.1

CEC—25: California Energy Code

302.2, 702.7, 708.1, 809.1, 907.1, 1104.1

CFC—25: California Fire Code

101.2.2, 101.4.2, 301.3.1, 302.2, 307.1, 308.1, 802.2.1, 802.2.3, 803.2.3, 803.4.1.1, 803.4.1.2, 803.4.1.3, 803.4.1.4, 803.4.1.5, 803.4.1.6, Table 804.5.1.1(1), 904.1.5, 1011.6.1.1, 1303.1.2, 1305.2.8.1, 1305.2.14, 1305.2.14.1, 1401.2, 1501.1, 1501.5, 1502.1, 1502.1.1, 1502.2, 1502.3, 1504.1, 1507.1, 1507.2

CMC—25: California Mechanical Code

302.2, 702.7, 807.1, 902.1.1, 1008.1, 1305.2.7.1, 1305.2.8, 1305.2.8.1

CPC—25: California Plumbing Code

302.2, 408.1, 702.7, 1009.1, 1009.2, 1009.3, 1009.5, 1302.1.6, 1503.1

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

CRC—25: California Residential Code

101.2, 101.4.1, 104.3.1, 109.3.3, 109.3.10, 302.2, 307.1, 308.1, 401.3, 402.1, 405.2.6, 502.2, 502.3, 502.4, 503.2, 503.3, 503.11, 505.2, 505.3, 507.3, 701.3, 702.4, 702.5, 706.2, 708.1, 805.2, 806.4, 809.1, 906.2, 907.1, 1011.2.1, 1103.1, 1103.2, 1103.3, 1104.1, 1201.4, 1302.1.2, 1302.1.3, 1302.1.3, 1303.1.3, 1401.2, 1402.1, 1402.2, 1402.2.1, 1402.3, 1402.4, 1402.5, 1402.6

ICC 300—2023: ICC Standard on Bleachers, Folding and Telescopic Seating and Grandstands

301.1.1, 401.1.1, 1401.1.1

ICC A117.1—2017: Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities

502.6, 503.18, 1011.4, 1101.6

ICC/NSSA 500—2020: ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters

303.1.1, 303.2

ICCPC—24: ICC Performance Code®

104.2.3

IFGC—24: International Fuel Gas Code®

IPMC—24: International Property Maintenance Code®

101.4.2, 302.2, 1303.1.2, 1401.2

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471

NFPA 72—*25*: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code

Revise Section 10.3.1 as follows:

10.3.1 *Equipment constructed and installed in conformity with this Code shall be listed for the purpose for which it is used. Fire alarm systems and components shall be California State Fire Marshal approved and listed in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1.*

Revise Section 10.3.3 as follows:

10.3.3 *All devices and appliances that receive their power from the initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit of a control unit shall be California State Fire Marshal listed for use with the control unit.*

Revise Section 12.3.8.1 as follows:

12.3.8.1 *The outgoing and return (redundant) circuit conductors shall be permitted in the same cable assembly (i.e., multiconductor cable), enclosure or raceway only under the following conditions:*

(1) For a distance not to exceed 10 feet (3.0 m) where the outgoing and return conductors enter or exit the initiating device, notification appliance, or control unit enclosures.

(2) Single drops installed in the raceway to individual devices or appliances.

*(3) *In a single room not exceeding 1000 feet^2 (93 m^2) in area, a drop installed in the raceway to multiple devices or appliances that does not include any emergency control function devices.*

(4) Where the vertically run conductors are contained in a 2-hour rated cable assembly, or enclosed (installed) in a 2-hour rated enclosure or a listed circuit integrity (C.I.) cable, which meets or exceeds a 2-hour fire-resistive rating.

Revise Section 14.4.6.1 as follows:

14.4.6.1 Testing. *Household fire alarm systems shall be tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions according to the methods of Table 14.4.3.2.*

Revise Section 17.16 as follows:

17.16 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device*. A fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device shall indicate those conditions for a specific fire extinguisher required by California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 1, Section 574.2(c) and California Fire Code to a fire alarm control unit.*

Revise Section 12.3.8 as follows:

12.3.8 *(4) Where the vertically run conductors are contained in a 2-hour rated cable assembly, or enclosed (installed) in a 2-hour rated enclosure or a listed circuit integrity (C.I.) cable, which meets or exceeds a 2-hour fire resistive rating.*

Revise Section 23.8.5.1.2 as follows:

23.8.5.1.2* *Where connected to a supervising station, fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices shall include a manual fire alarm box to initiate a signal to the supervising station.*

Exception: *Fire alarm systems dedicated to elevator recall control, supervisory service and fire sprinkler monitoring as permitted in Section 17.15 of NFPA 72.*

Revise Section 23.8.5.4.1 as follows:

23.8.5.4.1 *Systems equipped with alarm verification features shall be permitted under the following conditions:*

(1) The alarm verification feature is not initially enabled unless conditions or occupant activities that are expected to cause nuisance alarms are anticipated in the area that is protected by the smoke detectors. Enabling of the alarm verification feature shall be protected by password or limited access.

(2) A smoke detector that is continuously subjected to a smoke concentration above alarm threshold does not delay the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1, or 21.2.1 by more than 30 seconds.

(3) Actuation of an alarm-initiating device other than a smoke detector causes the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1, or 21.2.1 without additional delay.

(4) The current status of the alarm verification feature is shown on the record of completion [see Figure 7.8.2(a), Item 4.3].

(5) Operation of a patient room smoke detector in I-2 and R-2.1 occupancies shall not include an alarm verification feature.

Revise Section 29.3.1 as follows:

29.3.1 *All devices, combinations of devices and equipment to be installed in conformity with this chapter shall be approved and listed by the California State Fire Marshal for the purposes for which they are intended.*

Revise Section 29.5.2.1.1 as follows:

29.5.2.1.1* Smoke and Heat Alarms. *Where connected to a supervising station unless exempted by applicable laws, codes or standards, smoke or heat alarms used to provide a fire-warning function, and when two or more alarms are installed within a dwelling unit, suite of rooms or similar area, shall be arranged so that the operation of any smoke or heat alarm causes all alarms within these locations to sound.*

Note: *Exception to 29.8.2.1.1 not adopted by the SFM.*

Add Section 29.10.2.1 as follows:

29.10.2.1 *The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.*

Add Section 29.10.6.8.1 as follows:

29.10.6.8.1 *The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.*

NFPA 99—24: Health Care Facilities Code

302.2.1, 406.1.1, 406.1.2, 408.3, 501.3, 707.1, 806.3, 808.1, 1007.1

NFPA 101—24: Life Safety Code

804.2

UL

UL LLC, 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062

790—04: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings—with Revisions through October 2018

1204.5

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX A
CHAPTER A1 – SEISMIC STRENGTHENING PROVISIONS FOR UNREINFORCED MASONRY BEARING WALL BUILDINGS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	**X**			**X**	**X**																			
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
A100.1	X			X	X																			
A103.1	X			X	X																			
A105.4				X	X																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPENDIX

A GUIDELINES FOR THE SEISMIC RETROFIT OF EXISTING BUILDINGS

User notes:

About this appendix: Appendix A provides guidelines for upgrading the seismic-resistance capacity of different types of existing buildings. It is organized into separate chapters that deal with buildings of different types, including unreinforced masonry buildings, reinforced concrete and reinforced masonry wall buildings, and light-frame wood buildings.

ICC code development note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2025 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

CHAPTER A1
SEISMIC STRENGTHENING PROVISIONS FOR UNREINFORCED MASONRY BEARING WALL BUILDINGS

SECTION A100—APPLICATION

A100.1 Vesting authority. *When adopted by a state agency, the provisions of these regulations shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the state legislature.*

Following is a list of the state agencies that adopt building standards, the specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, and the specific statutory authority of each agency to adopt and enforce such provisions of building standards of this code, unless otherwise stated.

1. ***BSC—California Building Standards Commission.***

   Application—Existing buildings as specified in Section A102 having at least one unreinforced masonry bearing wall, with the exception of buildings subject to building standards pursuant to Health and Safety Code, commencing with Section 17910.

   Enforcing Agency—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of the law.

   Authority Cited—Health and Safety Code Section 18934.7.

   Reference— Health and Safety Code Sections 18901 through 18949.

2. ***HCD 1—The Department of Housing and Community Development.***

   Application—Hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartments, dwellings, employee housing and factory-built housing.

   Enforcing Agency—The local building department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.

   Authority Cited—Health and Safety Code Sections 17040, 17921, 17922 and 19990.

   Reference—Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17060, 17910 through 17990, 19960 through 19997; and Government Code Section 12955.1.

3. ***HCD 2—The Department of Housing and Community Development.***

   Application—Permanent buildings and permanent accessory buildings or structures constructed within mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks.

   Enforcing Agency—The local building department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.

   Authority Cited—Health and Safety Code Sections 18300, 18620, 18640, 18865, 18873 and 18873.2.

   Reference—Health and Safety Code Sections 18200 through 18700 and 18860 through 18874.

SECTION A101—PURPOSE

[BS] A101.1 Purpose. The purpose of this chapter is to promote public safety and welfare by reducing the risk of death or injury from the effects of earthquakes on existing unreinforced masonry bearing wall buildings.

The provisions of this chapter are intended as minimum standards for structural seismic resistance, and are established primarily to reduce the risk of life loss or injury. Compliance with these provisions will not necessarily prevent loss of life or injury, or prevent earthquake damage to retrofitted buildings.

SECTION A102—SCOPE

[BS] A102.1 General. The provisions of this chapter shall apply to all existing buildings not more than six stories in height above the base of the structure and having not fewer than one unreinforced masonry bearing wall. The elements regulated by this chapter shall

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

be determined in accordance with Table A102.1. Except as provided herein, other structural provisions of the building code shall apply. This chapter does not apply to the alteration of existing electrical, plumbing, mechanical or fire safety systems.

[BS] TABLE A102.1—ELEMENTS REGULATED BY THIS CHAPTER

BUILDING ELEMENTS	S_{D1}			
	≥ 0.067g < 0.133g	≥ 0.133g < 0.20g	≥ 0.20g < 0.30g	≥ 0.30g
Parapets	X	X	X	X
Walls, anchorage	X	X	X	X
Walls, *h/t* ratios		X	X	X
Walls, in-plane shear		X	X	X
Diaphragms[a]			X	X
Diaphragms, shear transfer[b]		X	X	X
Diaphragms, demand-capacity ratios[b]			X	X

a. Applies only to buildings designed according to the general procedures of Section A110.
b. Applies only to buildings designed according to the special procedures of Section A111.

[BS] A102.2 Essential and hazardous facilities. The provisions of this chapter shall not apply to the strengthening of buildings in *Risk Category* III or IV. Such buildings shall be strengthened to meet the requirements of the *California Building Code* for new buildings of the same risk category or other such criteria approved by the code official.

SECTION A103—DEFINITIONS

[BS] A103.1 Definitions. For the purpose of this chapter, the applicable definitions in the *California Building Code as adopted by the California Building Standards Commission (BSC)* shall also apply.

BUILDING CODE. [BSC, HCD 1 and HCD 2] *"Building Code" shall mean the most current edition of the California Building Code, Title 24, Part 2 as adopted by the California Building Standards Commission (BSC).*

[BS] BED JOINT. The horizontal layer of mortar on which a masonry unit is laid.

[BS] COLLAR JOINT. The vertical space between adjacent wythes. A collar joint may contain mortar or grout.

[BS] CROSSWALL. A new or existing wall that meets the requirements of Section A111.3. A crosswall is not a shear wall.

[BS] CROSSWALL SHEAR CAPACITY. The unit shear value times the length of the crosswall, $v_c L_c$.

[BS] DETAILED BUILDING SYSTEM ELEMENTS. The localized elements and the interconnections of these elements that define the design of the building.

[BS] DIAPHRAGM EDGE. The intersection of the horizontal diaphragm and a shear wall.

[BS] DIAPHRAGM SHEAR CAPACITY. The unit shear value times the depth of the diaphragm, $v_u D$.

[BS] FLEXIBLE DIAPHRAGM. A diaphragm of wood or untopped metal deck construction in which the horizontal deformation along its length is at least two times the average story drift.

HEAD JOINT. The vertical mortar joint placed between masonry units within the wythe.

[BS] NORMAL WALL. A wall perpendicular to the direction of seismic forces.

[BS] OPEN FRONT. An exterior building wall line on one side only without vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system in one or more stories.

[BS] POINTING. The process of removal of deteriorated mortar from between masonry units and placement of new mortar. Also known as repointing or tuckpointing for purposes of this chapter.

[BS] REPOINTING. See "Pointing."

[BS] RIGID DIAPHRAGM. A diaphragm of concrete construction or concrete-filled metal deck construction.

[BS] TUCKPOINTING. See "Pointing."

[BS] UNREINFORCED MASONRY (URM). Includes burned clay, concrete or sand-lime brick; hollow clay or concrete block; plain concrete; and hollow clay tile. These materials shall comply with the requirements of Section A106 as applicable.

[BS] UNREINFORCED MASONRY BEARING WALL. A URM wall that provides the vertical support for the reaction of floor or roof-framing members for which the total superimposed vertical load exceeds 100 pounds per linear foot (1459 N/m) of wall length.

[BS] UNREINFORCED MASONRY WALL. A masonry wall that relies on the tensile strength of masonry units, mortar and grout in resisting design loads, and in which the area of reinforcement is less than the minimum amounts as defined for reinforced masonry walls.

[BS] YIELD STORY DRIFT. The lateral displacement of one level relative to the level above or below at which yield stress is first developed in a frame member.

SECTION A104—SYMBOLS AND NOTATIONS

[BS] A104.1 Symbols and notations. For the purpose of this chapter, the following notations supplement the applicable symbols and notations in the building code.

a_n = Diameter of core multiplied by its length or the area of the side of a square prism.

A = Cross-sectional area of unreinforced masonry pier or wall, square inches (10^{-6} m^2).

A_b = Total area of the bed joints above and below the test specimen for each in-place shear test, square inches (10^{-6} m^2).

A_n = Area of net mortared or grouted section of a wall or wall pier.

D = In-plane width dimension of pier, inches (10^{-3} m), or depth of diaphragm, feet (m).

DCR = Demand-capacity ratio specified in Section A111.4.2.

f'_m = Lower bound masonry compressive strength.

f_{sp} = Splitting-tensile strength of masonry.

F_{wx} = Force applied to a wall at level x, pounds (N).

H = Least clear height of opening on either side of a pier, inches (10^{-3} m).

h/t = Height-to-thickness ratio of URM wall. Height, h, is measured between wall anchorage levels and/or slab-on-grade.

L = Span of diaphragm between shear walls, or span between shear wall and open front, feet (m).

L_c = Length of crosswall, feet (m).

L_i = Effective diaphragm span for an open-front building specified in Section A111.8, feet (m).

P = Applied force as determined by standard test method of ASTM C496 or ASTM E519, pounds (N).

P_D = Superimposed dead load at the location under consideration, pounds (N). For determination of the rocking shear capacity, dead load at the top of the pier under consideration shall be used.

P_{D+L} = Stress resulting from the dead plus actual live load in place at the time of testing, pounds per square inch (kPa).

P_{test} = Splitting tensile test load determined by standard test method ASTM C496, pounds (N).

P_w = Weight of wall, pounds (N).

R = Response modification factor for Ordinary plain masonry shear walls in Bearing Wall System from Table 12.2-1 of ASCE 7, where R = 1.5.

S_{DS} = Design spectral acceleration at short period, in g units.

S_{D1} = Design spectral acceleration at 1-second period, in g units.

v_a = The shear strength of any URM pier, v_mA/1.5 pounds (N).

v_c = Unit shear strength for a crosswall sheathed with any of the materials given in Table A108.1(1) or Table A108.1(2), pounds per foot (N/m).

v_{mL} = Shear strength of unreinforced masonry, pounds per square inch (kPa).

V_{aa} = The shear strength of any URM pier or wall, pounds (N).

V_{ca} = Total shear capacity of crosswalls in the direction of analysis immediately above the diaphragm level being investigated, v_cL_c, pounds (N).

V_{cb} = Total shear capacity of crosswalls in the direction of analysis immediately below the diaphragm level being investigated, v_cL_c, pounds (N).

V_p = Shear force assigned to a pier on the basis of its relative shear rigidity, pounds (N).

V_r = Pier rocking shear capacity of any URM wall or wall pier, pounds (N).

v_{test} = Load at incipient cracking for each in-place shear test performed in accordance with Section A106.2.3.6, pounds (N).

v_{tl} = Lower bound mortar shear strength, pounds per square inch (kPa).

v_{to} = Mortar shear test values as specified in Section A106.2.3.6, pounds per square inch (kPa).

v_u = Unit shear capacity value for a diaphragm sheathed with any of the materials given in Table A108.1(1) or A108.1(2), pounds per foot (N/m).

V_{wx} = Total shear force resisted by a shear wall at the level under consideration, pounds (N).

W = Total seismic dead load as defined in the building code, pounds (N).

W_d = Total dead load tributary to a diaphragm level, pounds (N).

W_w = Total dead load of a URM wall above the level under consideration or above an open-front building, pounds (N).

W_{wx} = Dead load of a URM wall assigned to level x halfway above and below the level under consideration, pounds (N).

Σv_uD = Sum of diaphragm shear capacities of both ends of the diaphragm, pounds (N).

$\Sigma\Sigma v_uD$ = For diaphragms coupled with crosswalls, v_uD includes the sum of shear capacities of both ends of diaphragms coupled at and above the level under consideration, pounds (N).

ΣW_d = Total dead load of all the diaphragms at and above the level under consideration, pounds (N).

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION A105—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[BS] A105.1 General. The seismic force-resisting system specified in this chapter shall comply with the *California Building Code* and referenced standards, except as modified herein.

[BS] A105.2 Alterations and repairs. Alterations and repairs required to meet the provisions of this chapter shall comply with applicable structural requirements of the building code unless specifically provided for in this chapter.

[BS] A105.3 Requirements for plans. The following construction information shall be included in the plans required by this chapter:

1. Dimensioned floor and roof plans showing existing walls and the size and spacing of floor and roof-framing members and sheathing materials. The plans shall indicate all existing URM walls, and new crosswalls and shear walls, and their materials of construction. The location of these walls and their openings shall be fully dimensioned and drawn to scale on the plans.
2. Dimensioned URM wall elevations showing openings, piers, wall classes as defined in Section A106.2.3.9, thickness, heights, wall shear test locations, cracks or damaged portions requiring repairs, the general condition of the mortar joints, and if and where pointing is required. Where the exterior face is veneer, the type of veneer, its thickness and its bonding and/or ties to the structural wall masonry shall be noted.
3. The type of interior wall and ceiling materials, and framing.
4. The extent and type of existing wall anchorage to floors and roof where used in the design.
5. The extent and type of parapet corrections that were previously performed, if any.
6. Repair details, if any, of cracked or damaged unreinforced masonry walls required to resist forces specified in this chapter.
7. All other plans, sections and details necessary to delineate required retrofit construction.
8. The design procedure used shall be stated on both the plans and the permit application.
9. Details of the anchor prequalification program required by Section A107.5.3, if used, including location and results of all tests.
10. Quality assurance requirements of special inspection for all new construction materials and for retrofit construction including: anchor tests, pointing or repointing of mortar joints, installation of adhesive or mechanical anchors, and other elements as deemed necessary to ensure compliance with this chapter.

[BS] A105.4 Structural observation, testing and inspection. Structural observation, in accordance with Section 1704.6 of the *California Building Code*, shall be required for all structures in which seismic retrofit is being performed in accordance with this chapter. Structural observation shall include visual observation of work for compliance with the approved construction documents and confirmation of existing conditions assumed during design.

Structural testing and inspection for new and existing construction materials shall be in accordance with the building code, except as modified by this chapter.

Special inspection as described in Section A105.3, Item 10, shall be provided equivalent to Level 3 as prescribed in TMS 402, Table 3.1(2).

SECTION A106—MATERIALS REQUIREMENTS

[BS] A106.1 Condition of existing materials. Existing materials used as part of the required vertical load-carrying or seismic force-resisting system shall be evaluated by on-site investigation and: determined to be in good condition (free of degraded mortar, degraded masonry units or significant cracking); or shall be repaired, enhanced, retrofitted or removed and replaced with new materials. Mortar joint deterioration shall be patched by pointing or repointing of the eroded joint in accordance with Section A106.2.3.10. Existing significant cracks in solid unit unreinforced and solid grouted hollow unit masonry shall be repaired.

[BS] A106.2 Existing unreinforced masonry.

[BS] A106.2.1 General. Unreinforced masonry walls used to support vertical loads or seismic forces parallel and perpendicular to the wall plane shall be tested as specified in this section. Masonry that does not meet the minimum requirements established by this chapter shall be repaired, enhanced, removed and replaced with new materials, or alternatively, shall have its structural functions replaced with new materials and shall be anchored to supporting elements.

[BS] A106.2.2 Lay-up of walls. Unreinforced masonry walls shall be laid in a running bond pattern.

[BS] A106.2.2.1 Header in multiple-wythe solid brick. The facing and backing wythes of multiple-wythe walls shall be bonded so that not less than 10 percent of the exposed face area is composed of solid headers extending not less than 4 inches (102 mm) into the backing wythes. The clear distance between adjacent header courses shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) vertically or horizontally. Where backing consists of two or more wythes, the headers shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) into the most distant wythe, or the backing wythes shall be bonded together with separate headers for which the area and spacing conform to the foregoing. Wythes of walls not meeting these requirements shall be considered to be veneer, and shall not be included in the effective thickness used in calculating the height-to-thickness ratio and the shear capacity strength of the wall.

Exception: Where S_{D1} is 0.3 g or less, veneer wythes anchored and made composite with backup masonry are permitted to be used for calculation of the effective thickness.

[BS] A106.2.2.2 Lay-up patterns. Lay-up patterns other than those specified in Section A106.2.2.1 are allowed if their performance can be justified.

[BS] A106.2.3 Testing of masonry.

[BS] A106.2.3.1 Concrete masonry units and structural clay load-bearing tile. Grouted or ungrouted hollow concrete masonry units shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C140. Grouted or ungrouted structural clay load-bearing tile shall be tested in accordance with ASTM C67.

[BS] A106.2.3.2 In-place mortar joint shear tests. Mortar joint shear test values, v_{to}, shall be obtained by one of the following:

1. ASTM C1531.
2. For masonry walls that have high shear strength mortar, or where in-place testing is not practical because of crushing or other failure mode of the masonry, alternative procedures for testing shall be used in accordance with Section A106.2.3.2.

[BS] A106.2.3.3 Alternative procedures for testing masonry. The splitting tensile strength of existing masonry, f_{sp}, or the prism strength of existing masonry, f'_m, is permitted to be determined in accordance with ASTM C496 and calculated by the following equation:

Equation A1-1 $$f_{sp} = \frac{0.494P}{a_n}$$

[BS] A106.2.3.4 Location of tests. The shear tests shall be taken at locations representative of the mortar conditions throughout the building. Test locations shall be determined at the building site by the registered design professional in charge. Results of all tests and their locations shall be recorded.

[BS] A106.2.3.5 Number of tests. The minimum number of tests per masonry class shall be determined as follows:

1. At each of both the first and top stories, not less than two tests per wall or line of wall elements providing a common line of resistance to seismic forces.
2. At each of all other stories, not less than one test per wall or line of wall elements providing a common line of resistance to seismic forces.
3. In any case, not less than one test per 1,500 square feet (139.4 m^2) of wall surface and not less than a total of eight tests.

[BS] A106.2.3.6 Minimum quality of mortar.

1. Mortar shear test values, v_{to}, in pounds per square inch (kPa), shall be obtained for each in-place shear test in accordance with the following equation:

   Equation A1-2 $v_{to} = (V_{test}/A_b) - P_{D+L}$

   where:

   V_{test} = Load at first observed movement.

   A_b = Total area of the bed joints above and below the test specimen.

   P_{D+L} = Stress resulting from actual dead plus live loads in place at the time of testing.
2. Individual unreinforced masonry walls with more than 50 percent of mortar test values, v_{to}, less than 30 pounds per square inch (207 kPa) shall be pointed prior to and retested.
3. The lower bound mortar shear strength, v_{tL}, is defined as the mean minus one standard deviation of the mortar shear test values, v_{to}.
4. Unreinforced masonry with mortar shear strength, v_{tL}, less than 30 pounds per square inch (207 kPa) shall be pointed and retested or shall have its structural function replaced, and shall be anchored to supporting elements in accordance with Sections A106.2.1 and A113.8. When existing mortar in any wythe is pointed to increase its shear strength and is retested, the condition of the mortar in the adjacent bed joints of the inner wythe or wythes and the opposite outer wythe shall be examined for extent of deterioration. The shear strength of any wall class shall be not greater than that of the weakest wythe of that class.

[BS] A106.2.3.7 Minimum quality of masonry. Where the alternative procedures of Section A106.2.3.2 are used to determine masonry quality, the following minimums apply:

1. The minimum average value of splitting tensile strength, f_{sp}, as calculated by Equation A1-1 shall be 50 pounds per square inch (344.7 kPa).
2. Individual unreinforced masonry walls with average splitting tensile strength of less than 50 pounds per square inch (344.7 kPa) shall be pointed and retested.
3. The lower-bound mortar strength f_{spL} is defined as the mean minus one standard deviation P_{D+L} of the splitting tensile test values f_{sp}.

[BS] A106.2.3.8 Collar joints. The collar joints shall be inspected at the test locations during each in-place shear test, and estimates of the percentage of surfaces of the adjacent wythe that are covered with mortar shall be reported along with the results of the in-place shear tests.

[BS] A106.2.3.9 Unreinforced masonry classes. Existing unreinforced masonry shall be categorized into one or more classes based on shear strength, quality of construction, state of repair, deterioration and weathering. A class shall be characterized by the masonry shear strength determined in accordance with Section A108.2. Classes are defined for whole walls, not for small areas of masonry within a wall. Discretion in the definition of classes of masonry is permitted to avoid unnecessary testing.

[BS] A106.2.3.10 Pointing. Deteriorated mortar joints in unreinforced masonry walls shall be pointed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. **Joint preparation**. Deteriorated mortar shall be cut out by means of a toothing chisel or nonimpact power tool until sound mortar is reached, to a depth not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) or twice the thickness of the joint, whichever is

less, but not greater than 2 inches (50 mm). Care shall be taken not to damage the masonry edges. After cutting is complete, all loose material shall be removed with a brush, or air or water stream.

2. **Mortar preparation.** The mortar mix shall be proportioned as required by the construction specifications and manufacturer's approved instructions.
3. **Packing.** The joint into which the mortar is to be packed shall be dampened but without free-standing water. The mortar shall be tightly packed into the joint in layers not exceeding $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) deep until it is filled; then it shall be tooled to a smooth surface to match the original profile.

Nothing shall prevent pointing of any masonry wall joints before testing is performed in accordance with Section A106.2.3, except as required in Section A107.2.

SECTION A107—QUALITY CONTROL

[BS] A107.1 Pointing. Preparation and mortar pointing shall be performed with special inspection.

Exception: At the discretion of the code official, incidental pointing may be performed without special inspection.

[BS] A107.2 Masonry shear tests. In-place masonry shear tests shall comply with Section A106.2.3.1. Testing of masonry for determination of splitting tensile strength shall comply with Section A106.2.3.3.

[BS] A107.3 Existing wall anchors. Existing wall anchors used as all or part of the required tension anchors shall be tested in pullout according to Section A107.5.1. Not fewer than four anchors tested per floor shall be tested in pullout, with not fewer than two tests at walls with joists framing into the wall and two tests at walls with joists parallel to the wall, but not less than 10 percent of the total number of existing tension anchors at each level.

[BS] A107.4 New wall anchors. New wall anchors embedded in URM walls shall be subject to special inspection prior to placement of the anchor and grout or adhesive in the drilled hole. Five percent of all anchors that do not extend through the wall shall be subject to a direct-tension test, and an additional 20 percent shall be tested using a calibrated torque wrench. Testing shall be performed in accordance with Section A107.5.

New wall anchors embedded in URM walls resisting tension forces or a combination of tension and shear forces shall be subject to special inspection, prior to placement of the anchor and grout or adhesive in the drilled hole. Five percent of all anchors resisting tension forces shall be subject to a direct-tension test, and an additional 20 percent shall be tested using a calibrated torque wrench. Testing shall be performed in accordance with Section A107.5.

Exception: New bolts that extend through the wall with steel plates on the far side of the wall need not be tested.

[BS] A107.5 Tests of anchors in unreinforced masonry walls. Tests of anchors in unreinforced masonry walls shall be in accordance with Sections A107.5.1 through A107.5.3. Results of all tests shall be reported to the authority having jurisdiction. The report shall include the test results of maximum load for each test; pass-fail results; corresponding anchor size and type; orientation of loading; details of the anchor installation, testing apparatus and embedment; wall thickness; and joist orientation and proximity to the tested anchor.

[BS] A107.5.1 Direct tension testing of existing anchors and new anchors. The test apparatus shall be supported by the masonry wall. The test procedure for prequalification of tension and shear anchors shall comply with ASTM E488. Existing wall anchors shall be given a preload of 300 pounds (1335 N) before establishing a datum for recording elongation. The tension test load reported shall be recorded at $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) relative movement between the existing anchor and the adjacent masonry surface. New embedded tension anchors shall be subject to a direct tension load of not less than 2.5 times the design load but not less than 1,500 pounds (6672 N) for 5 minutes.

Exception: Where obstructions occur, the distance between the anchor and the test apparatus support shall be not less than one-half the wall thickness for existing anchors and 75 percent of the embedment length for new embedded anchors.

[BS] A107.5.2 Torque testing of new anchors. Anchors embedded in unreinforced masonry walls shall be tested using a torque-calibrated wrench to the following minimum torques:

$^1/_2$-inch-diameter (12.7 mm) bolts: 40 foot pounds (54.2 N-m).

$^5/_8$-inch-diameter (15.9 mm) bolts: 50 foot pounds (67.8 N-m).

$^3/_4$-inch-diameter (19.1 mm) bolts: 60 foot pounds (81.3 N-m).

[BS] A107.5.3 Prequalification test for bolts and other types of anchors. ASTM E488 or the test procedure in Section A107.5.1 is permitted to be used to determine tension or shear strength values for anchors greater than those permitted by Table A108.1(2). Anchors shall be installed in the same manner and using the same materials as will be used in the actual construction. Not fewer than five tests for each bolt size and type shall be performed for each class of masonry in which they are proposed to be used. The tension and shear strength values for such anchors shall be the lesser of the average ultimate load divided by 5.0 or the average load at which $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) elongation occurs for each size and type of anchor and class of masonry.

SECTION A108—DESIGN STRENGTHS

[BS] A108.1 Strength values.

1. Strength values for existing materials are given in Table A108.1(1) and for new materials in Table A108.1(2).
2. The strength reduction factor, ϕ, shall be taken equal to 1.0.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

3. The use of materials not specified herein shall be based on substantiating research data or engineering judgment, as approved by the code official.

[BS] TABLE A108.1(1)—STRENGTH VALUES FOR EXISTING MATERIALS

EXISTING MATERIALS OR CONFIGURATION OF MATERIALS[a]		STRENGTH VALUES × 14.594 for N/m
Horizontal diaphragms	Roofs with straight sheathing and roofing applied directly to the sheathing.	300 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Roofs with diagonal sheathing and roofing applied directly to the sheathing.	750 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Floors with straight tongue-and-groove sheathing.	300 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Floors with straight sheathing and finished wood flooring with board edges offset or perpendicular.	1,500 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Floors with diagonal sheathing and finished wood flooring.	1,800 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Metal deck welded with minimal welding.[c]	1,800 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Metal deck welded for seismic resistance.[d]	3,000 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
Crosswalls[b]	Plaster on wood or metal lath.	600 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Plaster on gypsum lath.	550 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Gypsum wallboard, unblocked edges.	200 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
	Gypsum wallboard, blocked edges.	400 lbs. per ft. for seismic shear
Existing footing, wood framing, structural steel, reinforcing steel	Plain concrete footings.	f'_c = 1,500 psi unless otherwise shown by tests
	Douglas fir wood.	Same as D.F. No. 1
	Reinforcing steel.	F_y = 40,000 psi maximum
Existing footing, wood framing, structural steel, reinforcing steel—continued	Structural steel.	F_y = 33,000 psi maximum

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 pound = 4.4 N, 1 pound per square inch = 6894.75 N/m^2, 1 pound per foot = 14.43 N/m.

a. Material must be sound and in good condition.

b. Shear values of these materials may be combined, except the total combined value should not exceed 900 pounds per foot.

c. Minimum 22-gage steel deck with welds to supports satisfying the standards of the Steel Deck Institute.

d. Minimum 22-gage steel deck with $^3/_4$-inch diameter plug welds at an average spacing not exceeding 8 inches and with sidelap welds appropriate for the deck span.

[BS] TABLE A108.1(2)—STRENGTH VALUES OF NEW MATERIALS USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH EXISTING CONSTRUCTION

NEW MATERIALS OR CONFIGURATION OF MATERIALS		STRENGTH VALUES
Horizontal diaphragms	Plywood sheathing applied directly over existing straight sheathing with ends of plywood sheets bearing on joists or rafters and edges of plywood located on center of individual sheathing boards.	675 lbs. per ft.
Crosswalls	Plywood sheathing applied directly over wood studs; no value should be given to plywood applied over existing plaster or wood sheathing.	1.2 times the value specified in the current building code.
	Drywall or plaster applied directly over wood studs.	The value specified in the current building code.
	Drywall or plaster applied to sheathing over existing wood studs.	50 percent of the value specified in the current building code.
Tension anchors[f]	Anchors extending entirely through unreinforced masonry wall secured with bearing plates on far side of a wall 30 square inches of area.[b, c]	5,400 lbs. per anchor for three-wythe minimum walls. 2,700 lbs. for two-wythe walls.
Shear bolts[e, f]	Anchors embedded not less than 8 inches into unreinforced masonry walls; anchors should be centered in $2^1/_2$-inch-diameter holes with dry-pack or nonshrink grout around the circumference of the anchor.	The value for plain masonry specified for solid masonry TMS 402; and no value larger than those given for $^3/_4$-inch bolts should be used.
Combined tension and shear anchors[f]	Through-anchors—anchors meeting the requirements for shear and for tension anchors.[b, c]	Tension—same as for tension anchors. Shear—same as for shear anchors.
	Embedded anchors—anchors extending to the exterior face of the wall with a $2^1/_2$-inch round plate under the head and drilled at an angle of $22^1/_2$ degrees to the horizontal; installed as specified for shear anchors.[a, b, c]	Tension—3,600 lbs. per anchor. Shear—same as for shear anchors.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] TABLE A108.1(2)—STRENGTH VALUES OF NEW MATERIALS USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH EXISTING CONSTRUCTION—continued		
NEW MATERIALS OR CONFIGURATION OF MATERIALS		STRENGTH VALUES
Infilled walls	Reinforced masonry infilled openings in existing unreinforced masonry walls; provide keys or dowels to match reinforcing.	Same as values specified for unreinforced masonry walls.
Reinforced masonry[d]	Masonry piers and walls reinforced per the current building code.	The value specified in the current building code for strength design.
Reinforced concrete[d]	Concrete footings, walls and piers reinforced as specified in the current building code.	The value specified in the current building code for strength design.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2, 1 pound = 4.4 N, 1 degree = 0.017 rad, 1 pound per foot = 14.43 N/m, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Embedded anchors to be tested as specified in Section A107.4.

b. Anchors shall be $^1/_2$ inch minimum in diameter.

c. Drilling for anchors shall be done with an electric rotary drill; impact tools should not be used for drilling holes or tightening anchors and shear bolt nuts.

d. Load factors or capacity reduction factors shall not be used.

e. Other bolt sizes, values and installation methods may be used, provided that a testing program is conducted in accordance with Section A107.5.3. The strength value shall be determined by multiplying the calculated allowable value, determined in accordance with Section A107.5.3, by 3.0, and the usable value shall be limited to not greater than 1.5 times the value given in the table. Bolt spacing shall not exceed 6 feet on center and shall be not less than 12 inches on center.

f. An alternative adhesive anchor bolt system is permitted to be used providing: its properties and installation conform to an ICC Evaluation Service Report; and the report states that the system's use is in unreinforced masonry as an acceptable alternative to Sections A107.4 and A113.1 or TMS 402, Section 2.1.4. The report's allowable values shall be multiplied by a factor of three to obtain strength values and the strength reduction factor, ϕ, shall be taken equal to 1.0.

[BS] A108.2 Masonry shear strength. The unreinforced masonry shear strength, v_{mL}, shall be determined for each masonry class from one of the following equations:

1. When testing is performed in accordance with Section A106.2.3.1, the unreinforced masonry shear strength, v_m, shall be determined by Equation A1-3.

$$\textbf{Equation A1-3} \quad v_{mL} = \frac{0.75\left(0.75 v_{tL} + \frac{P_D}{A_n}\right)}{1.5}$$

The mortar shear strength values, v_{tL}, shall be determined in accordance with Section A106.2.3.6.

2. When alternate testing is performed in accordance with Section A106.2.3.3, unreinforced masonry shear, v_{mL}, shall be determined by Equation A1-4.

$$\textbf{Equation A1-4} \quad v_{mL} = \frac{0.75\left(f_{sp} + \frac{P_D}{A_n}\right)}{1.5}$$

[BS] A108.3 Masonry compression. Where any increase in wall dead plus live load compression stress occurs, the maximum compression stress in unreinforced masonry, Q_G/A_n, shall not exceed 300 pounds per square inch (2070 kPa).

[BS] A108.4 Masonry tension. Unreinforced masonry shall be assumed to have no tensile capacity.

[BS] A108.5 Wall tension anchors. The tension strength of wall anchors shall be the average of the tension test values for anchors having the same wall thickness and framing orientation.

[BS] A108.6 Foundations. For existing foundations, new total dead loads are permitted to be increased over the existing dead load by 25 percent. New total dead load plus live load plus seismic forces may be increased over the existing dead load plus live load by 50 percent. Higher values may be justified only in conjunction with a geotechnical investigation.

SECTION A109—ANALYSIS AND DESIGN PROCEDURE

[BS] A109.1 General. The elements of buildings hereby required to be analyzed are specified in Table A102.1.

[BS] A109.2 Selection of procedure. Buildings with rigid diaphragms shall be analyzed by the general procedure of Section A110. Buildings with flexible diaphragms shall be analyzed by the general procedure or, where applicable, are permitted to be analyzed by the special procedure of Section A111.

SECTION A110—GENERAL PROCEDURE

[BS] A110.1 Minimum design lateral forces. Buildings shall be analyzed to resist minimum lateral forces assumed to act nonconcurrently in the direction of each of the main axes of the structure in accordance with the following:

$$\textbf{Equation A1-5} \quad V = \frac{0.75 S_{DS} W}{R}$$

[BS] A110.2 Seismic forces on elements of structures. Parts and portions of a structure not covered in Section A110.3 shall be analyzed and designed per the current building code, using force levels defined in Section A110.1.

Exceptions:

1. Unreinforced masonry walls for which height-to thickness ratios do not exceed ratios set forth in Table A110.2 need not be analyzed for out-of-plane loading. Unreinforced masonry walls that exceed the allowable *h/t* ratios of Table A110.2 shall be braced according to Section A113.5.
2. Parapets complying with Section A113.6 need not be analyzed for out-of-plane loading.
3. Where walls are to be anchored to flexible floor and roof diaphragms, the anchorage shall be in accordance with Section A113.1.

[BS] TABLE A110.2—ALLOWABLE VALUE OF HEIGHT-TO-THICKNESS RATIO OF UNREINFORCED MASONRY WALLS

WALL TYPES	$0.13g \le S_{D1} < 0.25g$	$0.25g \le S_{D1} < 0.4g$	$S_{D1} \ge 0.4g$ BUILDINGS WITH CROSSWALLS[a]	$S_{D1} \ge 0.4g$ ALL OTHER BUILDINGS
Walls of one-story buildings	20	16	16[b, c]	13
First-story wall of multiple-story building	20	18	16	15
Walls in top story of multiple-story building	14	14	14[b, c]	9
All other walls	20	16	16	13

For SI:1 pound per square inch = 6894.75 N/m^2.

a. Applies to the special procedures of Section A111 only. See Section A111.7 for other restrictions.

b. This value of height-to-thickness ratio shall be used where mortar shear tests establish a tested mortar shear strength, v_t, of not less than 100 pounds per square inch. This value shall also be used where the tested mortar shear strength is not less than 60 pounds per square inch, and where a visual examination of the collar joint indicates not less than 50-percent mortar coverage.

c. Where a visual examination of the collar joint indicates not less than 50-percent mortar coverage, and the tested mortar shear strength, v_t, is greater than 30 pounds per square inch but less than 60 pounds per square inch, the allowable height-to-thickness ratio may be determined by linear interpolation between the larger and smaller ratios in direct proportion to the tested mortar shear strength.

[BS] A110.3 In-plane loading of URM shear walls and frames. Vertical seismic force-resisting elements shall be analyzed in accordance with Section A112.

[BS] A110.4 Redundancy and overstrength factors. Any redundancy or overstrength factors contained in the building code may be taken as unity. The vertical component of seismic force (E_v) may be taken as zero.

SECTION A111—SPECIAL PROCEDURE

[BS] A111.1 Limits for the application of this procedure. The special procedures of this section shall be applied only to buildings having the following characteristics:

1. Flexible diaphragms at all levels above the base of the structure.
2. Vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system consisting predominantly of masonry or a combination of masonry and concrete shear walls.
3. Except for single-story buildings with an open front on one side only, not fewer than two lines of vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system parallel to each axis of the building (see Section A111.8 for open front buildings).

[BS] A111.2 Seismic forces on elements of structures. With the exception of the provisions in Sections A111.4 through A111.7, elements of structures shall comply with Sections A110.2 through A110.4.

[BS] A111.3 Crosswalls. Crosswalls shall meet the requirements of this section.

[BS] A111.3.1 Crosswall definition. A crosswall is a wood-framed wall sheathed with any of the materials described in Table A108.1(1) or Table A108.1(2) or other system as defined in Section A111.3.5. Crosswalls shall be spaced not more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) on center measured perpendicular to the direction of consideration, and shall be placed in each story of the building. Crosswalls shall extend the full story height between diaphragms.

Exceptions:

1. Crosswalls need not be provided at all levels where used in accordance with Section A111.4.2, Item 4.
2. Existing crosswalls need not be continuous below a wood diaphragm at or within 4 feet (1219 mm) of grade, provided that:
   2.1. Shear connections and anchorage requirements of Section A111.5 are satisfied at all edges of the diaphragm.
   2.2. Crosswalls with total shear capacity of $0.5S_{D1}\Sigma W_d$ interconnect the diaphragm to the foundation.
   2.3. The demand-capacity ratio of the diaphragm between the crosswalls that are continuous to their foundations does not exceed 2.5, calculated as follows:

Equation A1-6
$$DCR = \frac{(2.1S_{D1}W_d + V_{ca})}{2v_u D}$$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] A111.3.2 Crosswall shear capacity. Within any 40 feet (12 192 mm) measured along the span of the diaphragm, the sum of the crosswall shear capacities shall be not less than 30 percent of the diaphragm shear capacity of the strongest diaphragm at or above the level under consideration.

[BS] A111.3.3 Existing crosswalls. Existing crosswalls shall have a maximum height-to-length ratio between openings of 1.5 to 1. Existing crosswall connections to diaphragms need not be investigated as long as the crosswall extends to the framing of the diaphragms above and below.

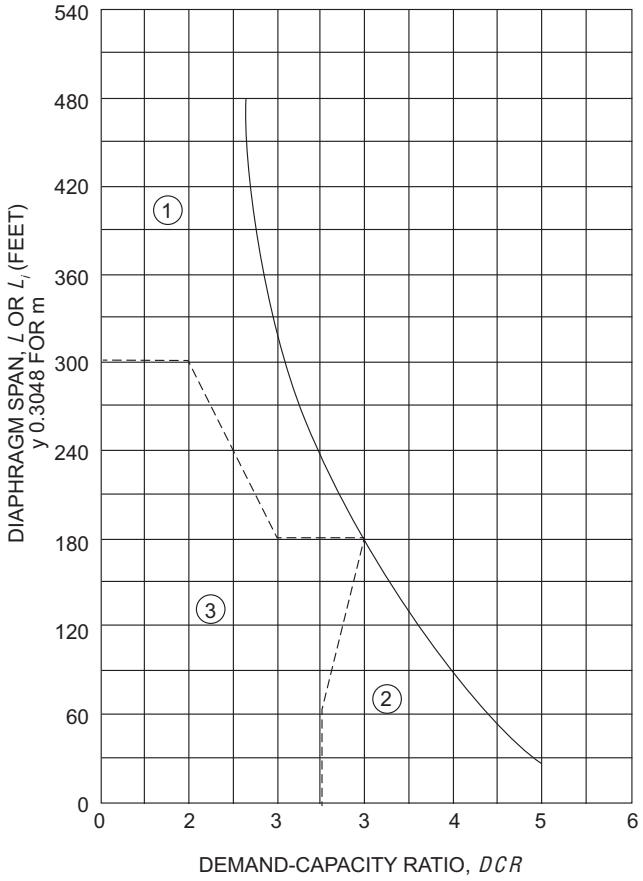
[BS] A111.3.4 New crosswalls. New crosswall connections to the diaphragm shall develop the crosswall shear capacity. New crosswalls shall have the capacity to resist an overturning moment equal to the crosswall shear capacity times the story height. Crosswall overturning moments need not be cumulative over more than two stories.

[BS] A111.3.5 Other crosswall systems. Other systems, such as moment-resisting frames, may be used as cross-walls provided that the yield story drift does not exceed 1 inch (25 mm) in any story.

[BS] A111.4 Wood diaphragms.

[BS] A111.4.1 Acceptable diaphragm span. A diaphragm is acceptable if the point (*L,DCR*) on Figure A111.4.1 falls within Region 1, 2 or 3.

[BS] FIGURE A111.4.1—ACCEPTABLE DIAPHRAGM SPAN



1. Region of demand-capacity ratios where crosswalls may be used to increase *h/t* ratios.
2. Region of demand-capacity ratios where *h/t* ratios of "buildings with crosswalls" may be used, whether or not crosswalls are present.
3. Region of demand-capacity ratios where *h/t* ratios of "all other buildings" shall be used, whether or not crosswalls are present.

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

[BS] A111.4.2 Demand-capacity ratios. Demand-capacity ratios shall be calculated for the diaphragm at any level according to the following formulas:

1. For a diaphragm without qualifying crosswalls at levels immediately above or below:

   Equation A1-7 $DCR = 2.1S_{D1}W_d/\Sigma v_u D$

2. For a diaphragm in a single-story building with qualifying crosswalls, or for a roof diaphragm coupled by crosswalls to the diaphragm directly below:

   Equation A1-8 $DCR = 2.1S_{D1}W_d/\Sigma v_u D + V_{cb}$

3. For diaphragms in a multiple-story building with qualifying crosswalls in all levels:

Equation A1-9 $DCR = 2.1S_{D1}\Sigma W_d/(\Sigma\Sigma v_u D + V_{cb})$

DCR shall be calculated at each level for the set of diaphragms at and above the level under consideration. In addition, the roof diaphragm shall meet the requirements of Equation A1-10.

4. For a roof diaphragm and the diaphragm directly below, if coupled by crosswalls:

Equation A1-10 $DCR = 2.1S_{D1}\Sigma W_d/\Sigma\Sigma v_u D$

[BS] A111.4.3 Chords. An analysis for diaphragm flexure need not be made, and chords need not be provided.

[BS] A111.4.4 Collectors. An analysis of diaphragm collector forces shall be made for the transfer of diaphragm edge shears into vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system. Collector forces may be resisted by new or existing elements.

[BS] A111.4.5 Diaphragm openings.

1. Diaphragm forces at corners of openings shall be investigated and shall be developed into the diaphragm by new or existing materials.
2. In addition to the demand-capacity ratios of Section A111.4.2, the demand-capacity ratio of the portion of the diaphragm adjacent to an opening shall be calculated using the opening dimension as the span.
3. Where an opening occurs in the end quarter of the diaphragm span, the calculation of $v_u D$ for the demand-capacity ratio shall be based on the net depth of the diaphragm.

[BS] A111.5 Diaphragm shear transfer. Diaphragms shall be connected to shear walls and new vertical seismic force-resisting elements with connections capable of developing the diaphragm-loading tributary to the shear wall or new seismic force-resisting elements given by the lesser of the following formulas:

Equation A1-11 $V = 1.2S_{D1}C_p W_d$

using the C_p values in Table A111.5, or

Equation A1-12 $V = v_u D$

[BS]TABLE A111.5—HORIZONTAL FORCE FACTOR, C_p

CONFIGURATION OF MATERIALS	C_p
Roofs with straight or diagonal sheathing and roofing applied directly to the sheathing, or floors with straight tongue-and-groove sheathing.	0.50
Diaphragms with double or multiple layers of boards with edges offset, and blocked plywood systems.	0.75
Diaphragms of metal deck without topping:	
Minimal welding or mechanical attachment.	0.6
Welded or mechanically attached for seismic resistance.	0.68

[BS] A111.6 Shear walls (in-plane loading).

[BS] A111.6.1 Wall story force. The wall story force distributed to a shear wall at any diaphragm level shall be the lesser value calculated as:

Equation A1-13 $F_{wx} = 0.8S_{D1}(W_{wx} + W_d/2)$

but need not exceed

Equation A1-14 $F_{wx} = 0.8S_{D1}W_{wx} + v_u D$

[BS] A111.6.2 Wall story shear. The wall story shear shall be the sum of the wall story forces at and above the level of consideration.

Equation A1-15 $V_{wx} = \Sigma F_{wx}$

[BS] A111.6.3 Shear wall analysis. Shear walls shall comply with Section A112.

[BS] A111.6.4 New seismic force-resisting elements. New seismic force-resisting elements such as moment frames, braced frames or shear walls shall be designed as required by the building code, except that the seismic forces shall be as specified in Section A111.6.1, and the story drift ratio shall be limited to 0.015, except as further limited by Section A112.4.2 for moment frames.

[BS] A111.7 Out-of-plane forces—unreinforced masonry walls.

[BS] A111.7.1 Allowable unreinforced masonry wall height-to-thickness ratios. The provisions of Section A110.2 are applicable, except the allowable height-to-thickness ratios given in Table A110.2 shall be determined from Figure A111.4.1 as follows:

1. In Region 1, height-to-thickness ratios for buildings with crosswalls may be used if qualifying crosswalls are present in all stories.
2. In Region 2, height-to-thickness ratios for buildings with crosswalls may be used whether or not qualifying crosswalls are present.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

3. In Region 3, height-to-thickness ratios for "all other buildings" shall be used whether or not qualifying crosswalls are present.

[BS] A111.7.2 Walls with diaphragms in different regions. Where diaphragms above and below the wall under consideration have demand-capacity ratios in different regions of Figure A111.4.1, the lesser height-to-thickness ratio shall be used.

[BS] A111.8 Open-front design procedure. A single-story building with an open front on one side and crosswalls parallel to the open front may be designed by the following procedure:

1. Effective diaphragm span, L_i, for use in Figure A111.4.1 shall be determined in accordance with the following formula:

   Equation A1-16 $L_i = 2[(W_w/W_d)L + L]$

2. Diaphragm demand-capacity ratio shall be calculated as:

   Equation A1-17 $DCR = 2.1S_{D1}(W_d + W_w)/[(v_u D) + V_{cb}]$

SECTION A112—ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

[BS] A112.1 General. The following requirements are applicable to both the general procedure and the special procedure for analyzing vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system.

[BS] A112.2 In-plane shear of unreinforced masonry walls.

[BS] A112.2.1 Flexural rigidity. Flexural components of deflection need not be considered in determining the rigidity of an unreinforced masonry wall.

[BS] A112.2.2 Shear walls with openings. Wall piers shall be analyzed according to the following procedure, which is diagrammed in Figure A112.2.2.

1. For any pier:
   1.1. The pier shear capacity shall be calculated as:

   Equation A1-18 $v_a = v_m A_n$

   where:

   A_n = area of net mortared or grouted section of a wall or wall pier.

   1.2. The pier rocking shear capacity shall be calculated as:

   Equation A1-19 $V_r = 0.9P_D D/H$

2. The wall piers at any level are acceptable if they comply with one of the following modes of behavior:
   2.1. Rocking controlled mode. Where the pier rocking shear capacity is less than the pier shear capacity, in other words, $V_r < v_a$, for each pier in a level, forces in the wall at that level, V_{wx}, shall be distributed to each pier in proportion to $P_D D/H$.

   For the wall at that level:

   Equation A1-20 $0.7V_{wx} < SV_r$

   2.2. Shear controlled mode. Where the pier shear capacity is less than the pier rocking capacity, in other words, $v_a < V_r$ in one or more pier(s) in a level, forces in the wall at the level, V_{wx}, shall be distributed to each pier in proportion to D/H.

   For each pier at that level:

   Equation A1-21 $V_p < v_a$

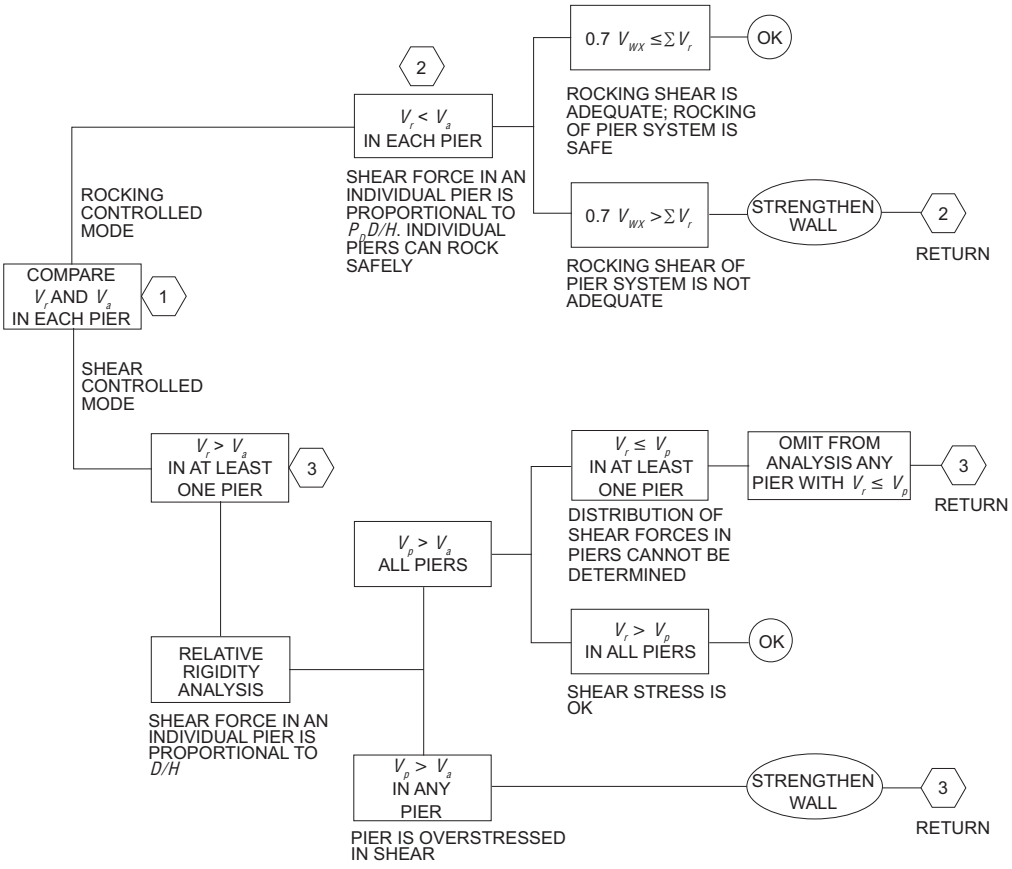
   and

   Equation A1-22 $V_p < V_r$

   If $V_p < v_a$ for each pier and $V_p > V_r$ for one or more piers, such piers shall be omitted from the analysis, and the procedure shall be repeated for the remaining piers, unless the wall is strengthened and reanalyzed.

3. Masonry pier tension stress. Unreinforced masonry wall piers need not be analyzed for tension stress.

[BS] FIGURE A112.2.2—ANALYSIS OF URM WALL IN-PLANE SHEAR FORCES


COMPARE V_r AND V_a IN EACH PIER
1
ROCKING CONTROLLED MODE
SHEAR CONTROLLED MODE
2
$V_r < V_a$ IN EACH PIER
SHEAR FORCE IN AN INDIVIDUAL PIER IS PROPORTIONAL TO $P_D D/H$. INDIVIDUAL PIERS CAN ROCK SAFELY
$0.7\ V_{WX} \le \Sigma V_r$
OK
ROCKING SHEAR IS ADEQUATE; ROCKING OF PIER SYSTEM IS SAFE
$0.7\ V_{WX} > \Sigma V_r$
STRENGTHEN WALL
2
RETURN
ROCKING SHEAR OF PIER SYSTEM IS NOT ADEQUATE
$V_r > V_a$ IN AT LEAST ONE PIER
3
RELATIVE RIGIDITY ANALYSIS
SHEAR FORCE IN AN INDIVIDUAL PIER IS PROPORTIONAL TO D/H
$V_p > V_a$ ALL PIERS
$V_r \le V_p$ IN AT LEAST ONE PIER
OMIT FROM ANALYSIS ANY PIER WITH $V_r \le V_p$
3
RETURN
DISTRIBUTION OF SHEAR FORCES IN PIERS CANNOT BE DETERMINED
$V_r > V_p$ IN ALL PIERS
OK
SHEAR STRESS IS OK
$V_p > V_a$ IN ANY PIER
STRENGTHEN WALL
3
RETURN
PIER IS OVERSTRESSED IN SHEAR

V_a = Allowable shear strength of a pier.
V_p = Shear force assigned to a pier on the basis of a relative shear rigidity analysis.
V_r = Rocking shear capacity of pier.
V_{WX} = Total shear force resisted by the wall.
ΣV_r = Rocking shear capacity of all piers in the wall.

[BS] A112.2.3 Shear walls without openings. Shear walls without openings shall be analyzed the same as for walls with openings, except that V_r shall be calculated as follows:

Equation A1-23 $V_r = 0.9(P_D + 0.5P_w)D/H$

[BS] A112.3 Plywood-sheathed shear walls. Plywood-sheathed shear walls may be used to resist lateral forces for URM buildings with flexible diaphragms analyzed according to provisions of Section A111. Plywood-sheathed shear walls shall not be used to share lateral forces with other materials along the same line of resistance.

[BS] A112.4 Combinations of vertical elements.

[BS] A112.4.1 Seismic force distribution. Seismic forces shall be distributed among the vertical-resisting elements in proportion to their relative rigidities, except that moment-resisting frames shall comply with Section A112.4.2.

[BS] A112.4.2 Moment-resisting frames. Moment resisting frames shall not be used with an unreinforced masonry wall in a single line of resistance unless the wall has piers that have adequate shear capacity to sustain rocking in accordance with Section A112.2.2. The frames shall be designed in accordance with the building code to resist 100 percent of the seismic forces tributary to that line of resistance, as determined from Section A111.2. The story drift ratio shall be limited to 0.0075.

SECTION A113—DETAILED BUILDING SYSTEM DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

[BS] A113.1 Wall anchorage.

[BS] A113.1.1 Anchor locations. Unreinforced masonry walls shall be anchored at the roof and floor levels as required in Section A110.2. Ceilings of plaster or similar materials, where not attached directly to roof or floor framing and where abutting masonry walls, shall either be anchored to the walls at a maximum spacing of 6 feet (1829 mm) or be removed.

[BS] A113.1.2 Anchor requirements. Anchors shall consist of bolts installed through the wall as specified in Table A108.1(2), or an approved equivalent at a maximum anchor spacing of 6 feet (1829 mm). Wall anchors shall be secured to the framing members parallel or perpendicular to the wall to develop the required forces.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] A113.1.3 Minimum wall anchorage. Anchorage of masonry walls to each floor or roof shall resist a minimum force determined as $0.9S_{DS}$ times the tributary weight or 200 pounds per linear foot (2920 N/m), whichever is greater, acting normal to the wall at the level of the floor or roof. Existing wall anchors, if used, must be tested and meet the requirements of Section A107.5.1 or be upgraded.

[BS] A113.1.4 Anchors at corners. At the roof and floor levels, both shear and tension anchors shall be provided within 2 feet (610 mm) horizontally from the inside of the corners of the walls.

[BS] A113.2 Diaphragm shear transfer. Anchors transmitting shear forces shall have a maximum spacing of 6 feet (1829 mm) and shall have nuts installed over malleable iron or plate washers where bearing on wood, and heavy-cut washers where bearing on steel.

[BS] A113.3 Collectors. Collector elements shall be provided that are capable of transferring the seismic forces originating in other portions of the building to the element providing the resistance to those forces.

[BS] A113.4 Ties and continuity. Ties and continuity shall conform to the requirements of the building code.

[BS] A113.5 Wall bracing.

[BS] A113.5.1 General. Where a wall height-to-thickness ratio exceeds the specified limits, the wall may be laterally supported by vertical bracing members per Section A113.5.2 or by reducing the wall height by bracing per Section A113.5.3.

[BS] A113.5.2 Vertical bracing members. Vertical bracing members shall be attached to floor and roof construction for their design loads independently of required wall anchors. Horizontal spacing of vertical bracing members shall not exceed one-half of the unsupported height of the wall or 10 feet (3048 mm). Deflection of such bracing members at design loads shall not exceed one-tenth of the wall thickness.

[BS] A113.5.3 Intermediate wall bracing. The wall height may be reduced by bracing elements connected to the floor or roof. Horizontal spacing of the bracing elements and wall anchors shall be as required by design, but shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) on center. Bracing elements shall be detailed to minimize the horizontal displacement of the wall by the vertical displacement of the floor or roof.

[BS] A113.6 Parapets. Parapets and exterior wall appendages not conforming to this chapter shall be removed, or stabilized or braced to ensure that the parapets and appendages remain in their original positions.

The maximum height of an unbraced unreinforced masonry parapet above the lower of either the level of tension anchors or the roof sheathing shall not exceed the height-to-thickness ratio shown in Table A113.6. If the required parapet height exceeds this maximum height, a bracing system designed for the forces determined in accordance with the building code shall support the top of the parapet. Parapet corrective work must be performed in conjunction with the installation of tension roof anchors.

The height of a URM parapet above any wall anchor shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm).

Exception: If a reinforced concrete beam is provided at the top of the wall, the height above the wall anchor is permitted to be not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

[BS] TABLE A113.6—MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE HEIGHT-TO-THICKNESS RATIO FOR PARAPETS

	S_{D1}		
	$0.13g \le S_{D1} \le 0.25g$	$0.25g \le S_{D1} < 0.4g$	$S_{D1} \ge 0.4g$
Maximum allowable height-to-thickness ratios	2.5	2.5	1.5

[BS] A113.7 Veneer.

1. Veneer shall be anchored with approved anchor ties conforming to the required design capacity specified in the building code and shall be placed at a maximum spacing of 24 inches (610 mm) with a maximum supported area of 4 square feet (0.372 m^2).

   Exception: Existing anchor ties for attaching brick veneer to brick backing shall be acceptable, provided that the ties are in good condition and conform to the following minimum size and material requirements.

   Existing veneer anchor ties shall be considered adequate if they are of corrugated galvanized iron strips not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in width, 8 inches (203 mm) in length and $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) in thickness, or the equivalent.

2. The location and condition of existing veneer anchor ties shall be verified as follows:
   - 2.1. An approved testing laboratory shall verify the location and spacing of the ties and shall submit a report to the code official for approval as part of the structural analysis.
   - 2.2. The veneer in a selected area shall be removed to expose a representative sample of ties (not less than four) for inspection by the code official.

[BS] A113.8 Nonstructural masonry walls. Unreinforced masonry walls that do not carry design vertical or lateral loads and that are not required by the design to be part of the lateral force-resisting system shall be adequately anchored to new or existing supporting elements. The anchors and elements shall be designed for the out-of-plane forces specified in the building code. The height- or length-to-thickness ratio between such supporting elements for such walls shall not exceed nine.

[BS] A113.9 Truss and beam supports. Where trusses and beams other than rafters or joists are supported on masonry, independent secondary columns shall be installed to support vertical loads of the roof or floor members.

Exception: Secondary supports are not required where S_{D1} is less than 0.3g.

[BS] A113.10 Adjacent buildings. Where elements of adjacent buildings do not have a separation of 5 inches (127 mm) or greater, the allowable height-to-thickness ratios for "all other buildings" per Table A110.2 shall be used in the direction of consideration.

SECTION A114—WALLS OF UNBURNED CLAY, ADOBE OR STONE MASONRY

[BS] A114.1 General. Walls of unburned clay, adobe or stone masonry construction shall conform to the following:

1. Walls of unburned clay, adobe or stone masonry shall not exceed a height- or length-to-thickness ratio specified in Table A114.1.
2. Adobe shall be allowed a maximum value of 9 pounds per square inch (62.1 kPa) for shear unless higher values are justified by test.
3. Mortar for repointing may be of the same soil composition and stabilization as the brick, in lieu of cement mortar.

[BS]TABLE A114.1—MAXIMUM HEIGHT-TO-THICKNESS RATIO FOR ADOBE OR STONE WALLS

	S_{D1}		
	$0.13g \le S_{D1} < 0.25g$	**$0.25g \le S_{D1} < 0.4g$**	**$S_{D1} \ge 0.4g$**
One-story buildings	12	10	8
Two-story buildings			
First story	14	11	9
Second story	12	10	8

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX A
CHAPTER A2 – EARTHQUAKE HAZARD REDUCTION IN EXISTING REINFORCED CONCRETE AND REINFORCED MASONRY WALL BUILDINGS WITH FLEXIBLE DIAPHRAGMS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	**X**																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
A202.1	X																							

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER A2
EARTHQUAKE HAZARD REDUCTION IN EXISTING REINFORCED CONCRETE AND REINFORCED MASONRY WALL BUILDINGS WITH FLEXIBLE DIAPHRAGMS

SECTION A201—PURPOSE

[BS] A201.1 Purpose. The purpose of this chapter is to promote public safety and welfare by reducing the risk of death or injury as a result of the effects of earthquakes on reinforced concrete and reinforced masonry wall buildings with flexible diaphragms. Based on past earthquakes, these buildings have been categorized as being potentially hazardous and prone to significant damage, including possible collapse in a moderate to major earthquake. The provisions of this chapter are minimum standards for structural seismic resistance established primarily to reduce the risk of life loss or injury on both subject and adjacent properties. These provisions will not necessarily prevent loss of life or injury, or prevent earthquake damage to an existing building that complies with these standards.

SECTION A202—SCOPE

[BS] A202.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall apply to wall anchorage systems that resist out-of-plane forces and to collectors in existing reinforced concrete or reinforced masonry buildings with flexible diaphragms. Wall anchorage systems that were designed and constructed in accordance with the 1997 *Uniform Building Code* or the *2001* or subsequent editions of the *California Building Code* shall be deemed to comply with these provisions.

SECTION A203—DEFINITIONS

[BS] A203.1 Definitions. For the purpose of this chapter, the applicable definitions in the *California Building Code* and the following shall apply:

[BS] CONTINUITY CONNECTOR. A component, typically a plate, rod, strap or hold-down, that ensures load path continuity along the full length of a crosstie or strut.

[BS] CROSSTIE. A member or group of members continuous across the main diaphragm that connects opposite wall lines and transfers out-of-plane wall anchorage forces into the diaphragm.

[BS] FLEXIBLE DIAPHRAGM. A roof or floor sheathed with plywood, wood decking (1-by or 2-by) or metal deck without a concrete topping slab.

[BS] STRUT. A member or group of members continuous across a subdiaphragm that transfers out-of-plane wall anchorage forces into the subdiaphragm.

[BS] WALL ANCHORAGE SYSTEM. The components comprising a complete load path for out-of-plane wall forces from the wall to the main diaphragm, typically including anchors embedded in or fastened to the wall; rods, straps, plates, hold-downs or other hardware; subdiaphragms and their chords; crossties; struts; and continuity connectors.

[BS] WALL SEGMENT. Any length of concrete wall with continuous horizontal reinforcing and not interrupted or intersected by a pilaster or vertical construction joint, or any length of reinforced masonry wall with continuous horizontal reinforcing and not interrupted or intersected by a pilaster or vertical control joint.

SECTION A204—SYMBOLS AND NOTATIONS

[BS] A204.1 General. For the purpose of this chapter, the applicable symbols and notations in the *California Building Code* shall apply.

SECTION A205—GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[BS] A205.1 General. The seismic-resisting elements specified in this chapter shall comply with applicable provisions of *Section 1613* of the *California Building Code* and Chapter 12 of ASCE 7, except as modified herein.

[BS] A205.2 Requirements for plans. The plans shall accurately reflect the results of the engineering investigation and design and shall show all pertinent dimensions and sizes for plan review and construction. The following shall be provided:

1. Floor plans and roof plans shall show existing framing construction, diaphragm construction, proposed wall anchors, crossties and collectors. Existing nailing, anchors, crossties and collectors shall be shown on the plans if they are considered part of the lateral force-resisting systems.
2. Typical wall panel details and sections with panel thickness, height, pilasters and location of anchors shall be provided.
3. Details shall include existing and new anchors and the method of developing anchor forces into the diaphragm framing, existing and new crossties, and existing and new or improved support of roof and floor girders at pilasters or walls.
4. The basis for design and the building code used for the design shall be stated on the plans.

[BS] A205.3 Structural observation. Structural observation, in accordance with Section 1704.6 of the *California Building Code* is required, regardless of seismic design category, height or other conditions. Structural observation shall include visual observation of work for conformance to the approved construction documents and confirmation of existing conditions assumed during design.

A205.3.1 Additional special inspection. In addition to the requirements of Section 1705.13 of the *California Building Code*, special inspection shall be required for:

1. Installation of anchors into existing concrete or masonry walls to form part of a wall anchorage system.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2. Fastening of new or existing steel deck forming part of a wall anchorage system.
3. Installation of continuity connectors along the length of crossties, to ensure compliance with Section A206.2. This inspection may be periodic special inspection.

A205.3.2 Testing to establish adequacy of existing wall anchors. Testing shall show that the existing anchors can sustain a test load of 1.5 times the design tension load without noticeable deformation or damage to the anchor, to the masonry or concrete element, or to any part of the existing load path between the anchor and new retrofit components. Three anchors of each existing detail type shall be tested, and all three shall satisfy the requirement. Prior to testing, the design professional shall submit a test plan for code official approval identifying the expected locations of the existing anchors in question, the locations of the proposed tests, and the test procedure and criteria. After testing, the design professional shall submit a report of the satisfactory testing showing the test results, the design strengths derived from them, and the size and spacing as confirmed by investigation.

A205.4 Testing and Inspection. Structural testing and inspection for new construction materials, submittals, reports and certificates of compliance shall be in accordance with Sections 1704 and 1705 of the *California Building Code*. Work done to comply with this chapter shall not be eligible for Exception 1 to Section 1704.2 of the *California Building Code* or Exception 2 to Section 1705.13 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION A206—ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

[BS] A206.1 Reinforced concrete and reinforced masonry wall anchorage. Concrete and masonry walls shall be anchored to all floors and roofs that provide lateral support for the wall in accordance with Section 12.11.2 of ASCE 7. The anchorage shall provide a direct connection capable of resisting 75 percent of the forces specified in Section 12.11.2.1 of ASCE 7.

Exceptions:

1. Existing walls need not be evaluated or retrofitted for bending between anchors.
2. Work required by this chapter need not consider shrinkage, thermal changes or differential settlement.

A206.1.1 Seismicity parameters, site class and geologic hazards. For any site designated as Site Class E, the value of F_a shall be taken as 1.2. Site-specific procedures are not required for compliance with this chapter. Mitigation of existing geologic site hazards such as liquefiable soil, fault rupture or landslide is not required for compliance with this chapter.

[BS] A206.2 Additional requirements for wall anchorage systems. The wall anchorage system shall comply with the requirements of this section and Section 12.11.2.2 of ASCE 7.

The maximum spacing between wall anchors shall be 8 feet (2438 mm), and each wall segment shall have at least two wall anchors.

The wall anchorage system, excluding subdiaphragms and existing roof or floor framing members, shall be designed and installed to limit the relative movement between the wall and the diaphragm to no more than $^1/_8$ inch before engagement of the anchors. Wall anchors shall be provided to resist out-of-plane forces, independent of existing shear anchors.

Where new members are added as crossties, they shall be spaced no more than 24 feet (7315 mm) apart. Where existing girders are used as crossties, their actual spacing shall be deemed adequate even where the spacing exceeds 24 feet (7315 mm), as long as the girders are provided with continuity connectors as required.

Wall anchorage shall not be provided by fastening the edge of plywood sheathing to steel ledgers. Wall anchorage shall not be provided solely by fastening the edge of steel decking to steel ledgers unless analysis demonstrates acceptable capacity. The existing connections shall be subject to field verification and the new connections shall be subject to special inspection.

New wall anchors shall be provided to resist the full wall anchorage design force independent of existing shear or tension anchors.

Exception: Existing cast-in-place anchors shall be permitted as part of the wall anchorage system if the tie element can be readily attached to the anchors, and if the anchors are capable of resisting the total vertical and lateral shear load (including dead load) while being acted on by the maximum wall anchorage tension force caused by an earthquake. Acceptable tension values for the existing anchors shall be established by testing in accordance with Section A205.4.

[BS] A206.3 Development of anchor forces into the diaphragm. Development of the required anchorage forces into roof and floor diaphragms shall comply with the requirements of this section and Section 12.11.2.2 of ASCE 7.

Lengths of development of anchor loads in wood diaphragms shall be based on existing field nailing of the sheathing unless existing edge nailing is positively identified on the original construction plans or at the site.

[BS] A206.4 Anchorage at pilasters. Where pilasters are present, the wall anchorage system shall comply with the requirements of this section and Section 12.11.2.2.7 of ASCE 7. The pilasters or the walls immediately adjacent to the pilasters shall be anchored directly to the roof framing such that the existing vertical anchor bolts at the top of the pilasters are bypassed without permitting tension or shear failure at the top of the pilasters.

Exception: If existing vertical anchor bolts at the top of the pilasters are used for the anchorage, additional exterior confinement shall be provided as required to resist the total anchorage force.

[BS] A206.5 Combination of anchor types. New anchors used in combination on a single framing member shall be of compatible behavior and stiffness.

[BS] A206.6 Anchorage at interior walls. Existing interior reinforced concrete or reinforced masonry walls that extend to the floor above or to the roof diaphragm shall be anchored for out-of-plane forces per Sections A206.1 and A206.3. Walls extending through

the roof diaphragm shall be anchored for out-of-plane forces on both sides, and continuity ties shall be spliced across or continuous through the interior wall to provide diaphragm continuity.

[BS] A206.7 Collectors. Collectors designed in accordance with this section shall be provided at reentrant corners and at interior shear walls. Existing or new collectors shall have the capacity to develop into the diaphragm a force equal to the lesser of the rocking or shear capacity of the reentrant wall or the tributary shear based on 75 percent of the diaphragm design forces specified in Section 12.10 of ASCE 7. The capacity of the collector need not exceed the capacity of the diaphragm to deliver loads to the collector. A connection shall be provided from the collector to the reentrant wall to transfer the full collector internal force. If a truss or beam other than a rafter or purlin is supported by the reentrant wall or by a column integral with the reentrant wall, then an independent secondary column is required to support the roof or floor members whenever rocking or shear capacity of the reentrant wall is less than the tributary shear.

[BS] A206.8 Mezzanines. Existing mezzanines relying on reinforced concrete or reinforced masonry walls for vertical or lateral support shall be anchored to the walls for the tributary mezzanine load. Walls depending on the mezzanine for lateral support shall be anchored per Sections A206.1, A206.2 and A206.3.

Exception: Existing mezzanines that have independent lateral and vertical support need not be anchored to the walls.

SECTION A207—MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION

[BS] A207.1 Materials. Materials permitted by the building code, including their appropriate strength or allowable stresses, shall be used to meet the requirements of this chapter.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX A
CHAPTER A3 – PRESCRIPTIVE PROVISIONS FOR SEISMIC STRENGTHENING OF CRIPPLE WALLS AND SILL PLATE ANCHORAGE OF LIGHT, WOOD-FRAME RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				**X**	**X**																			
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								
A302.1 *CODE OFFICIAL*				X	X																			
A302.1 *ENFORCING AGENCY*				X	X																			
TABLE A304.3.1																								
TABLE A304.3.2																								
FIGURES A304.1.3 – A304.4.2				X	X																			
A304.3.1(1) *ANCHORING*																								
A304.4.1(3)																								
A304.4.2																								
A304.5				X	X																			
A304.6				X	X																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER A3
PRESCRIPTIVE PROVISIONS FOR SEISMIC STRENGTHENING OF CRIPPLE WALLS AND SILL PLATE ANCHORAGE OF LIGHT, WOOD-FRAME RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

SECTION A301—GENERAL

[BS] A301.1 Purpose. The provisions of this chapter are intended to promote public safety and welfare by reducing the risk of earthquake-induced damage to existing wood-frame residential buildings. The requirements contained in this chapter are prescriptive minimum standards intended to improve the seismic performance of residential buildings; however, they will not necessarily prevent earthquake damage.

This chapter sets standards for strengthening that may be approved by the code official without requiring plans or calculations prepared by a registered design professional. The provisions of this chapter are not intended to prevent the use of any material or method of construction not prescribed herein. The code official may require that construction documents for strengthening using alternative materials or methods be prepared by a registered design professional.

[BS] A301.2 Scope. The provisions of this chapter apply to residential buildings of light-frame wood construction containing one or more of the structural weaknesses specified in Section A303.

Exception: The provisions of this chapter do not apply to the buildings, or elements thereof, listed as follows. These buildings or elements require analysis by a registered design professional in accordance with Section A301.3 to determine appropriate strengthening:

1. Group R-1.
2. Group R with more than four dwelling units.
3. Buildings with a lateral force-resisting system using poles or columns embedded in the ground.
4. Cripple walls that exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.
5. Buildings exceeding three stories in height and any three-story building with cripple wall studs exceeding 14 inches (356 mm) in height.
6. Buildings where the code official determines that conditions exist that are beyond the scope of the prescriptive requirements of this chapter.
7. Buildings or portions thereof constructed on concrete slabs on grade.

[BS] A301.3 Alternative design procedures. The details and prescriptive provisions herein are not intended to be the only acceptable strengthening methods permitted. Alternative details and methods shall be permitted to be used where approved by the code official. Approval of alternatives shall be based on a demonstration that the method or material used is at least equivalent in terms of strength, deflection and capacity to that provided by the prescriptive methods and materials.

Where analysis by a registered design professional is required, such analysis shall be in accordance with all requirements of the building code, except that the seismic forces may be taken as 75 percent of those specified in the *California Building Code*.

SECTION A302—DEFINITIONS

[BS] A302.1 Definitions. For the purpose of this chapter, in addition to the applicable definitions in the building code, certain additional terms are defined as follows:

[BS] ADHESIVE ANCHOR. An assembly consisting of a threaded rod, washer, nut, and chemical adhesive approved by the code official for installation in existing concrete or masonry.

CODE OFFICIAL. *"Code Official" shall have the same meaning as Enforcing Agency.*

[BS] CRIPPLE WALL. A wood-frame stud wall extending from the top of the foundation to the underside of the lowest floor framing.

ENFORCING AGENCY. *The designated department or agency as specified by statute or regulation.*

[BS] EXPANSION ANCHOR. An approved post-installed anchor, inserted into a predrilled hole in existing concrete or masonry, that transfers loads to or from the concrete or masonry by direct bearing or friction or both.

[BS] PERIMETER FOUNDATION. A foundation system that is located under the exterior walls of a building.

[BS] SNUGTIGHT. As tight as an individual can torque a nut on a bolt by hand, using a wrench with a 10-inch-long (254 mm) handle, and the point at which the full surface of the plate washer is contacting the wood member and slightly indenting the wood surface.

[BS] WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. A panel manufactured from veneers, wood strands or wafers or a combination of veneer and wood strands or wafers bonded together with waterproof synthetic resins or other suitable bonding systems. Examples of wood structural panels are:

Composite panels. A wood structural panel that is comprised of wood veneer and reconstituted wood-based material and bonded together with waterproof adhesive.

Oriented strand board (OSB). A mat-formed wood structural panel comprised of thin rectangular wood strands arranged in cross-aligned layers with surface layers normally arranged in the long panel direction and bonded with waterproof adhesive.

Plywood. A wood structural panel comprised of plies of wood veneer arranged in cross-aligned layers. The plies are bonded with waterproof adhesive that cures on application of heat and pressure.

SECTION A303—STRUCTURAL WEAKNESSES

[BS] A303.1 General. For the purposes of this chapter, any of the following conditions shall be deemed a structural weakness:

1. Sill plates or floor framing that are supported directly on the ground without a foundation system that conforms to the building code.
2. A perimeter foundation system that is constructed only of wood posts supported on isolated pad footings.
3. Perimeter foundation systems that are not continuous.

   Exceptions:

   1. Existing single-story exterior walls not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm) in length, forming an extension of floor area beyond the line of an existing continuous perimeter foundation.
   2. Porches, storage rooms and similar spaces not containing fuel-burning appliances.
4. A perimeter foundation system that is constructed of unreinforced masonry or stone.
5. Sill plates that are not connected to the foundation or that are connected with less than what is required by the building code.

   Exception: Where approved by the code official, connections of a sill plate to the foundation made with other than sill bolts shall be accepted if the capacity of the connection is equivalent to that required by the building code.
6. Cripple walls that are not braced in accordance with the requirements of Section A304.4 and Table A304.3.1, or cripple walls not braced with diagonal sheathing or wood structural panels in accordance with the building code.

SECTION A304—STRENGTHENING REQUIREMENTS

[BS] A304.1 General.

[BS] A304.1.1 Scope. The structural weaknesses noted in Section A303 shall be strengthened in accordance with the requirements of this section. Strengthening work may include both new construction and alteration of existing construction. Except as provided herein, all strengthening work and materials shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *California Building Code*.

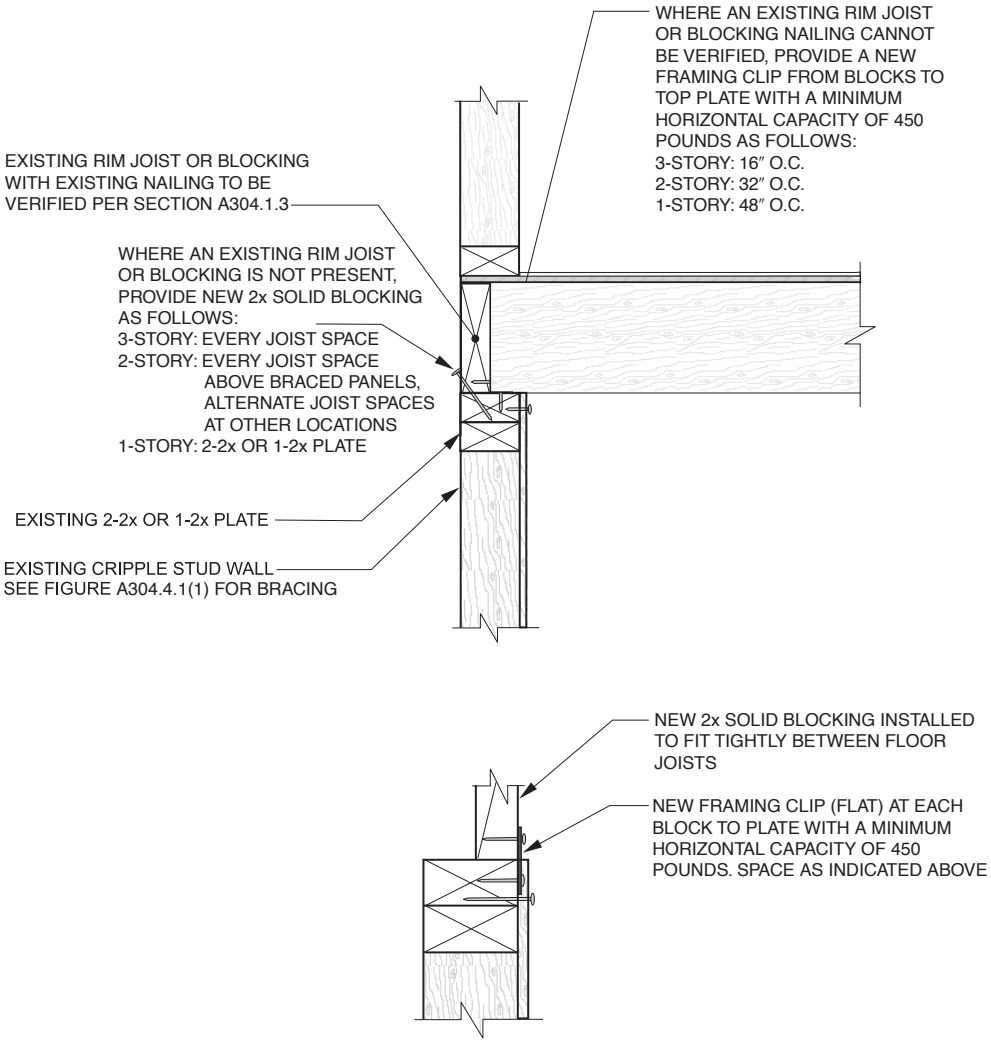
[BS] A304.1.2 Condition of existing wood materials. Existing wood materials that will be a part of the strengthening work (such as sills, studs and sheathing) shall be in a sound condition and free from defects that substantially reduce the capacity of the member. Any wood material found to contain fungus infection shall be removed and replaced with new material. Any wood material found to be infested with insects or to have been infested with insects shall be strengthened or replaced with new materials to provide a net dimension of sound wood equal to or greater than its undamaged original dimension.

[BS] A304.1.3 Floor joists not parallel to foundations. Floor joists framed perpendicular or at an angle to perimeter foundations shall be restrained either by an existing nominal 2-inch-wide (51 mm) continuous rim joist or by a nominal 2-inch-wide (51 mm) full-depth block between alternate joists in one- and two-story buildings, and between each joist in three-story buildings. Existing blocking for multiple-story buildings must occur at each joist space above a braced cripple wall panel.

Existing connections at the top and bottom edges of an existing rim joist or blocking need not be verified in one story buildings. In multiple-story buildings, the existing top edge connection need not be verified; however, the bottom edge connection to either the foundation sill plate or the top plate of a cripple wall shall be verified. The minimum existing bottom edge connection shall consist of 8d toenails spaced 6 inches (152 mm) apart for a continuous rim joist, or three 8d toenails per block. Where this minimum bottom edge-connection is not present or cannot be verified, a supplemental connection installed as shown in Figure A304.1.3 or A304.1.4(2) shall be provided.

Where an existing continuous rim joist or the minimum existing blocking does not occur, new $^{3}/_{4}$-inch (19.1 mm) or $^{23}/_{32}$-inch (18 mm) wood structural panel blocking installed tightly between floor joists and nailed as shown in Figure A304.1.4(3) shall be provided at the inside face of the cripple wall. In lieu of wood structural panel blocking, tight fitting, full-depth 2-inch (51 mm) blocking may be used. New blocking may be omitted where it will interfere with vents or plumbing that penetrates the wall.

[BS] FIGURE A304.1.3—TYPICAL FLOOR TO CRIPPLE WALL CONNECTION (FLOOR JOISTS NOT PARALLEL TO FOUNDATIONS)


WHERE AN EXISTING RIM JOIST OR BLOCKING NAILING CANNOT BE VERIFIED, PROVIDE A NEW FRAMING CLIP FROM BLOCKS TO TOP PLATE WITH A MINIMUM HORIZONTAL CAPACITY OF 450 POUNDS AS FOLLOWS:
3-STORY: 16″ O.C.
2-STORY: 32″ O.C.
1-STORY: 48″ O.C.
EXISTING RIM JOIST OR BLOCKING WITH EXISTING NAILING TO BE VERIFIED PER SECTION A304.1.3
WHERE AN EXISTING RIM JOIST OR BLOCKING IS NOT PRESENT, PROVIDE NEW 2x SOLID BLOCKING AS FOLLOWS:
3-STORY: EVERY JOIST SPACE
2-STORY: EVERY JOIST SPACE ABOVE BRACED PANELS, ALTERNATE JOIST SPACES AT OTHER LOCATIONS
1-STORY: 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EXISTING CRIPPLE STUD WALL SEE FIGURE A304.4.1(1) FOR BRACING
NEW 2x SOLID BLOCKING INSTALLED TO FIT TIGHTLY BETWEEN FLOOR JOISTS
NEW FRAMING CLIP (FLAT) AT EACH BLOCK TO PLATE WITH A MINIMUM HORIZONTAL CAPACITY OF 450 POUNDS. SPACE AS INDICATED ABOVE

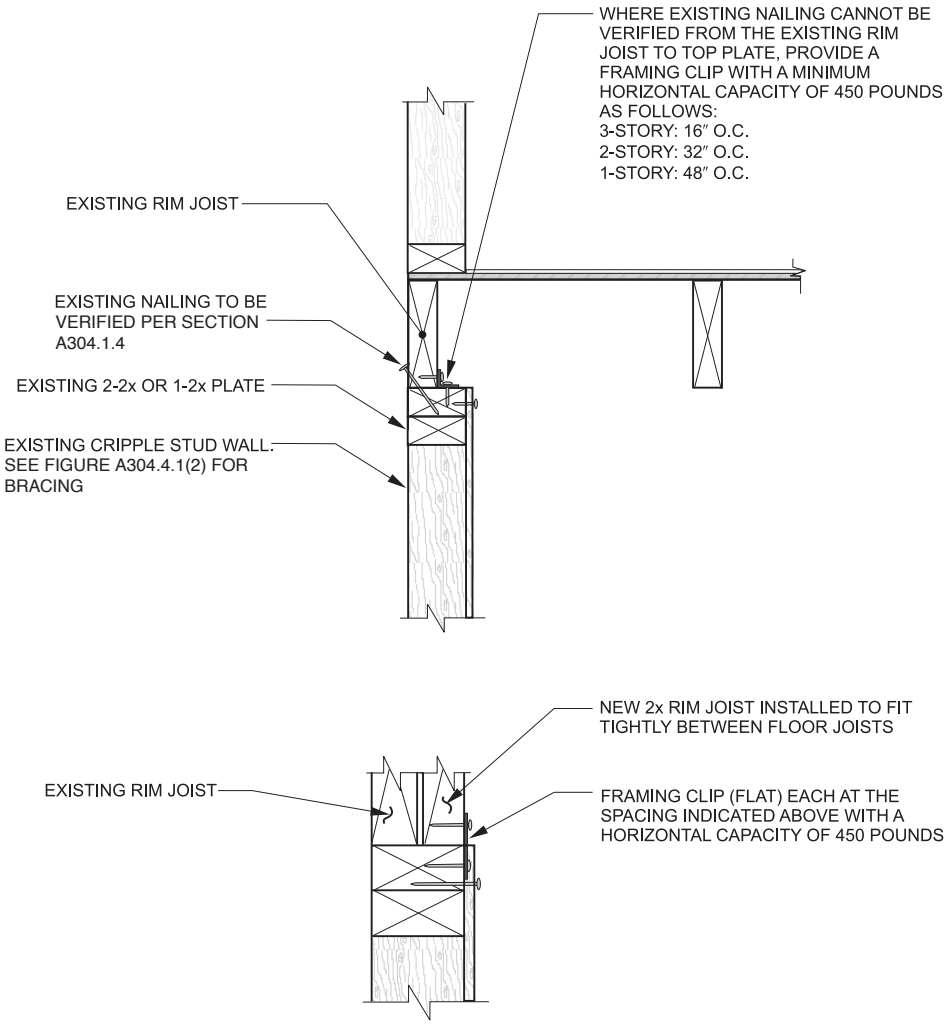
ALTERNATE CONNECTION FOR FLUSH CONNECTION

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.4 N.
NOTE: See manufacturing instructions for nail sizes associated with metal framing clips.

[BS] A304.1.4 Floor joists parallel to foundations. Where existing floor joists are parallel to the perimeter foundations, the end joist shall be located over the foundation and, except for required ventilation openings, shall be continuous and in continuous contact with the foundation sill plate or the top plate of the cripple wall. Existing connections at the top and bottom edges of the end joist need not be verified in one-story buildings. In multiple-story buildings, the existing top edge connection of the end joist need not be verified; however, the bottom edge connection to either the foundation sill plate or the top plate of a cripple wall shall be verified. The minimum bottom edge connection shall be 8d toenails spaced 6 inches (152 mm) apart. If this minimum bottom edge connection is not present or cannot be verified, a supplemental connection installed as shown in Figure A304.1.4(1), A304.1.4(2) or A304.1.4(3) shall be provided.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE A304.1.4(1)—TYPICAL FLOOR TO CRIPPLE WALL CONNECTION (FLOOR JOISTS PARALLEL TO FOUNDATIONS)


WHERE EXISTING NAILING CANNOT BE VERIFIED FROM THE EXISTING RIM JOIST TO TOP PLATE, PROVIDE A FRAMING CLIP WITH A MINIMUM HORIZONTAL CAPACITY OF 450 POUNDS AS FOLLOWS:
3-STORY: 16″ O.C.
2-STORY: 32″ O.C.
1-STORY: 48″ O.C.
EXISTING RIM JOIST
EXISTING NAILING TO BE VERIFIED PER SECTION A304.1.4
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EXISTING CRIPPLE STUD WALL. SEE FIGURE A304.4.1(2) FOR BRACING
NEW 2x RIM JOIST INSTALLED TO FIT TIGHTLY BETWEEN FLOOR JOISTS
EXISTING RIM JOIST
FRAMING CLIP (FLAT) EACH AT THE SPACING INDICATED ABOVE WITH A HORIZONTAL CAPACITY OF 450 POUNDS

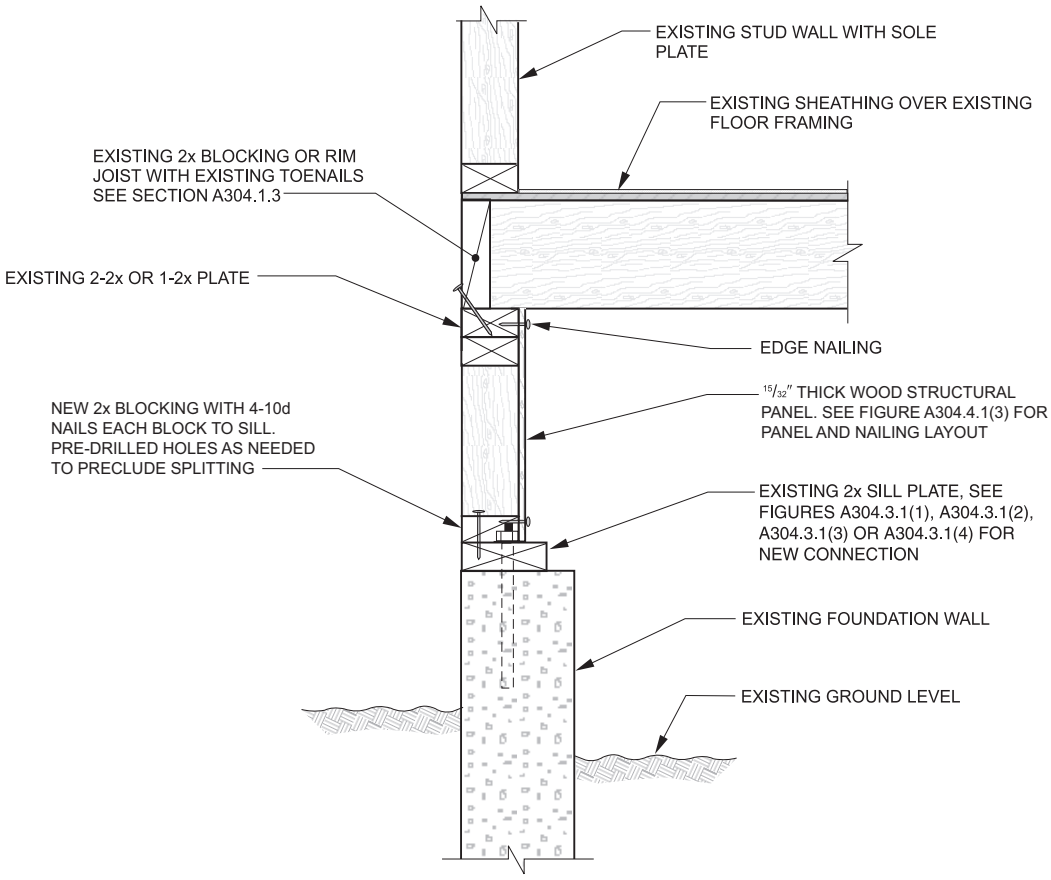
ALTERNATE CONNECTION FOR FLUSH CONNECTION

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.4 N.

NOTE: See manufacturing instructions for nail sizes associated with metal framing clips.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE A304.1.4(2)—TYPICAL FLOOR TO MUDSILL CONNECTIONS

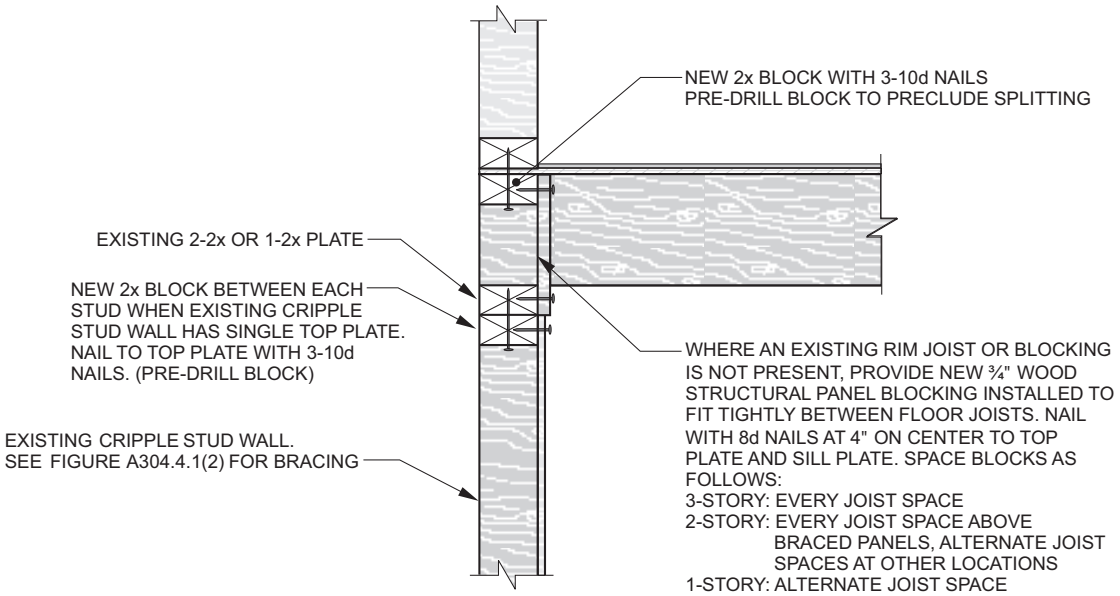

EXISTING STUD WALL WITH SOLE PLATE
EXISTING SHEATHING OVER EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING 2x BLOCKING OR RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS SEE SECTION A304.1.3
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EDGE NAILING
15/32" THICK WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. SEE FIGURE A304.4.1(3) FOR PANEL AND NAILING LAYOUT
NEW 2x BLOCKING WITH 4-10d NAILS EACH BLOCK TO SILL. PRE-DRILLED HOLES AS NEEDED TO PRECLUDE SPLITTING
EXISTING 2x SILL PLATE, SEE FIGURES A304.3.1(1), A304.3.1(2), A304.3.1(3) OR A304.3.1(4) FOR NEW CONNECTION
EXISTING FOUNDATION WALL
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

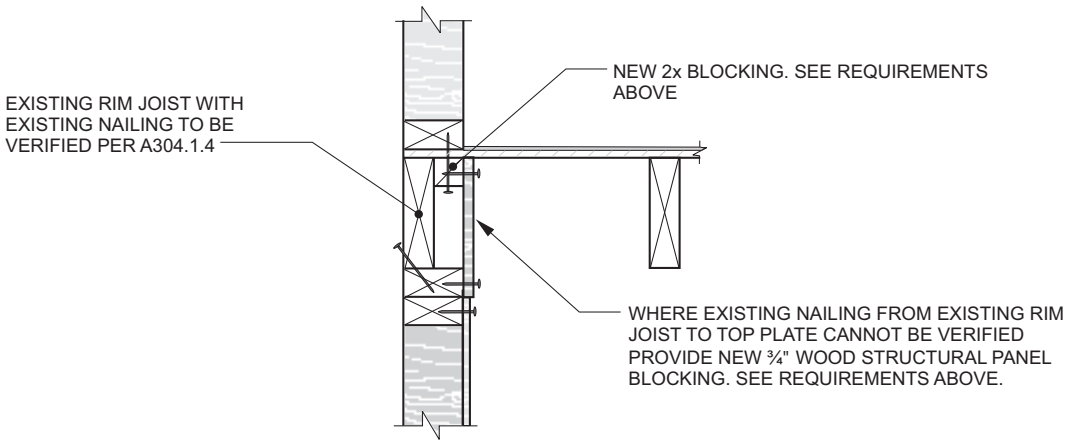
NOTES:

1. See Section A304.3 for sill plate anchorage.
2. See manufacturing instructions for nail sizes associated with metal framing clips.

[BS] FIGURE A304.1.4(3)—ALTERNATIVE FLOOR FRAMING TO CRIPPLE WALL CONNECTION


NEW 2x BLOCK WITH 3-10d NAILS
PRE-DRILL BLOCK TO PRECLUDE SPLITTING
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
NEW 2x BLOCK BETWEEN EACH STUD WHEN EXISTING CRIPPLE STUD WALL HAS SINGLE TOP PLATE. NAIL TO TOP PLATE WITH 3-10d NAILS. (PRE-DRILL BLOCK)
EXISTING CRIPPLE STUD WALL. SEE FIGURE A304.4.1(2) FOR BRACING
WHERE AN EXISTING RIM JOIST OR BLOCKING IS NOT PRESENT, PROVIDE NEW ¾" WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BLOCKING INSTALLED TO FIT TIGHTLY BETWEEN FLOOR JOISTS. NAIL WITH 8d NAILS AT 4" ON CENTER TO TOP PLATE AND SILL PLATE. SPACE BLOCKS AS FOLLOWS:
3-STORY: EVERY JOIST SPACE
2-STORY: EVERY JOIST SPACE ABOVE BRACED PANELS, ALTERNATE JOIST SPACES AT OTHER LOCATIONS
1-STORY: ALTERNATE JOIST SPACE

FLOOR JOISTS NOT PARALLEL TO FOUNDATION


NEW 2x BLOCKING. SEE REQUIREMENTS ABOVE
EXISTING RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING NAILING TO BE VERIFIED PER A304.1.4
WHERE EXISTING NAILING FROM EXISTING RIM JOIST TO TOP PLATE CANNOT BE VERIFIED PROVIDE NEW ¾" WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BLOCKING. SEE REQUIREMENTS ABOVE.

FLOOR JOISTS PARALLEL TO FOUNDATION

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.4 N.
NOTE: See Section A304.4 for cripple wall bracing.

[BS] A304.2 Foundations.

[BS] A304.2.1 New perimeter foundations. New perimeter foundations shall be provided for structures with the structural weaknesses noted in Items 1 and 2 of Section A303. Soil investigations or geotechnical studies are not required for this work unless the building is located in a special study zone as designated by the code official or other authority having jurisdiction.

[BS] A304.2.2 Evaluation of existing foundations. Partial perimeter foundations or unreinforced masonry foundations shall be evaluated by a registered design professional for the force levels specified in Section A301.3. Test reports or other substantiating data to determine existing foundation material strengths shall be submitted to the code official. Where approved by the code official, these existing foundation systems shall be strengthened in accordance with the recommendations included with the evaluation in lieu of being replaced.

Exception: In lieu of testing existing foundations to determine material strengths, and where approved by the code official, a new nonperimeter foundation system designed for the forces specified in Section A301.3 shall be used to resist lateral forces from perimeter walls. A registered design professional shall confirm the ability of the existing diaphragm to transfer seismic forces to the new nonperimeter foundations.

[BS] A304.2.3 Details for new perimeter foundations. All new perimeter foundations shall be continuous and constructed according to Figure A304.2.3(1) and Table A304.2.3(1) or Figure A304.2.3(2) and Table A304.2.3(2). New construction materials

shall comply with the requirements of building code. Where approved by the code official, the existing clearance between existing floor joists or girders and existing grade below the floor need not comply with the building code.

Exception: Where designed by a registered design professional and approved by the code official, partial perimeter foundations shall be used in lieu of a continuous perimeter foundation.

[BS]TABLE A304.2.3(1)—NEW REINFORCED CONCRETE FOUNDATION SYSTEM

MINIMUM FOUNDATION DIMENSIONS						MINIMUM FOUNDATION REINFORCING	
						Vertical reinforcing	
Number of stories	W	F	D[a, b, c]	T	H	Single-pour wall and footing	Footing placed separate from wall
1	12 inches	6 inches	12 inches	6 inches	≤ 24 inches	#4 @ 48 inches on center	#4 @ 32 inches on center
2	15 inches	7 inches	18 inches	8 inches	≥ 36 inches	#4 @ 48 inches on center	#4 @ 32 inches on center
3	18 inches	8 inches	24 inches	10 inches	≥ 36 inches	#4 @ 48 inches on center	#4 @ 18 inches on center

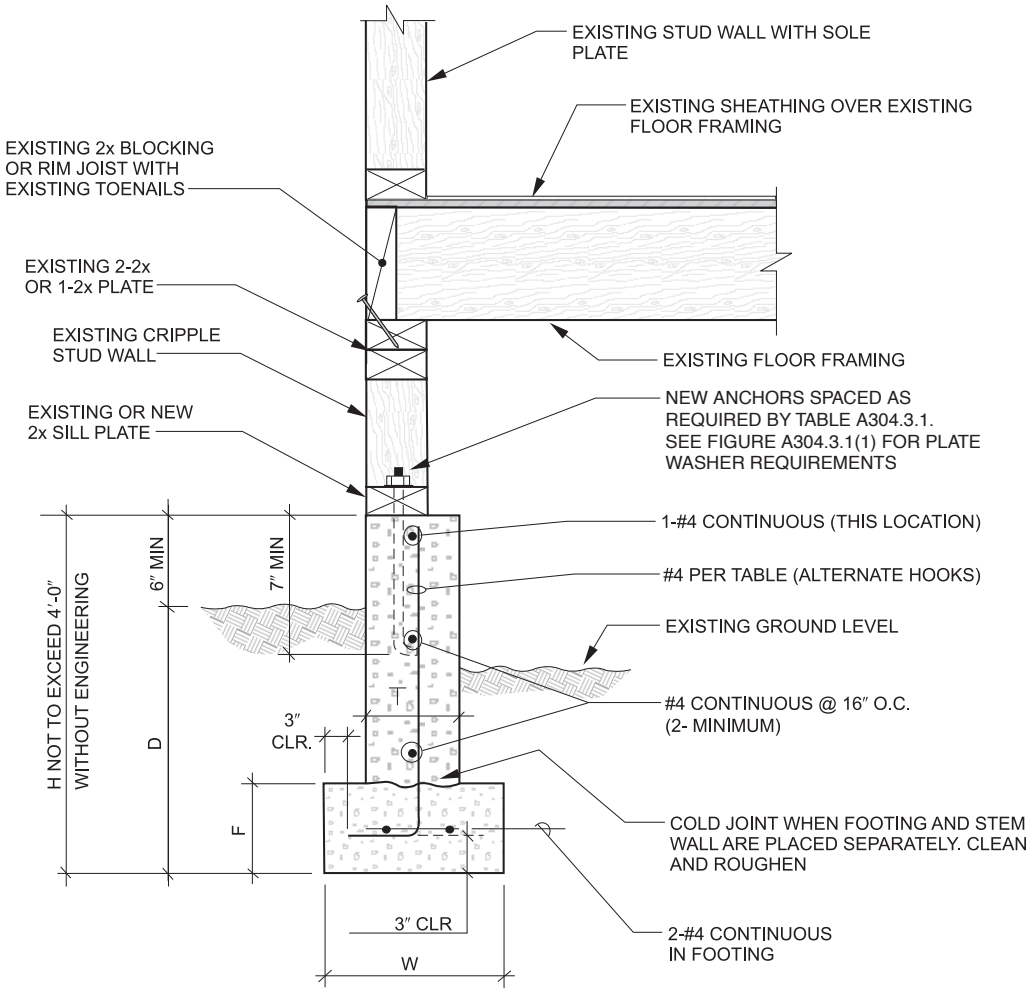
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where frost conditions occur, the minimum depth shall extend below the frost line.

b. The ground surface along the interior side of the foundation may be excavated to the elevation of the top of the footing.

c. Where the soil is designated as expansive, the foundation depth and reinforcement shall be approved by the code official.

[BS] FIGURE A304.2.3(1)—NEW REINFORCED CONCRETE FOUNDATION SYSTEM


EXISTING STUD WALL WITH SOLE PLATE
EXISTING SHEATHING OVER EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING 2x BLOCKING OR RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EXISTING CRIPPLE STUD WALL
EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING OR NEW 2x SILL PLATE
NEW ANCHORS SPACED AS REQUIRED BY TABLE A304.3.1. SEE FIGURE A304.3.1(1) FOR PLATE WASHER REQUIREMENTS
1-#4 CONTINUOUS (THIS LOCATION)
#4 PER TABLE (ALTERNATE HOOKS)
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL
#4 CONTINUOUS @ 16″ O.C. (2- MINIMUM)
COLD JOINT WHEN FOOTING AND STEM WALL ARE PLACED SEPARATELY. CLEAN AND ROUGHEN
2-#4 CONTINUOUS IN FOOTING
H NOT TO EXCEED 4′-0″ WITHOUT ENGINEERING
6″ MIN
7″ MIN
D
F
3″ CLR.
3″ CLR
W

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS]TABLE A304.2.3(2)—NEW MASONRY CONCRETE FOUNDATION							
MINIMUM FOUNDATION DIMENSIONS						MINIMUM FOUNDATION REINFORCING	
Number of stories	W	F	D[a, b, c]	T	H	Vertical reinforcing	Horizontal reinforcing
1	12 inches	6 inches	12 inches	6 inches	≤ 24 inches	#4 @ 24 inches on center	#4 continuous at top of stem wall
2	15 inches	7 inches	18 inches	8 inches	≥ 24 inches	#4 @ 24 inches on center	#4 @ 16 inches on center
3	18 inches	8 inches	24 inches	10 inches	≥ 36 inches	#4 @ 24 inches on center	#4 @ 16 inches on center

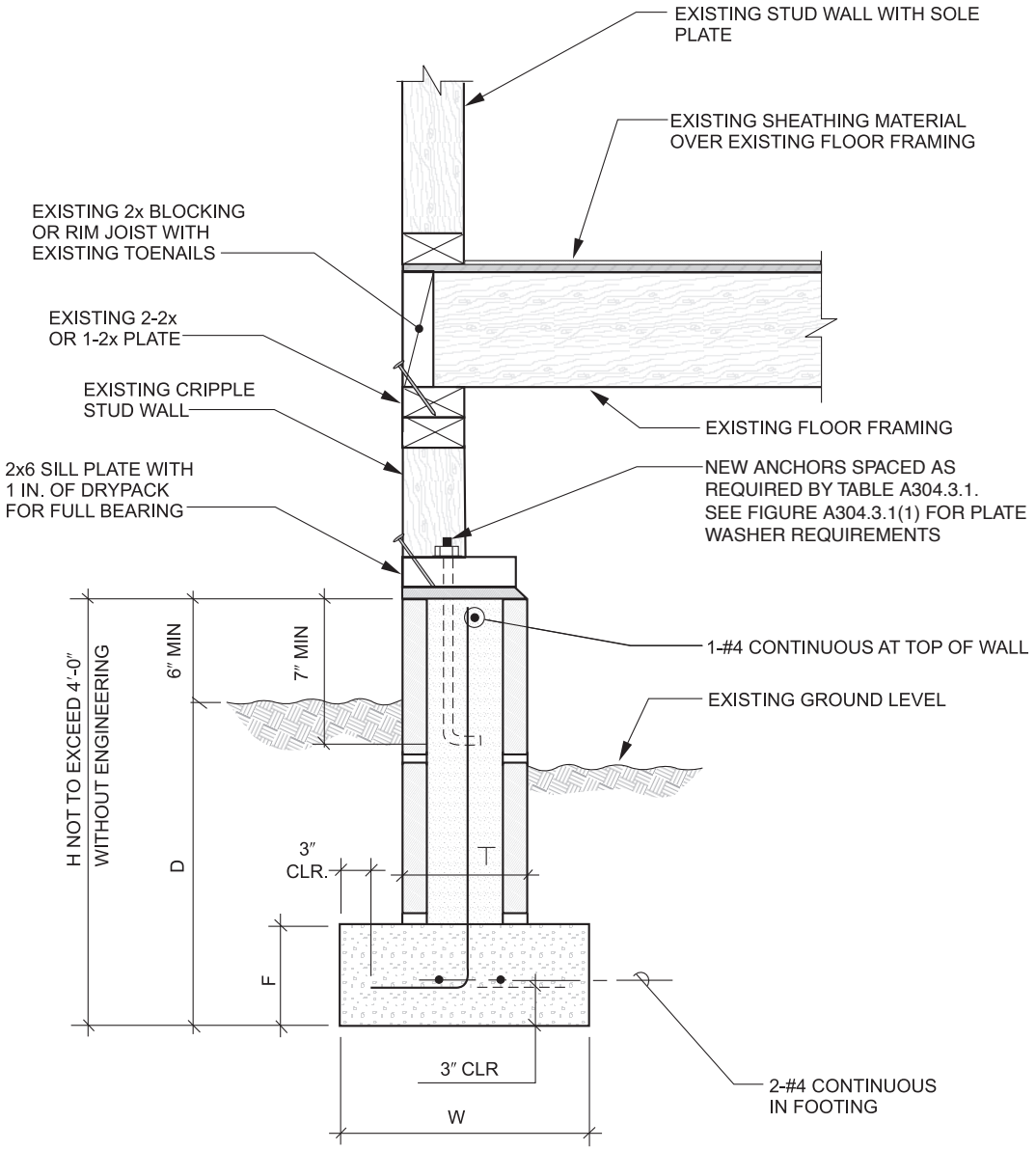
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where frost conditions occur, the minimum depth shall extend below the frost line.

b. The ground surface along the interior side of the foundation may be excavated to the elevation of the top of the footing.

c. Where the soil is designated as expansive, the foundation depth and reinforcement shall be approved by the code official.

[BS] FIGURE A304.2.3(2)—NEW MASONRY CONCRETE FOUNDATION


EXISTING STUD WALL WITH SOLE PLATE
EXISTING SHEATHING MATERIAL OVER EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING 2x BLOCKING OR RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EXISTING CRIPPLE STUD WALL
EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
2x6 SILL PLATE WITH 1 IN. OF DRYPACK FOR FULL BEARING
NEW ANCHORS SPACED AS REQUIRED BY TABLE A304.3.1. SEE FIGURE A304.3.1(1) FOR PLATE WASHER REQUIREMENTS
1-#4 CONTINUOUS AT TOP OF WALL
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL
H NOT TO EXCEED 4'-0" WITHOUT ENGINEERING
6" MIN
7" MIN
D
3" CLR.
T
F
3" CLR
W
2-#4 CONTINUOUS IN FOOTING

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] A304.2.4 New concrete foundations. New concrete foundations shall have a minimum compressive strength of 2,500 pounds per square inch (17.24 MPa) at 28 days.

[BS] A304.2.5 New hollow-unit masonry foundations. New hollow-unit masonry foundations shall be solidly grouted. The grout shall have minimum compressive strength of 2,000 pounds per square inch (13.79 MPa). Mortar shall be Type M or S.

[BS] A304.2.6 New sill plates. Where new sill plates are used in conjunction with new foundations, they shall be minimum two times nominal thickness and shall be preservative-treated wood or naturally durable wood permitted by the building code for similar applications, and shall be marked or branded by an approved agency. Fasteners in contact with preservative-treated wood shall be hot-dip galvanized or other material permitted by the building code for similar applications. Anchors, that attach a preservative-treated sill plate to the foundation, shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum. Metal framing anchors in contact with preservative-treated wood shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A653 with a G185 coating.

[BS] A304.3 Foundation sill plate anchorage.

[BS] A304.3.1 Existing perimeter foundations. Where the building has an existing continuous perimeter foundation, all perimeter wall sill plates shall be anchored to the foundation with adhesive anchors or expansion anchors in accordance with Table A304.3.1.

Anchors shall be installed in accordance with Figure A304.3.1(1), with the plate washer installed between the nut and the sill plate. The nut shall be tightened to a snugtight condition after curing is complete for adhesive anchors and after expansion wedge engagement for expansion anchors. Anchors shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Expansion anchors shall not be used where the installation causes surface cracking of the foundation wall at the locations of the anchor.

Where existing conditions prevent anchor installations through the top of the sill plate, this connection shall be made in accordance with Figure A304.3.1(2), A304.3.1(3) or A304.3.1(4). Alternative anchorage methods having a minimum shear capacity of 900 pounds (4003 N) per connection parallel to the wall shall be permitted. The spacing of these alternative connections shall comply with the maximum spacing requirements of Table A304.3.1 for $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

[BS] TABLE A304.3.1—SILL PLATE ANCHORAGE AND CRIPPLE WALL BRACING

NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE CRIPPLE WALLS	MINIMUM SILL PLATE CONNECTION AND MAXIMUM SPACING[a, b, c]	AMOUNT OF BRACING FOR EACH WALL LINE[d, e, f]	
		A combination of exterior walls finished with Portland cement plaster and roofing using clay tile or concrete tile weighing more than 6 psf (287 N/m^2)	All other conditions
One story	$^1/_2$ inch spaced 6 feet, 0 inch center-to-center with washer plate	Each end and not less than 50 percent of the wall length	Each end and not less than 40 percent of the wall length
Two stories	$^1/_2$ inch spaced 4 feet, 0 inch center-to-center with washer plate; or $^5/_8$ inch spaced 6 feet, 0 inch center-to-center with washer plate	Each end and not less than 70 percent of the wall length	Each end and not less than 50 percent of the wall length
Three stories	$^5/_8$ inch spaced 4 feet, 0 inch center-to-center with washer plate	100 percent of the wall length[g]	Each end and not less than 80 percent of the wall length[g]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 47.88 N/m^2.

a. Sill plate anchors shall be adhesive anchors or expansion anchors in accordance with Section A304.3.1.

b. All washer plates shall be 3 inches by 3 inches by 0.229 inch minimum. The hole in the plate washer is permitted to be diagonally slotted with a width of up to $^3/_{16}$ inch larger than the bolt diameter and a slot length not to exceed $1^3/_4$ inches, provided that a standard cut washer is placed between the plate washer and the nut.

c. This table shall also be permitted for the spacing of the alternative connections specified in Section A304.3.1.

d. See Figure A304.4.2 for braced panel layout.

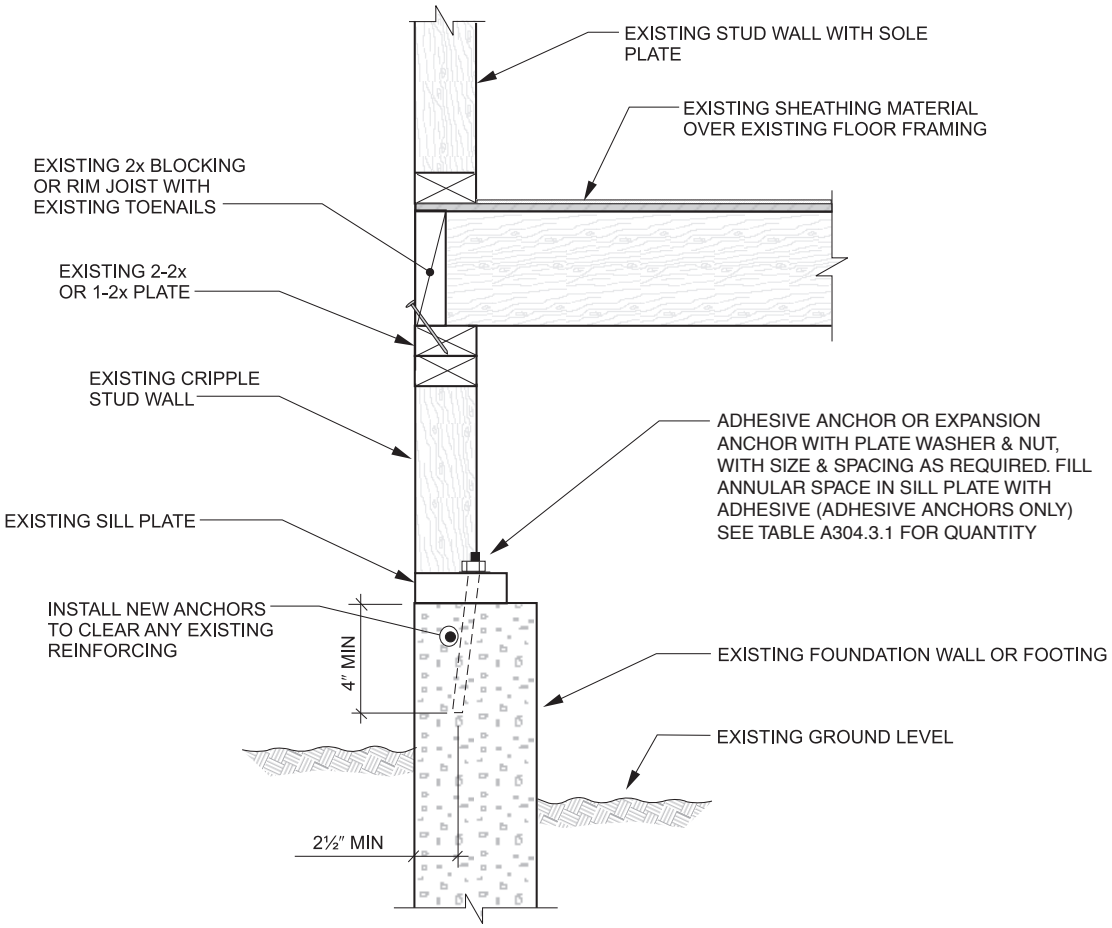
e. Braced panels at ends of walls shall be located as near to the end as possible.

f. All panels along a wall shall be nearly equal in length and shall be nearly equal in spacing along the length of the wall.

g. The minimum required underfloor ventilation openings are permitted in accordance with Section A304.4.4.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE A304.3.1(1)—SILL PLATE *ANCHORING* TO EXISTING FOUNDATION[a, b]

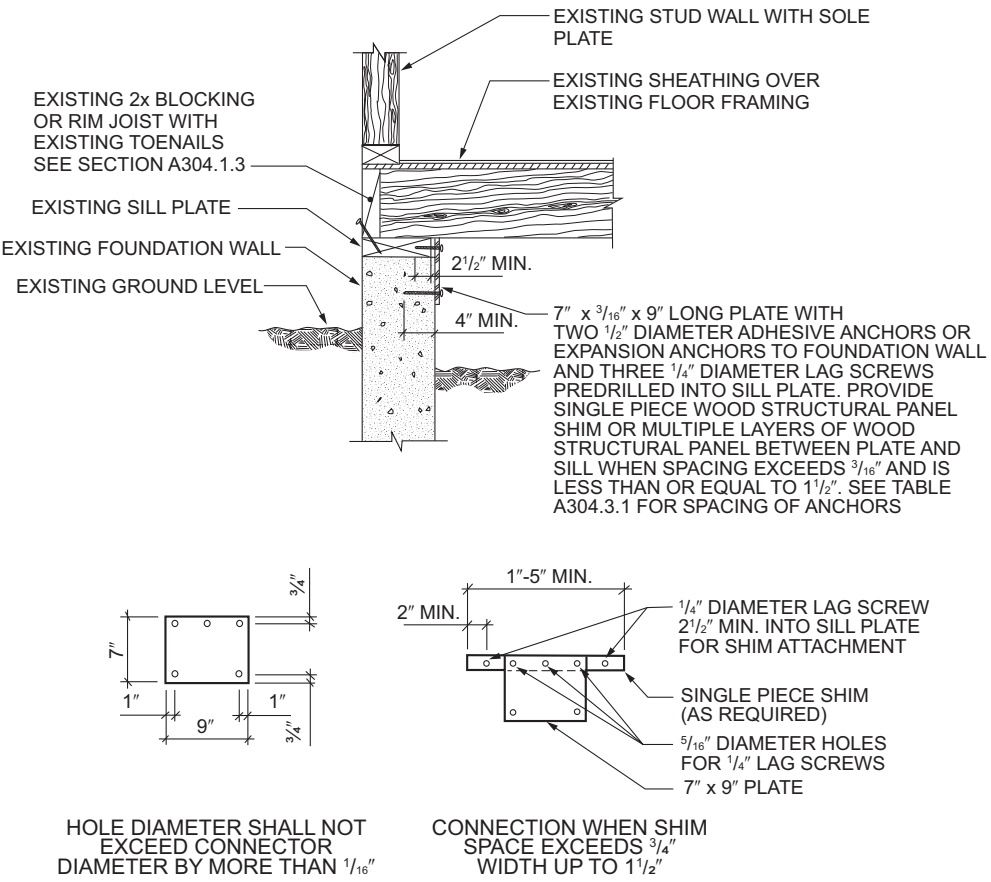

EXISTING STUD WALL WITH SOLE PLATE
EXISTING SHEATHING MATERIAL OVER EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING 2x BLOCKING OR RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EXISTING CRIPPLE STUD WALL
ADHESIVE ANCHOR OR EXPANSION ANCHOR WITH PLATE WASHER & NUT, WITH SIZE & SPACING AS REQUIRED. FILL ANNULAR SPACE IN SILL PLATE WITH ADHESIVE (ADHESIVE ANCHORS ONLY) SEE TABLE A304.3.1 FOR QUANTITY
EXISTING SILL PLATE
INSTALL NEW ANCHORS TO CLEAR ANY EXISTING REINFORCING
4″ MIN
EXISTING FOUNDATION WALL OR FOOTING
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL
2½″ MIN

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Plate washers shall comply with the following:
   $^{1}/_{2}$-inch anchor or bolt—3 inches × 3 inches × 0.229 inch minimum.
   $^{5}/_{8}$-inch anchor or bolt—3 inches × 3 inches × 0.229 inch minimum.
   A diagonal slot in the plate washer is permitted in accordance with Table A304.3.1, Note b.

b. See Figure A304.4.1(1) or A304.4.1(2) for cripple wall bracing.

[BS] FIGURE A304.3.1(2)—ALTERNATIVE SILL PLATE ANCHORING IN EXISTING FOUNDATION—WITHOUT CRIPPLE WALLS AND FLOOR FRAMING NOT PARALLEL TO FOUNDATIONS[a, b]

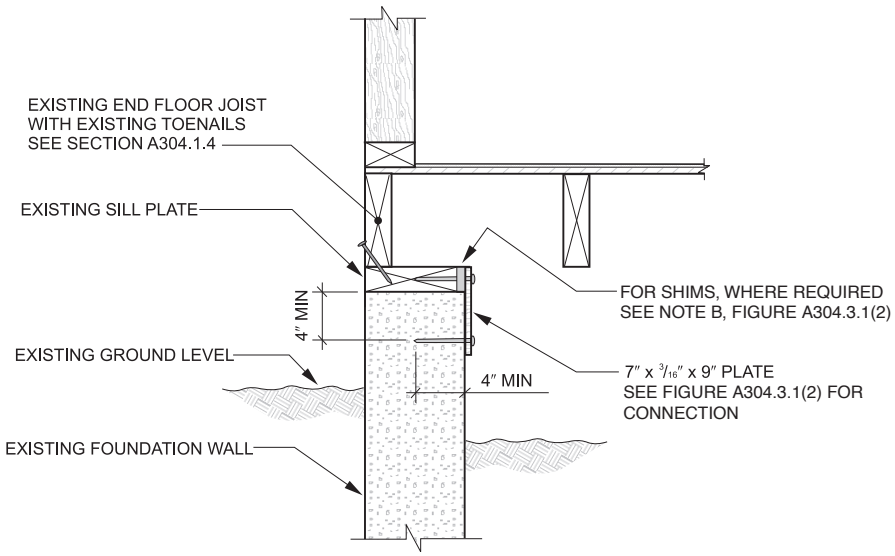

EXISTING STUD WALL WITH SOLE PLATE
EXISTING SHEATHING OVER EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING 2x BLOCKING OR RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS SEE SECTION A304.1.3
EXISTING SILL PLATE
EXISTING FOUNDATION WALL
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL
2 1/2″ MIN.
4″ MIN.
7″ x 3/16″ x 9″ LONG PLATE WITH TWO 1/2″ DIAMETER ADHESIVE ANCHORS OR EXPANSION ANCHORS TO FOUNDATION WALL AND THREE 1/4″ DIAMETER LAG SCREWS PREDRILLED INTO SILL PLATE. PROVIDE SINGLE PIECE WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHIM OR MULTIPLE LAYERS OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BETWEEN PLATE AND SILL WHEN SPACING EXCEEDS 3/16″ AND IS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO 1 1/2″. SEE TABLE A304.3.1 FOR SPACING OF ANCHORS
3/4″
7″
1″
1″
9″
3/4″
HOLE DIAMETER SHALL NOT EXCEED CONNECTOR DIAMETER BY MORE THAN 1/16″
1″-5″ MIN.
2″ MIN.
1/4″ DIAMETER LAG SCREW 2 1/2″ MIN. INTO SILL PLATE FOR SHIM ATTACHMENT
SINGLE PIECE SHIM (AS REQUIRED)
5/16″ DIAMETER HOLES FOR 1/4″ LAG SCREWS
7″ x 9″ PLATE
CONNECTION WHEN SHIM SPACE EXCEEDS 3/4″ WIDTH UP TO 1 1/2″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. If shim space exceeds $1^1/_2$ inches, alternative details will be required.

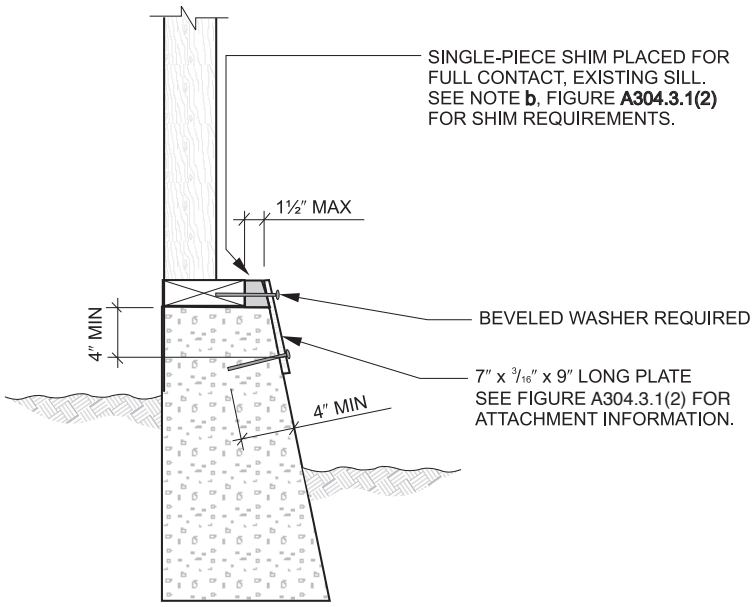
b. Where required, single piece shim shall be naturally durable wood or preservative-treated wood. If preservative-treated wood is used, it shall be isolated from the foundation system with a moisture barrier.

[BS] FIGURE A304.3.1(3)—ALTERNATIVE SILL PLATE ANCHOR TO EXISTING FOUNDATION WITHOUT CRIPPLE WALL AND FLOOR FRAMING PARALLEL TO FOUNDATIONS


EXISTING END FLOOR JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS SEE SECTION A304.1.4
EXISTING SILL PLATE
FOR SHIMS, WHERE REQUIRED SEE NOTE B, FIGURE A304.3.1(2)
4″ MIN
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL
4″ MIN
7″ x 3/16″ x 9″ PLATE SEE FIGURE A304.3.1(2) FOR CONNECTION
EXISTING FOUNDATION WALL

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] FIGURE A304.3.1(4)—SILL PLATE ANCHORING TO EXISTING FOUNDATION—ALTERNATIVE CONNECTION FOR BATTERED FOOTING


SINGLE-PIECE SHIM PLACED FOR FULL CONTACT, EXISTING SILL. SEE NOTE b, FIGURE A304.3.1(2) FOR SHIM REQUIREMENTS.
1½″ MAX
4″ MIN
BEVELED WASHER REQUIRED
7″ x 3/16″ x 9″ LONG PLATE SEE FIGURE A304.3.1(2) FOR ATTACHMENT INFORMATION.
4″ MIN

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] A304.3.2 Placement of anchors. Anchors shall be placed within 12 inches (305 mm), but not less than 9 inches (229 mm), from the ends of sill plates and shall be placed in the center of the stud space closest to the required spacing. New sill plates may be installed in pieces where necessary because of existing conditions. For lengths of sill plates 12 feet (3658 mm) or greater, anchors shall be spaced along the sill plate as specified in Table A304.3.1. For other lengths of sill plate, anchor placement shall be in accordance with Table A304.3.2.

Exception: Where physical obstructions such as fireplaces, plumbing or heating ducts interfere with the placement of an anchor, the anchor shall be placed as close to the obstruction as possible, but not less than 9 inches (229 mm) from the end of the plate. Center-to-center spacing of the anchors shall be reduced as necessary to provide the minimum total number of anchors required based on the full length of the wall. Center-to-center spacing shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm).

[BS] TABLE A304.3.2—SILL PLATE ANCHORAGE FOR VARIOUS LENGTHS OF SILL PLATE[a, b]

NUMBER OF STORIES	LENGTHS OF SILL PLATE		
	Less than 12 feet to 6 feet	Less than 6 feet to 30 inches	Less than 30 inches[c]
One story	Three connections	Two connections	One connection
Two stories	Four connections for 1/2-inch anchors or bolts or three connections for 5/8-inch anchors or bolts	Two connections	One connection
Three stories	Four connections	Two connections	One connection

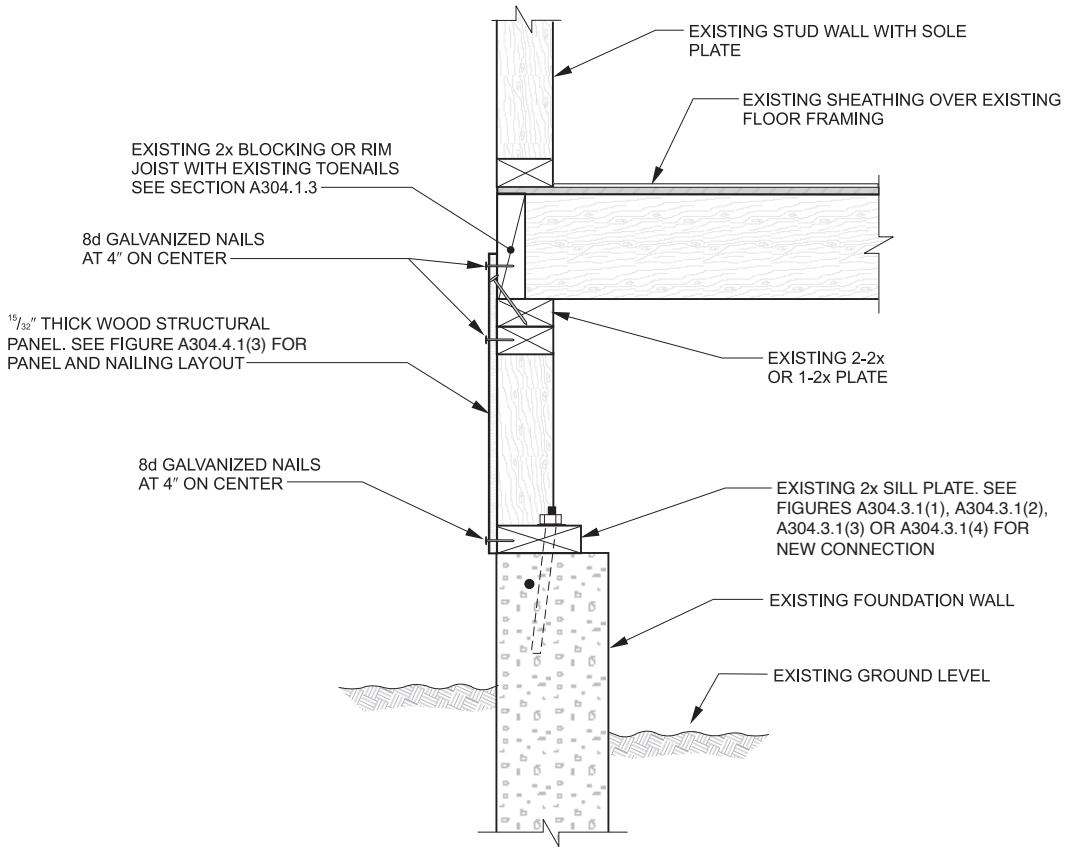
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. Connections shall be either adhesive anchors or expansion anchors.
b. See Section A304.3.2 for minimum end distances.
c. Connections shall be placed as near to the center of the length of plate as possible.

[BS] A304.3.3 New perimeter foundations. Sill plates for new perimeter foundations shall be anchored in accordance with Table A304.3.1 and Figure A304.2.3(1) and Table A304.2.3(1) or Figure A304.2.3(2) and Table A304.2.3(2).

[BS] A304.4 Cripple wall bracing.

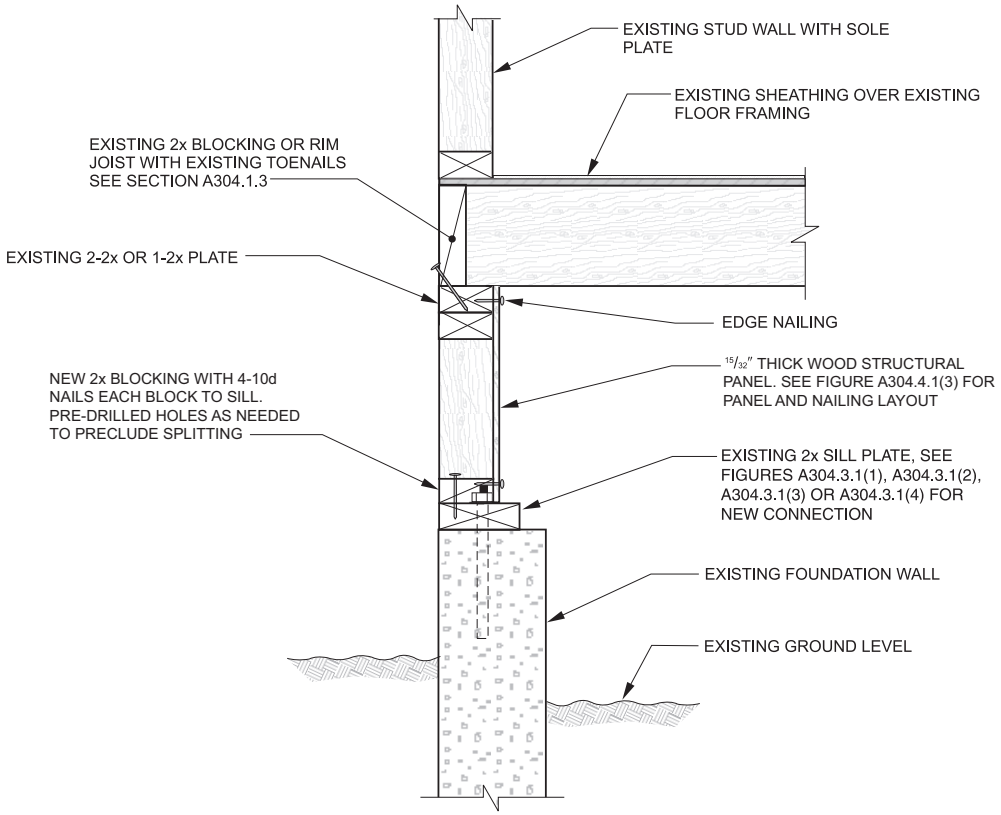
[BS] A304.4.1 General. Exterior cripple walls not exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in height shall be permitted to be specified by the prescriptive bracing method in Section A304.4. Cripple walls over 4 feet (1219 mm) in height require analysis by a registered design professional in accordance with Section A301.3.

[BS] FIGURE A304.4.1(1)—CRIPPLE WALL BRACING WITH NEW WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL ON EXTERIOR FACE OF CRIPPLE STUDS


EXISTING STUD WALL WITH SOLE PLATE
EXISTING SHEATHING OVER EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING 2x BLOCKING OR RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS SEE SECTION A304.1.3
8d GALVANIZED NAILS AT 4″ ON CENTER
15/32″ THICK WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. SEE FIGURE A304.4.1(3) FOR PANEL AND NAILING LAYOUT
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
8d GALVANIZED NAILS AT 4″ ON CENTER
EXISTING 2x SILL PLATE. SEE FIGURES A304.3.1(1), A304.3.1(2), A304.3.1(3) OR A304.3.1(4) FOR NEW CONNECTION
EXISTING FOUNDATION WALL
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
NOTE: See Figure A304.3.1(1) for sill plate anchoring.

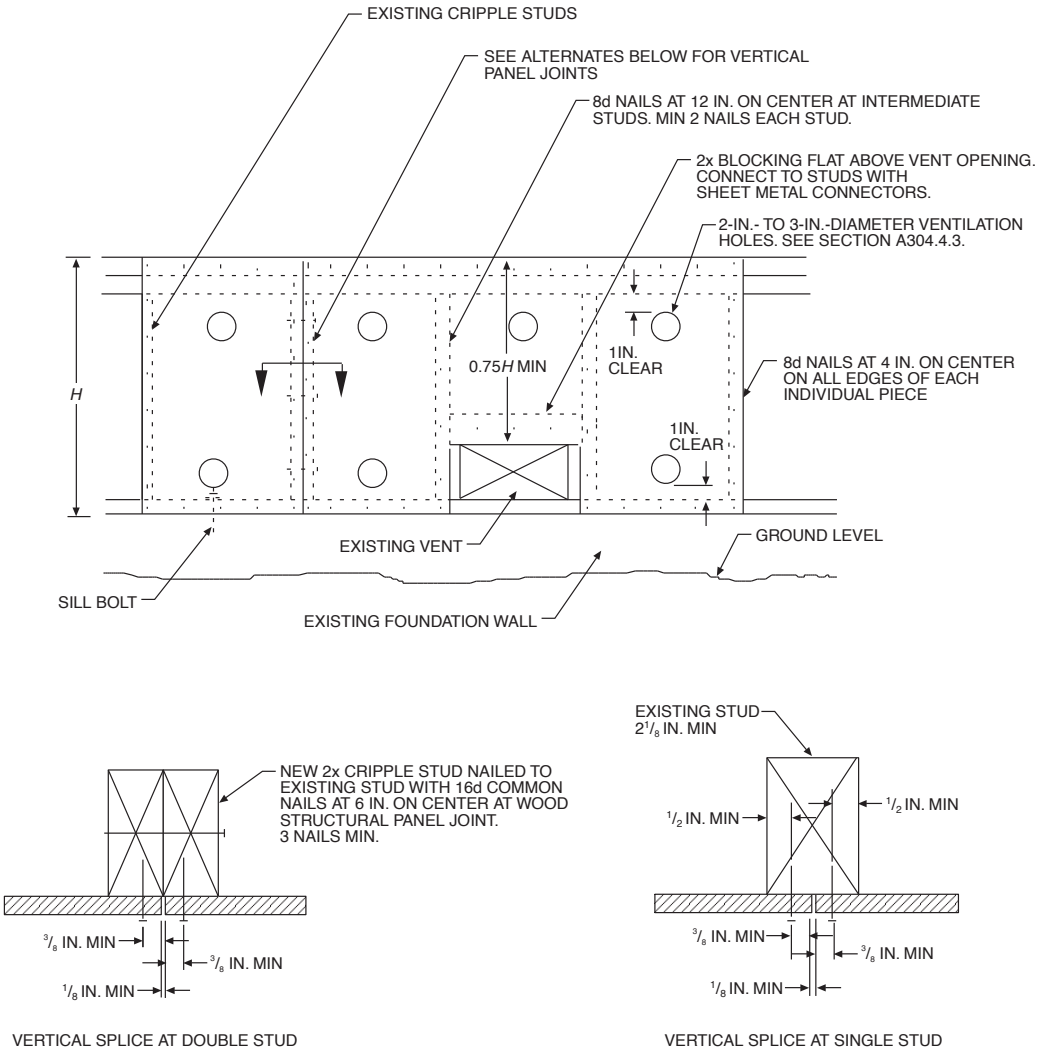
[BS] FIGURE A304.4.1(2)—CRIPPLE WALL BRACING WITH WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL ON INTERIOR FACE OF CRIPPLE STUDS


EXISTING STUD WALL WITH SOLE PLATE
EXISTING SHEATHING OVER EXISTING FLOOR FRAMING
EXISTING 2x BLOCKING OR RIM JOIST WITH EXISTING TOENAILS SEE SECTION A304.1.3
EXISTING 2-2x OR 1-2x PLATE
EDGE NAILING
15/32″ THICK WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL. SEE FIGURE A304.4.1(3) FOR PANEL AND NAILING LAYOUT
NEW 2x BLOCKING WITH 4-10d NAILS EACH BLOCK TO SILL. PRE-DRILLED HOLES AS NEEDED TO PRECLUDE SPLITTING
EXISTING 2x SILL PLATE, SEE FIGURES A304.3.1(1), A304.3.1(2), A304.3.1(3) OR A304.3.1(4) FOR NEW CONNECTION
EXISTING FOUNDATION WALL
EXISTING GROUND LEVEL

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

FIGURE A304.4.1(3) [BS] FIGURE A304.4.1(3)—PARTIAL CRIPPLE STUD WALL ELEVATION


EXISTING CRIPPLE STUDS
SEE ALTERNATES BELOW FOR VERTICAL PANEL JOINTS
8d NAILS AT 12 IN. ON CENTER AT INTERMEDIATE STUDS. MIN 2 NAILS EACH STUD.
2x BLOCKING FLAT ABOVE VENT OPENING. CONNECT TO STUDS WITH SHEET METAL CONNECTORS.
2-IN.- TO 3-IN.-DIAMETER VENTILATION HOLES. SEE SECTION A304.4.3.
H
0.75H MIN
1IN. CLEAR
8d NAILS AT 4 IN. ON CENTER ON ALL EDGES OF EACH INDIVIDUAL PIECE
1IN. CLEAR
EXISTING VENT
GROUND LEVEL
SILL BOLT
EXISTING FOUNDATION WALL
NEW 2x CRIPPLE STUD NAILED TO EXISTING STUD WITH 16d COMMON NAILS AT 6 IN. ON CENTER AT WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL JOINT. 3 NAILS MIN.
3/8 IN. MIN
3/8 IN. MIN
1/8 IN. MIN
VERTICAL SPLICE AT DOUBLE STUD
EXISTING STUD 2 1/8 IN. MIN
1/2 IN. MIN
1/2 IN. MIN
3/8 IN. MIN
3/8 IN. MIN
1/8 IN. MIN
VERTICAL SPLICE AT SINGLE STUD

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

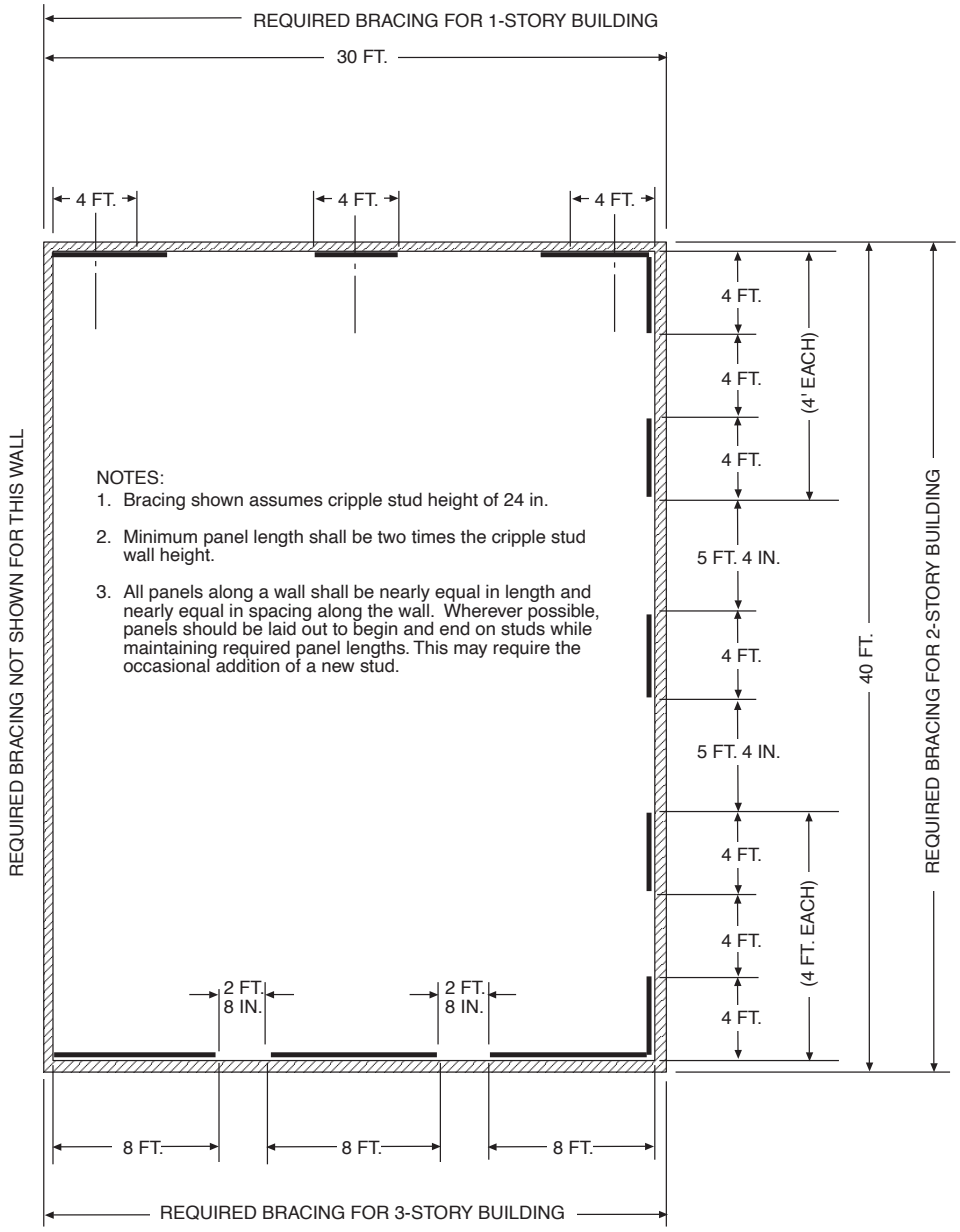
[BS] A304.4.1.1 Sheathing installation requirements. Wood structural panel sheathing shall be not less than $^{15}/_{32}$-inch (12 mm) thick and shall be installed in accordance with Figure A304.4.1(1) or A304.4.1(2). Individual pieces of wood structural panels shall be nailed with 8d common nails spaced 4 inches (102 mm) on center at all edges and 12 inches (305 mm) on center at each intermediate support with not less than two nails for each stud. Nails shall be driven so that their heads are flush with the surface of the sheathing and shall penetrate the supporting member not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm). When a nail fractures the surface, it shall be left in place and not counted as part of the required nailing. A new 8d nail shall be located within 2 inches (51 mm) of the discounted nail and be hand-driven flush with the sheathing surface. Where the installation involves horizontal joints, those joints shall occur over nominal 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) blocking installed with the nominal 4-inch (102 mm) dimension against the face of the plywood.

Vertical joints at adjoining pieces of wood structural panels shall be centered on studs such that there is a minimum $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) between the panels. Where required edge distances cannot be maintained because of the width of the existing stud, a new stud shall be added adjacent to the existing studs and connected in accordance with Figure A304.4.1(3).

[BS] A304.4.2 Distribution and amount of bracing. See Table A304.3.1 and Figure A304.4.2 for the distribution and amount of bracing required for each wall line. Each braced panel length must be not less than two times the height of the cripple stud. Where the minimum amount of bracing prescribed in Table A304.3.1 cannot be installed along any walls, the bracing must be designed in accordance with Section A301.3.

Exception: Where physical obstructions such as fireplaces, plumbing or heating ducts interfere with the placement of cripple wall bracing, the bracing shall then be placed as close to the obstruction as possible. The total amount of bracing required shall not be reduced because of obstructions.

[BS] FIGURE A304.4.2—FLOOR PLAN-CRIPPLE WALL BRACING LAYOUT


REQUIRED BRACING FOR 1-STORY BUILDING
30 FT.
4 FT.
4 FT.
4 FT.
4 FT.
4 FT.
4 FT.
(4' EACH)
4 FT.
5 FT. 4 IN.
4 FT.
5 FT. 4 IN.
4 FT.
4 FT.
4 FT.
(4 FT. EACH)
4 FT.
40 FT.
REQUIRED BRACING FOR 2-STORY BUILDING
REQUIRED BRACING NOT SHOWN FOR THIS WALL
NOTES:
1. Bracing shown assumes cripple stud height of 24 in.
2. Minimum panel length shall be two times the cripple stud wall height.
3. All panels along a wall shall be nearly equal in length and nearly equal in spacing along the wall. Wherever possible, panels should be laid out to begin and end on studs while maintaining required panel lengths. This may require the occasional addition of a new stud.
2 FT. 8 IN.
2 FT. 8 IN.
8 FT.
8 FT.
8 FT.
REQUIRED BRACING FOR 3-STORY BUILDING

Bracing determination:
1-story building—each end and not less than 40% of wall length.[a]
Transverse wall—30 ft. × 0.40 = 12 ft. minimum panel length = 4 ft. 0 in.
2-story building—each end and not less than 50% of wall length.[a]
Longitudinal wall—40 ft. × 0.50 = 20 ft. 0 in. minimum of bracing.
3-story building—each end and not less than 80% of wall length.[a]
Transverse wall —30 ft. × 0.80 = 24 ft. 0 in. minimum of bracing.
a. See Table 304.3.1 for buildings with both plaster walls and roofing exceeding 6 psf.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 42.88 N/m^2.

[BS] A304.4.3 Stud space ventilation. Where bracing materials are installed on the interior face of studs forming an enclosed space between the new bracing and the existing exterior finish, each braced stud space must be ventilated. Adequate ventilation and access for future inspection shall be provided by drilling one 2-inch to 3-inch-diameter (51 mm to 76 mm) round hole through the sheathing, nearly centered between each stud at the top and bottom of the cripple wall. Such holes should be spaced not less than 1 inch (25 mm) clear from the sill or top plates. In stud spaces containing sill bolts, the hole shall be located on the centerline of the sill bolt but not closer than 1 inch (25 mm) clear from the nailing edge of the sheathing. Where existing blocking occurs within the stud space, additional ventilation holes shall be placed above and below the blocking, or the existing block shall be removed and a new nominal 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) block shall be installed with the nominal 4-inch (102 mm) dimension against the face of the plywood. For stud heights less than 18 inches (457 mm), only one ventilation hole need be provided.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] A304.4.4 Existing underfloor ventilation. Existing underfloor ventilation shall not be reduced without providing equivalent new ventilation as close to the existing ventilation as possible. Braced panels may include underfloor ventilation openings where the height of the opening, measured from the top of the foundation wall to the top of the opening, does not exceed 25 percent of the height of the cripple stud wall; however, the length of the panel shall be increased a distance equal to the length of the opening or one stud space minimum. Where an opening exceeds 25 percent of the cripple wall height, braced panels shall not be located where the opening occurs. See Figure A304.4.1(3).

Exception: For homes with a post and pier foundation system where a new continuous perimeter foundation system is being installed, new ventilation shall be provided in accordance with the building code.

[BS] A304.5 *Inspections*. All work shall be subject to inspection by the code official including, but not limited to:

1. Placement and installation of new adhesive or expansion anchors installed in existing foundations. Special inspection *may be* required for adhesive anchors installed in existing foundations regulated by the prescriptive provisions of this chapter.
2. Installation and nailing of new cripple wall bracing.
3. Any work shall be subject to special inspection where required by the code official in accordance with the building code.

[BS] A304.5.1 Nails. All nails specified in this chapter shall be common wire nails of the following diameters and lengths:

1. 8d nails = 0.131 inch (3.3 mm) by $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).
2. 10d nails = 0.148 inch (3.8 mm) by 3 inches (76 mm).
3. 12d nails = 0.148 inch (3.8 mm) by $3^1/_4$ inches (83 mm).
4. 16d nails = 0.162 inch (4.1 mm) by $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm).

Nails used to attach metal framing connectors directly to wood members shall be as specified by the connector manufacturer in an approved report.

A304.6 Phasing of the strengthening work. *When approved by the Enforcing Agency, the strengthening work contained in this chapter may be completed in phases.*

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX A
CHAPTER A4 – EARTHQUAKE RISK REDUCTION
IN WOOD-FRAME RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS WITH SOFT, WEAK OR OPEN FRONT WALLS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER A4
EARTHQUAKE RISK REDUCTION IN WOOD-FRAME RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS WITH SOFT, WEAK OR OPEN FRONT WALLS

SECTION A401—GENERAL

[BS] A401.1 Purpose. The purpose of this chapter is to promote public welfare and safety by reducing the risk of death or injury as a result of the effects of earthquakes on existing wood-frame, multiple-unit residential buildings. The ground motions of past earthquakes have caused the loss of human life, personal injury and property damage in these types of buildings. This chapter creates minimum standards to strengthen the more vulnerable portions of these structures. Where fully followed, these minimum standards will improve the performance of these buildings but will not necessarily prevent all earthquake-related damage.

[BS] A401.2 Scope. The provisions of this chapter apply to existing buildings of wood construction that contain residential occupancies and are assigned to *Risk Category* II, and where the structure has a soft, weak or open-front wall line, and there exists one or more stories above**.**

SECTION A402—DEFINITIONS

[BS] A402.1 Definitions. Notwithstanding the applicable definitions, symbols and notations in the building code, the following definitions shall apply for the purposes of this chapter:

[BS] ASPECT RATIO. The span-width ratio for horizontal diaphragms and the height-length ratio for shear walls.

[BS] NONCONFORMING STRUCTURAL MATERIALS. Wall bracing materials other than wood structural panels or diagonal sheathing.

[BS] OPEN-FRONT WALL LINE. An exterior wall line, without vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system, that requires tributary seismic forces to be resisted by diaphragm rotation or excessive cantilever beyond parallel lines of shear walls. Diaphragms that cantilever more than 25 percent of the distance between lines of lateral force-resisting elements from which the diaphragm cantilevers shall be considered to be excessive. Exterior exit balconies of 6 feet (1829 mm) or less in width shall not be considered excessive cantilevers.

[BS] RETROFIT. An improvement of the lateral force-resisting system by alteration of existing structural elements or addition of new structural elements.

[BS] SOFT WALL LINE. A wall line whose lateral stiffness is less than that required by story drift limitations or deformation compatibility requirements of this chapter. In lieu of analysis, a soft wall line may be defined as a wall line in a story where the story stiffness is less than 70 percent of the story above for the direction under consideration.

[BS] STORY. A story as defined by the building code, including any basement or underfloor space of a building with cripple walls exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.

[BS] WALL LINE. Any length of wall along a principal axis of the building used to provide resistance to lateral loads. Parallel wall lines separated by less than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be considered to be one wall line for the distribution of loads.

[BS] WEAK WALL LINE. A wall line in a story where the story strength is less than 80 percent of the story above in the direction under consideration.

SECTION A403—ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

[BS] A403.1 General. Modifications required by the provisions in this chapter shall be designed in accordance with the *California Building Code* provisions for new construction, except as modified by this chapter.

Exception: Buildings for which the prescriptive measures provided in Section A404 apply and are used.

Alteration of the existing lateral force-resisting system or vertical load-carrying system shall not reduce the strength or stiffness of the existing structure, unless the altered structure would remain in conformance to the building code and this chapter.

[BS] A403.2 Scope of analysis. This chapter requires the alteration, repair, replacement or addition of structural elements and their connections to meet the strength and stiffness requirements herein. The lateral load-path analysis shall include the resisting elements and connections from the wood diaphragm immediately above any soft, weak or open-front wall lines to the foundation soil interface or to the uppermost story of a podium structure comprised of steel, masonry, or concrete structural systems that supports the upper wood-framed structure. Stories above the uppermost story with a soft, weak or open-front wall line shall be considered in the analysis but need not be modified. The lateral load-path analysis for added structural elements shall include evaluation of the allowable soil-bearing and lateral pressures in accordance with the building code. Where any portion of a building within the scope of this chapter is constructed on or into a slope steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33-percent slope), the lateral force-resisting system at and below the base level diaphragm shall be analyzed for the effects of concentrated lateral forces at the base caused by this hillside condition.

[BS] A403.3 Design base shear and design parameters. The design base shear in a given direction shall be permitted to be 75 percent of the value required for similar new construction in accordance with the building code. The value of R used in the design of the strengthening of any story shall not exceed the lowest value of R used in the same direction at any story above. The system overstrength factor, Ω_0, and the deflection amplification factor, C_d, shall be not less than the largest respective value corresponding to the R factor being used in the direction under consideration.

Exceptions:

1. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, values of R, Ω_0 and C_d shall be permitted to be based on the seismic force-resisting system being used to achieve the required strengthening.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C or D, values of R, Ω_0 and C_d shall be permitted to be based on the seismic force-resisting system being used to achieve the required strengthening, provided that when the strengthening is complete, the strengthened structure will not have an extreme weak story irregularity defined as Type 5b in ASCE 7, Table 12.3-2.
3. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E, values of R, Ω_0 and C_d shall be permitted to be based on the seismic force-resisting system being used to achieve the required strengthening, provided that when the strengthening is complete, the strengthened structure will not have an extreme soft story, a weak story, or an extreme weak story irregularity defined, respectively, as Types 1b, 5a and 5b in ASCE 7, Table 12.3-2.
4. For retrofit systems involving different seismic force-resisting systems in the same direction within the same story, resisting elements are permitted to be designed using the least value of R for the different structural systems found in each independent line of resistance if all of the following conditions are met:
    4.1. The building is assigned to *Risk Category* I or II.
    4.2. The building height is no more than four stories above grade plane.
    4.3. The seismic force-resisting systems of the retrofitted building comprise only wood structural panel shear walls, steel moment-resisting frames, steel cantilever columns and steel-braced frames. Values for C and Ω_0 shall be consistent with the R value used.
5. With reference to ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, ordinary, intermediate and special steel systems, and all light-frame systems shall be permitted without limitation where those systems are used only for retrofit to comply with the requirements of this chapter.

[BS] A403.3.1 Expected story strength. Despite any other requirement of Section A403.3 or A403.4, the total expected strength of retrofit elements added to any story need not exceed 1.7 times the expected strength of the story immediately above in a two-story building, or 1.3 times the expected strength of the story immediately above in a three-story or taller building, as long as the retrofit elements are located symmetrically about the center of mass of the story above, or so as to minimize torsion in the retrofitted story. Calculation of expected story strength and identification of irregularities in Section A403.3 shall be based on the expected strength of all wall lines, even if sheathed with nonconforming materials. The strength of a wall line above the retrofitted story shall be permitted to be reduced to account for inadequate load path or overturning resistance.

[BS] A403.3.2 Seismicity parameters, site class and geologic hazards. For any site designated as Site Class E, the value of F shall be taken as 1.2. Site-specific procedures are not required for compliance with this chapter. Mitigation of existing geologic site hazards such as liquefiable soil, fault rupture or landslide is not required for compliance with this chapter.

[BS] A403.4 Story drift limitations. The calculated story drift for each retrofitted story shall not exceed the allowable deformation compatible with all vertical load-resisting elements and 0.025 times the story height. The calculated story drift shall not be reduced by the effects of horizontal diaphragm stiffness but shall be increased where these effects produce rotation. Drift calculations shall be in accordance with the building code.

[BS] A403.4.1 Pole structures. The effects of rotation and soil stiffness shall be included in the calculated story drift where lateral loads are resisted by vertical elements whose required depth of embedment is determined by pole formulas. The coefficient of subgrade reaction used in deflection calculations shall be based on a geotechnical investigation conducted in accordance with the building code.

[BS] A403.5 Deformation compatibility and P Δ effects. The requirements of the building code shall apply, except as modified herein. Structural framing elements and their connections not required by design to be part of the lateral force-resisting system shall be designed and detailed to be adequate to maintain support of expected gravity loads when subjected to the expected deformations caused by seismic forces. Increased demand caused by P Δ effects and story sidesway stability shall be considered in retrofit stories that rely on the strength and stiffness of cantilever columns for lateral resistance.

[BS] A403.6 Ties and continuity. All parts of the structure included in the scope of Section A403.2 shall be interconnected as required by the building code.

[BS] A403.7 Collector elements. Collector elements shall be provided to transfer the seismic forces between the elements within the scope of Section A403.2.

[BS] A403.8 Floor diaphragms. Floor diaphragms within the scope of Section A403.2 shall be shown to have adequate strength at the following locations:

1. For straight lumber sheathed diaphragms without integral hardwood flooring throughout the diaphragm: The code official is authorized to waive the requirement where it is shown that the condition occurs in areas small enough not to affect overall building performance.
2. For all other diaphragms adequate strength shall be shown to be provided at locations where forces are transferred between the diaphragm and each new or strengthened vertical element of the seismic force-resisting system. Collector elements shall be provided where needed to distribute the transferred force over a greater length of diaphragm.

Exception: Where the existing vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system are shown to comply with this chapter, diaphragms need not be evaluated.

[BS] A403.9 Wood-framed shear walls. Wood-framed shear walls shall have strength and stiffness sufficient to resist the seismic loads and shall conform to the requirements of this section. Where new sheathing is applied to existing studs to create new wood-

framed shear walls, the new wall elements shall be considered bearing wall systems for purposes of determining seismic design parameters.

[BS] A403.9.1 Gypsum or cement plaster products. Gypsum or cement plaster products shall not be used to provide the strength required by Section A403.3 or the stiffness required by Section A403.4.

[BS] A403.9.2 Wood structural panels.

[BS] A403.9.2.1 Drift limit. Wood structural panel shear walls shall meet the story drift limitation of Section A403.4. Conformance to the story drift limitation shall be determined by approved testing or calculation. Individual shear panels shall be permitted to exceed the maximum aspect ratio, provided that the allowable story drift and allowable shear capacities are not exceeded.

[BS] A403.9.2.2 Openings. Shear walls are permitted to be designed for continuity around openings in accordance with the building code. Blocking and steel strapping shall be provided at corners of the openings to transfer forces from discontinuous boundary elements into adjoining panel elements. Alternatively, perforated shear wall provisions of the building code are permitted to be used.

[BS] A403.9.3 Hold-down connectors.

[BS] A403.9.3.1 Expansion anchors in tension. Expansion anchors that provide tension strength by friction resistance shall not be used to connect hold-down devices to existing concrete or masonry elements.

[BS] A403.9.3.2 Required depth of embedment. The required depth of embedment or edge distance for the anchor used in the hold-down connector shall be provided in the concrete or masonry below any plain concrete slab unless satisfactory evidence is submitted to the code official that shows that the concrete slab and footings are of monolithic construction.

A403.10 Steel retrofit systems. Steel retrofit systems shall have strength and stiffness sufficient to resist the seismic loads and shall conform to the requirements of this section.

A403.10.1 Special moment frames. Steel special moment frames shall comply with all applicable provisions of AISC 341, except that Section E3.4a addressing strong-column/weak-beams of AISC 341, is not required for columns that carry no gravity load.

A403.10.2 Inverted moment frame systems. Cantilevered column systems shall be permitted to be designed as inverted special, intermediate or ordinary moment frames, with corresponding moment frame seismic design coefficients, where the system satisfies the following conditions:

1. The columns carry no gravity load.
2. The columns are configured in pairs or larger groups connected by a continuous reinforced concrete foundation or grade beam.
3. The foundation or grade beam shall be designed to resist the expected plastic moment at the base of each column, computed as $R_y F_y Z$ in accordance with AISC 341.
4. The flexibility of the foundation or grade beam, considering cracked section properties of the reinforced concrete, shall be included in computing the deformation of the steel frame system.
5. The column height shall be taken as twice the actual height when checking lateral torsional buckling.

SECTION A404—PRESCRIPTIVE MEASURES FOR WEAK STORY

[BS] A404.1 Limitation. These prescriptive measures shall apply only to two-story buildings and only where deemed appropriate by the code official. These prescriptive measures rely on rotation of the second floor diaphragm to distribute the seismic load between the side and rear walls around a ground floor open area. In the absence of an existing floor diaphragm of wood structural panel or diagonal sheathing at the top of the first story, a new wood structural panel diaphragm of minimum thickness of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) and with 10d common nails at 6 inches (152 mm) on center shall be applied.

[BS] A404.1.1 Additional conditions. To qualify for these prescriptive measures, the following additional conditions need to be satisfied by the retrofitted structure:

1. Diaphragm aspect ratio L/W is less than 0.67, where W is the diaphragm dimension parallel to the soft, weak or open-front wall line and L is the distance in the orthogonal direction between that wall line and the rear wall of the ground floor open area.
2. Minimum length of side shear walls = 20 feet (6096 mm).
3. Minimum length of rear shear wall = three-fourths of the total rear wall length.
4. Plan or vertical irregularities shall not be other than a soft, weak or open-front wall line.
5. Roofing weight less than or equal to 5 pounds per square foot (240 N/m^2).
6. Aspect ratio of the full second floor diaphragm meets the requirements of the building code for new construction.

[BS] A404.2 Minimum required retrofit.

[BS] A404.2.1 Anchor size and spacing. The anchor size and spacing shall be not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm) in diameter at 32 inches (813 mm) on center. Where existing anchors are inadequate, supplemental or alternative approved connectors (such as new steel plates bolted to the side of the foundation and nailed to the sill) shall be used.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] A404.2.2 Connection to floor above. Shear wall top plates shall be connected to blocking or rim joist at upper floor with not less than 18-gage galvanized steel angle clips $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) long with 12-8d nails spaced not farther than 16 inches (406 mm) on center, or by equivalent shear transfer methods.

[BS] A404.2.3 Shear wall sheathing. The shear wall sheathing shall be not less than $^{15}/_{32}$-inch (11.9 mm), 5-ply Structural I with 10d nails at 4 inches (102 mm) on center at edges and 12 inches (305 mm) on center at field; blocked all edges with 3 by 4 board or larger. Where existing sill plates are less than 3-by thick, place flat 2-by on top of sill between studs, with flat 18-gage galvanized steel clips $4^1/_2$ inches (114 mm) long with 12-8d nails or $^3/_8$-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) lags through blocking for shear transfer to sill plate. Stagger nailing from wall sheathing between existing sill and new blocking. Anchor new blocking to foundation as specified in this section.

[BS] A404.2.4 Shear wall hold-downs. Shear walls shall be provided with hold-down anchors at each end. Two hold-down anchors are required at intersecting corners. Hold-downs shall be approved connectors with a minimum $^5/_8$-inch-diameter (15.9 mm) threaded rod or other approved anchor with a minimum allowable load of 4,000 pounds (17.8 kN). Anchor embedment in concrete shall be not less than 5 inches (127 mm). Tie-rod systems shall be not less than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) in diameter unless using high-strength cable. High-strength cable elongation shall not exceed $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) under a 4,000 pound (17.8 kN) axial load.

SECTION A405—MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION

[BS] A405.1 New materials. New materials shall meet the requirements of the *California Building Code*, except where allowed by this chapter.

[BS] A405.2 Allowable foundation and lateral pressures. The use of default values from the building code for continuous and isolated concrete spread footings shall be permitted. For soil that supports embedded vertical elements, Section A403.4.1 shall apply.

[BS] A405.3 Existing materials. The physical condition, strengths and stiffnesses of existing building materials shall be taken into account in any analysis required by this chapter. The verification of existing materials conditions and their conformance to these requirements shall be made by physical observation, material testing or record drawings as determined by the registered design professional subject to the approval of the code official.

[BS] A405.3.1 Wood-structural-panel shear walls.

[BS] A405.3.1.1 Existing nails. Where the required calculations rely on design values for common nails or surfaced dry lumber, their use in construction shall be verified by exposure.

[BS] A405.3.1.2 Existing plywood. Where verification of the existing plywood is by use of record drawings alone, plywood shall be assumed to be of three plies.

[BS] A405.3.2 Existing wood framing. Wood framing is permitted to use the design stresses specified in the building code under which the building was constructed or other stress criteria approved by the code official.

[BS] A405.3.3 Existing structural steel. All existing structural steel shall be permitted to be assumed to comply with ASTM A36. Existing pipe or tube columns shall be assumed to be of minimum wall thickness unless verified by testing or exposure.

[BS] A405.3.4 Existing concrete. All existing concrete footings shall be permitted to be assumed to be plain concrete with a compressive strength of 2,000 pounds per square inch (13.8 MPa). Existing concrete compressive strength taken greater than 2,000 pounds per square inch (13.8 MPa) shall be verified by testing, record drawings or department records.

[BS] A405.3.5 Existing sill plate anchorage. The analysis of existing cast-in-place anchors shall be permitted to assume proper anchor embedment for purposes of evaluating shear resistance to lateral loads.

SECTION A406—CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

[BS] A406.1 General. The plans shall show all information necessary for plan review and for construction and shall accurately reflect the design. The plans shall contain a note that states that this retrofit was designed in compliance with the criteria of this chapter.

[BS] A406.2 Existing construction. The plans shall show existing diaphragm and shear wall sheathing and framing materials; fastener type and spacing; diaphragm and shear wall connections; continuity ties; collector elements; and the portion of the existing materials that needs verification during construction. If the cap allowed by Section A403.3.1 is used to limit the scope of retrofit, the foregoing information shall be shown for each retrofitted story and at least one story above the uppermost retrofitted story. If the cap allowed by Section A403.3.1 is not used, the foregoing information need only be shown for each retrofitted story and for the floor at the top of that story.

[BS] A406.3 New construction.

[BS] A406.3.1 Foundation plan elements. The foundation plan shall include the size, type, location and spacing of all anchor bolts with the required depth of embedment, edge and end distance; the location and size of all shear walls and all columns for braced frames or moment frames; referenced details for the connection of shear walls, braced frames or moment-resisting frames to their footing; and referenced sections for any grade beams and footings.

[BS] A406.3.2 Framing plan elements. The framing plan shall include the length, location and material of shear walls; the location and material of frames; references or details for the column-to-beam connectors, beam-to-wall connections and shear transfers at floor and roof diaphragms; and the required nailing and length for wall top plate splices.

[BS] A406.3.3 Shear wall schedule, notes and details. Shear walls shall have a referenced schedule on the plans that includes the correct shear wall capacity in pounds per foot (N/m); the required fastener type, length, gage and head size; and a complete specification for the sheathing material and its thickness. The schedule shall also show the required location of 3-inch (76 mm) nominal or two 2-inch (51 mm) nominal edge members; the spacing of shear transfer elements such as framing anchors or added sill plate nails; the required hold-down with its bolt, screw or nail sizes; and the dimensions, lumber grade and species of the attached framing member.

Notes shall show required edge distance for fasteners of structural wood panels and framing members; required flush nailing at the plywood surface; limits of mechanical penetrations; and the sill plate material assumed in the design. The limits of mechanical penetrations shall be detailed showing the maximum notching and drilled hole sizes.

[BS] A406.3.4 General notes. General notes shall show the requirements for material testing, special inspection and structural observation.

SECTION A407—QUALITY CONTROL

[BS] A407.1 Structural observation. Structural observation, in accordance with Section 1704.6 of the *California Building Code* is required, regardless of seismic design category, height or other conditions. Structural observation shall include visual observation of work for conformance to the approved construction documents and confirmation of existing conditions assumed during design.

A407.2 Contractor responsibility. Contractor responsibility shall be in accordance with Section 1704.4 of the *California Building Code*.

A407.3 Testing and inspection. Structural testing and inspection for new construction materials, submittals, reports and certificates of compliance shall be in accordance with Sections 1704 and 1705 of the *California Building Code*. Work done to comply with this chapter shall not be eligible for Exceptions 1, 2, or 3 of Section 1704.2 of the *California Building Code* or for the exception to Section 1705.13.2 of the *California Building Code*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX A
CHAPTER A5 – REFERENCED STANDARDS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter	X			X	X																			
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER A5
REFERENCED STANDARDS

SECTION A501—REFERENCED STANDARDS

A501.1 General. See Table A501.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title and the section or sections of this appendix that references the standard.

TABLE A501.1—REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
AISC 341—22	*Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings*	A403.10.1, A403.10.2
ASCE/SEI 7—22	*Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures with Supplement No. 1*	A104.1, A205.1, A206.1, A206.2, A206.3, A206.4, A206.7, A403.3
ASTM A36/A36M—19	*Specification for Carbon Structural Steel*	A405.3.3
ASTM A653/A653M—20	*Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by Hot-Dip Process*	A304.2.6
ASTM B695—04(2009)	*Standard Specification for Coating of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel*	A304.2.6
ASTM C67/C67M—21	*Test Methods of Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile*	A106.2.3.1
ASTM C140/C140M—21	*Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units*	A106.2.3.1
ASTM C496—96/ C496M—11	*Standard Test Method for Splitting Tensile Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens*	A104.1, A106.2.3.3
ASTM C1531—15	*Standard Test Methods for In Situ Measurement of Masonry Mortar Joint Shear Strength Index*	A106.2.3.2
ASTM E488/E488M—15	*Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements*	A107.5.1, A107.5.3
ASTM E519/E519M—2010	*Standard Test Method for Diagonal Tension (Shear) in Masonry Assemblages*	A104.1
CBC—01	*California Building Code*	A202.1
CBC—07	*California Building Code*	A202.1
CBC—10	*California Building Code*	A202.1
CBC—13	*California Building Code*	A202.1
CBC—16	*California Building Code*	A202.1
CBC—19	*California Building Code*	A202.1
CBC—22	*California Building Code*	A202.1
CBC—25	*California Building Code*	A102.2, A105.1, A105.4, A202.1, A203.1, A204.1, A205.1, A205.3, A205.3.1, A205.4, A301.3, A304.1.1, A403.1, A405.1, A407.1, A407.2, A407.3
TMS 402—22	*Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures*	A105.4, Table A108.1(2)
UBC—97	*Uniform Building Code*	A202.1

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX B
SUPPLEMENTARY ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPENDIX

B

SUPPLEMENTARY ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User notes:

About this appendix: *Chapters 11A and 11B of the California Building Code* contain provisions that set forth requirements for accessibility to buildings and their associated sites and facilities for people with physical disabilities. Appendix B was added to address accessibility in construction for items that are not typically enforceable through the traditional building code enforcement process.

SECTION B101—QUALIFIED HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES

[BE] B101.1 General. Qualified historic buildings and facilities shall comply with Sections B101.2 through B101.5.

[BE] B101.2 Qualified historic buildings and facilities. These procedures shall apply to buildings and facilities designated as historic structures that undergo alterations or a change of occupancy.

[BE] B101.3 Qualified historic buildings and facilities subject to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. Where an alteration or change of occupancy is undertaken to a qualified historic building or facility that is subject to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, the federal agency with jurisdiction over the undertaking shall follow the Section 106 process. Where the state historic preservation officer or Advisory Council on Historic Preservation determines that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, ramps, entrances, or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, the alternative requirements of Section 306.7.16 for that element are permitted.

[BE] B101.4 Qualified historic buildings and facilities not subject to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act. Where an alteration or change of occupancy is undertaken to a qualified historic building or facility that is not subject to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, and the entity undertaking the alterations believes that compliance with the requirements for accessible routes, ramps, entrances or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building or facility, the entity shall consult with the state historic preservation officer. Where the state historic preservation officer determines that compliance with the accessibility requirements for accessible routes, ramps, entrances or toilet facilities would threaten or destroy the historical significance of the building or facility, the alternative requirements of Section 306.7.18 for that element are permitted.

[BE] B101.4.1 Consultation with interested persons. Interested persons shall be invited to participate in the consultation process, including state or local accessibility officials, individuals with disabilities, and organizations representing individuals with disabilities.

[BE] B101.4.2 Certified local government historic preservation programs. Where the state historic preservation officer has delegated the consultation responsibility for purposes of this section to a local government historic preservation program that has been certified in accordance with Section 101 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 [(16 U.S.C. 470a(c)] and implementing regulations (36 CFR 61.5), the responsibility shall be permitted to be carried out by the appropriate local government body or official.

[BE] B101.5 Displays. In qualified historic buildings and facilities where alternative requirements of Section 306.7.16 are permitted, displays and written information shall be located where they can be seen by a seated person. Exhibits and signs displayed horizontally shall be 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum above the floor.

SECTION B102—FIXED TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES AND STATIONS

[BE] B102.1 General. Existing fixed transportation facilities and stations shall comply with Section B102.2.

[BE] B102.2 Existing facilities—key stations. Rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high-speed rail and other fixed guideway systems, altered stations, and intercity rail and key stations, as defined under criteria established by the Department of Transportation in Subpart C of 49 CFR Part 37, shall comply with Sections B102.2.1 through B102.2.3.

[BE] B102.2.1 Accessible route. One accessible route, or more, from an accessible entrance to those areas necessary for use of the transportation system shall be provided. The accessible route shall include the features specified in Section E109.2 of the *California Building Code*, except that escalators shall comply with Section 3004.2.2 of the *California Building Code*. Where technical unfeasibility in existing stations requires the accessible route to lead from the public way to a paid area of the transit system, an accessible fare collection machine complying with Section E109.2.3 of the *California Building Code* shall be provided along such accessible route.

[BE] B102.2.2 Platform and vehicle floor coordination. Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with applicable provisions of 36 CFR Part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (250 mm) minimum above top of rail.

Exception: Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street-level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (250 mm).

[BE] B102.2.3 Direct connections. New direct connections to commercial, retail or residential facilities shall, to the maximum extent feasible, have an accessible route complying with Section 306.7.1 from the point of connection to boarding platforms and

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

transportation system elements used by the public. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and transportation system elements used by the public.

SECTION B103—DWELLING UNITS AND SLEEPING UNITS

[BE] B103.1 Communication features. Where dwelling units and sleeping units are altered or added, the requirements of Section E104.2 of the *California Building Code* shall apply only to the units being altered or added until the number of units with accessible communication features complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

SECTION B104—REFERENCED STANDARDS

[BE] B104.1 General. See Table B104.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

[BS] TABLE B104.1—REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
Y3.H626 2P	*National Historic Preservation J101.2, 43/933 Act of 1966 as amended J101.3, 3rd Edition*	B101.3, B101.4, B101.4.2
IBC—24	*International Building Code*	B102.2.1, B103.1
36 CFR Part 1192	*Americans with Disabilities Act Guidelines for Transportation Vehicles—Rapid Rail Vehicles and Systems*	B102.2.2
49 CFR Part 37 Subpart C	*Alteration of Transportation Facilities by Public Entities Department of Transportation*	B102.2

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX C
CHAPTER C1 – GABLE END RETROFIT FOR HIGH-WIND AREAS

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPENDIX

C

GUIDELINES FOR THE WIND RETROFIT OF EXISTING BUILDINGS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User notes:

About this appendix: Appendix C is intended to provide guidance for retrofitting existing structures to strengthen their resistance to wind forces. This appendix is similar in scope to Appendix A, which addresses seismic retrofits for existing buildings, except that the subject matter is related to wind retrofits. These retrofits are voluntary measures that serve to better protect the public and reduce damage from high-wind events for existing buildings.

The purpose of this appendix is to provide prescriptive alternatives for addressing retrofit of buildings in high-wind areas. Currently there are two chapters that deal with the retrofit of gable ends and the fastening of roof decks, Appendix Chapters C1 and C2, respectively.

ICC code development note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2025 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

CHAPTER C1 GABLE END RETROFIT FOR HIGH-WIND AREAS

SECTION C101—GENERAL

[BS] C101.1 Purpose. This chapter provides prescriptive methods for partial structural retrofit of an existing building to increase its resistance to out-of-plane wind loads. It is intended for voluntary use and for reference by mitigation programs. The provisions of this chapter do not necessarily satisfy requirements for new construction. Unless specifically cited, the provisions of this chapter do not necessarily satisfy requirements for structural improvements triggered by addition, alteration, repair, change of occupancy, building relocation or other circumstances.

[BS] C101.2 Eligible buildings and gable end walls. The provisions of this chapter are applicable only to buildings that meet the following eligibility requirements:

1. The building is not more than three stories tall, from adjacent grade to the bottom plate of each gable end wall being retrofitted with this chapter.
2. The building is classified as Occupancy Group R3 or is within the scope of the *California Residential Code*.
3. The structure includes one or more wood-framed gable end walls, either conventionally framed or metal-plate-connected.

In addition, the provisions of this chapter are applicable only to gable end walls that meet the following eligibility requirements:

1. Each gable end wall has or shall be provided with studs or vertical webs spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center maximum.
2. Each gable end wall has a maximum height of 16 feet (4877 mm).

[BS] C101.3 Compliance Eligible gable end walls in eligible buildings may be retrofitted in accordance with this chapter. Other modifications required for compliance with this chapter shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *California Building Code* or *California Residential Code* provisions for new construction, except as specifically provided for by this chapter.

SECTION C102—DEFINITIONS

[BS] C102.1 Definitions. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter, have the meanings shown herein.

[BS] ANCHOR BLOCK. A piece of lumber secured to horizontal braces and filling the gap between existing framing members for the purpose of restraining horizontal braces from movement perpendicular to the framing members.

[BS] COMPRESSION BLOCK. A piece of lumber used to restrain in the compression mode (force directed toward the interior of the attic) an existing or retrofit stud. It is attached to a horizontal brace and bears directly against the existing or retrofit stud.

[BS] CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END. A gable end framed with studs whose faces are perpendicular to the gable end wall.

[BS] GABLE END FRAME. A factory or site-fabricated frame, installed as a complete assembly that incorporates vertical webs with their faces parallel to the plane of the frame.

[BS] HORIZONTAL BRACE. A piece of lumber used to restrain both compression and tension loads applied by a retrofit stud. It is typically installed horizontally on the top of attic floor framing members (truss bottom chords or ceiling joists) or on the bottom of pitched roof framing members (truss top chord or rafters).

[BS] HURRICANE TIES. Manufactured metal connectors designed to provide uplift and lateral restraint for roof framing members.

[BS] NAIL PLATE. A manufactured metal plate made of galvanized steel with factory-punched holes for fasteners. A nail plate may have the geometry of a strap.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] RETROFIT. The voluntary process of strengthening or improving buildings or structures, or individual components of buildings or structures for the purpose of making existing conditions better serve the purpose for which they were originally intended or the purpose that current building codes intend.

[BS] RETROFIT STUD. A lumber member used to structurally supplement an existing gable end wall stud or gable end frame web.

[BS] STUD-TO-PLATE CONNECTOR. A manufactured metal connector designed to connect studs to plates.

SECTION C103—MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION

[BS] C103.1 Existing materials. Existing wood materials that will be part of the retrofitting work (such as trusses, rafters, ceiling joists, top plates and wall studs) shall be in sound condition and free from defects or damage that substantially reduces the load-carrying capacity of the member. Any wood materials found to be damaged or deteriorated shall be strengthened or replaced with new materials to provide a net dimension of sound wood equivalent to its undamaged original dimensions.

[BS] C103.2 New materials. All new materials shall comply with the standards for those materials as specified in the *California Building Code* or the *California Residential Code*.

[BS] C103.3 Material specifications for retrofits. Materials for retrofitting gable end walls shall comply with Table C103.3.

[BS] TABLE C103.3—MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS FOR RETROFITS[a]

COMPONENT	MINIMUM SIZE OR THICKNESS	MINIMUM MATERIAL GRADE	MINIMUM CAPACITY
Anchor blocks, compression blocks and horizontal braces	2 × 4 nominal lumber	#2 Spruce-Pine-Fir or better	NA
Nail plates	20 gage thickness 8d minimum nail holes	Galvanized sheet steel	NA
Retrofit studs	2 × 4 nominal lumber	#2 Spruce-Pine-Fir or better	NA
Gusset angle	14 gage thickness	Galvanized sheet steel	350 pounds uplift and lateral load
Stud-to-plate connector	20 gage thickness	Galvanized sheet steel	500 pounds uplift
Metal plate connectors, straps and anchors	20 gage thickness	Galvanized sheet steel	NA

For SI: 1 pound = 4.4 N.
NA = Not Applicable.
a. Metal plate connectors, nail plates, stud-to-plate connectors, straps and anchors shall be products approved for connecting wood-to-wood or wood-to-concrete as appropriate.

[BS] C103.4 Twists in straps. Straps shall be permitted to be twisted or bent where they transition between framing members or connection points. Straps shall be bent only once at a given location though it is permissible that they be bent or twisted at multiple locations along their length.

[BS] C103.5 Fasteners. Fasteners shall meet the requirements of Table C103.5, Sections C103.5.1 and C103.5.2, and shall be permitted to be screws or nails meeting the minimum length requirement shown in the figures and specified in the tables of this appendix. Fastener spacing shall meet the requirements of Section C103.5.3.

[BS]TABLE C103.5—NAIL AND SCREW REQUIREMENTS

FASTENER TYPE	MINIMUM SHANK DIAMETER	MINIMUM HEAD DIAMETER	MINIMUM FASTENER LENGTH
#8 screws	NA	0.28 inches	$1^1/_4$ inches
8d common nails	0.131 inches	0.28 inches	$2^1/_2$ inches
10d common nails	0.148 inches	0.28 inches	3 inches

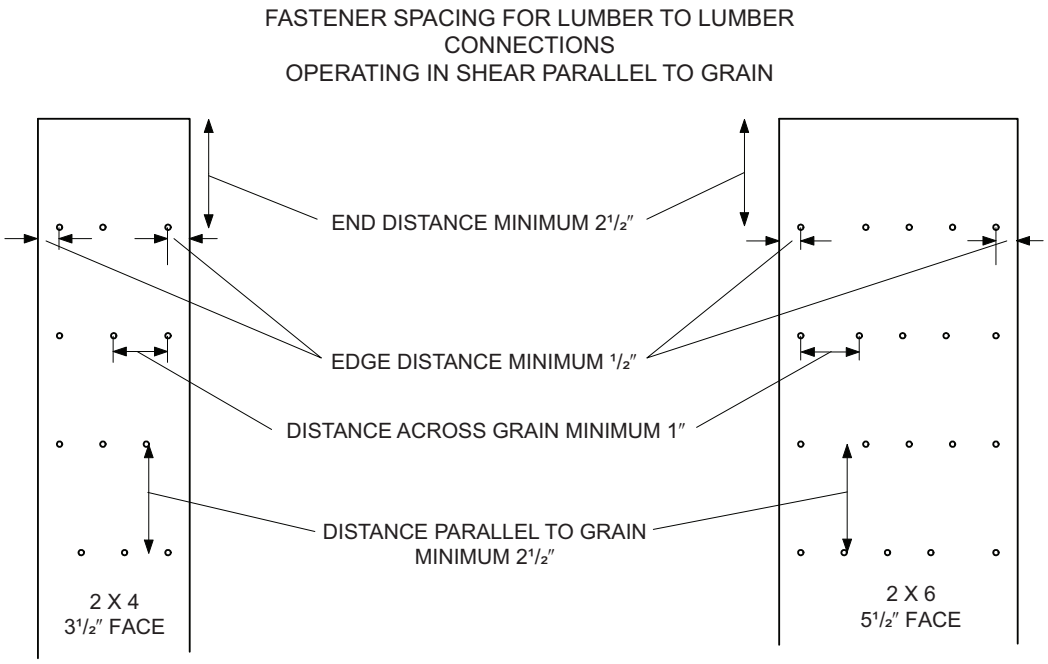
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
NA = Not Applicable.

[BS] C103.5.1 Screws. Unless otherwise indicated in the appendix, screw sizes and lengths shall be in accordance with Table C103.5. Permissible screws include deck screws and wood screws. Screws shall have not less than 1 inch (25 mm) of thread. Fine threaded screws or drywall screws shall not be permitted. Select the largest possible diameter screw such that the shank adjacent to the head fits through the hole in the strap.

[BS] C103.5.2 Nails. Unless otherwise indicated in this appendix, nail sizes and lengths shall be in accordance with Table C103.5.

[BS] C103.5.3 General fastener spacing. Fastener spacing for shear connections of lumber-to-lumber shall meet the requirements shown in Figure C103.5.3 and the following conditions.

[BS] FIGURE C103.5.3—FASTENER SPACINGS FOR LUMBER-TO-LUMBER CONNECTIONS OPERATING IN SHEAR PARALLEL TO GRAIN



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] C103.5.3.1 General fastener spacing. Fastener spacing shall meet the following conditions except as provided for in Section C103.5.3.

The distance between fasteners and the edge of lumber that is less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) deep in the direction of the fastener length shall be not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm).

1. The distance between fasteners and the edge of lumber that is more than 2 inches (51 mm) thick in the direction of the fastener length shall be not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
2. The distance between a fastener and the end of lumber shall be not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).
3. The distance between fasteners parallel to the grain (center-to-center) shall be not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).
4. The distance between fasteners perpendicular to the grain (center-to-center) in lumber that is less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm) deep in the direction of the fastener length shall be 1 inch (25 mm).
5. The distance between fasteners perpendicular to the grain (center-to-center) in lumber that is more than 2 inches (51 mm) thick in the direction of the fastener length shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

[BS] C103.5.3.2 Wood-to-wood connections of two members each 2 inches or less in thickness. Wood-to-wood connections fastener spacing shall meet the following conditions:

1. The distance between fasteners parallel to grain (center-to-center) shall be not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).
2. The distance between fasteners across grain (center-to-center) shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
3. For wood-to-wood connections of lumber at right angles, fasteners shall be spaced not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm) parallel to the grain and 1 inch (25 mm) perpendicular to the grain in any direction.

[BS] C103.5.3.3 Metal connectors for wood-to-wood connections. Metal connectors for wood-to-wood connections shall meet the following conditions.

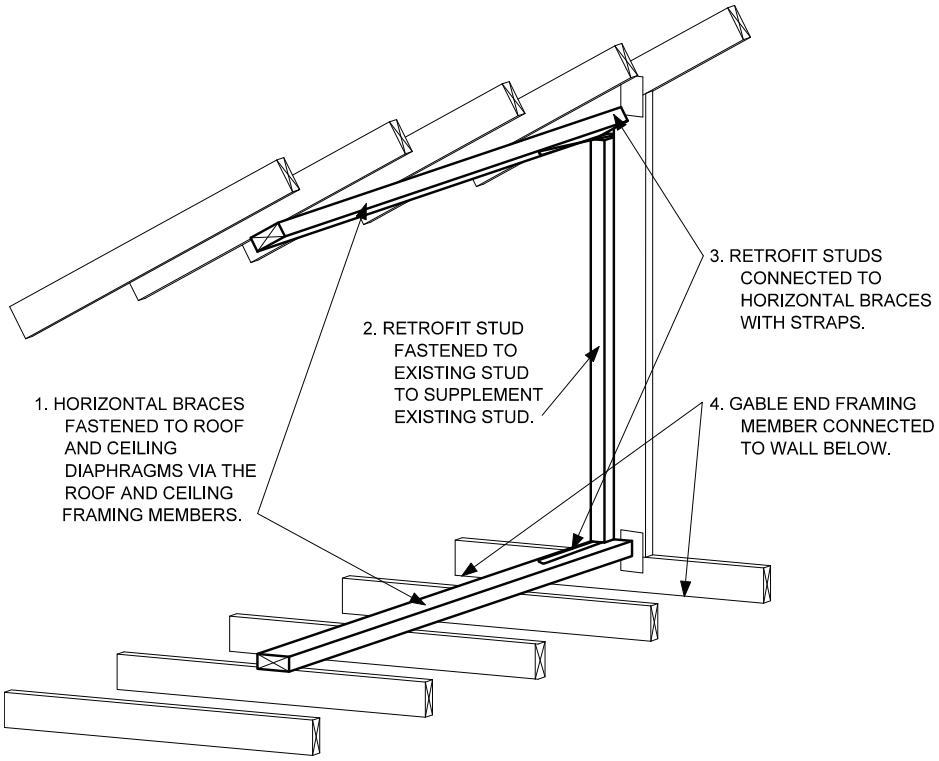
1. Fastener spacing to edge or ends of lumber shall be as dictated by the prefabricated holes in the connectors and the connectors shall be installed in a configuration that is similar to that shown by the connector manufacturer.
2. Fasteners in $1^1/_4$-inch-wide (32 mm) metal straps that are installed on the narrow face of lumber shall be a minimum $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) from either edge of the lumber. Consistent with Section C103.5.3.1, fasteners shall be permitted to be spaced according to the fastener holes fabricated into the strap.
3. Fasteners in metal nail plates shall be spaced not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) perpendicular to grain and not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) parallel to grain.

SECTION C104—RETROFITTING GABLE END WALLS TO ENHANCE WIND RESISTANCE

[BS] C104.1 General. These prescriptive methods of retrofitting are intended to increase the resistance of existing gable end construction for out-of-plane wind loads resulting from high-wind events. The ceiling diaphragm shall be comprised of minimum $^1/_2$-inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum board, minimum nominal $^3/_8$-inch-thick (9.5 mm) wood structural panels, or plaster. An overview isometric drawing of one type of gable end retrofit to improve wind resistance is shown in Figure C104.1.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE C104.1—BASIC GABLE END RETROFIT METHODOLOGY


1. HORIZONTAL BRACES FASTENED TO ROOF AND CEILING DIAPHRAGMS VIA THE ROOF AND CEILING FRAMING MEMBERS.
2. RETROFIT STUD FASTENED TO EXISTING STUD TO SUPPLEMENT EXISTING STUD.
3. RETROFIT STUDS CONNECTED TO HORIZONTAL BRACES WITH STRAPS.
4. GABLE END FRAMING MEMBER CONNECTED TO WALL BELOW.

THIS FIGURE SHOWS A TRUSS GABLE END.
THE METHODOLOGY FOR A CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END IS SIMILAR.
THE NUMBERS INDICATE A TYPICAL SEQUENCE OF INSTALLATION.
IN ORDER TO SHOW STRAPS COMPRESSION BLOCKS ARE NOT SHOWN.

[BS] C104.2 Horizontal braces. Horizontal braces shall be installed perpendicular to the roof and ceiling framing members at the location of each existing gable end stud greater than 3 feet (91 cm) in length. Unless it is adjacent to an omitted horizontal brace location, horizontal braces shall be minimum 2-inch by 4-inch (38 mm by 89 mm) dimensional lumber as defined in Section C103.3. A single horizontal brace is required at the top and bottom of each gable end stud for Retrofit Configuration A, B, or C. Two horizontal braces are required at the top and bottom of each gable end stud for Retrofit Configuration D. Maximum heights of gable end wall studs and associated retrofit studs for each Retrofit Configuration shall not exceed the values listed in Table C104.2. Horizontal braces shall be oriented with their wide faces across the roof or ceiling framing members, be fastened to not fewer than three framing members, and extend not less than 6 feet (183 cm) measured perpendicularly from the gable end plus $2^{1}/_{2}$ inches (64 mm) beyond the last top chord or bottom chord member (rafter or ceiling joist) from the gable end as shown in Figures C104.2(1), C104.2(2), C104.2(3) and C104.2(4).

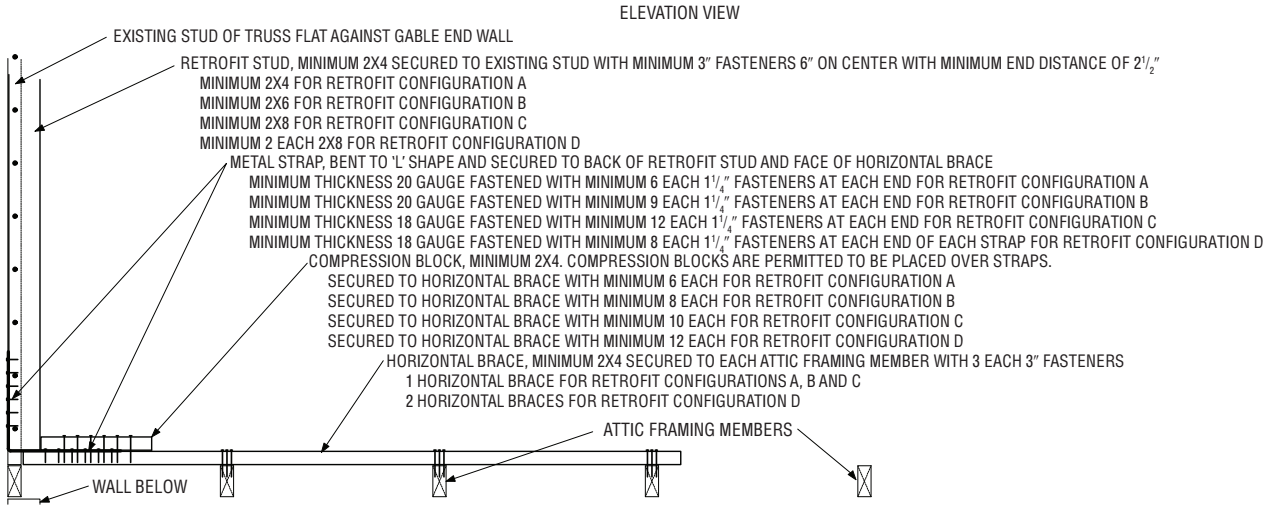
[BS] TABLE C104.2—STUD LENGTH LIMITATIONS BASED ON EXPOSURE AND DESIGN WIND SPEED

EXPOSURE CATEGORY	MAXIMUM 3-SEC GUST BASIC WIND SPEED[a]	MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF GABLE END RETROFIT STUD[b]			
C	140	8′-0″	11′-3″	14′-9″	16′-0″
C	150	7′-6″	10′-6″	13′-6″	16′-0″
C	165	7′-0″	10′-0″	12′-3″	16′-0″
C	180	7′-0″	10′-0″	12′-3″	16′-0″
C	190	6′-6″	8′-9″	11′-0″	16′-0″
B	140	8′-0″	12′-3″	16′-0″	NR[c]
B	150	8′-0″	11′-3″	14′-9″	16′-0″
B	165	8′-0″	11′-3″	14′-9″	16′-0″
B	180	7′-6″	10′-6″	13′-6″	16′-0″
B	190	7′-0″	10′-0″	12′-3″	16′-0″
	Retrofit Configuration	A	B	C	D

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NR = Not Required.
a. Interpolation between given wind speeds is not permitted.
b. Existing gable end studs less than or equal to 3 feet 0 inches in height shall not require retrofitting.
c. Configuration C is acceptable to 16 feet 0 inches maximum height.

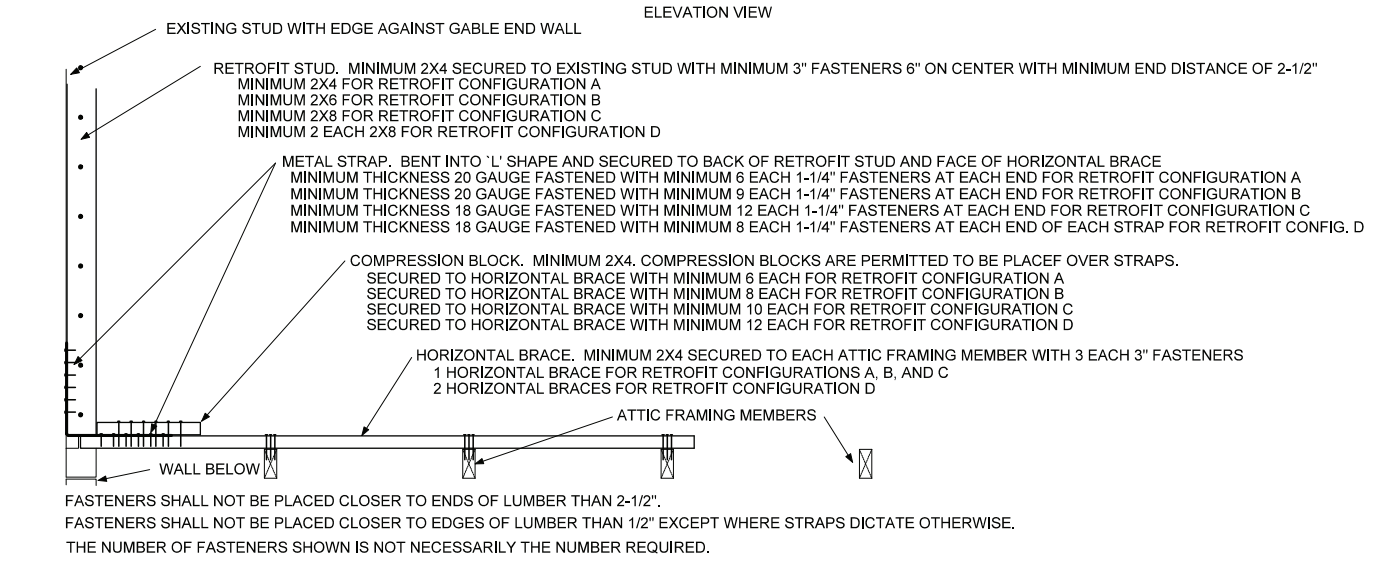
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE C104.2(1)TRUSS FRAMED GABLE END


ELEVATION VIEW
EXISTING STUD OF TRUSS FLAT AGAINST GABLE END WALL
RETROFIT STUD, MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EXISTING STUD WITH MINIMUM 3″ FASTENERS 6″ ON CENTER WITH MINIMUM END DISTANCE OF 2 1/2″
MINIMUM 2X4 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM 2X6 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM 2X8 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM 2 EACH 2X8 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
METAL STRAP, BENT TO 'L' SHAPE AND SECURED TO BACK OF RETROFIT STUD AND FACE OF HORIZONTAL BRACE
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 6 EACH 1 1/4″ FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 9 EACH 1 1/4″ FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 12 EACH 1 1/4″ FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 8 EACH 1 1/4″ FASTENERS AT EACH END OF EACH STRAP FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
COMPRESSION BLOCK, MINIMUM 2X4. COMPRESSION BLOCKS ARE PERMITTED TO BE PLACED OVER STRAPS.
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 6 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 8 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 10 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 12 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
HORIZONTAL BRACE, MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EACH ATTIC FRAMING MEMBER WITH 3 EACH 3″ FASTENERS
1 HORIZONTAL BRACE FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B AND C
2 HORIZONTAL BRACES FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
ATTIC FRAMING MEMBERS
WALL BELOW
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO ENDS OF LUMBER THAN 2 1/2″.
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO EDGES OF LUMBER THAN 1/2″ EXCEPT WHERE STRAPS DICTATE OTHERWISE.
THE NUMBER OF FASTENERS SHOWN IS NOT NECESSARILY THE NUMBER REQUIRED.
PLAN VIEWS
RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B AND C
EXISTING STUDS
EXTERIOR WALL
RETROFIT STUD
METAL STRAP
COMPRESSION BLOCK
(CAN BE PLACED OVER STRAP.)
(EACH CAN BUTT EXISTING
STUD.)
ATTIC FRAMING
RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
HORIZONTAL BRACE
EXTERIOR WALL
EXISTING STUDS

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

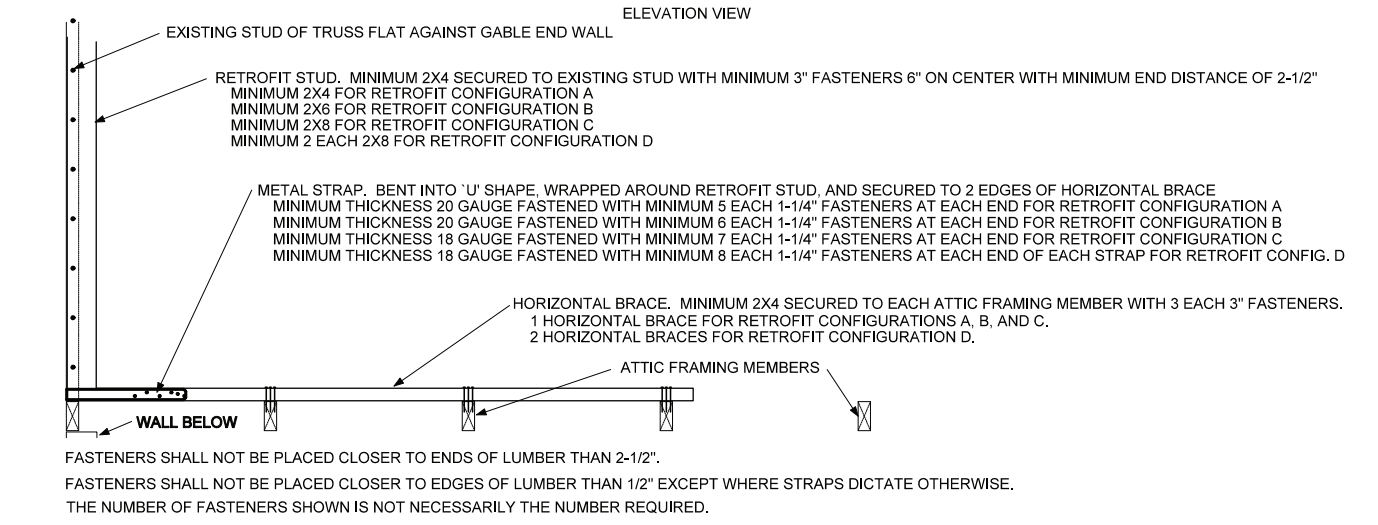
[BS] FIGURE C104.2(2)—CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END L-BENT STRAP


ELEVATION VIEW
EXISTING STUD WITH EDGE AGAINST GABLE END WALL
RETROFIT STUD. MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EXISTING STUD WITH MINIMUM 3" FASTENERS 6" ON CENTER WITH MINIMUM END DISTANCE OF 2-1/2"
MINIMUM 2X4 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM 2X6 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM 2X8 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM 2 EACH 2X8 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
METAL STRAP. BENT INTO `L' SHAPE AND SECURED TO BACK OF RETROFIT STUD AND FACE OF HORIZONTAL BRACE
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 6 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 9 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 12 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 8 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END OF EACH STRAP FOR RETROFIT CONFIG. D
COMPRESSION BLOCK. MINIMUM 2X4. COMPRESSION BLOCKS ARE PERMITTED TO BE PLACEF OVER STRAPS.
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 6 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 8 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 10 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
SECURED TO HORIZONTAL BRACE WITH MINIMUM 12 EACH FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
HORIZONTAL BRACE. MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EACH ATTIC FRAMING MEMBER WITH 3 EACH 3" FASTENERS
1 HORIZONTAL BRACE FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B, AND C
2 HORIZONTAL BRACES FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
ATTIC FRAMING MEMBERS
WALL BELOW
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO ENDS OF LUMBER THAN 2-1/2".
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO EDGES OF LUMBER THAN 1/2" EXCEPT WHERE STRAPS DICTATE OTHERWISE.
THE NUMBER OF FASTENERS SHOWN IS NOT NECESSARILY THE NUMBER REQUIRED.
PLAN VIEWS
RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B, AND C
EXTERIOR WALL
EXISTING STUD
RETROFIT STUD
METAL STRAP
COMPRESSION BLOCK
(CAN BE PLACED OVER STRAP.)
(EACH CAN BUTT EXISTING STUD.)
ATTIC FRAMING
HORIZONTAL BRACE
RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
EXTERIOR WALL
EXISTING STUD

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

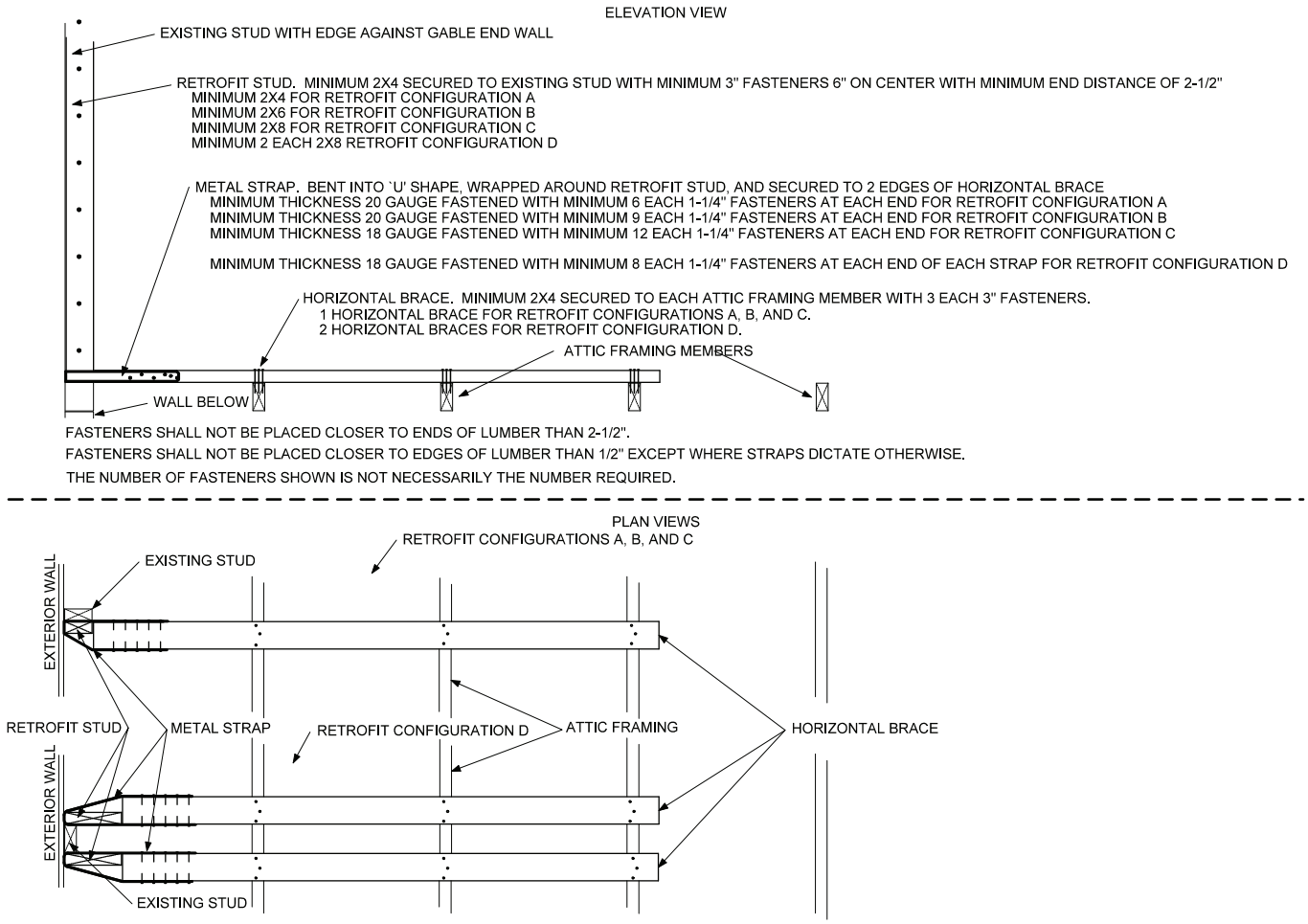
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE C104.2(3)—TRUSS FRAMED GABLE END U-BENT STRAP


ELEVATION VIEW
EXISTING STUD OF TRUSS FLAT AGAINST GABLE END WALL
RETROFIT STUD. MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EXISTING STUD WITH MINIMUM 3" FASTENERS 6" ON CENTER WITH MINIMUM END DISTANCE OF 2-1/2"
MINIMUM 2X4 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM 2X6 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM 2X8 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM 2 EACH 2X8 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
METAL STRAP. BENT INTO `U' SHAPE, WRAPPED AROUND RETROFIT STUD, AND SECURED TO 2 EDGES OF HORIZONTAL BRACE
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 5 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 6 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 7 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 8 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END OF EACH STRAP FOR RETROFIT CONFIG. D
HORIZONTAL BRACE. MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EACH ATTIC FRAMING MEMBER WITH 3 EACH 3" FASTENERS.
1 HORIZONTAL BRACE FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B, AND C.
2 HORIZONTAL BRACES FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D.
ATTIC FRAMING MEMBERS
WALL BELOW
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO ENDS OF LUMBER THAN 2-1/2".
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO EDGES OF LUMBER THAN 1/2" EXCEPT WHERE STRAPS DICTATE OTHERWISE.
THE NUMBER OF FASTENERS SHOWN IS NOT NECESSARILY THE NUMBER REQUIRED.
PLAN VIEWS
RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B, AND C
EXISTING STUD
EXTERIOR WALL
RETROFIT STUD
METAL STRAP
RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
ATTIC FRAMING
HORIZONTAL BRACE
EXTERIOR WALL
EXISTING STUD

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] FIGURE C104.2(4)—CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END U-BENT STRAP


ELEVATION VIEW
EXISTING STUD WITH EDGE AGAINST GABLE END WALL
RETROFIT STUD. MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EXISTING STUD WITH MINIMUM 3" FASTENERS 6" ON CENTER WITH MINIMUM END DISTANCE OF 2-1/2"
MINIMUM 2X4 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM 2X6 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM 2X8 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM 2 EACH 2X8 RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
METAL STRAP. BENT INTO `U' SHAPE, WRAPPED AROUND RETROFIT STUD, AND SECURED TO 2 EDGES OF HORIZONTAL BRACE
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 6 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A
MINIMUM THICKNESS 20 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 9 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 12 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C
MINIMUM THICKNESS 18 GAUGE FASTENED WITH MINIMUM 8 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END OF EACH STRAP FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
HORIZONTAL BRACE. MINIMUM 2X4 SECURED TO EACH ATTIC FRAMING MEMBER WITH 3 EACH 3" FASTENERS.
1 HORIZONTAL BRACE FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B, AND C.
2 HORIZONTAL BRACES FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D.
ATTIC FRAMING MEMBERS
WALL BELOW
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO ENDS OF LUMBER THAN 2-1/2".
FASTENERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED CLOSER TO EDGES OF LUMBER THAN 1/2" EXCEPT WHERE STRAPS DICTATE OTHERWISE.
THE NUMBER OF FASTENERS SHOWN IS NOT NECESSARILY THE NUMBER REQUIRED.
PLAN VIEWS
RETROFIT CONFIGURATIONS A, B, AND C
EXISTING STUD
EXTERIOR WALL
RETROFIT STUD
METAL STRAP
RETROFIT CONFIGURATION D
ATTIC FRAMING
HORIZONTAL BRACE
EXTERIOR WALL
EXISTING STUD

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] C104.2.1 Existing gable end studs. If the spacing of existing vertical gable end studs is greater than 24 inches (64 mm), a new stud and corresponding horizontal braces shall be installed such that the maximum spacing between existing and added studs shall be not greater than 24 inches (64 mm). Additional gable end wall studs shall not be required at locations where their length would be 3 feet (914 mm) or less. Each end of each required new stud shall be attached to the existing roofing framing members (truss top chord or rafter and truss bottom chord or ceiling joist) using not fewer than two 3-inch (76 mm) toenail fasteners (#8 wood screws or 10d nails) and a metal connector with minimum uplift capacity of 175 pounds (778 N), or nail plates with not fewer than four $1^{1}/_{4}$-inch-long (32 mm) fasteners (No. 8 wood screws or 8d nails).

[BS] C104.2.2 Main method of installation. Each horizontal brace shall be fastened to each existing roof or ceiling member that it crosses using three 3-inch-long (76 mm) fasteners (No. 8 wood screws or 10d nails) as indicated in Figure C104.2(1) and Figure C104.2(3) for trusses and Figure C104.2(2) and Figure C104.2(4) for conventionally framed gable end walls. Alternative methods for providing horizontal bracing of the gable end studs as provided in Sections C104.2.3 through C104.2.9 shall be permitted.

[BS] C104.2.3 Omitted horizontal brace. Where conditions exist that prevent installation in accordance with Section C104.2.2, horizontal braces shall be permitted to be omitted for height limitations corresponding to Retrofit Configurations A and B as defined in Table C104.2 provided that installation is as indicated in Figure C104.2.3 and provided that all of the following conditions are met. This method is not permitted for Retrofit Configurations C or D.

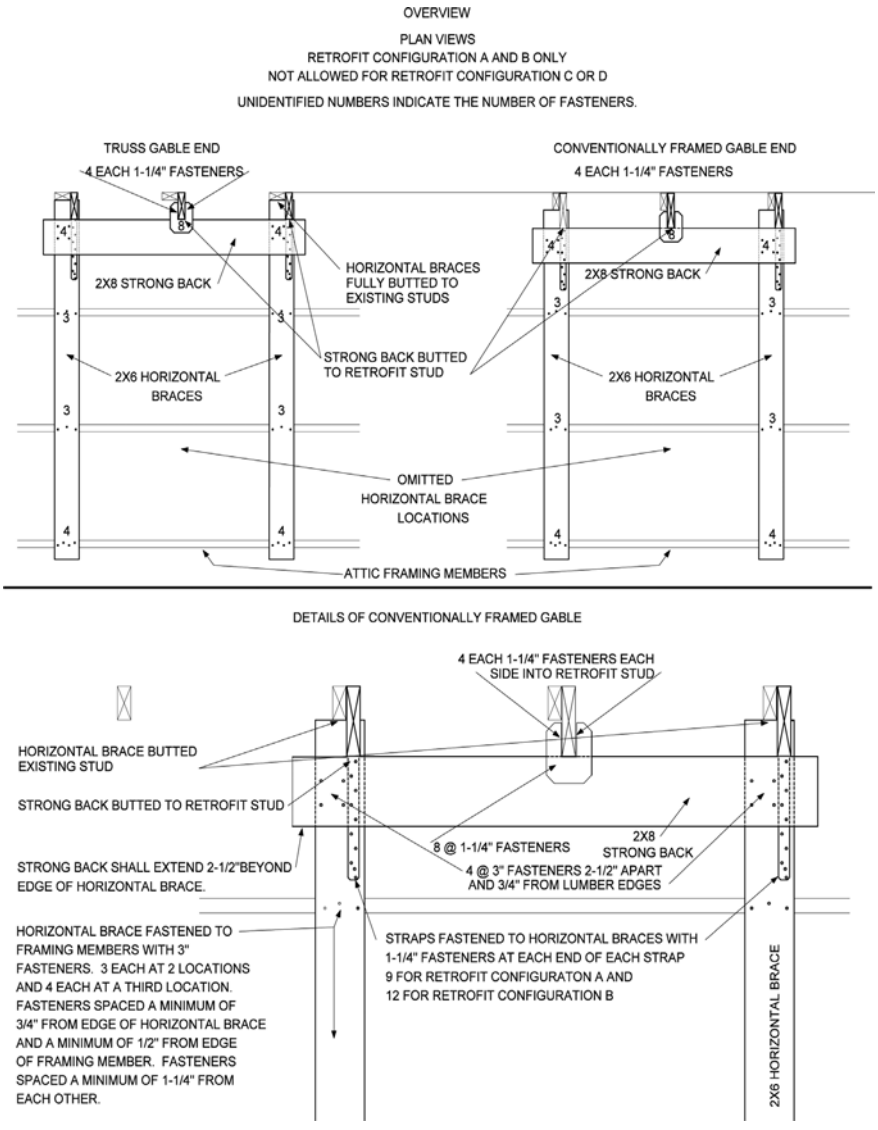
1. There shall be not fewer than two horizontal braces on each side of an omitted horizontal brace or not fewer than one horizontal brace if it is the end horizontal brace. Omitted horizontal braces must be separated by not fewer than two horizontal braces even if that location is composed of two retrofit studs and two horizontal braces.
2. Horizontal braces adjacent to the omitted horizontal brace shall be 2-inch by 6-inch (38 mm by 140 mm) lumber, shall butt against the existing studs, and shall be fastened to each existing roof or ceiling member crossed using three 3-inch-long (76 mm) fasteners (No. 8 wood screws or 10d nails). For Retrofit Configuration B, four fasteners shall be required on not fewer than one of the connections between the horizontal brace and the existing roof and ceiling framing members. Fasteners shall be spaced a not less than $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) from the edges of the horizontal braces and not less than $1^{3}/_{4}$ inches (44 mm) from adjacent fasteners.
3. Where the existing studs on each side of an omitted horizontal brace have their wide face perpendicular to the gable end wall, the retrofit studs at those locations and the retrofit stud at the omitted horizontal brace locations shall extend not

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

less than $3^3/_4$ inches (95 mm) beyond the interior edge of the existing studs for both Retrofit Configurations A and B. The edges of the three retrofit studs facing towards the interior of the attic shall be aligned such that they are the same distance from the gable end wall.

4. Retrofit studs shall be fastened to existing studs in accordance with Section C104.3.
5. Retrofit studs adjacent to the omitted horizontal brace shall be fastened to the horizontal brace using straps in accordance with Table C104.4.1 consistent with the size of the retrofit stud. The method applicable to Table C104.4.2 is not permitted.
6. A strong back made of minimum of 2-inch by 8-inch (38 mm by 184 mm) nominal lumber shall be placed parallel to the gable end and shall be located on and span between horizontal braces on the two sides of the omitted horizontal brace and shall extend beyond each horizontal brace by not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm). The strong back shall be butted to the three retrofit studs. The strong back shall be attached to each of the horizontal braces on which it rests with five 3-inch-long (76 mm) fasteners (#8 screws or 8d nails). The fasteners shall have a minimum $^3/_4$-inch (19.1 mm) edge distance and a minimum $2^1/_2$-inch (64 mm) spacing between fasteners. Additional compression blocks shall not be required at locations where a strong back butts against a retrofit stud.
7. The retrofit stud at the location of the omitted horizontal braces shall be fastened to the strong back using a connector with minimum uplift capacity of 800 pounds (3559 N) and installed such that this capacity is oriented in the direction perpendicular to the gable end wall.
8. The use of shortened horizontal braces using the alternative method of Section C104.2.5 is not permitted for horizontal braces adjacent to the omitted horizontal braces.
9. Horizontal braces shall be permitted to be interrupted in accordance with Section C104.2.8.

[BS] FIGURE C104.2.3—OMITTED HORIZONTAL BRACE


OVERVIEW
PLAN VIEWS
RETROFIT CONFIGURATION A AND B ONLY
NOT ALLOWED FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION C OR D
UNIDENTIFIED NUMBERS INDICATE THE NUMBER OF FASTENERS.
TRUSS GABLE END
4 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS
CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END
4 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS
2X8 STRONG BACK
HORIZONTAL BRACES FULLY BUTTED TO EXISTING STUDS
2X8 STRONG BACK
STRONG BACK BUTTED TO RETROFIT STUD
2X6 HORIZONTAL BRACES
2X6 HORIZONTAL BRACES
OMITTED HORIZONTAL BRACE LOCATIONS
ATTIC FRAMING MEMBERS
DETAILS OF CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE
4 EACH 1-1/4" FASTENERS EACH SIDE INTO RETROFIT STUD
HORIZONTAL BRACE BUTTED EXISTING STUD
STRONG BACK BUTTED TO RETROFIT STUD
8 @ 1-1/4" FASTENERS
2X8 STRONG BACK
4 @ 3" FASTENERS 2-1/2" APART AND 3/4" FROM LUMBER EDGES
STRONG BACK SHALL EXTEND 2-1/2"BEYOND EDGE OF HORIZONTAL BRACE.
HORIZONTAL BRACE FASTENED TO FRAMING MEMBERS WITH 3" FASTENERS. 3 EACH AT 2 LOCATIONS AND 4 EACH AT A THIRD LOCATION. FASTENERS SPACED A MINIMUM OF 3/4" FROM EDGE OF HORIZONTAL BRACE AND A MINIMUM OF 1/2" FROM EDGE OF FRAMING MEMBER. FASTENERS SPACED A MINIMUM OF 1-1/4" FROM EACH OTHER.
STRAPS FASTENED TO HORIZONTAL BRACES WITH 1-1/4" FASTENERS AT EACH END OF EACH STRAP
9 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATON A AND
12 FOR RETROFIT CONFIGURATION B
2X6 HORIZONTAL BRACE

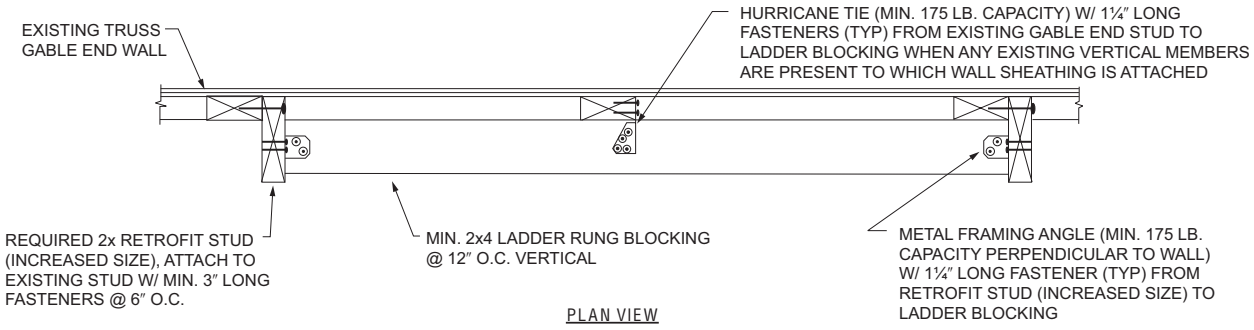
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

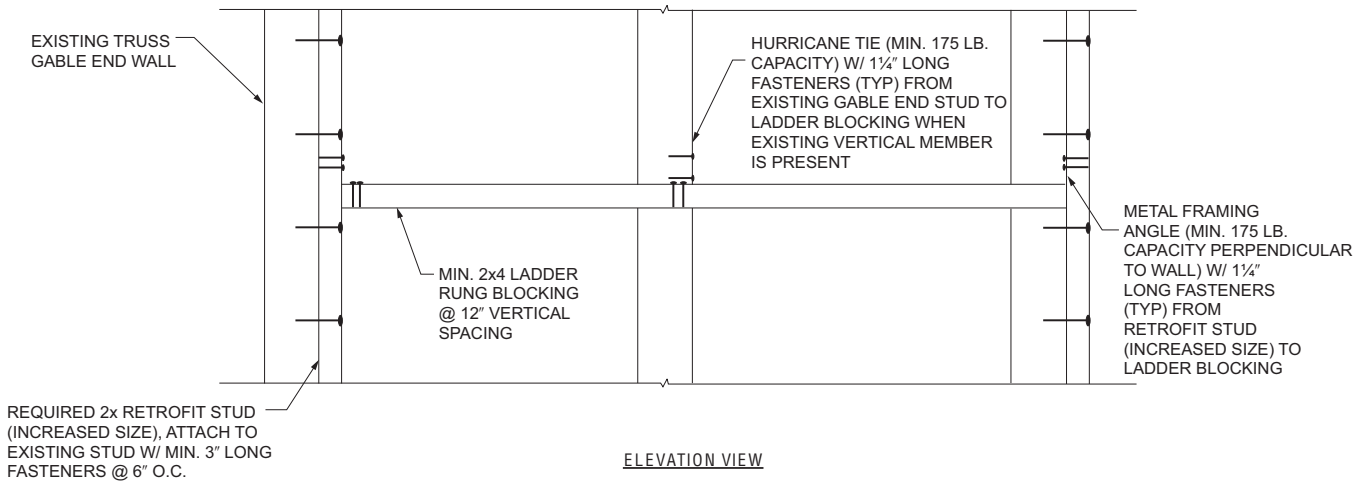
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] C104.2.4 Omitted horizontal brace and retrofit stud. Where conditions exist that prevent installation in accordance with Section C104.2.2 or C104.2.3, then retrofit studs and horizontal braces shall be permitted to be omitted from those locations by installation of ladder assemblies for Retrofit Configurations A and B as defined in Table C104.2 provided that all of the following conditions are met. This method is not permitted for Retrofit Configurations C or D.

1. Not more than two ladder assemblies are permitted on a single gable end.
2. There shall be not fewer than two retrofit studs and horizontal brace assemblies on either side of the locations where the retrofit studs and horizontal bracing members are omitted (two ladder braces shall not bear on a single retrofit stud).
3. Where the existing studs on each side of an omitted horizontal brace have their wide face parallel to the gable end wall the retrofit studs at those locations and the retrofit stud at the omitted horizontal brace locations shall be 2-inch by 6-inch (38 mm by 180 mm) nominal lumber for Retrofit Configuration A and 2-inch by 8-inch (38 mm by 184 mm) lumber for Retrofit Configuration B.
4. Horizontal braces adjacent to the omitted horizontal brace shall be 2-inch by 6-inch (38 mm by 180 mm) nominal lumber and be fastened to each existing roof or ceiling member crossed using three 3-inch long (76 mm) fasteners (#8 wood screws or 10d nails) as indicated in Figures C104.2(1) and C104.2(3) for gable end frames and Figures C104.2(2) and C104.2(4) for conventionally framed gable end walls. For Retrofit Configuration B, four fasteners shall be required on one of the connections between the horizontal brace and the existing roof and ceiling framing members.
5. Ladder rungs shall be provided across the location of the omitted retrofit studs as indicated in Figure C104.2.4(1) for gable end frames and Figure C104.2.4(2) for conventionally framed gable end walls.
6. Ladder rungs shall be minimum 2-inch by 4-inch (38 mm by 89 mm) lumber oriented with their wide face horizontal and spaced not greater than 16 inches (406 mm) on center vertically.
7. Where ladder rungs cross wall framing members they shall be connected to the wall framing members with a metal connector with a minimum capacity of 175 pounds (778 N) in the direction perpendicular to the gable end wall.
8. Notching of the ladder rungs shall not be permitted unless the net depth of the framing member is not less than $3^1/_2$ inches (89 mm).

[BS] FIGURE C104.2.4(1)—LADDER BRACING FOR OMITTED RETROFIT STUD (GABLE END FRAME)

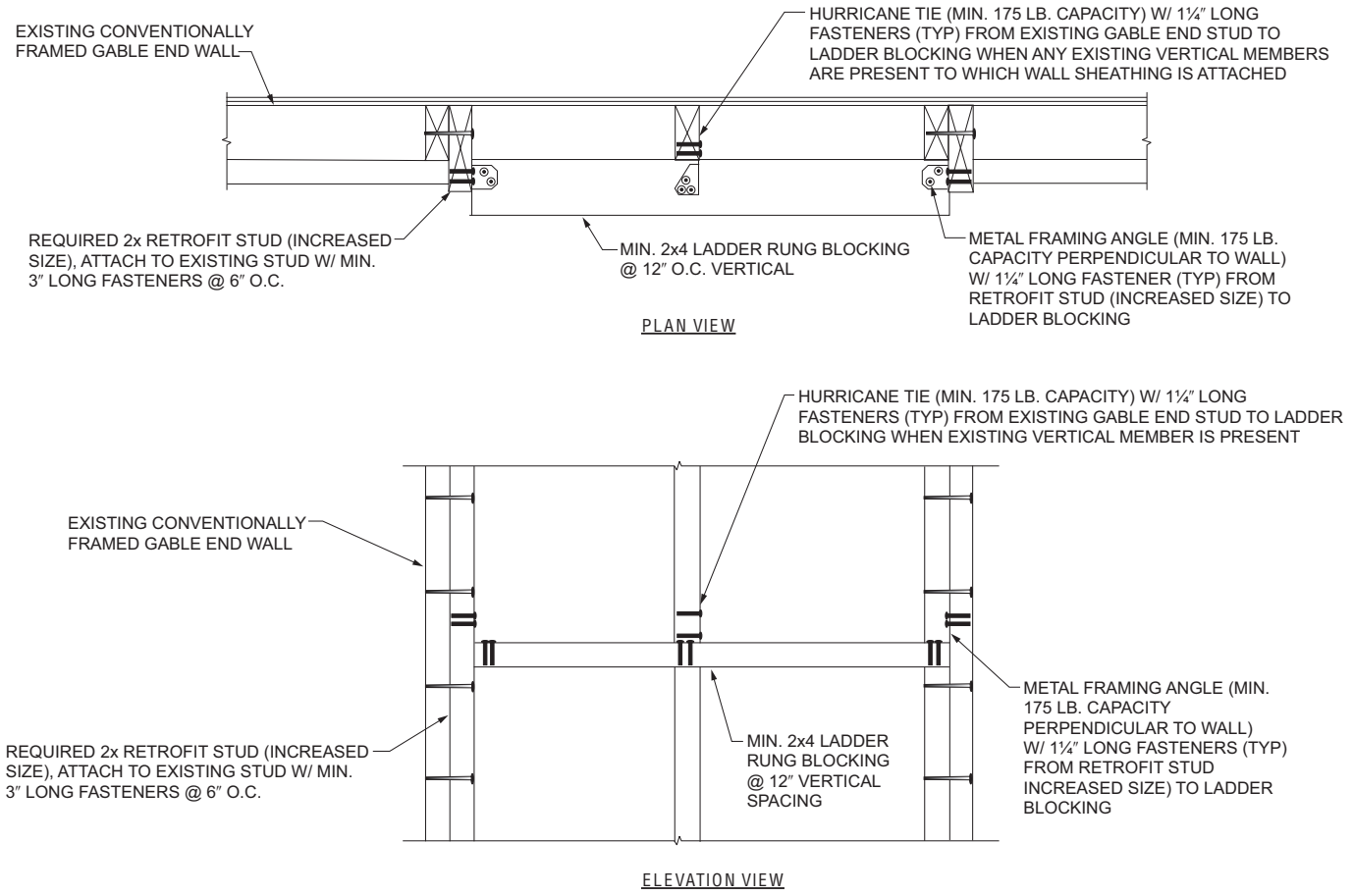

EXISTING TRUSS GABLE END WALL
HURRICANE TIE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENERS (TYP) FROM EXISTING GABLE END STUD TO LADDER BLOCKING WHEN ANY EXISTING VERTICAL MEMBERS ARE PRESENT TO WHICH WALL SHEATHING IS ATTACHED
REQUIRED 2x RETROFIT STUD (INCREASED SIZE), ATTACH TO EXISTING STUD W/ MIN. 3″ LONG FASTENERS @ 6″ O.C.
MIN. 2x4 LADDER RUNG BLOCKING @ 12″ O.C. VERTICAL
METAL FRAMING ANGLE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY PERPENDICULAR TO WALL) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENER (TYP) FROM RETROFIT STUD (INCREASED SIZE) TO LADDER BLOCKING
PLAN VIEW


EXISTING TRUSS GABLE END WALL
HURRICANE TIE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENERS (TYP) FROM EXISTING GABLE END STUD TO LADDER BLOCKING WHEN EXISTING VERTICAL MEMBER IS PRESENT
MIN. 2x4 LADDER RUNG BLOCKING @ 12″ VERTICAL SPACING
METAL FRAMING ANGLE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY PERPENDICULAR TO WALL) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENERS (TYP) FROM RETROFIT STUD (INCREASED SIZE) TO LADDER BLOCKING
REQUIRED 2x RETROFIT STUD (INCREASED SIZE), ATTACH TO EXISTING STUD W/ MIN. 3″ LONG FASTENERS @ 6″ O.C.
ELEVATION VIEW

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.4 N.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE C104.2.4(2)—LADDER BRACING FOR OMITTED RETROFIT STUD (CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END)

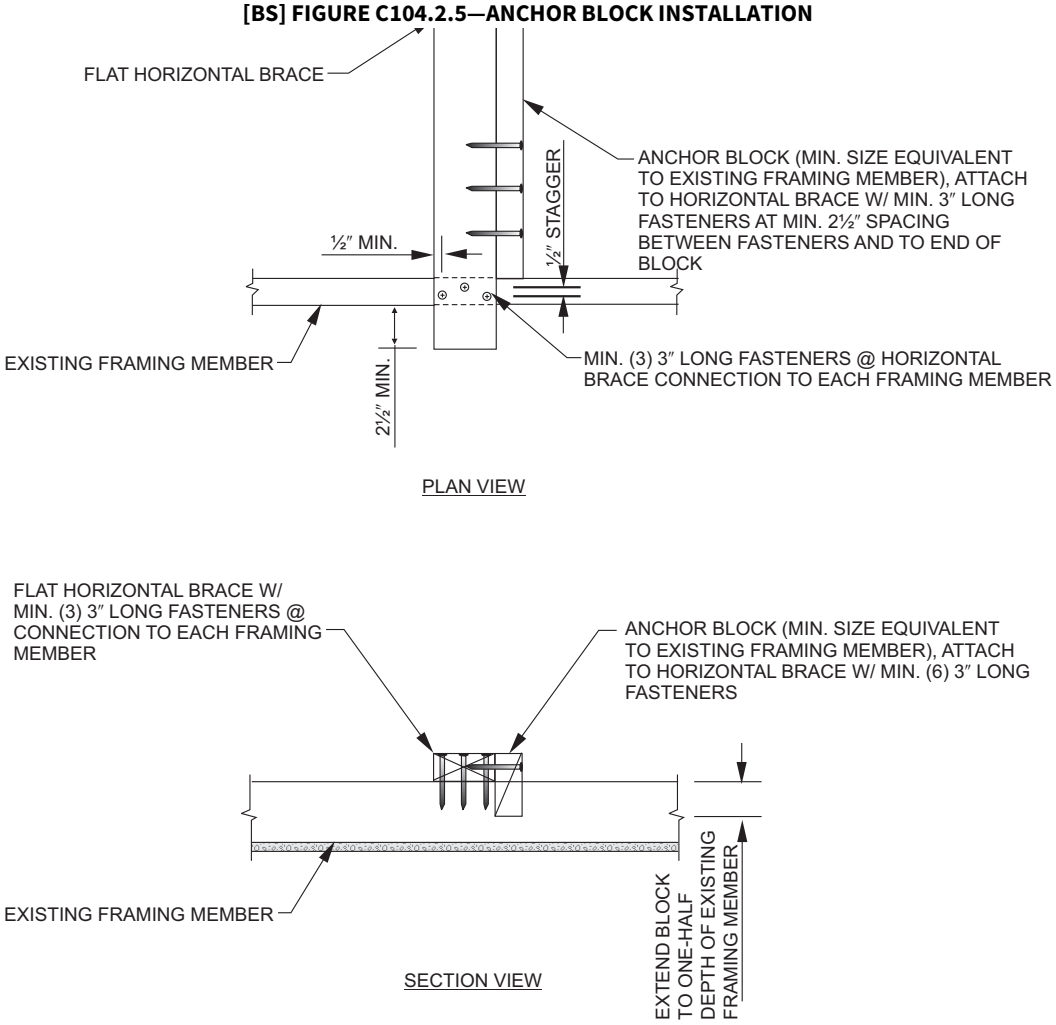

EXISTING CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END WALL
HURRICANE TIE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENERS (TYP) FROM EXISTING GABLE END STUD TO LADDER BLOCKING WHEN ANY EXISTING VERTICAL MEMBERS ARE PRESENT TO WHICH WALL SHEATHING IS ATTACHED
REQUIRED 2x RETROFIT STUD (INCREASED SIZE), ATTACH TO EXISTING STUD W/ MIN. 3″ LONG FASTENERS @ 6″ O.C.
MIN. 2x4 LADDER RUNG BLOCKING @ 12″ O.C. VERTICAL
METAL FRAMING ANGLE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY PERPENDICULAR TO WALL) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENER (TYP) FROM RETROFIT STUD (INCREASED SIZE) TO LADDER BLOCKING
PLAN VIEW
HURRICANE TIE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENERS (TYP) FROM EXISTING GABLE END STUD TO LADDER BLOCKING WHEN EXISTING VERTICAL MEMBER IS PRESENT
EXISTING CONVENTIONALLY FRAMED GABLE END WALL
REQUIRED 2x RETROFIT STUD (INCREASED SIZE), ATTACH TO EXISTING STUD W/ MIN. 3″ LONG FASTENERS @ 6″ O.C.
MIN. 2x4 LADDER RUNG BLOCKING @ 12″ VERTICAL SPACING
METAL FRAMING ANGLE (MIN. 175 LB. CAPACITY PERPENDICULAR TO WALL) W/ 1¼″ LONG FASTENERS (TYP) FROM RETROFIT STUD INCREASED SIZE) TO LADDER BLOCKING
ELEVATION VIEW

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.4 N.

[BS] C104.2.5 Short horizontal brace. Where conditions exist that prevent installation in accordance with Section C104.2.2, C104.2.3 or C104.2.4, the horizontal braces shall be permitted to be shortened provided that installation is as indicated in Figure C104.2.5 and all of the following conditions are met.

1. The horizontal brace shall be installed across not fewer than two framing spaces, extend not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) from the gable end wall plus $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm) beyond the farthest roof or ceiling framing member from the gable end, and be fastened to each existing framing member with three 3-inch-long (76 mm) fasteners (#8 wood screws or 10d nails).
2. An anchor block shall be fastened to the side of the horizontal brace in the second framing space from the gable end wall as shown in Figure C104.2.5. The anchor block lumber shall have a minimum edge thickness of $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) and the depth shall be at a minimum the depth of the existing roof or ceiling framing member. Six 3-inch-long (76 mm) fasteners (#8 wood screws or 10d nails) shall be used to fasten the anchor block to the side of the horizontal brace.
3. The anchor block shall extend into the space between the roof or ceiling framing members not less than one-half the depth of the existing-framing members at the location where the anchor block is installed. The anchor block shall be installed tightly between the existing framing members such that the gap at either end shall not exceed $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm).
4. The use of omitted horizontal braces using the method of Section C104.2.3 adjacent to a short horizontal brace as defined in this section is not permitted.

[BS] FIGURE C104.2.5—ANCHOR BLOCK INSTALLATION


FLAT HORIZONTAL BRACE
ANCHOR BLOCK (MIN. SIZE EQUIVALENT TO EXISTING FRAMING MEMBER), ATTACH TO HORIZONTAL BRACE W/ MIN. 3″ LONG FASTENERS AT MIN. 2½″ SPACING BETWEEN FASTENERS AND TO END OF BLOCK
½″ STAGGER
½″ MIN.
EXISTING FRAMING MEMBER
2½″ MIN.
MIN. (3) 3″ LONG FASTENERS @ HORIZONTAL BRACE CONNECTION TO EACH FRAMING MEMBER
PLAN VIEW
FLAT HORIZONTAL BRACE W/ MIN. (3) 3″ LONG FASTENERS @ CONNECTION TO EACH FRAMING MEMBER
ANCHOR BLOCK (MIN. SIZE EQUIVALENT TO EXISTING FRAMING MEMBER), ATTACH TO HORIZONTAL BRACE W/ MIN. (6) 3″ LONG FASTENERS
EXISTING FRAMING MEMBER
EXTEND BLOCK TO ONE-HALF DEPTH OF EXISTING FRAMING MEMBER
SECTION VIEW

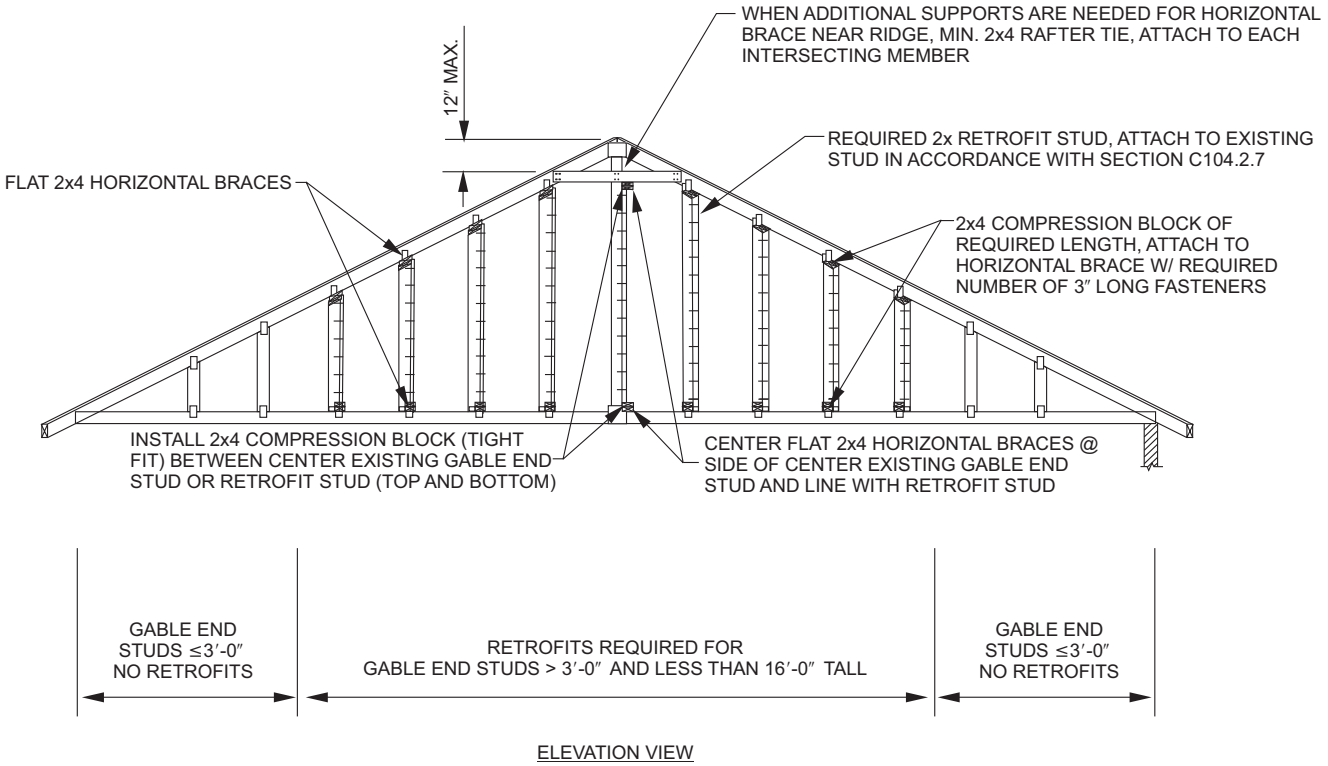
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] C104.2.6 Installation of horizontal braces onto webs of trusses. Where existing conditions preclude installation of horizontal braces on truss top or bottom chords they shall be permitted to be installed on truss webs provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Horizontal braces shall be installed as close to the top or bottom chords as practical without altering the truss or any of its components and not more than three times the depth of the truss member to which it would ordinarily be attached.
2. A racking block, comprised of an anchor block meeting the definition of "Anchor block" in Section C102 or comprised of minimum $^{15}/_{32}$-inch (12 mm) plywood or $^{7}/_{16}$-inch (11.1 mm) oriented strand board (OSB), shall be fastened to the horizontal brace in the second framing space from the gable end wall. The racking block shall extend toward the roof or ceiling diaphragm so that the edge of the racking block closest to the diaphragm is within one-half the depth of the existing framing member from the diaphragm surface. The racking block shall be attached to horizontal braces using six fasteners (No. 8 wood screws or 10d nails) of sufficient length to provide $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) of penetration into the horizontal brace.
3. Racking blocks shall be permitted to be fastened to any face or edge of horizontal braces between each web or truss vertical posts to which a horizontal brace is attached. Racking blocks shall be permitted to be on alternate sides of horizontal braces. Racking blocks shall be installed tightly between the lumber of truss members or truss plates such that the gap at either end shall be not greater than $^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm).

[BS] C104.2.7 Alternative method of installation of horizontal braces at truss ridges. Where conditions exist that limit or restrict installation of horizontal braces near the peak of the roof, ridge ties shall be added to provide support for the required horizontal brace. The top of additional ridge tie members shall be installed not greater than 16 inches (406 mm) below the existing ridge line or 4 inches (102 mm) below impediments. A minimum 2-inch by 4-inch (38 mm by 89 mm) nominal member shall be used for each ridge tie, and fastening shall consist of two 3-inch-long (76 mm) wood screws, four 3-inch-long (76 mm) 10d nails or two $3^{1}/_{2}$-inch-long (89 mm) 16d nails driven through and clinched at each top chord or web member intersected by the ridge tie as illustrated in Figure C104.2.7.

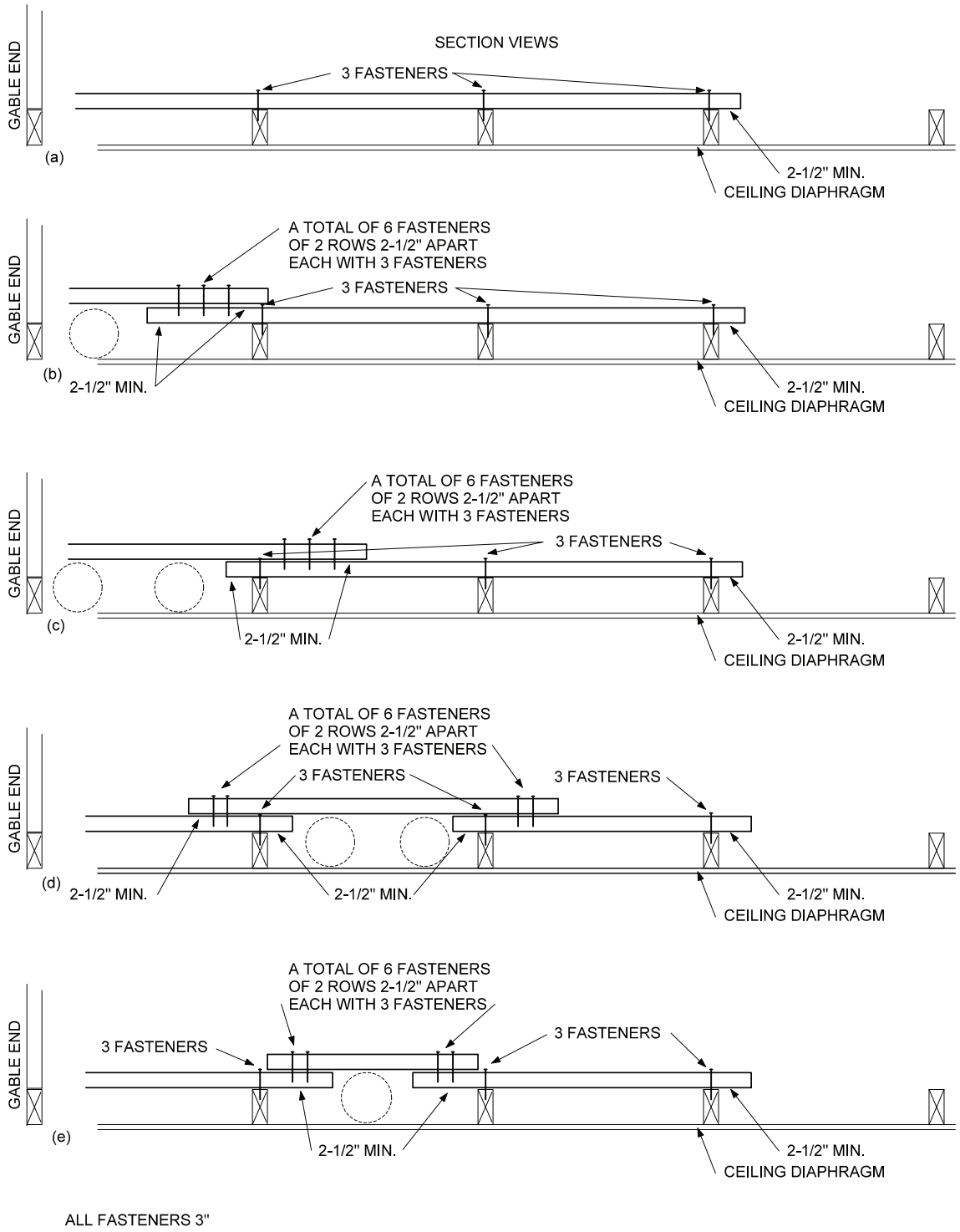
[BS] FIGURE C104.2.7—DETAIL OF RETROFIT TIE INSTALLATION


WHEN ADDITIONAL SUPPORTS ARE NEEDED FOR HORIZONTAL BRACE NEAR RIDGE, MIN. 2x4 RAFTER TIE, ATTACH TO EACH INTERSECTING MEMBER
12″ MAX.
REQUIRED 2x RETROFIT STUD, ATTACH TO EXISTING STUD IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION C104.2.7
FLAT 2x4 HORIZONTAL BRACES
2x4 COMPRESSION BLOCK OF REQUIRED LENGTH, ATTACH TO HORIZONTAL BRACE W/ REQUIRED NUMBER OF 3″ LONG FASTENERS
INSTALL 2x4 COMPRESSION BLOCK (TIGHT FIT) BETWEEN CENTER EXISTING GABLE END STUD OR RETROFIT STUD (TOP AND BOTTOM)
CENTER FLAT 2x4 HORIZONTAL BRACES @ SIDE OF CENTER EXISTING GABLE END STUD AND LINE WITH RETROFIT STUD
GABLE END STUDS ≤3′-0″ NO RETROFITS
RETROFITS REQUIRED FOR GABLE END STUDS > 3′-0″ AND LESS THAN 16′-0″ TALL
GABLE END STUDS ≤3′-0″ NO RETROFITS
ELEVATION VIEW

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

[BS] C104.2.8 Interrupted horizontal braces. Where conditions exist that prevent the installation of a continuous horizontal brace then horizontal braces shall be permitted to be interrupted using the methods shown in Figures C104.2.8(1), C104.2.8(2), and C104.2.8(3). For interruptions that occur in the attic framing space closest to the gable end, nine 3-inch (76 mm) fasteners shall be used to connect each section of the interrupted horizontal braces. For interruptions that occur in the second attic space from the gable end, six 3-inch (76 mm) fasteners shall be used to connect each section of the interrupted horizontal braces. For interruptions that occur in the attic framing space farthest from the gable end, three 3-inch (76 mm) fasteners shall be used to connect each section of the interrupted horizontal braces. Horizontal braces shall be continued far enough to allow connections to three existing roof framing members as shown in Figure C104.2.8(1), C104.2.8(2) or C104.2.8(3). Fasteners shall be spaced in accordance with Section C103.5.3. Horizontal braces shall be the same width and depth as required for an uninterrupted member.

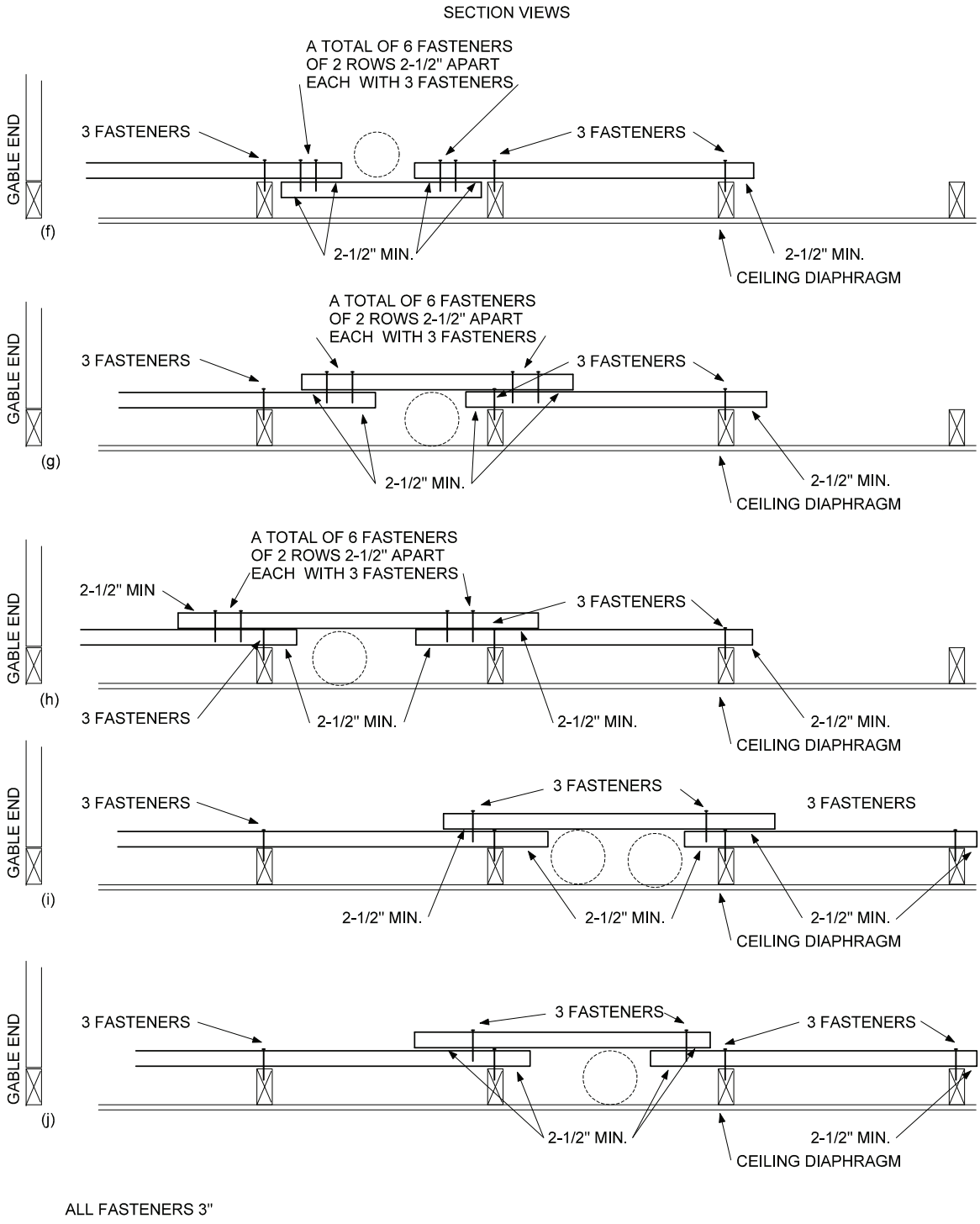
[BS] FIGURE C104.2.8(1)—SPLICED HORIZONTAL BRACES



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

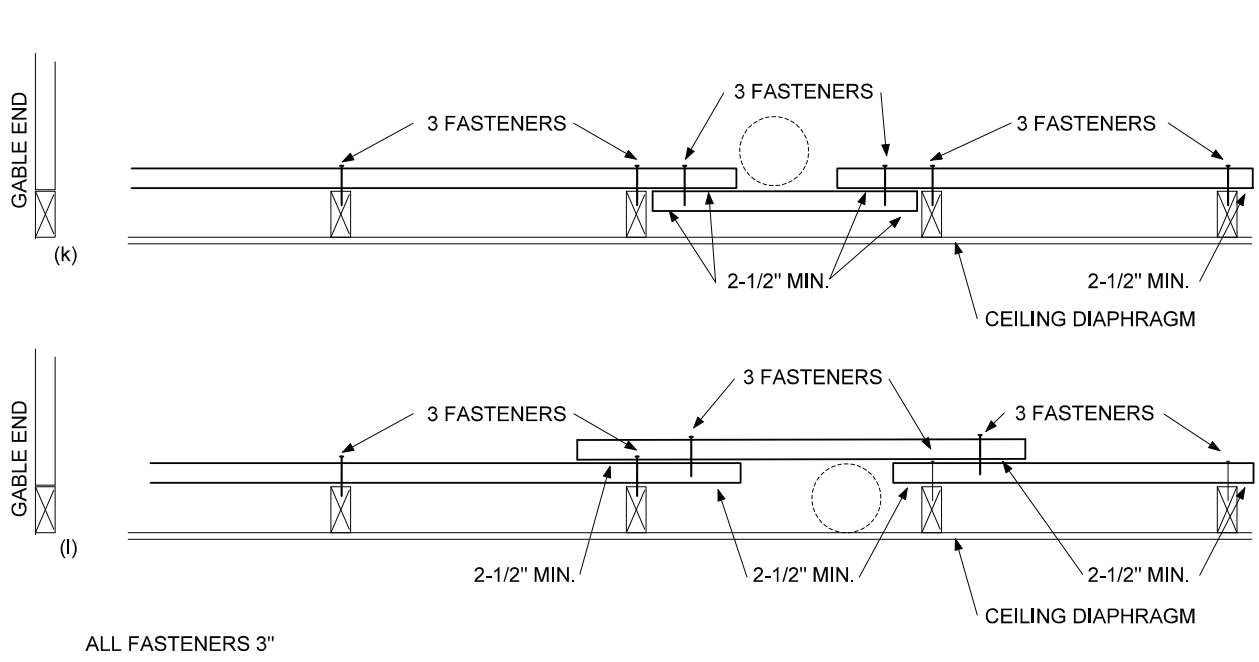
[BS] FIGURE C104.2.8(2)—SPLICED HORIZONTAL BRACES



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE C104.2.8(3)—SPLICED HORIZONTAL BRACES



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] C104.2.9 Piggyback gable end frames. Piggyback gable end frames (gable end frames built in two sections one above the other) shall be permitted to be retrofitted if either of the following cases is true:

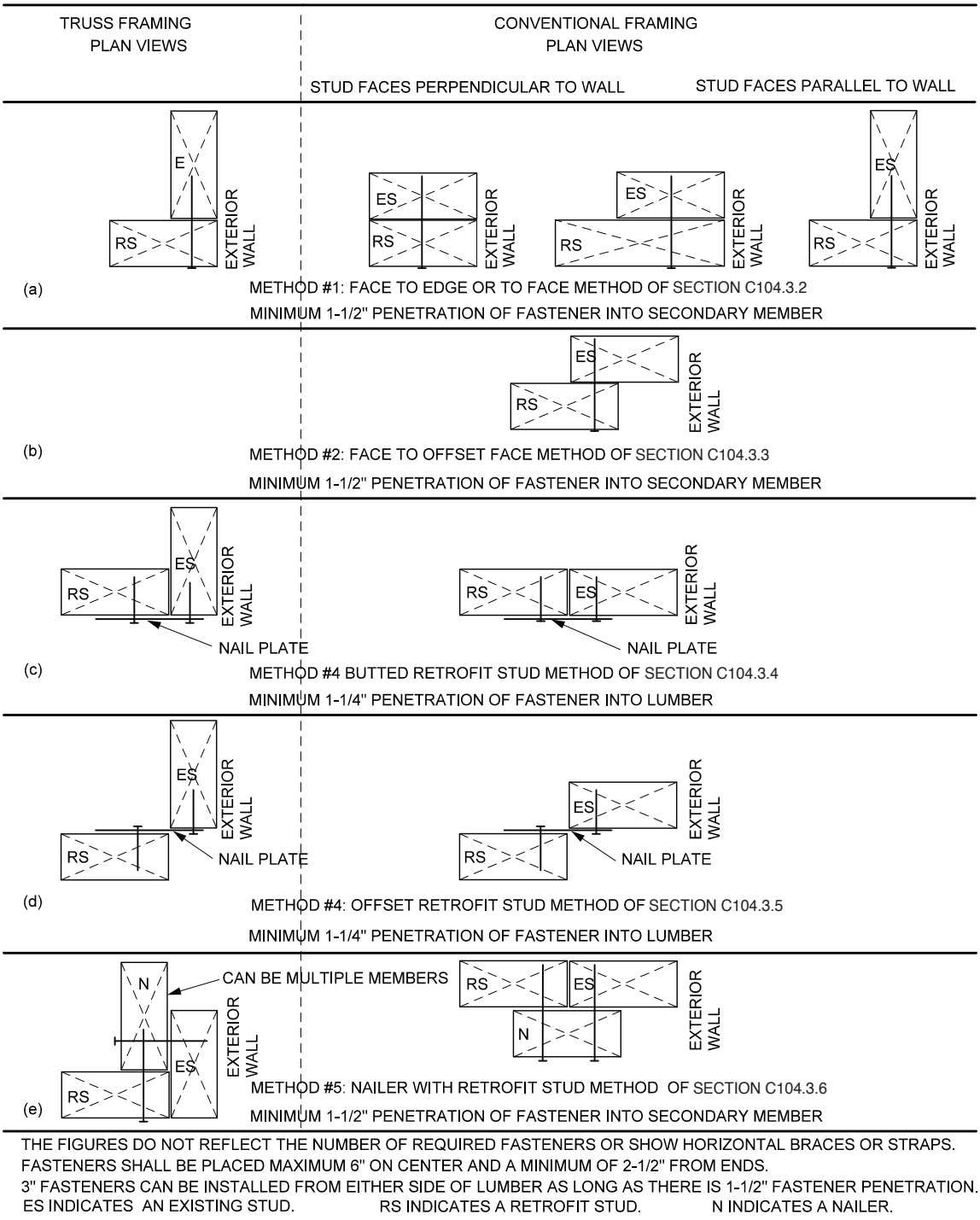
1. The existing studs in both the upper gable end frames and the lower gable end frames to which wall sheathing, panel siding, or other wall covering are attached are sufficiently in line that retrofit studs can be installed and connections made between the two with retrofit stud(s).
2. Existing studs in the upper frame are not sufficiently in line with the studs in the frame below and the existing studs in the upper frame are 3 feet (91 cm) or shorter.

For Condition 1, both the lower stud and the upper stud shall be retrofitted using the methods of Section C104.2. For Condition 2, the retrofit stud shall be connected to the lower studs using the methods of Section C104.2 and be continuous from the bottom horizontal brace to the top horizontal brace. Connection is not required between the retrofit stud and the upper stud. In both conditions the bottom chord of the piggyback truss section shall be fastened to each retrofit stud using a connector with minimum axial capacity of 175 pounds (778 N).

[BS] C104.3 Retrofit studs. Retrofit studs shall be installed in accordance with Section C104.3.1 using one of the five methods of Section C104.3.2, C104.3.3, C104.3.4, C104.3.5 or C104.3.6. Figure C104.3 shows these methods of installation. For the Retrofit Configuration obtained from Table C104.2, the size of retrofit studs shall be as indicated in Table C104.4.1 or Table C104.4.2. Retrofit studs shall extend from the top of the lower horizontal brace to the bottom of the upper horizontal brace except that a maximum gap of $^1/_8$ inch (3.2 mm) is permitted at the bottom and $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) at the top. Where wall sheathing, panel siding or other wall covering is fastened to a conventionally framed gable end, retrofit studs shall be applied in accordance with Section C104.2.1.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] FIGURE C104.3—METHOD OF INSTALLING RETROFIT STUDS


TRUSS FRAMING
PLAN VIEWS
CONVENTIONAL FRAMING
PLAN VIEWS
STUD FACES PERPENDICULAR TO WALL
STUD FACES PARALLEL TO WALL
E
ES
RS
EXTERIOR WALL
(a)
METHOD #1: FACE TO EDGE OR TO FACE METHOD OF SECTION C104.3.2
MINIMUM 1-1/2" PENETRATION OF FASTENER INTO SECONDARY MEMBER
(b)
METHOD #2: FACE TO OFFSET FACE METHOD OF SECTION C104.3.3
MINIMUM 1-1/2" PENETRATION OF FASTENER INTO SECONDARY MEMBER
NAIL PLATE
(c)
METHOD #4 BUTTED RETROFIT STUD METHOD OF SECTION C104.3.4
MINIMUM 1-1/4" PENETRATION OF FASTENER INTO LUMBER
(d)
METHOD #4: OFFSET RETROFIT STUD METHOD OF SECTION C104.3.5
MINIMUM 1-1/4" PENETRATION OF FASTENER INTO LUMBER
N
CAN BE MULTIPLE MEMBERS
(e)
METHOD #5: NAILER WITH RETROFIT STUD METHOD OF SECTION C104.3.6
MINIMUM 1-1/2" PENETRATION OF FASTENER INTO SECONDARY MEMBER
THE FIGURES DO NOT REFLECT THE NUMBER OF REQUIRED FASTENERS OR SHOW HORIZONTAL BRACES OR STRAPS.
FASTENERS SHALL BE PLACED MAXIMUM 6" ON CENTER AND A MINIMUM OF 2-1/2" FROM ENDS.
3" FASTENERS CAN BE INSTALLED FROM EITHER SIDE OF LUMBER AS LONG AS THERE IS 1-1/2" FASTENER PENETRATION.
ES INDICATES AN EXISTING STUD.
RS INDICATES A RETROFIT STUD.
N INDICATES A NAILER.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] C104.3.1 Fastening. Where nail plates are not used, retrofit studs shall be attached to existing studs using 3-inch (76 mm) fasteners at not greater than 6 inches (152 mm) on center but not closer than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm) on center with fasteners not closer to ends of members than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).

[BS] C104.3.2 Method #1: Face-to-edge or face-to-face method. Retrofit studs shall be installed immediately adjacent to existing gable end wall studs as indicated in Figure C104.3(a). The retrofit studs shall overlap the edge or side of the existing stud by not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm). Fasteners shall be installed as specified in Section C104.3.1.

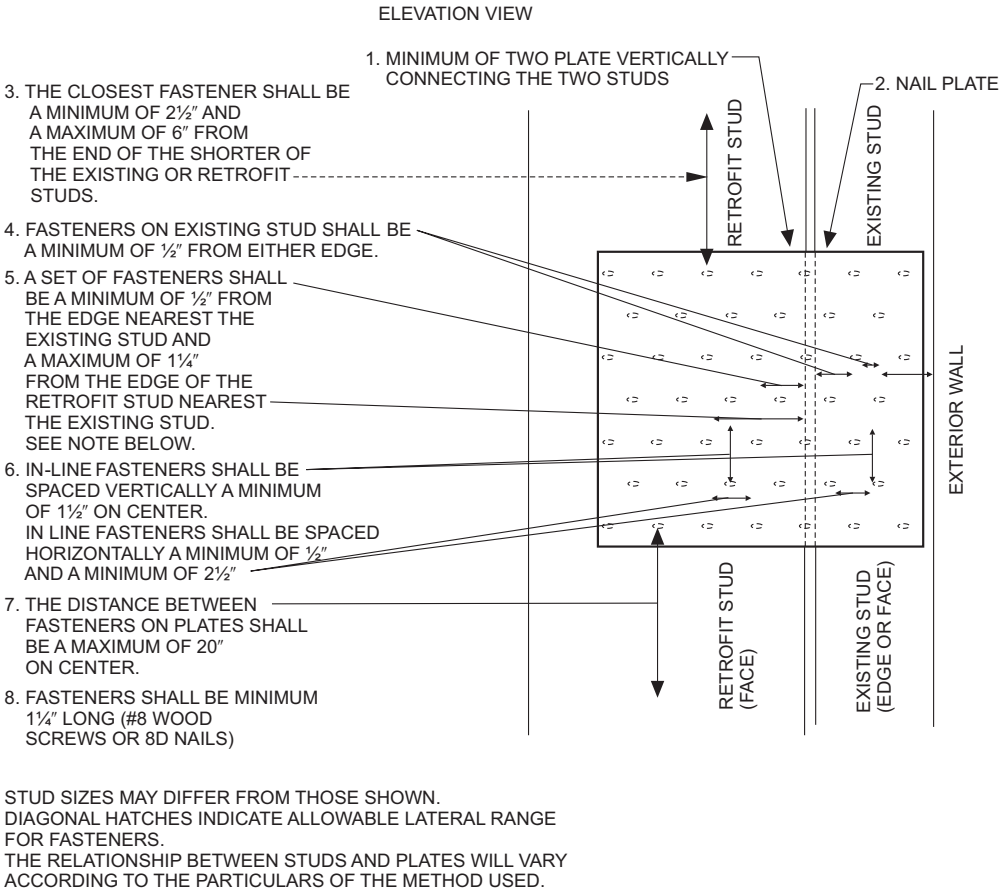
[BS] C104.3.3 Method #2: Face-to-face offset method. Retrofit studs shall be installed against the face of existing studs as indicated in Figure C104.3(b) such that the faces overlap not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) and the edge distance to fasteners is not less than $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm). Fasteners shall be installed as specified in Section C104.3.1.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] C104.3.4 Method #3: Butted retrofit stud method. Provided that all of the following fastening conditions are met, retrofit studs shall be permitted to be butted by their edge to existing studs with the addition of nail plates as indicated in Figure C104.3(c) and Figure C104.3.4.

1. The narrow edge of retrofit studs shall be installed against the narrow or the wide face of existing studs.
2. Not fewer than two nail plates shall be used.
3. Fasteners used to secure nail plates to studs shall be a minimum $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) long (#8 wood screws or 8d nails).
4. Fasteners placed in nail plates shall have a minimum end distance of $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm) for both studs and a maximum end distance of 6 inches (152 mm) from the ends of the shorter stud.
5. Fasteners shall have a minimum $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) edge distance. Fasteners shall be placed not greater than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the abutting vertical edges of existing studs and retrofit studs.
6. There shall be at least three fasteners through nail plates into all existing and retrofit studs to which the nail plate is attached.
7. Nail plates with three fasteners onto a single existing or retrofit stud shall be spaced not greater than 15 inches (38 cm) on center.
8. Nail plates with more than three fasteners onto a single existing or retrofit stud shall be spaced not greater than 20 inches (51 cm) on center.
9. Fasteners used to secure nail plates shall be spaced vertically not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) on center. Staggered fasteners used to secure nail plates shall be spaced horizontally not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

[BS] FIGURE C104.3.4—NAIL PLATE FASTENING


ELEVATION VIEW
1. MINIMUM OF TWO PLATE VERTICALLY CONNECTING THE TWO STUDS
2. NAIL PLATE
3. THE CLOSEST FASTENER SHALL BE A MINIMUM OF 2½″ AND A MAXIMUM OF 6″ FROM THE END OF THE SHORTER OF THE EXISTING OR RETROFIT STUDS.
4. FASTENERS ON EXISTING STUD SHALL BE A MINIMUM OF ½″ FROM EITHER EDGE.
5. A SET OF FASTENERS SHALL BE A MINIMUM OF ½″ FROM THE EDGE NEAREST THE EXISTING STUD AND A MAXIMUM OF 1¼″ FROM THE EDGE OF THE RETROFIT STUD NEAREST THE EXISTING STUD. SEE NOTE BELOW.
6. IN-LINE FASTENERS SHALL BE SPACED VERTICALLY A MINIMUM OF 1½″ ON CENTER. IN LINE FASTENERS SHALL BE SPACED HORIZONTALLY A MINIMUM OF ½″ AND A MINIMUM OF 2½″
7. THE DISTANCE BETWEEN FASTENERS ON PLATES SHALL BE A MAXIMUM OF 20″ ON CENTER.
8. FASTENERS SHALL BE MINIMUM 1¼″ LONG (#8 WOOD SCREWS OR 8D NAILS)
RETROFIT STUD
EXISTING STUD
EXTERIOR WALL
RETROFIT STUD (FACE)
EXISTING STUD (EDGE OR FACE)
STUD SIZES MAY DIFFER FROM THOSE SHOWN.
DIAGONAL HATCHES INDICATE ALLOWABLE LATERAL RANGE FOR FASTENERS.
THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN STUDS AND PLATES WILL VARY ACCORDING TO THE PARTICULARS OF THE METHOD USED.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

[BS] C104.3.5 Method #4: Offset retrofit stud method. Retrofit studs may be offset from existing studs by use of nail plates as shown in Figure C104.3(d) such that the vertical corner of a retrofit stud shall align with the vertical corner of an existing stud as indicated in Figure C104.3(d) and Figure C104.3.4, and the fastening conditions of Section C104.3.4 are met.

[BS] C104.3.6 Method #5: Nailer with retrofit stud method. Retrofit studs and existing studs shall be permitted to be connected using noncontinuous 2-inch by 4-inch (38 mm by 89 mm) nailers as indicated in Figure C104.3(e) provided that the following conditions are met.

1. Both the existing stud and the retrofit stud shall be butted to nailers and both shall be fastened to the nailer with 3-inch-long (76 mm) fasteners (#8 wood screws or 8d nails). Fasteners connecting each stud to the nailer shall be a spaced 6 inches (152 mm) o.c.

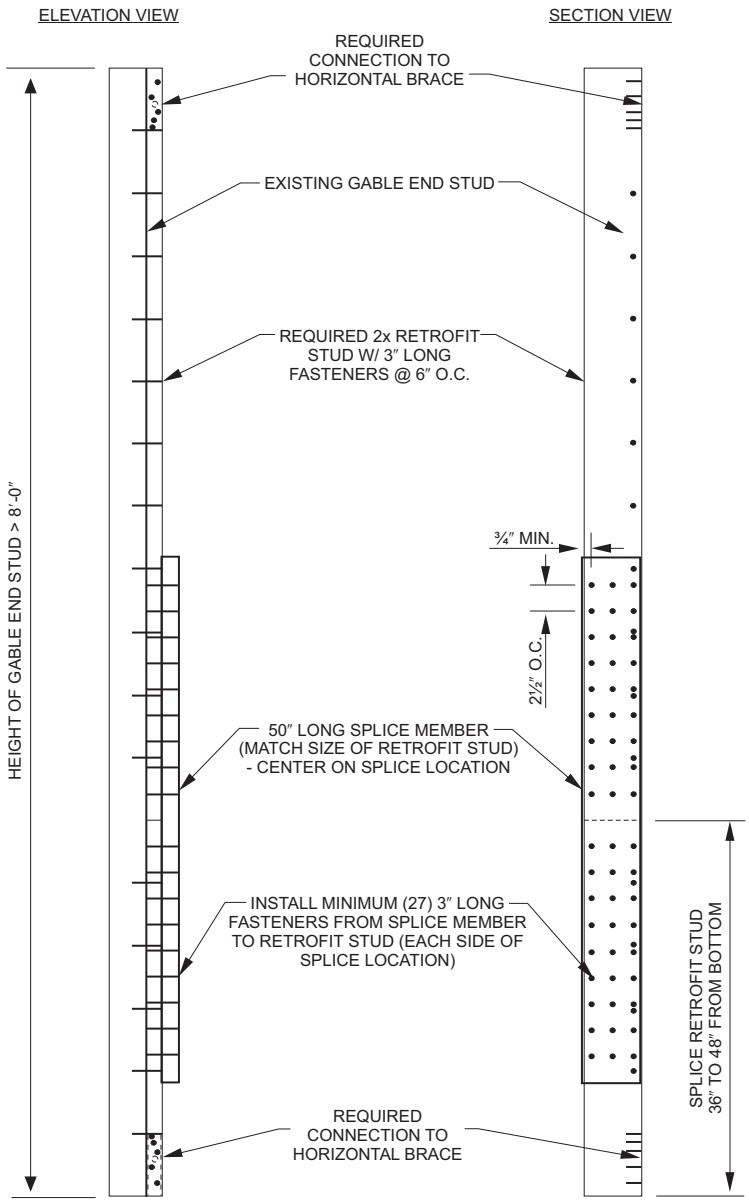
2. Fasteners into nailers from any direction shall be offset vertically by not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).
3. Fasteners into nailers shall be not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm) but not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from the end of the shorter of the existing stud and retrofit stud to which they are fastened.

[BS] C104.3.7 Reduced depth of retrofit studs. Retrofit studs may be reduced in depth by notching, tapering or other methods at any number of locations along their length provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Retrofit studs to be reduced in depth shall be sized such that the remaining minimum depth of member at the location of the notch (including cross-cut kerfs) shall be not less than that required by Table C104.4.1 or Table C104.4.2.
2. Reduced in-depth retrofit stud shall not be spliced within 12 inches (30 cm) of the location of notches. Splice members shall not be notched.
3. The vertical extent of notches shall not exceed 12 inches (30 cm) as measured at the depth of location of reduced depth.
4. A reduced in-depth retrofit stud member shall be fastened to the side of the existing gable end wall studs in accordance with Section C104.3.1. Two additional 3-inch (76 mm) fasteners (#8 wood screws or 10d nails) shall be installed on each side of notches in addition to those required by Section C104.3.1.

[BS] C104.3.8 Retrofit stud splices. Retrofit studs greater than 8 feet (244 cm) in height may be field spliced in accordance with Figure C104.3.8.

[BS] FIGURE C104.3.8—RETROFIT STUD SPLICES


ELEVATION VIEW
SECTION VIEW
REQUIRED CONNECTION TO HORIZONTAL BRACE
EXISTING GABLE END STUD
REQUIRED 2x RETROFIT STUD W/ 3″ LONG FASTENERS @ 6″ O.C.
¾″ MIN.
2½″ O.C.
50″ LONG SPLICE MEMBER (MATCH SIZE OF RETROFIT STUD) - CENTER ON SPLICE LOCATION
INSTALL MINIMUM (27) 3″ LONG FASTENERS FROM SPLICE MEMBER TO RETROFIT STUD (EACH SIDE OF SPLICE LOCATION)
REQUIRED CONNECTION TO HORIZONTAL BRACE
HEIGHT OF GABLE END STUD > 8′-0″
SPLICE RETROFIT STUD 36″ TO 48″ FROM BOTTOM

NOTE:
SPLICE LOCATION MAY BE REQUIRED AT TOP OF GABLE END STUD IF HEIGHT > 11′-0″ TO 12′-0″

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] C104.4 Connection between horizontal braces and retrofit studs. Connections between horizontal braces and retrofit studs shall comply with Section C104.4.1 or C104.4.2. Each retrofit stud shall be connected to the top and bottom horizontal brace members with a minimum 20-gage $1^1/_4$-inch-wide (32 mm) flat or coil metal strap with prepunched holes for fasteners. Straps shall be fastened with $1^1/_4$-inch-long (32 mm) fasteners (#8 wood screws or 8d nails) with the number of fasteners as indicated in Table C104.4.1 and Table C104.4.2. Fasteners shall be not closer to the end of lumber than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm).

[BS] C104.4.1 L-bent strap method. Retrofit studs shall be connected to horizontal braces or to strong backs in accordance with Figure C104.2(1), C104.2(2) or C104.2.3, and shall comply with the following conditions:

1. A strap shall be applied to the edges of a retrofit stud nearest the gable end wall and to the face of horizontal braces using at each end of the strap the number of fasteners specified in Table C104.4.1. Straps shall be long enough so that each strap extends sufficient distance onto the vertical face of the retrofit stud that the fastener closest to the ends of the studs is not less than $2^1/_2$ inches (64 mm) from the end of the stud. Straps shall be permitted to be twisted to accommodate the transition between the tops of retrofit studs and horizontal bracings following roof pitches.
2. Compression blocks shall be installed on the horizontal braces directly against either the existing vertical gable end wall stud or the retrofit stud. Figure C104.2(1) (trusses) and Figure C104.2(2) (conventionally framed) show the installation of the compression block against the existing vertical gable end wall stud with the strap from the retrofit stud running beside the compression block. Compression blocks shall be permitted to be placed over straps. Compression blocks shall be fastened to the horizontal braces with not fewer than the minimum number of 3-inch-long (76 mm) fasteners (#8 wood screws or 10d nails) specified in Table C104.4.1. End and edge distances for fasteners shall be in accordance with Section C103.5.3.

[BS]TABLE C104.4.1—ELEMENT SIZING AND SPACING FOR L-BENT RETROFIT METHOD

RETROFIT ELEMENTS	RETROFIT CONFIGURATION			
	A	B	C	D
Minimum size and number of Horizontal Braces	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 each 2 × 4
Minimum size and number of Retrofit Studs	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 each 2 × 8
Minimum number of fasteners connecting each end of straps to Retrofit Studs or to Horizontal Braces #8 screws or 10d nails $1^1/_4$" long	6	9	12	8 on each strap
Minimum number of fasteners to connect Compression Blocks to Horizontal Braces #8 screws or 10d nails 3" long	6	8	10	12

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

[BS] C104.4.2 U-bent strap method. Retrofit studs shall be connected to horizontal braces in accordance with Figure C104.2(3) or C104.2(4), shall be limited to Retrofit Configurations A and B as defined in Table C104.2, and shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Straps of sufficient length to meet the requirements for the number of fasteners in accordance with Table C104.4.2 and meet the end distance requirements of Section C103.5.3 shall be shaped around retrofit studs and fastened to the edges of horizontal braces. Straps shall wrap the back edge of the retrofit stud snugly with a maximum gap of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). Rounded bends of straps shall be permitted. One fastener shall be installed that connects each strap to the side of the associated retrofit stud.
2. The horizontal brace shall butt snugly against the retrofit stud with a maximum gap of $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm).
3. Straps shall be permitted to be twisted to accommodate the transition between the tops of retrofit studs and horizontal braces that follow the roof pitch.

[BS] TABLE C104.4.2—ELEMENT SIZING AND SPACING FOR U-BENT RETROFIT METHOD

RETROFIT ELEMENTS	RETROFIT CONFIGURATION			
	A	B	C	D
Minimum size and number of Horizontal Braces	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 × 4	2 each 2 × 4
Minimum size and number of Retrofit Studs	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 each 2 × 8
Minimum number of fasteners connecting Straps to each edge of Horizontal Braces #8 screws or 10d nails $1^1/_4$" long	6	7	7	6 on each side of strap

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

[BS] C104.5 Connection of gable end wall to wall below. The bottom chords or bottom members of wood-framed gable end walls shall be attached to the wall below using one of the methods prescribed in Section C104.5.1 or C104.5.2. The particular method chosen shall correspond to the framing system and type of wall construction encountered.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS] C104.5.1 Gable end frame. The bottom chords of the gable end frame shall be attached to the wall below using gusset angles. Not fewer than two fasteners shall be installed into the bottom chord. The gusset angles shall be installed throughout the portion of the gable end where the gable end wall height is greater than 3 feet (91 cm) at the spacing specified in Table C104.5.1. Connection to the wall below shall be by one of the following methods:

1. For a wood-frame wall below, not fewer than two fasteners shall be installed. The fasteners shall be of the same diameter and style specified by the gusset angle manufacturer and sufficient length to extend through the double top plate of the wall below.
2. For a concrete or masonry wall below without a sill plate, the type and number of fasteners into the wall shall be consistent with the gusset angle manufacturer's specifications for fasteners installed in concrete or masonry.
3. For a concrete or masonry wall below with a 2x sill plate, the fasteners into the wall below shall be of the diameter and style specified by the gusset angle manufacturer for concrete or masonry connections; but, long enough to pass through the wood sill plate and provide the required embedment into the concrete or masonry below. Alternatively, the gusset angle can be anchored to the sill plate using four each $1^1/_2$-inch-long (38 mm) fasteners of the same type as specified by the gusset angle manufacturer for wood connections, provided that the sill plate is anchored to the wall on each side of the gusset angle by a $^1/_4$-inch-diameter (6.4 mm) masonry screw with $2^3/_4$ inches (70 mm) of embedment into the concrete or masonry wall. A $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) washer shall be placed under the heads of the masonry screws.

[BS]TABLE C104.5.1—SPACING OF GUSSET ANGLES

EXPOSURE CATEGORY	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph)	SPACING OF GUSSET ANGLES (inches)
C	140	38
C	150	32
C	165	28
C	180	24
C	190	20
B	140	48
B	150	40
B	165	36
B	180	30
B	190	26

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

[BS] C104.5.2 Conventionally framed gable end wall. Each stud in a conventionally framed gable end wall, throughout the length of the gable end wall where the wall height is greater than 3 feet (914 mm), shall be attached to the bottom or sill plate using a stud to plate connector with minimum uplift capacity of 175 pounds (778 N). The bottom or sill plate shall then be connected to the wall below using one of the following methods:

1. For a wood frame wall below, the sill or bottom plate shall be connected to the top plate of the wall below using $^1/_4$-inch-diameter (6.4 mm) lag bolt fasteners of sufficient length to penetrate the bottom plate of the upper gable end wall and extend through the bottom top plate of the wall below. A washer sized for the diameter of the lag bolt shall be placed under the head of each lag bolt. The fasteners shall be installed at the spacing indicated in Table C104.5.2.
2. For a concrete or masonry wall below, the sill or bottom plate shall be connected to the concrete or masonry wall below using $^1/_4$-inch-diameter (6.4 mm) concrete or masonry screws of sufficient length to provide $2^3/_4$ inches (70 mm) of embedment into the top of the concrete or masonry wall. A washer sized for the diameter of the lag bolt shall be placed under the head of each lag bolt. The fasteners shall be installed at the spacing indicated in Table C104.5.2.

[BS]TABLE C104.5.2—SPACING OF LAG OR MASONRY SCREWS USED TO CONNECT SILL PLATE OF GABLE END WALL TO TOP OF THE WALL BELOW

EXPOSURE CATEGORY	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph)	SPACING OF LAG OR MASONRY SCREWS (inches)
C	140	19
C	150	16
C	165	14
C	180	14
C	190	10
B	140	24

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[BS]TABLE C104.5.2—SPACING OF LAG OR MASONRY SCREWS USED TO CONNECT SILL PLATE OF GABLE END WALL TO TOP OF THE WALL BELOW—continued

EXPOSURE CATEGORY	BASIC WIND SPEED (mph)	SPACING OF LAG OR MASONRY SCREWS (inches)
B	150	20
B	165	18
B	180	15
B	190	13

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX C
CHAPTER C2 – ROOF DECK FASTENING FOR HIGH-WIND AREAS

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER C2 ROOF DECK FASTENING FOR HIGH-WIND AREAS

SECTION C201—GENERAL

[BS] C201.1 Purpose. This chapter provides prescriptive methods for partial structural retrofit of an existing building to increase its resistance to wind loads. It is intended for voluntary use where the basic wind speed, *V*, is greater than 130 mph (58 m/s) in accordance with Figure 1609.3(2) of the *California Building Code* and for reference by mitigation programs. The provisions of this chapter do not necessarily satisfy requirements for new construction. Unless specifically cited, the provisions of this chapter do not necessarily satisfy requirements for structural improvements triggered by addition, alteration, repair, change of occupancy, building relocation or other circumstances.

[BS] C201.2 Eligible conditions. The provisions of this chapter are applicable only to buildings that meet either of the following eligibility requirements:

1. Buildings assigned to Risk Category I or II in accordance with Table 1604.5 of the *California Building Code*.
2. Buildings within the scope of the *California Residential Code*.

SECTION C202—ROOF DECK ATTACHMENT FOR WOOD ROOFS

[BS] C202.1 Roof decking attachment for one- and two-family dwellings. For one- and two-family dwellings, fastening shall be in accordance with Section C202.1.1 or C202.1.2 as appropriate for the existing construction. The diameter of 8d nails shall be not less than 0.131 inch (3 mm) and the length shall be not less than $2^1/_4$ inches (57 mm) to qualify for the provisions of this section for existing nails regardless of head shape or head diameter.

[BS] C202.1.1 Sawn lumber or wood plank roofs. Roof decking consisting of sawn lumber or wood planks up to 12 inches (30 cm) wide and secured with not fewer than two nails (minimum size 8d) to each roof framing member it crosses shall be deemed to be sufficiently connected. Sawn lumber or wood plank decking secured with smaller fasteners than 8d nails or with fewer than two nails (minimum size 8d) to each framing member it crosses shall be deemed sufficiently connected if fasteners are added such that two clipped head, round head or ring shank nails (minimum size 8d) are in place on each framing member the nail crosses.

[BS] C202.1.2 Wood structural panel roofs For roof decking consisting of wood structural panels, fasteners and spacings required in Table C202.1.2 shall be deemed to comply with the requirements of Section 706.3.

Supplemental fasteners as required by Table C202.1.2 shall be 8d ring shank nails with round heads and the following minimum dimensions:

1. 0.113-inch-nominal (3 mm) shank diameter.
2. Ring diameter not less than 0.012 inch (0.3 mm) greater than shank diameter.
3. 16 to 20 rings per inch.
4. A minimum 0.280-inch (7 mm) full round head diameter.
5. Ring shank to extend not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the tip of the nail.
6. Minimum $2^1/_4$-inch (57 mm) nail length.

[BS] TABLE C202.1.2—SUPPLEMENT FASTENERS AT PANEL EDGES AND INTERMEDIATE FRAMING

EXISTING FASTENERS	EXISTING FASTENER SPACING (EDGE OR INTERMEDIATE SUPPORTS)	MAXIMUM SUPPLEMENTAL FASTENER SPACING FOR 130 MPH < V_{ult} ≤ 140 MPH	MAXIMUM SUPPLEMENTAL FASTENER SPACING FOR INTERIOR ZONE[c] LOCATIONS FOR MPH V_{ult} > 140 MPH AND EDGE ZONES NOT COVERED BY THE COLUMN TO THE RIGHT	EDGE ZONE[d] FOR V_{ult} > 160 MPH AND EXPOSURE C, OR V_{ult} > 180 MPH AND EXPOSURE B
Staples or 6d	Any	6″ o.c.[b]	6″ o.c.[b]	4″ o.c.[b] at panel edges and 4″ o.c.[b] at intermediate supports
8d clipped head or round head smooth shank	6″ o.c. or less	None necessary	None necessary along edges of panels but 6″ o.c.[b] at intermediate supports of panel	4″ o.c.[a] at panel edges and 4″ o.c.[a] at intermediate supports
8d clipped head or round head ring shank	6″ o.c. or less	None necessary	None necessary	4″ o.c.[a] at panel edges and 4″ o.c.[a] at intermediate supports
8d clipped head or round head smooth shank	Greater than 6″ o.c.	6″ o.c.[a]	6″ o.c.[a] along panel edges and 6″ o.c.[b] at intermediate supports of panel	4″ o.c.[a] at panel edges and 4″ o.c.[a] at intermediate supports
8d clipped head or round head ring shank	Greater than 6″ o.c.	6″ o.c.[a]	6″ o.c.[a]	4″ o.c.[a] at panel edges and 4″ o.c.[a] at intermediate supports

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Maximum spacing determined based on existing fasteners and supplemental fasteners.

b. Maximum spacing determined based on supplemental fasteners only.

c. Interior zone = sheathing that is not located within 4 feet of the perimeter edge of the roof or within 4 feet of each side of a ridge.

d. Edge zone = sheathing that is located within 4 feet of the perimeter edge of the roof and within 4 feet of each side of a ridge.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX C
CHAPTER C3 – REFERENCED STANDARDS

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CHAPTER C3
REFERENCED STANDARDS

SECTION C301—REFERENCED STANDARDS

[BS] C301.1 General. See Table C301.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

[BS] TABLE C301.1—REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
CBC—25	*California Building Code*	C101.3, C103.2, C201.1, C201.2
CRC—25	*California Residential Code*	C101.2, C101.3, C103.2, C201.2

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX D
BOARD OF APPEALS

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †
The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPENDIX

D

BOARD OF APPEALS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User notes:

About this appendix: Appendix D provides criteria for Board of Appeals members. Also provided are procedures by which the Board of Appeals should conduct its business.

ICC code development note: Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the Administrative Code Development Committee during the 2025 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

SECTION D101—GENERAL

[A] D101.1 Scope. A board of appeals shall be established within the jurisdiction for the purpose of hearing applications for modification of the requirements of this code pursuant to the provisions of Section 112. The board shall be established and operated in accordance with this section, and shall be authorized to hear evidence from appellants and the code official pertaining to the application and intent of this code for the purpose of issuing orders pursuant to these provisions.

[A] D101.2 Application for appeal. Any person shall have the right to appeal a decision of the code official to the board. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the intent of this code or the rules legally adopted hereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The application shall be filed on a form obtained from the code official within 20 days after the notice was served.

[A] D101.2.1 Limitation of authority. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code or interpret the administration of this code.

[A] D101.2.2 Stays of enforcement. Appeals of notice and orders, other than Imminent Danger notices, shall stay the enforcement of the notice and order until the appeal is heard by the board.

[A] D101.3 Membership of board. The board shall consist of five voting members appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction. Each member shall serve for **[INSERT NUMBER OF YEARS]** years or until a successor has been appointed. The board member's terms shall be staggered at intervals, so as to provide continuity. The code official shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not vote on any matter before the board.

[A] D101.3.1 Qualifications. The board shall consist of five individuals, who are qualified by experience and training to pass on matters pertaining to building construction and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

[A] D101.3.2 Alternate members. The chief appointing authority is authorized to appoint two alternate members who shall be called by the board chairperson to hear appeals during the absence or disqualification of a member. Alternate members shall possess the qualifications required for board membership, and shall be appointed for the same term or until a successor has been appointed.

[A] D101.3.3 Vacancies. Vacancies shall be filled for an unexpired term in the same manner in which original appointments are required to be made.

[A] D101.3.4 Chairperson. The board shall annually select one of its members to serve as chairperson.

[A] D101.3.5 Secretary. The chief appointing authority shall designate a qualified clerk to serve as secretary to the board. The secretary shall file a detailed record of all proceedings, which shall set forth the reasons for the board's decision, the vote of each member, the absence of a member and any failure of a member to vote.

[A] D101.3.6 Conflict of interest. A member with any personal, professional or financial interest in a matter before the board shall declare such interest and refrain from participating in discussions, deliberations and voting on such matters.

[A] D101.3.7 Compensation of members. Compensation of members shall be determined by law.

[A] D101.3.8 Removal from the board. A member shall be removed from the board prior to the end of their terms only for cause. Any member with continued absence from regular meeting of the board may be removed at the discretion of the chief appointing authority.

[A] D101.4 Rules and procedures. The board shall establish policies and procedures necessary to carry out its duties consistent with the provisions of this code and applicable state law. The procedures shall not require compliance with strict rules of evidence, but shall mandate that only relevant information be presented.

[A] D101.5 Notice of meeting. The board shall meet upon notice from the chairperson, within 10 days of the filing of an appeal or at stated periodic intervals.

[A] D101.5.1 Open hearing. All hearings before the board shall be open to the public. The appellant, the appellant's representative, the code official and any person whose interests are affected shall be given an opportunity to be heard.

[A] D101.5.2 Quorum. Three members of the board shall constitute a quorum.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

[A] D101.5.3 Postponed hearing. When five members are not present to hear an appeal, either the appellant or the appellant's representative shall have the right to request a postponement of the hearing.

[A] D101.6 Legal counsel. The jurisdiction shall furnish legal counsel to the board to provide members with general legal advice concerning matters before them for consideration. Members shall be represented by legal counsel at the jurisdiction's expense in all matters arising from service within the scope of their duties.

[A] D101.7 Board decision. The board shall only modify or reverse the decision of the code official by a concurring vote of three or more members.

[A] D101.7.1 Resolution. The decision of the board shall be by resolution. Every decision shall be promptly filed in writing in the office of the code official within three days and shall be open to the public for inspection. A certified copy shall be furnished to the appellant or the appellant's representative and to the code official.

[A] D101.7.2 Administration. The code official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.

[A] D101.8 Court review. Any person, whether or not a previous party of the appeal, shall have the right to apply to the appropriate court for a writ of certiorari to correct errors of law. Application for review shall be made in the manner and time required by law following the filing of the decision in the office of the chief administrative officer.

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
APPENDIX E
TEMPORARY EMERGENCY USES

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †
The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

APPENDIX

E TEMPORARY EMERGENCY USES

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.

User notes:

About this appendix: The primary purpose for Appendix E is to provide guidance for designers, engineers, architects and fire and building officials to allow temporary emergency uses of existing buildings with respect to the minimum code requirements. This appendix is intended to serve as a template or checklist for use during an emergency that references the relevant code requirements.

SECTION E101—GENERAL

E101.1 Scope. The provisions of this appendix shall apply to the use, installation, alteration, relocation and location of existing buildings and any service utilities or systems that serve such existing buildings during or based on the response to the emergency.

E101.1.1 Objective. The objective of this appendix is to provide flexibility for the code official to permit the temporary uses of existing buildings during an emergency to address unusual circumstances that temporarily overwhelm response capabilities of an entity while maintaining the level of safety intended by the code.

E101.1.2 Temporary use. Where temporary uses during emergencies exceed 180 days, judgement shall be used by the code official to allow for temporary uses and conditions to continue for the duration of the emergency based on the needs of the emergency. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

SECTION E102—DEFINITIONS

E102.1 General. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

EMERGENCY. Any event declared by local, state or federal entities that temporarily overwhelms response capabilities and that requires the temporary suspension or modification of regulations, codes or standards to facilitate response to such an event.

TEMPORARY USE. An activity or practice that is established at a designated location for a period of less than 180 days. Uses include, but are not limited to, those functional designations listed within the occupancy group descriptions in Section 302.1 of the *California Building Code*.

SECTION E103—SUBMITTAL DOCUMENTS

E103.1 General. Submittal documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work or use proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the code official.

SECTION E104—CONFORMANCE

E104.1 General. Temporary use of existing buildings shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to provide a reasonable level of safety, health and general welfare as determined by the code official.

E104.2 Changes over time. As an emergency evolves, submittal documents shall be submitted to demonstrate that the temporary uses of the existing buildings are in compliance with the requirements of this code.

SECTION E105—PERMITS

E105.1 Emergency permits. In an emergency situation, where an existing building undergoes a temporary change of use or occupancy, the permit application shall be submitted as soon as practicable to the code official.

SECTION E106—GENERAL STANDARDS FOR EMERGENCY USES

E106.1 Scope. The provisions of Sections E106.2 through E106.7 shall apply to all existing structures being repurposed and to all structures relocated to support the response to an emergency.

E106.2 Intent. The intent of this section is to provide a reasonable level of safety in a structure repurposed for emergency use.

E106.3 Change of use or occupancy. Existing buildings used in a way that was not originally intended by occupancy class or use shall be allowed without formally changing the occupancy. The previous occupancy and use shall resume upon the conclusion of the *emergency*. Where the temporary live load of the floor is more than that required by Section 1607 of the *California Building Code* for the original use, the area designated for the temporary live load shall be posted with placards for the approved live load.

E106.4 Fire safety provisions. Determination of the fire safety requirements by the code official shall be in accordance with Section E106.4.1 through E106.4.5 in order to make determinations of safe conditions rather than strict adherence to the provisions of the *California Fire Code*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further
BUFF

102102163

E106.4.1 Fire safety and evacuation plans. Fire safety and evacuation plans shall be provided in accordance with Sections 403 and 404 of the *California Fire Code*. Submittal documents shall be updated where there are any physical changes to the layout of the structure.

E106.4.2 Training and practice drills. Training of staff and practice drills shall comply with Sections 405 and 406 of the *California Fire Code*. Structures in place for longer than 30 days shall conduct evacuation drills in accordance with Section 405.3 of the *California Fire Code* based on the temporary use.

E106.4.3 Fire protection. An evaluation shall be performed to decide on fire protection needed utilizing NFPA 550.

E106.4.4 Emergency access. Emergency vehicle access roads shall be approved by the fire code official.

E106.4.5 Fire watch. A fire watch in accordance with Section 403.11.1 of the *California Fire Code* shall be permitted to be provided in lieu of other fire protection systems.

E106.5 Means of egress. Means of egress shall comply with Section 1011.5, in addition to Sections E106.5.1 through E106.5.3.

Exception: In Group I-2 occupancies, in areas where corridors are used for movement of care recipients in beds, the clear width of ramps and corridors shall be not less than 48 inches (1219 mm).

E106.5.1 Exit discharge. Exit discharge shall provide access to a public way or to a safe dispersal area in accordance with Section 1028.5 of the *California Building Code.*

E106.5.2 Means of egress lighting. The means of egress shall be illuminated when the space is occupied.

Exception: Sleeping areas.

E106.5.3 Exit signs. Exit signs shall be provided where the means of egress is not readily identifiable. Exit signs shall be permitted to be illuminated by the lighting provided in the structure.

E106.6 Accessibility. A facility that is constructed to be accessible shall be maintained accessible during occupancy.

E106.7 Temporary connection. The code official shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of the building or system to the utility, the source of energy, fuel or power, or the water system or sewer system in accordance with Section 111. Water closets and lavatories shall be either permanent plumbing fixtures installed within the structure or temporary water closets or lavatories, such as chemical toilets or other means approved by the code official.

E106.7.1 Portable heating, cooling and cooking equipment. Portable heating, cooling and cooking equipment shall be used in accordance with the *California Fire Code*, their listing and manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION E107—USE OF SPECIFIC STANDARDS

E107.1 Increased occupant load. Allowing for additional occupants in *existing buildings* shall comply with Sections E107.1.1 through E107.1.3.

E107.1.1 Authorization. The code official is authorized to allow for an increase in the number of occupants or a change of use in a building or portion of a building during an emergency.

E107.1.2 Maintenance of the means of egress. The existing means of egress shall be maintained.

E107.1.3 Sleeping areas. Where a space is used for sleeping purposes, the space shall be equipped with smoke alarms in accordance with Sections 907.2.6.1.1 and 907.2.11 of the *California Fire Code* or be provided with a fire watch in accordance with Section 403.11.1 of the *California Fire Code*. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 915 of the *California Fire Code* where the structure uses any fossil fuel or wood burning appliances.

E107.2 Temporary health care facilities. Temporary health care facilities shall comply with Sections E107.2.1 and E107.2.2.

E107.2.1 General. Temporary health care facilities shall be erected, maintained and operated to minimize the possibility of a fire emergency requiring the evacuation of occupants.

E107.2.2 Membrane structures under projections. Membrane structures of less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) shall be permitted to be placed under projections of a permanent building, provided the permanent building is protected with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *California Fire Code*.

E107.3 Use of tiny houses or manufactured homes. Tiny houses or manufactured homes used for temporary housing shall comply with Sections E107.3.1 through E107.3.5.

E107.3.1 Fire separation distances. Tiny houses or manufactured homes shall be separated by not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) between structures.

E107.3.2 Fire breaks. Tiny houses and manufactured homes shall not be located in groups of more than 20 units. Fire breaks of at least 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be provided between each group.

E107.3.3 Smoke alarms. Tiny houses and manufactured homes used for sleeping purposes shall be equipped with a smoke alarm complying with Section 907.2.11 of the *California Fire Code*. Smoke alarms are not required to be hard wired.

E107.3.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 915 of the *California Fire Code,* where the tiny house or manufactured home uses any fossil fuel or wood-burning appliances.

E107.3.5 Structures located in a wildland-urban interface zone. Tiny houses and manufactured homes that are located in a wildland-urban interface area shall be provided with defensible space in accordance with Section 603 of the *California Wildland-Urban Interface Code*.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further

SECTION E108—REFERENCED STANDARDS

E108.1 General. See Table E108.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title and the section or sections of this appendix referenced in the standard.

TABLE E108.1—REFERENCED STANDARDS

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS REFERENCED HEREIN
IBC—24	*International Building Code®*	E106.3, E106.5.1
IFC—24	*International Fire Code®*	E106.4, E106.4.1, E106.4.2, E106.4.5, E106.7.1, E107.1.3, E107.2.2, E107.3.3, E107.3.4
IWUIC—24	*International Wildland-Urban Interface Code®*	E107.3.5
NFPA 550—2017	*Guide to the Fire Safety Concepts Tree*	E106.4.3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

CALIFORNIA EXISTING BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE
RESOURCE A
GUIDELINES ON FIRE RATINGS OF ARCHAIC MATERIALS AND ASSEMBLIES

Not adopted by the State of California
(May be available for adoption by local ordinance. See Section 1.1.11.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD							BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5	6								
Adopt Entire Chapter																								
Adopt Entire Chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																								
Chapter / Section																								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

RESOURCE

A

GUIDELINES ON FIRE RATINGS OF ARCHAIC MATERIALS AND ASSEMBLIES

User note:

About this resource: In the process of repair and alteration of existing buildings, based on the nature and the extent of the work, this code might require certain upgrades in the fire-resistance rating of building elements, at which time it becomes critical for the designers and the code officials to be able to determine the fire-resistance rating of the existing building elements as part of the overall evaluation for the assessment of the need for improvements. This resource document provides a guideline for such an evaluation for fire-resistance rating of archaic materials that is not typically found in the modern model building codes.

INTRODUCTION

The *International Existing Building Code*® (IEBC®) is a comprehensive code with the goal of addressing all aspects of work taking place in existing buildings and providing user-friendly methods and tools for regulation and improvement of such buildings. This resource document is included within the cover of the IEBC with that goal in mind and as a step towards accomplishing that goal.

In the process of repair and alteration of existing buildings, based on the nature and the extent of the work, the IEBC might require certain upgrades in the fire-resistance rating of building elements, at which time it becomes critical for the designers and the code officials to be able to determine the fire-resistance rating of the existing building elements as part of the overall evaluation for the assessment of the need for improvements. This resource document provides a guideline for such an evaluation for fire-resistance ratings of archaic materials that are not typically found in the modern model building codes.

Resource A is only a guideline and is not intended to be a document for specific adoption as it is not written in the format or language of ICC's International Codes and is not subject to the code development process.

PURPOSE

The *Guidelines on Fire Ratings of Archaic Materials and Assemblies* focuses upon the fire-related performance of archaic construction. "Archaic" encompasses construction typical of an earlier time, generally prior to 1950. "Fire-related performance" includes fire resistance, flame spread, smoke production and degree of combustibility.

The purpose of this guideline is to update the information which was available at the time of original construction, for use by architects, engineers and code officials when evaluating the fire safety of a rehabilitation project. In addition, information relevant to the evaluation of general classes of materials and types of construction is presented for those cases when documentation of the fire performance of a particular archaic material or assembly cannot be found.

It has been assumed that the building materials and their fastening, joining and incorporation into the building structure are sound mechanically. Therefore, some determination must be made that the original manufacture, the original construction practice and the rigors of aging and use have not weakened the building. This assessment can often be difficult because process and quality control was not good in many industries, and variations among locally available raw materials and manufacturing techniques often resulted in a product which varied widely in its strength and durability. The properties of iron and steel, for example, varied widely, depending on the mill and the process used.

There is nothing inherently inferior about archaic materials or construction techniques. The pressures that promote fundamental change are most often economic or technological matters not necessarily related to concerns for safety. The high cost of labor made wood lath and plaster uneconomical. The high cost of land and the congestion of the cities provided the impetus for high-rise construction. Improved technology made it possible. The difficulty with archaic materials is not a question of suitability, but familiarity.

Code requirements for the fire performance of key building elements (e.g., walls, floor/ceiling assemblies, doors, shaft enclosures) are stated in performance terms: hours of fire resistance. It matters not whether these elements were built in 1908 or 1980, only that they provide the required degree of fire resistance. The level of performance will be defined by the local community, primarily through the enactment of a building or rehabilitation code. This guideline is only a tool to help evaluate the various building elements, regardless of what the level of performance is required to be.

The problem with archaic materials is simply that documentation of their fire performance is not readily available. The application of engineering judgment is more difficult because building officials may not be familiar with the materials or construction method involved. As a result, either a full-scale fire test is required or the archaic construction in question removed and replaced. Both alternatives are time consuming and wasteful.

This guideline and the accompanying appendix are designed to help fill this information void. By providing the necessary documentation, there will be a firm basis for the continued acceptance of archaic materials and assemblies.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

1—FIRE-RELATED PERFORMANCE OF ARCHAIC MATERIALS AND ASSEMBLIES

1.1 FIRE PERFORMANCE MEASURES

This guideline does not specify the level of performance required for the various building components. These requirements are controlled by the building occupancy and use and are set forth in the local building or rehabilitation code.

The fire resistance of a given building element is established by subjecting a sample of the assembly to a "standard" fire test which follows a "standard" time-temperature curve. This test method has changed little since the 1920s. The test results tabulated in the Appendix have been adjusted to reflect current test methods.

The current model building codes cite other fire-related properties not always tested for in earlier years: flame spread, smoke production and degree of combustibility. However, they can generally be assumed to fall within well-defined values because the principal combustible component of archaic materials is cellulose. Smoke production is more important today because of the increased use of plastics. However, the early flame spread tests, developed in the early 1940s, also included a test for smoke production.

"Plastics," one of the most important classes of contemporary materials, were not found in the review of archaic materials. If plastics are to be used in a rehabilitated building, they should be evaluated by contemporary standards. Information and documentation of their fire-related properties and performance is widely available.

Flame spread, smoke production and degree of combustibility are discussed in detail below. Test results for eight common species of lumber, published in an Underwriter's Laboratories' (UL) report (104), are noted in the following table:

TABLE 1.1
TUNNEL TEST RESULTS FOR EIGHT SPECIES OF LUMBER

SPECIES OF LUMBER	FLAME SPREAD	FUEL CONTRIBUTED	SMOKE DENSITY
Western White Pine	75	50-60	50
Northern White Pine	120–215	120–140	60–65
Ponderosa Pine	80–215	120–135	100–110
Yellow Pine	180–190	130–145	275–305
Red Gum	140–155	125–175	40–60
Yellow Birch	105–110	100–105	45–65
Douglas Fir	65–100	50–80	10–100
Western Hemlock	60—75	40—65	40—120

Flame Spread

The flame spread of interior finishes is most often measured by the ASTM E84 "tunnel test." This test measures how far and how fast the flames spread across the surface of the test sample. The resulting flame spread rating (FSR) is expressed as a number on a continuous scale where cement-asbestos board is 0 and red oak is 100. (Materials with a flame spread greater than red oak have an FSR greater than 100.) The scale is divided into distinct groups or classes. The most commonly used flame spread classifications are: Class I or A, with a 0–25 FSR; Class II or B, with a 26–75 FSR; and Class III or C, with a 76–200 FSR. (Note: Some codes use Roman numerals and others use letters.) The *NFPA Life Safety Code* also has a Class D (201–500 FSR) and Class E (over 500 FSR) interior finish.

These classifications are typically used in modern building codes to restrict the rate of fire spread. Only the first three classifications are normally permitted, though not all classes of materials can be used in all places throughout a building. For example, the interior finish of building materials used in exits or in corridors leading to exits is more strictly regulated than materials used within private dwelling units.

In general, inorganic archaic materials (e.g., bricks or tile) can be expected to be in Class I. Materials of whole wood are mostly Class II. Whole wood is defined as wood used in the same form as sawn from the tree. This is in contrast to the contemporary reconstituted wood products such as plywood, fiberboard, hardboard or particle board. If the organic archaic material is not whole wood, the flame spread classification could be well over 200 and thus would be particularly unsuited for use in exits and other critical locations in a building. Some plywoods and various wood fiberboards have flame spreads over 200. Although they can be treated with fire retardants to reduce their flame spread, it would be advisable to assume that all such products have a flame spread over 200 unless there is information to the contrary.

Smoke Production

The evaluation of smoke density is part of the ASTM E84 tunnel test. For the eight species of lumber shown in Table 1.1, the highest levels are 275–305 for Yellow Pine, but most of the others are less smoky than red oak which has an index of 100. The advent of plastics caused substantial increases in the smoke density values measured by the tunnel test. The ensuing limitation of the smoke production for wall and ceiling materials by the model building codes has been a reaction to the introduction of plastic materials. In general, cellulosic materials fall in the 50–300 range of smoke density which is below the general limitation of 450 adopted by many codes.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

Degree of Combustibility

The model building codes tend to define "noncombustibility" on the basis of having passed ASTM E136 or if the material is totally inorganic. The acceptance of gypsum wallboard as noncombustible is based on limiting paper thickness to not over $^1/_8$ inch and a 0–50 flame spread rating by ASTM E84. At times there were provisions to define a Class I or A material (0–25 FSR) as noncombustible, but this is not currently recognized by most model building codes.

If there is any doubt whether or not an archaic material is noncombustible, it would be appropriate to send out samples for evaluation. If an archaic material is determined to be noncombustible according to ASTM E136, it can be expected that it will not contribute fuel to the fire.

1.2 COMBUSTIBLE CONSTRUCTION TYPES

One of the earliest forms of timber construction used exterior load-bearing masonry walls with columns and/or wooden walls supporting wooden beams and floors in the interior of the building. This form of construction, often called "mill" or "heavy timber" construction, has approximately 1-hour fire resistance. The exterior walls will generally contain the fire within the building.

With the development of dimensional lumber, there was a switch from heavy timber to "balloon frame" construction. The balloon frame uses load-bearing exterior wooden walls which have long timbers often extending from foundation to roof. When longer lumber became scarce, another form of construction, "platform" framing, replaced the balloon framing. The difference between the two systems is significant because platform framing is automatically fire-blocked at every floor while balloon framing commonly has concealed spaces that extend unblocked from basement to attic. The architect, engineer and code official must be alert to the details of construction and the ease with which fire can spread in concealed spaces.

2—BUILDING EVALUATION

A given rehabilitation project will most likely go through several stages. The preliminary evaluation process involves the designer in surveying the prospective building. The fire resistance of existing building materials and construction systems is identified; potential problems are noted for closer study. The final evaluation phase includes: developing design solutions to upgrade the fire resistance of building elements, if necessary; preparing working drawings and specifications; and the securing of the necessary code approvals.

2.1 PRELIMINARY EVALUATION

A preliminary evaluation should begin with a building survey to determine the existing materials, the general arrangement of the structure and the use of the occupied spaces, and the details of construction. The designer needs to know "what is there" before a decision can be reached about what to keep and what to remove during the rehabilitation process. This preliminary evaluation should be as detailed as necessary to make initial plans. The fire-related properties need to be determined from the applicable building or rehabilitation code, and the materials and assemblies existing in the building then need to be evaluated for these properties. Two worksheets are shown below to facilitate the preliminary evaluation.

Two possible sources of information helpful in the preliminary evaluation are the original building plans and the building code in effect at the time of original construction. Plans may be on file with the local building department or in the offices of the original designers (e.g., architect, engineer) or their successors. If plans are available, the investigator should verify that the building was actually constructed as called for in the plans, as well as incorporate any later alterations or changes to the building. Earlier editions of the local building code should be on file with the building official. The code in effect at the time of construction will contain fire performance criteria. While this is no guarantee that the required performance was actually provided, it does give the investigator some guidance as to the level of performance which may be expected. Under some code administration and enforcement systems, the code in effect at the time of construction also defines the level of performance that must be provided at the time of rehabilitation.

Table 2.1(1) illustrates one method for organizing preliminary field notes. Space is provided for the materials, dimensions and condition of the principal building elements. Each floor of the structure should be visited and the appropriate information obtained. In practice, there will often be identical materials and construction on every floor, but the exception may be of vital importance. A schematic diagram should be prepared of each floor showing the layout of exits and hallways and indicating where each element described in the field notes fits into the structure as a whole. The exact arrangement of interior walls within apartments is of secondary importance from a fire safety point of view and need not be shown on the drawings unless these walls are required by code to have a fire-resistance rating.

The location of stairways and elevators should be clearly marked on the drawings. All exterior means of escape (e.g., fire escapes) should be identified. (Note: Problems providing adequate exiting are discussed at length in the *Egress Guideline for Residential Rehabilitation*.)

The following notes explain the entries in Table 2.1(1).

Exterior Bearing Walls. Many old buildings utilize heavily constructed walls to support the floor/ceiling assemblies at the exterior of the building. There may be columns and/or interior bearing walls within the structure, but the exterior walls are an important factor in assessing the fire safety of a building.

The field investigator should note how the floor/ceiling assemblies are supported at the exterior of the building. If columns are incorporated in the exterior walls, the walls may be considered nonbearing.

Interior Bearing Walls. It may be difficult to determine whether or not an interior wall is load bearing, but the field investigator should attempt to make this determination. At a later stage of the rehabilitation process, this question will need to be determined exactly. Therefore, the field notes should be as accurate as possible.

Exterior Nonbearing Walls. The fire resistance of the exterior walls is important for two reasons. These walls (both bearing and nonbearing) are depended upon to: a) contain a fire within the building of origin; or b) keep an exterior fire outside the building. It is therefore important to indicate on the drawings where any openings are located as well as the materials and construction of all doors or shutters. The drawings should indicate the presence of wired glass, its thickness and framing, and identify the materials used for windows and door frames. The protection of openings adjacent to exterior means of escape (e.g., exterior stairways, fire escapes) is particularly important. The ground floor drawing should locate the building on the property and indicate the precise distances to adjacent buildings.

Interior Nonbearing Walls (Partitions). A partition is a "wall that extends from floor to ceiling and subdivides space within any story of a building" (see Bibliography entry 35). Table 2.1(1) has two categories (A & B) for Interior Nonbearing Walls (Partitions) which can be used for different walls, such as hallway walls as compared to inter-apartment walls. Under some circumstances there may be only one type of wall construction; in others, three or more types of wall construction may occur.

The field investigator should be alert for differences in function as well as in materials and construction details. In general, the details within apartments are not as important as the major exit paths and exit stairways. The preliminary field investigation should attempt to determine the thickness of all walls. A term introduced below called "thickness design" will depend on an accurate ($\pm\ ^1/_4$ inch) determination. Even though this initial field survey is called "preliminary," the data generated should be as accurate and complete as possible.

The field investigator should note the exact location from which observations are recorded. For instance, if a hole is found through a wall enclosing an exit stairway which allows a cataloguing of the construction details, the field investigation notes should reflect the location of the "find." At the preliminary stage it is not necessary to core every wall; the interior details of construction can usually be determined at some location.

Structural Frame. There may or may not be a complete skeletal frame, but usually there are columns, beams, trusses or other like elements. The dimensions and spacing of the structural elements should be measured and indicated on the drawings. For instance, if there are 10-inch-square columns located on a 30-foot-square grid throughout the building, this should be noted. The structural material and cover or protective materials should be identified wherever possible. The thickness of the cover materials should be determined to an accuracy of $\pm\ ^1/_4$ inch. As discussed above, the preliminary field survey usually relies on accidental openings in the cover materials rather than a systematic coring technique.

Floor/Ceiling Structural Systems. The span between supports should be measured. If possible, a sketch of the cross-section of the system should be made. If there is no location where accidental damage has opened the floor/ceiling construction to visual inspection, it is necessary to make such an opening. An evaluation of the fire resistance of a floor/ceiling assembly requires detailed knowledge of the materials and their arrangement. Special attention should be paid to the cover on structural steel elements and the condition of suspended ceilings and similar membranes.

Roofs. The preliminary field survey of the roof system is initially concerned with watertightness. However, once it is apparent that the roof is sound for ordinary use and can be retained in the rehabilitated building, it becomes necessary to evaluate the fire performance. The field investigator must measure the thickness and identify the types of materials which have been used. Be aware that there may be several layers of roof materials.

Doors. Doors to stairways and hallways represent some of the most important fire elements to be considered within a building. The uses of the spaces separated largely controls the level of fire performance necessary. Walls and doors enclosing stairways or elevator shafts would normally require a higher level of performance than between the bedroom and bath. The various uses are differentiated in Table 2.1(1).

Careful measurements of the thickness of door panels must be made, and the type of core material within each door must be determined. It should be noted whether doors have self-closing devices; the general operation of the doors should be checked. The latch should engage and the door should fit tightly in the frame. The hinges should be in good condition. If glass is used in the doors, it should be identified as either plain glass or wired glass mounted in either a wood or steel frame.

Materials. The field investigator should be able to identify ordinary building materials. In situations where an unfamiliar material is found, a sample should be obtained. This sample should measure at least 10 cubic inches so that an ASTM E136 fire test can be conducted to determine if it is combustible.

Thickness. The thickness of all materials should be measured accurately since, under certain circumstances, the level of fire resistance is very sensitive to the material thickness.

Condition. The method of attaching the various layers and facings to one another or to the supporting structural element should be noted under the appropriate building element. The "secureness" of the attachment and the general condition of the layers and facings should be noted here.

Notes. The "Notes" column can be used for many purposes, but it might be a good idea to make specific references to other field notes or drawings.

After the building survey is completed, the data collected must be analyzed. A suggested work sheet for organizing this information is given as Table 2.1(2).

TABLE 2.1(1)
PRELIMINARY EVALUATION FIELD NOTES

BUILDING ELEMENT		MATERIALS	THICKNESS	CONDITION	NOTES
Exterior Bearing Walls					
Interior Bearing Walls					
Exterior Nonbearing Walls					
Interior Nonbearing Walls or Partitions	A				
	B				
Structural Frame: Columns					
Beams					
Other					
Floor/Ceiling Structural System: Spanning					
Roofs					
Doors (including frame and hardware): a) Enclosed vertical exitway					
b) Enclosed horizontal exitway					
c) Other					

The required fire resistance and flame spread for each building element are normally established by the local building or rehabilitation code. The fire performance of the existing materials and assemblies should then be estimated, using one of the techniques described below. If the fire performance of the existing building element(s) is equal to or greater than that required, the materials and assemblies may remain. If the fire performance is less than required, then corrective measures must be taken.

The most common methods of upgrading the level of protection are to either remove and replace the existing building element(s) or to repair and upgrade the existing materials and assemblies. Other fire protection measures, such as automatic sprinklers or detection and alarm systems, also could be considered, though they are beyond the scope of this guideline. If the upgraded protection is still less than that required or deemed to be acceptable, additional corrective measures must be taken. This process must continue until an acceptable level of performance is obtained.

TABLE 2.1(2)
PRELIMINARY EVALUATION WORKSHEET

BUILDING ELEMENT		REQUIRED FIRE RESISTANCE	REQUIRED FLAME SPREAD	ESTIMATED FIRE RESISTANCE	ESTIMATED FLAME SPREAD	METHOD OF UPGRADING	ESTIMATED UPGRADED PROTECTION	NOTES
Exterior Bearing Walls								
Interior Bearing Walls								
Exterior Nonbearing Walls								
Interior Nonbearing Walls or Partitions	A							
	B							
Structural Frame: Columns								
Beams								
Other								
Floor/Ceiling Structural System: Spanning								
Roofs								
Doors (including frame and hardware): a) Enclosed vertical exitway								
b) Enclosed horizontal exitway								
c) Others								

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2.2 FIRE RESISTANCE OF EXISTING BUILDING ELEMENTS

The fire resistance of the existing building elements can be estimated from the tables and histograms contained in the Appendix. The Appendix is organized first by type of building element: walls, columns, floor/ceiling assemblies, beams and doors. Within each building element, the tables are organized by type of construction (e.g., masonry, metal, wood frame) and then further divided by minimum dimensions or thickness of the building element.

A histogram precedes every table that has 10 or more entries. The X-axis measures fire resistance in hours; the Y-axis shows the number of entries in that table having a given level of fire resistance. The histograms also contain the location of each entry within that table for easy cross-referencing.

The histograms, because they are keyed to the tables, can speed the preliminary investigation. For example, Table 1.3.2, *Wood Frame Walls 4" to Less Than 6" Thick*, contains 96 entries. Rather than study each table entry, the histogram shows that every wall assembly listed in that table has a fire resistance of less than 2 hours. If the building code required the wall to have 2-hour fire resistance, the designer, with a minimum of effort, is made aware of a problem that requires closer study.

Suppose the code had only required a wall of 1-hour fire resistance. The histogram shows far fewer complying elements (19) than noncomplying ones (77). If the existing assembly is not one of the 19 complying entries, there is a strong possibility the existing assembly is deficient. The histograms can also be used in the converse situation. If the existing assembly is not one of the smaller number of entries with a lower than required fire resistance, there is a strong possibility the existing assembly will be acceptable.

At some point, the existing building component or assembly must be located within the tables. Otherwise, the fire resistance must be determined through one of the other techniques presented in the guideline. Locating the building component in the Appendix tables not only guarantees the accuracy of the fire-resistance rating, but also provides a source of documentation for the building official.

2.3 EFFECTS OF PENETRATIONS IN FIRE-RESISTANT ASSEMBLIES

There are often many features in existing walls or floor/ceiling assemblies which were not included in the original certification or fire testing. The most common examples are pipes and utility wires passed through holes poked through an assembly. During the life of the building, many penetrations are added, and by the time a building is ready for rehabilitation, it is not sufficient to just consider the fire resistance of the assembly as originally constructed. It is necessary to consider all penetrations and their relative impact upon fire performance. For instance, the fire resistance of the corridor wall may be less important than the effect of plain glass doors or transoms. In fact, doors are the most important single class of penetrations.

A fully developed fire generates substantial quantities of heat and excess gaseous fuel capable of penetrating any holes which might be present in the walls or ceiling of the fire compartment. In general, this leads to a severe degradation of the fire resistance of those building elements and to a greater potential for fire spread. This is particularly applicable to penetrations located high in a compartment where the positive pressure of the fire can force the unburned gases through the penetration.

Penetrations in a floor/ceiling assembly will generally completely negate the barrier qualities of the assembly and will lead to rapid spread of fire to the space above. It will not be a problem, however, if the penetrations are filled with noncombustible materials strongly fastened to the structure. The upper half of walls are similar to the floor/ceiling assembly in that a positive pressure can reasonably be expected in the top of the room, and this will push hot and/or burning gases through the penetration unless it is completely sealed.

Building codes require doors installed in fire-resistive walls to resist the passage of fire for a specified period of time. If the door to a fully involved room is not closed, a large plume of fire will typically escape through the doorway, preventing anyone from using the space outside the door while allowing the fire to spread. This is why door closers are so important. Glass in doors and transoms can be expected to rapidly shatter unless constructed of listed or approved wire glass in a steel frame. As with other building elements, penetrations or nonrated portions of doors and transoms must be upgraded or otherwise protected.

Table 5.1 in Section V of the Appendix contains 41 entries of doors mounted in sound tight-fitting frames. Section 3.4 below outlines one procedure for evaluating and possibly upgrading existing doors.

3—FINAL EVALUATION AND DESIGN SOLUTION

The final evaluation begins after the rehabilitation project has reached the final design stage and the choice is made to keep certain archaic materials and assemblies in the rehabilitated building. The final evaluation process is essentially a more refined and detailed version of the preliminary evaluation. The specific fire-resistance and flame-spread requirements are determined for the project. This may involve local building and fire officials reviewing the preliminary evaluation as depicted in Tables 2.1(1) and 2.1(2) and the field drawings and notes. When necessary, provisions must be made to upgrade existing building elements to provide the required level of fire performance.

There are several approaches to design solutions that can make possible the continued use of archaic materials and assemblies in the rehabilitated structure. The simplest case occurs when the materials and assembly in question are found within the Appendix tables and the fire performance properties satisfy code requirements. Other approaches must be used, though, if the assembly cannot be found within the Appendix or the fire performance needs to be upgraded. These approaches have been grouped into two classes: experimental and theoretical.

3.1 THE EXPERIMENTAL APPROACH

If a material or assembly found in a building is not listed in the Appendix tables, there are several other ways to evaluate fire performance. One approach is to conduct the appropriate fire test(s) and thereby determine the fire-related properties directly. There are a number of laboratories in the United States which routinely conduct the various fire tests.

The contract with any of these testing laboratories should require their observation of specimen preparation as well as the testing of the specimen. A complete description of where and how the specimen was obtained from the building, the transportation of the specimen, and its preparation for testing should be noted in detail so that the building official can be satisfied that the fire test is representative of the actual use.

The test report should describe the fire test procedure and the response of the material or assembly. The laboratory usually submits a cover letter with the report to describe the provisions of the fire test that were satisfied by the material or assembly under investigation. A building official will generally require this cover letter but will also read the report to confirm that the material or assembly complies with the code requirements. Local code officials should be involved in all phases of the testing process.

The experimental approach can be costly and time consuming because specimens must be taken from the building and transported to the testing laboratory. When a load-bearing assembly has continuous reinforcement, the test specimen must be removed from the building, transported and tested in one piece. However, when the fire performance cannot be determined by other means, there may be no alternative to a full-scale test.

A "nonstandard" small-scale test can be used in special cases. Sample sizes need only be 10–25 square feet (0.93–2.3 m^2), while full-scale tests require test samples of either 100 or 180 square feet (9.3 or 17 m^2) in size. This small-scale test is best suited for testing nonload-bearing assemblies against thermal transmission only.

3.2 THE THEORETICAL APPROACH

There will be instances when materials and assemblies in a building undergoing rehabilitation cannot be found in the Appendix tables. Even where test results are available for more or less similar construction, the proper classification may not be immediately apparent. Variations in dimensions, loading conditions, materials or workmanship may markedly affect the performance of the individual building elements, and the extent of such a possible effect cannot be evaluated from the tables.

Theoretical methods being developed offer an alternative to the full-scale fire tests discussed above. For example, Section 4302(b) of the 1979 edition of the *Uniform Building Code* specifically allows an engineering design for fire resistance in lieu of conducting full-scale tests. These techniques draw upon computer simulation and mathematical modeling, thermodynamics, heat-flow analysis and materials science to predict the fire performance of building materials and assemblies.

One theoretical method, known as the "Ten Rules of Fire Endurance Ratings," was published by T. Z. Harmathy in the May, 1965 edition of *Fire Technology* (see Bibliography entry 35). Harmathy's Rules provide a foundation for extending the data within the Appendix tables to analyze or upgrade current as well as archaic building materials or assemblies.

HARMATHY'S TEN RULES

Rule 1: The "thermal" fire endurance of a construction consisting of a number of parallel layers is greater than the sum of the "thermal" fire endurances characteristic of the individual layers when exposed separately to fire. (Note: The "thermal" fire endurance is the time at which the average temperature on the unexposed side of a construction exceeds its initial value by 250°F (121°C) when the other side is exposed to the "standard" fire specified by ASTM Test Method E-19.)

The minimum performance of an untested assembly can be estimated if the fire endurance of the individual components is known. Though the exact rating of the assembly cannot be stated, the endurance of the assembly is greater than the sum of the endurance of the components.

When a building assembly or component is found to be deficient, the fire endurance can be upgraded by providing a protective membrane. This membrane could be a new layer of brick, plaster or drywall. The fire endurance of this membrane is called the "finish rating." Appendix tables 1.5.1 and 1.5.2 contain the finish ratings for the most commonly employed materials. (See also the notes to Rule 2.)

The test criteria for the finish rating is the same as for the thermal fire endurance of the total assembly: average temperature increases of 250°F (121°C) above ambient or 325°F (163°C) above ambient at any one place with the membrane being exposed to the fire. The temperature is measured at the interface of the assembly and the protective membrane.

Rule 2: The fire endurance of a construction does not decrease with the addition of further layers.

Harmathy notes that this rule is a consequence of the previous rule. Its validity follows from the fact that the additional layers increase both the resistance to heat flow and the heat capacity of the construction. This, in turn, reduces the rate of temperature rise at the unexposed surface.

This rule is not just restricted to "thermal" performance but affects the other fire test criteria: direct flame passage, cotton waste ignition and load bearing performance. This means that certain restrictions must be imposed on the materials to be added and on the loading conditions. One restriction is that a new layer, if applied to the exposed surface, must not produce additional thermal stresses in the construction, i.e., its thermal expansion characteristics must be similar to those of the adjacent layer. Each new layer must also be capable of contributing enough additional strength to the assembly to sustain the added dead load. If this requirement is not fulfilled, the allowable live load must be reduced by an amount equal to the weight of the new layer. Because of these limitations, this rule should not be applied without careful consideration.

Particular care must be taken if the material added is a good thermal insulator. Properly located, the added insulation could improve the "thermal" performance of the assembly. Improperly located, the insulation could block necessary thermal transmission through the assembly, thereby subjecting the structural elements to greater temperatures for longer periods of time, and could cause premature structural failure of the supporting members.

Rule 3: The fire endurance of constructions containing continuous air gaps or cavities is greater than the fire endurance of similar constructions of the same weight, but containing no air gaps or cavities.

By providing for voids in a construction, additional resistances are produced in the path of heat flow. Numerical heat flow analyses indicate that a 10 to 15 percent increase in fire endurance can be achieved by creating an air gap at the midplane of a brick wall. Since the gross volume is also increased by the presence of voids, the air gaps and cavities have a beneficial effect on stability as well. However, constructions containing combustible materials within an air gap may be regarded as exceptions to this rule because of the possible development of burning in the gap.

There are numerous examples of this rule in the tables. For instance:

Table 1.1.4; Item W-8-M-82: Cored concrete masonry, nominal 8 inch thick wall with one unit in wall thickness and with 62 percent minimum of solid material in each unit, load bearing (80 PSI). Fire endurance: $2^1/_2$ hours.

Table 1.1.5; Item W-10-M-11: Cored concrete masonry, nominal 10 inch thick wall with two units in wall thickness and a 2-inch (51 mm) air space, load bearing (80 PSI). The units are essentially the same as item W-8-M-82. Fire endurance: $3^1/_2$ hours.

These walls show 1 hour greater fire endurance by the addition of the 2-inch (51 mm) air space.

Rule 4: The farther an air gap or cavity is located from the exposed surface, the more beneficial is its effect on the fire endurance.

Radiation dominates the heat transfer across an air gap or cavity, and it is markedly higher where the temperature is higher.

The air gap or cavity is thus a poor insulator if it is located in a region which attains high temperatures during fire exposure.

Some of the clay tile designs take advantage of these factors. The double cell design, for instance, ensures that there is a cavity near the unexposed face. Some floor/ceiling assemblies have air gaps or cavities near the top surface and these enhance their thermal performance.

Rule 5: The fire endurance of a construction cannot be increased by increasing the thickness of a completely enclosed air layer.

Harmathy notes that there is evidence that if the thickness of the air layer is larger than about $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm), the heat transfer through the air layer depends only on the temperature of the bounding surfaces, and is practically independent of the distance between them. This rule is not applicable if the air layer is not completely enclosed, i.e., if there is a possibility of fresh air entering the gap at an appreciable rate.

Rule 6: Layers of materials of low thermal conductivity are better utilized on that side of the construction on which fire is more likely to happen.

As in Rule 4, the reason lies in the heat transfer process, though the conductivity of the solid is much less dependent on the ambient temperature of the materials. The low thermal conductor creates a substantial temperature differential to be established across its thickness under transient heat flow conditions. This rule may not be applicable to materials undergoing physical-chemical changes accompanied by significant heat absorption or heat evolution.

Rule 7: The fire endurance of asymmetrical constructions depends on the direction of heat flow.

This rule is a consequence of Rules 4 and 6, as well as other factors. This rule is useful in determining the relative protection of corridors and walls enclosing an exit stairway from the surrounding spaces. In addition, there are often situations where a fire is more likely, or potentially more severe, from one side or the other.

Rule 8: The presence of moisture, if it does not result in explosive spalling, increases the fire endurance.

The flow of heat into an assembly is greatly hindered by the release and evaporation of the moisture found within cementitious materials such as gypsum, Portland cement or magnesium oxychloride. Harmathy has shown that the gain in fire endurance may be as high as 8 percent for each percent (by volume) of moisture in the construction. It is the moisture chemically bound within the construction material at the time of manufacture or processing that leads to increased fire endurance. There is no direct relationship between the relative humidity of the air in the pores of the material and the increase in fire endurance.

Under certain conditions there may be explosive spalling of low permeability cementitious materials such as dense concrete. In general, one can assume that extremely old concrete has developed enough minor cracking that this factor should not be significant.

Rule 9: Load-supporting elements, such as beams, girders and joists, yield higher fire endurances when subjected to fire endurance tests as parts of floor, roof or ceiling assemblies than they would when tested separately.

One of the fire endurance test criteria is the ability of a load-supporting element to carry its design load. The element will be deemed to have failed when the load can no longer be supported.

Failure usually results for two reasons. Some materials, particularly steel and other metals, lose much of their structural strength at elevated temperatures. Physical deflection of the supporting element, due to decreased strength or thermal expansion, causes a redistribution of the load forces and stresses throughout the element. Structural failure often results because the supporting element is not designed to carry the redistributed load.

Roof, floor and ceiling assemblies have primary (e.g., beams) and secondary (e.g., floor joists) structural members. Since the primary load-supporting elements span the largest distances, their deflection becomes significant at a stage when the strength of the secondary members (including the roof or floor surface) is hardly affected by the heat. As the secondary members follow the

deflection of the primary load-supporting element, an increasingly larger portion of the load is transferred to the secondary members.

When load-supporting elements are tested separately, the imposed load is constant and equal to the design load throughout the test. By definition, no distribution of the load is possible because the element is being tested by itself. Without any other structural members to which the load could be transferred, the individual elements cannot yield a higher fire endurance than they do when tested as parts of a floor, roof or ceiling assembly.

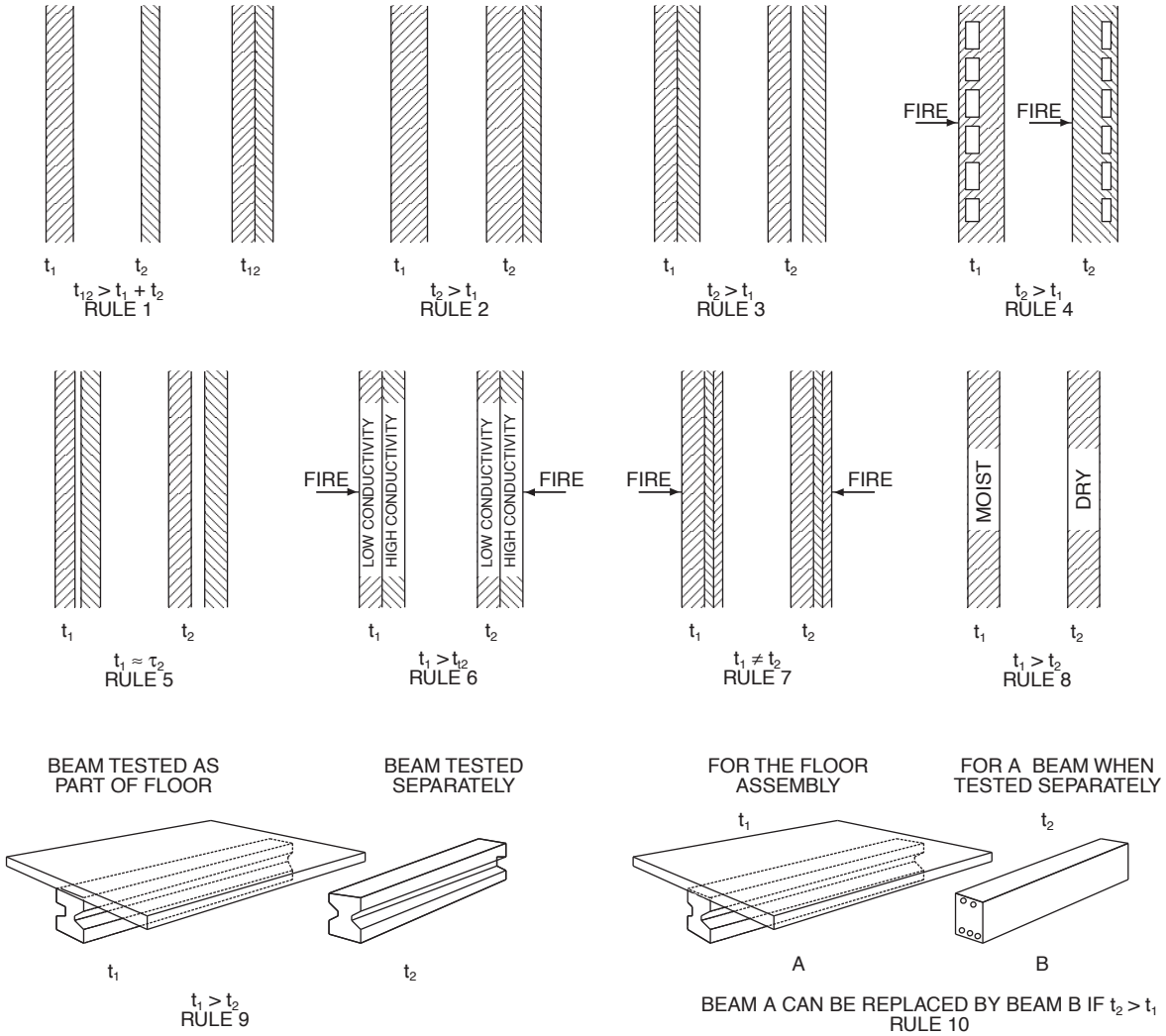
Rule 10: The load-supporting elements (beams, girders, joists, etc.) of a floor, roof or ceiling assembly can be replaced by such other load-supporting elements which, when tested separately, yielded fire endurances not less than that of the assembly.

This rule depends on Rule 9 for its validity. A beam or girder, if capable of yielding a certain performance when tested separately, will yield an equally good or better performance when it forms a part of a floor, roof or ceiling assembly. It must be emphasized that the supporting element of one assembly must not be replaced by the supporting element of another assembly if the performance of this latter element is not known from a separate (beam) test. Because of the load-reducing effect of the secondary elements that results from a test performed on an assembly, the performance of the supporting element alone cannot be evaluated by simple arithmetic. This rule also indicates the advantage of performing separate fire tests on primary load-supporting elements.

ILLUSTRATION OF HARMATHY'S RULES

Harmathy provided one schematic figure which illustrated his rules. It should be useful as a quick reference to assist in applying his rules.

FIGURE 3.2—DIAGRAMMATIC ILLUSTRATION OF HARMATHY'S TEN RULES[a]



Diagrammatic illustration of 10 rules.
t = fire endurance

t = Fire endurance

a. Reproduced from the May 1965 *Fire Technology* (Vol. 1, No. 2). Copyright National Fire Protection Association, Boston. Reproduced by permission.

EXAMPLE APPLICATION OF HARMATHY'S RULES

The following examples, based in whole or in part upon those presented in Harmathy's paper (see Bibliography entry 35), show how the rules can be applied to practical cases.

Example 1:

Problem

A contractor would like to keep a partition which consists of a $3^3/_4$ inch (95 mm) thick layer of red clay brick, a $1^1/_4$ inch (32 mm) thick layer of plywood and a $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) thick layer of gypsum wallboard at a location where 2-hour fire endurance is required. Is this assembly capable of providing a 2-hour protection?

Solution

(1) This partition does not appear in the Appendix tables.

(2) Bricks of this thickness yield fire endurances of approximately 75 minutes (Table 1.1.2, Item W-4-M-2).

(3) The $1^1/_4$ inch (32 mm) thick plywood has a finish rating of 30 minutes.

(4) The $^3/_8$ inch (9.5 mm) gypsum wallboard has a finish rating of 10 minutes.

(5) Using the recommended values from the tables and applying Rule 1, the fire endurance (FI) of the assembly is larger than the sum of the individual layers, or

$FI > 75 + 30 + 10 = 115$ minutes

Discussion

This example illustrates how the Appendix tables can be utilized to determine the fire resistance of assemblies not explicitly listed.

Example 2:

Problem

(1) A number of buildings to be rehabilitated have the same type of roof slab which is supported with different structural elements.

(2) The designer and contractor would like to determine whether or not this roof slab is capable of yielding a 2-hour fire endurance. According to a rigorous interpretation of ASTM E119, however, only the roof assembly, including the roof slab as well as the cover and the supporting elements, can be subjected to a fire test. Therefore, a fire endurance classification cannot be issued for the slabs separately.

(3) The designer and contractor believe this slab will yield a 2-hour fire endurance even without the cover, and any beam of at least 2-hour fire endurance will provide satisfactory support. Is it possible to obtain a classification for the slab separately?

Solution

(1) The answer to the question is yes.

(2) According to Rule 10, it is not contrary to common sense to test and classify roofs and supporting elements separately. Furthermore, according to Rule 2, if the roof slabs actually yield a 2-hour fire endurance, the endurance of an assembly, including the slabs, cannot be less than 2 hours.

(3) The recommended procedure would be to review the tables to see if the slab appears as part of any tested roof or floor/ceiling assembly. The supporting system can be regarded as separate from the slab specimen, and the fire endurance of the assembly listed in the table is at least the fire endurance of the slab. There would have to be an adjustment for the weight of the roof cover in the allowable load if the test specimen did not contain a cover.

(4) The supporting structure or element would have to have at least a 2-hour fire endurance when tested separately.

Discussion

If the tables did not include tests on assemblies which contained the slab, one procedure would be to assemble the roof slabs on any convenient supporting system (not regarded as part of the specimen) and to subject them to a load which, besides the usually required superimposed load, includes some allowances for the weight of the cover.

Example 3:

Problem

A steel-joisted floor and ceiling assembly is known to have yielded a fire endurance of 1 hour and 35 minutes. At a certain location, a 2-hour endurance is required. What is the most economical way of increasing the fire endurance by at least 25 minutes?

Solution

(1) The most effective technique would be to increase the ceiling plaster thickness. Existing coats of paint would have to be removed and the surface properly prepared before the new plaster could be applied. Other materials (e.g., gypsum wallboard) could also be considered.

(2) There may be other techniques based on other principles, but an examination of the drawings would be necessary.

Discussion

(1) The additional plaster has at least three effects:

a) The layer of plaster is increased and thus there is a gain of fire endurance (Rule 1).

b) There is a gain due to shifting the air gap farther from the exposed surface (Rule 4).

c) There is more moisture in the path of heat flow to the structural elements (Rules 7 and 8).

(2) The increase in fire endurance would be at least as large as that of the finish rating for the added thickness of plaster. The combined effects in (1) above would further increase this by a factor of 2 or more, depending upon the geometry of the assembly.

Example 4:

Problem

The fire endurance of item W-10-M-l in Table 1.1.5 is 4 hours. This wall consists of two $3^{3}/_{4}$ inch (95 mm) thick layers of structural tiles separated by a 2-inch (51 mm) air gap and $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) Portland cement plaster or stucco on both sides. If the actual wall in the building is identical to item W-10-M-1 except that it has a 4-inch (102 mm) air gap, can the fire endurance be estimated at 5 hours?

Solution

The answer to the question is no for the reasons contained in Rule 5.

Example 5:

Problem

In order to increase the insulating value of its precast roof slabs, a company has decided to use two layers of different concretes. The lower layer of the slabs, where the strength of the concrete is immaterial (all the tensile load is carried by the steel reinforcement), would be made with a concrete of low strength but good insulating value. The upper layer, where the concrete is supposed to carry the compressive load, would remain the original high strength, high thermal conductivity concrete. How will the fire endurance of the slabs be affected by the change?

Solution

The effect on the thermal fire endurance is beneficial:

(1) The total resistance to heat flow of the new slabs has been increased due to the replacement of a layer of high thermal conductivity by one of low conductivity.

(2) The layer of low conductivity is on the side more likely to be exposed to fire, where it is more effectively utilized according to Rule 6. The layer of low thermal conductivity also provides better protection for the steel reinforcement, thereby extending the time before reaching the temperature at which the creep of steel becomes significant.

3.3 "THICKNESS DESIGN" STRATEGY

The "thickness design" strategy is based upon Harmathy's Rules 1 and 2. This design approach can be used when the construction materials have been identified and measured but the specific assembly cannot be located within the tables. The tables should be surveyed again for thinner walls of like material and construction detail that have yielded the desired or greater fire endurance. If such an assembly can be found, then the thicker walls in the building have more than enough fire resistance. The thickness of the walls thus becomes the principal concern.

This approach can also be used for floor/ceiling assemblies, except that the thickness of the cover and the slab become the central concern. (Note: "Cover" is defined as the protective layer or membrane of material which shows the flow of heat to the structural elements.) The fire resistance of the untested assembly will be at least the fire resistance of an assembly listed in the table having a similar design but with less cover and/or thinner slabs. For other structural elements (e.g., beams and columns), the element listed in the table must also be of a similar design but with less cover thickness.

3.4 EVALUATION OF DOORS

A separate section on doors has been included because the process for evaluation presented below differs from those suggested previously for other building elements. The impact of unprotected openings or penetrations in fire resistant assemblies has been detailed in Section 2.3 above. It is sufficient to note here that openings left unprotected will likely lead to failure of the barrier under actual fire conditions.

For other types of building elements (e.g., beams, columns), the Appendix tables can be used to establish a minimum level of fire performance. The benefit to rehabilitation is that the need for a full-scale fire test is then eliminated. For doors, however, this cannot be done. The data contained in Appendix Table 5.1, Resistance of Doors to Fire Exposure, can only provide guidance as to whether a successful fire test is even feasible.

For example, a door required to have 1 hour fire resistance is noted in the tables as providing only 5 minutes. The likelihood of achieving the required 1 hour, even if the door is upgraded, is remote. The ultimate need for replacement of the doors is reasonably clear, and the expense and time needed for testing can be saved. However, if the performance documented in the table is near or in excess of what is being required, then a fire test should be conducted. The test documentation can then be used as evidence of compliance with the required level of performance.

The table entries cannot be used as the sole proof of performance of the door in question because there are too many unknown variables which could measurably affect fire performance. The wood may have dried over the years; coats of flammable varnish could have been added. Minor deviations in the internal construction of a door can result in significant differences in performance.

Methods of securing inserts in panel doors can vary. The major nondestructive method of analysis, an X-ray, often cannot provide the necessary detail. It is for these, and similar reasons, that a fire test is still felt to be necessary.

It is often possible to upgrade the fire performance of an existing door. Sometimes, "as is" and modified doors are evaluated in a single series of tests when failure of the unmodified door is expected. Because doors upgraded after an initial failure must be tested again, there is a potential savings of time and money.

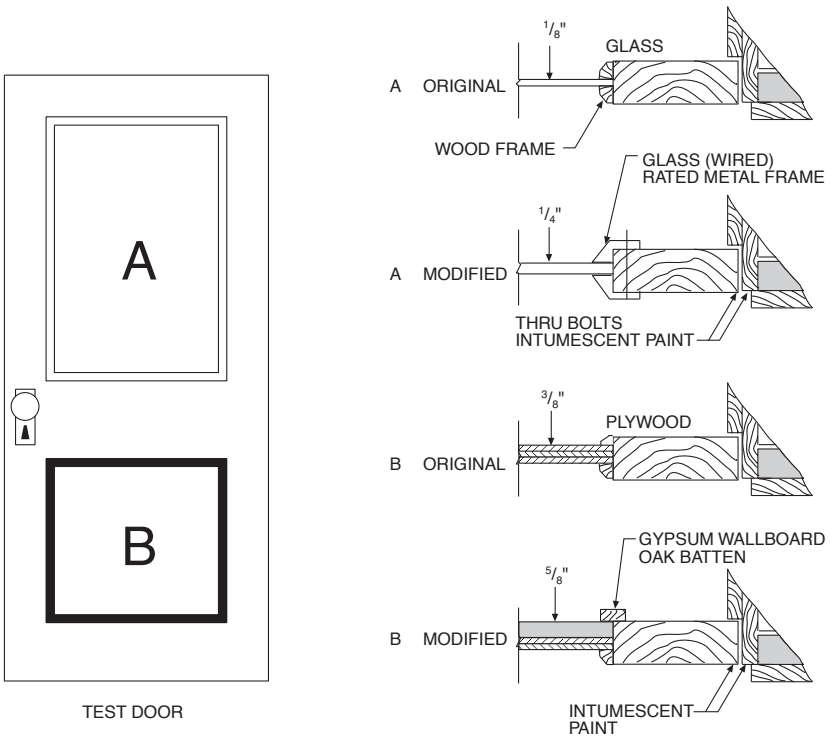
The most common problems encountered are plain glass, panel inserts of insufficient thickness and improper fit of a door in its frame. The latter problem can be significant because a fire can develop a substantial positive pressure, and the fire will work its way through otherwise innocent-looking gaps between door and frame.

One approach to solving these problems is as follows. The plain glass is replaced with approved or listed wire glass in a steel frame. The panel inserts can be upgraded by adding an additional layer of material. Gypsum wallboard is often used for this purpose. Intumescent paint applied to the edges of the door and frame will expand when exposed to fire, forming an effective seal around the edges. This seal, coupled with the generally even thermal expansion of a wood door in a wood frame, can prevent the passage of flames and other fire gases. Figure 3.4 illustrates these solutions.

Because the interior construction of a door cannot be determined by a visual inspection, there is no absolute guarantee that the remaining doors are identical to the one(s) removed from the building and tested. But the same is true for doors constructed today, and reason and judgment must be applied. Doors that appear identical upon visual inspection can be weighed. If the weights are reasonably close, the doors can be assumed to be identical and therefore provide the same level of fire performance. Another approach is to fire test more than one door or to dismantle doors selected at random to see if they had been constructed in the same manner. Original building plans showing door details or other records showing that doors were purchased at one time or obtained from a single supplier can also be evidence of similar construction.

More often though, it is what is visible to the eye that is most significant. The investigator should carefully check the condition and fit of the door and frame, and for frames out of plumb or separating from the wall. Door closers, latches and hinges must be examined to see that they function properly and are tightly secured. If these are in order and the door and frame have passed a full-scale test, there can be a reasonable basis for allowing the existing doors to remain.

FIGURE 3.4
MODIFICATION DETAILS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

4—SUMMARY

This section summarizes the various approaches and design solutions discussed in the preceding sections of the guideline. The term "structural system" includes: frames, beams, columns and other structural elements. "Cover" is a protective layer(s) of materials or membrane which slows the flow of heat to the structural elements. It cannot be stressed too strongly that the fire endurance of actual building elements can be greatly reduced or totally negated by removing part of the cover to allow pipes, ducts or conduits to pass through the element. This must be repaired in the rehabilitation process.

The following approaches shall be considered equivalent.

4.1 The fire resistance of a building element can be established from the Appendix tables. This is subject to the following limitations:

The building element in the rehabilitated building shall be constructed of the same materials with the same nominal dimensions as stated in the tables.

All penetrations in the building element or its cover for services such as electricity, plumbing and HVAC shall be packed with noncombustible cementitious materials and so fixed that the packing material will not fall out when it loses its water of hydration.

The effects of age and wear and tear shall be repaired so that the building element is sound and the original thickness of all components, particularly covers and floor slabs, is maintained.

This approach essentially follows the approach taken by model building codes. The assembly must appear in a table either published in or accepted by the code for a given fire-resistance rating to be recognized and accepted.

4.2 The fire resistance of a building element which does not explicitly appear in the Appendix tables can be established if one or more elements of same design but different dimensions have been listed in the tables. For walls, the existing element must be thicker than the one listed. For floor/ceiling assemblies, the assembly listed in the table must have the same or less cover and the same or thinner slab constructed of the same material as the actual floor/ceiling assembly. For other structural elements, the element listed in the table must be of a similar design but with less cover thickness. The fire resistance in all instances shall be the fire resistance recommended in the table. This is subject to the following limitations:

The actual element in the rehabilitated building shall be constructed of the same materials as listed in the table. Only the following dimensions may vary from those specified: for walls, the overall thickness must exceed that specified in the table; for floor/ceiling assemblies, the thickness of the cover and the slab must be greater than, or equal to, that specified in the table; for other structural elements, the thickness of the cover must be greater than that specified in the table.

All penetrations in the building element or its cover for services such as electricity, plumbing or HVAC shall be packed with noncombustible cementitious materials and so fixed that the packing material will not fall out when it loses its water of hydration.

The effects of age and wear and tear shall be repaired so that the building element is sound and the original thickness of all components, particularly covers and floor slabs, is maintained.

This approach is an application of the “thickness design” concept presented in Section 3.3 of the guideline. There should be many instances when a thicker building element was utilized than the one listed in the Appendix tables. This guideline recognizes the inherent superiority of a thicker design. (Note: “Thickness design” for floor/ceiling assemblies and structural elements refers to cover and slab thickness rather than total thickness.)

The “thickness design” concept is essentially a special case of Harmathy’s Rules (specifically Rules 1 and 2). It should be recognized that the only source of data is the Appendix tables. If other data are used, it must be in connection with the approach below.

4.3 The fire resistance of building elements can be established by applying Harmathy’s Ten Rules of Fire Resistance Ratings as set forth in Section 3.2 of the guideline. This is subject to the following limitations:

The data from the tables can be utilized subject to the limitations in Section 4.2.

Test reports from recognized journals or published papers can be used to support data utilized in applying Harmathy’s Rules.

Calculations utilizing recognized and well established computational techniques can be used in applying Harmathy’s Rules. These include, but are not limited to, analysis of heat flow, mechanical properties, deflections and load bearing capacity.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The fire-resistance tables that follow are a part of Resource A and provide a tabular form of assigning fire-resistance ratings to various archaic building elements and assemblies.

These tables for archaic materials and assemblies do for archaic materials what Tables 721.1(1) through 721.1(3) of the *California Building Code*® do for more modern building elements and assemblies. The fire-resistance tables of Resource A should be used as described in the "Purpose and Procedure" that follows the table of contents for these tables.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Purpose and Procedure			RESOURCE A-19
Section I—Walls			
1.1.1	Masonry	0 in. to less than 4 in. thick	RESOURCE A-20
1.1.2	Masonry	4 in. to less than 6 in. thick	RESOURCE A-23
1.1.3	Masonry	6 in. to less than 8 in. thick	RESOURCE A-29
1.1.4	Masonry	8 in. to less than 10 in. thick	RESOURCE A-33
1.1.5	Masonry	10 in. to less than 12 in. thick	RESOURCE A-40
1.1.6	Masonry	12 in. to less than 14 in. thick	RESOURCE A-43
1.1.7	Masonry	14 in. or more thick	RESOURCE A-48
1.2.1	Metal Frame	0 in. to less than 4 in. thick	RESOURCE A-51
1.2.2	Metal Frame	4 in. to less than 6 in. thick	RESOURCE A-54
1.2.3	Metal Frame	6 in. to less than 8 in. thick	RESOURCE A-55
1.2.4	Metal Frame	8 in. to less than 10 in. thick	RESOURCE A-56
1.3.1	Wood Frame	0 in. to less than 4 in. thick	RESOURCE A-56
1.3.2	Wood Frame	4 in. to less than 6 in. thick	RESOURCE A-57
1.3.3	Wood Frame	6 in. to less than 8 in. thick	RESOURCE A-63
1.4.1	Miscellaneous Materials	0 in. to less than 4 in. thick	RESOURCE A-64
1.4.2	Miscellaneous Materials	4 in. to less than 6 in. thick	RESOURCE A-64
1.5.1	Finish Ratings—Inorganic Materials		RESOURCE A-65
1.5.2	Finish Ratings—Organic Materials		RESOURCE A-66
Section II—Columns			
2.1.1	Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 0 in. to less than 6 in.	RESOURCE A-67
2.1.2	Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 10 in. to less than 12 in.	RESOURCE A-67
2.1.3	Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 12 in. to less than 14 in.	RESOURCE A-70
2.1.4	Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 14 in. to less than 16 in.	RESOURCE A-70
2.1.5	Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 16 in. to less than 18 in.	RESOURCE A-71
2.1.6	Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 18 in. to less than 20 in.	RESOURCE A-73
2.1.7	Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 20 in. to less than 22 in.	RESOURCE A-74
2.1.8	Hexagonal Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 12 in. to less than 14 in.	RESOURCE A-75
2.1.9	Hexagonal Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 14 in. to less than 16 in.	RESOURCE A-75
2.1.10	Hexagonal Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 16 in. to less than 18 in.	RESOURCE A-76
2.1.11	Hexagonal Reinforced Concrete	Minimum Dimension 20 in. to less than 22 in.	RESOURCE A-76
2.2	Round Cast Iron Columns	Minimum Dimension	RESOURCE A-76
2.3	Steel Columns—Gypsum Encasements	Minimum Area of Solid Material	RESOURCE A-77
2.4	Timber	Minimum Dimension	RESOURCE A-78
2.5.1.1	Steel Columns—Concrete Encasements	Minimum Dimension less than 6 in.	RESOURCE A-78
2.5.1.2	Steel Columns—Concrete Encasements	Minimum Dimension 6 in. to less than 8 in.	RESOURCE A-79
2.5.1.3	Steel Columns—Concrete Encasements	Minimum Dimension 8 in. to less than 10 in.	RESOURCE A-79

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

2.5.1.4	Steel Columns—Concrete Encasements	Minimum Dimension 10 in. to less than 12 in.	RESOURCE A-81
2.5.1.5	Steel Columns—Concrete Encasements	Minimum Dimension 12 in. to less than 14 in.	RESOURCE A-84
2.5.1.6	Steel Columns—Concrete Encasements	Minimum Dimension 14 in. to less than 16 in.	RESOURCE A-85
2.5.1.7	Steel Columns—Concrete Encasements	Minimum Dimension 16 in. to less than 18 in.	RESOURCE A-86
2.5.2.1	Steel Columns—Brick and Block Encasements	Minimum Dimension 10 in. to less than 12 in.	RESOURCE A-87
2.5.2.2	Steel Columns—Brick and Block Encasements	Minimum Dimension 12 in. to less than 14 in.	RESOURCE A-87
2.5.2.3	Steel Columns—Brick and Block Encasements	Minimum Dimension 14 in. to less than 16 in.	RESOURCE A-88
2.5.3.1	Steel Columns—Plaster Encasements	Minimum Dimension 6 in. to less than 8 in.	RESOURCE A-88
2.5.3.2	Steel Columns—Plaster Encasements	Minimum Dimension 8 in. to less than 10 in.	RESOURCE A-89
2.5.4.1	Steel Columns—Miscellaneous Encasements	Minimum Dimension 6 in. to less than 8 in.	RESOURCE A-89
2.5.4.2	Steel Columns—Miscellaneous Encasements	Minimum Dimension 8 in. to less than 10 in.	RESOURCE A-89
2.5.4.3	Steel Columns—Miscellaneous Encasements	Minimum Dimension 10 in. to less than 12 in.	RESOURCE A-90
2.5.4.4	Steel Columns—Miscellaneous Encasements	Minimum Dimension 12 in. to less than 14 in.	RESOURCE A-90
Section III—Floor/Ceiling Assemblies			
3.1	Reinforced Concrete		RESOURCE A-91
3.2	Steel Structural Elements		RESOURCE A-96
3.3	Wood Joist		RESOURCE A-101
3.4	Hollow Clay Tile with Reinforced Concrete		RESOURCE A-104
Section IV—Beams			
4.1.1	Reinforced Concrete	Depth 10 in. to less than 12 in.	RESOURCE A-107
4.1.2	Reinforced Concrete	Depth 12 in. to less than 14 in.	RESOURCE A-109
4.1.3	Reinforced Concrete	Depth 14 in. to less than 16 in.	RESOURCE A-110
4.2.1	Reinforced Concrete—Unprotected	Depth 10 in. to less than 12 in.	RESOURCE A-110
4.2.2	Steel—Concrete Protection	Depth 10 in. to less than 12 in.	RESOURCE A-111
Section V—Doors			
5.1	Resistance of Doors to Fire Exposure		RESOURCE A-112
Bibliography			RESOURCE A-115

PURPOSE AND PROCEDURE

The tables and histograms which follow are to be used only within the analytical framework detailed in the main body of this guideline.

Histograms precede any table with 10 or more entries. The use and interpretation of these histograms is explained in Section 2 of the guideline. The tables are in a format similar to that found in the model building codes. The following example, taken from an entry in Table 1.1.2, best explains the table format.

1. Item Code. The item code consists of a four place series in the general form w-x-y-z in which each member of the series denotes the following:

   w = Type of building element (e.g., W=Walls; F=Floors, etc.).

   x = The building element thickness rounded down to the nearest 1-inch increment (e.g., $4^{5}/_{8}$ inches is rounded off to 4 inches).

   y = The general type of material from which the building element is constructed (e.g., M=Masonry; W=Wood, etc.).

   z = The item number of the particular building element in a given table.

   The item code shown in the example W-4-M-50 denotes the following:

   W = Wall, as the building element.

   4 = Wall thickness in the range of 4 inches (102 mm) to less than 5 inches (127 mm).

   M = Masonry construction.

   50 = The 50th entry in Table 1.1.2.
2. Critical Dimension. The specific name or heading of this column identifies the dimension which, if varied, has the greatest impact on fire resistance. The critical dimension for walls, in the example here, is thickness. It is different for other building elements (e.g., depth for beams; membrane thickness for some floor/ceiling assemblies). The table entry is the named dimension of the building element measured at the time of actual testing to within $\pm^{1}/_{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) tolerance. The thickness tabulated includes facings where facings are a part of the wall construction.
3. Construction Details. The construction details provide a brief description of the manner in which the building element was constructed.
4. Performance. This heading is subdivided into two columns. The column labeled “Load” will either list the load that the building element was subjected to during the fire test or it will contain a note number which will list the load and any other significant details. If the building element was not subjected to a load during the test, this column will contain “n/a,” which means “not applicable.”

   The second column under performance is labeled “Time” and denotes the actual fire endurance time observed in the fire test.
5. Reference Number. This heading is subdivided into three columns: Pre-BMS-92; BMS-92; and Post-BMS-92. The table entry under this column is the number in the Bibliography of the original source reference for the test data.
6. Notes. Notes are provided at the end of each table to allow a more detailed explanation of certain aspects of the test. In certain tables the notes given to this column have also been listed under the “Construction Details” and/or “Load” columns.
7. Rec. Hours. This column lists the recommended fire endurance rating, in hours, of a building element. In some cases, the recommended fire endurance will be less than that listed under the “Time” column. In no case is the “Rec. Hours” greater than given in the “Time” column.

EXAMPLE ENTRY

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-M-50	$4^{5}/_{8}''$	Core: structural clay tile, see Notes 12, 16, 21; facings on unexposed side only, see Note 18.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 4, 24	$^{1}/_{3}$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION I—WALLS

FIGURE 1.1.1
MASONRY WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

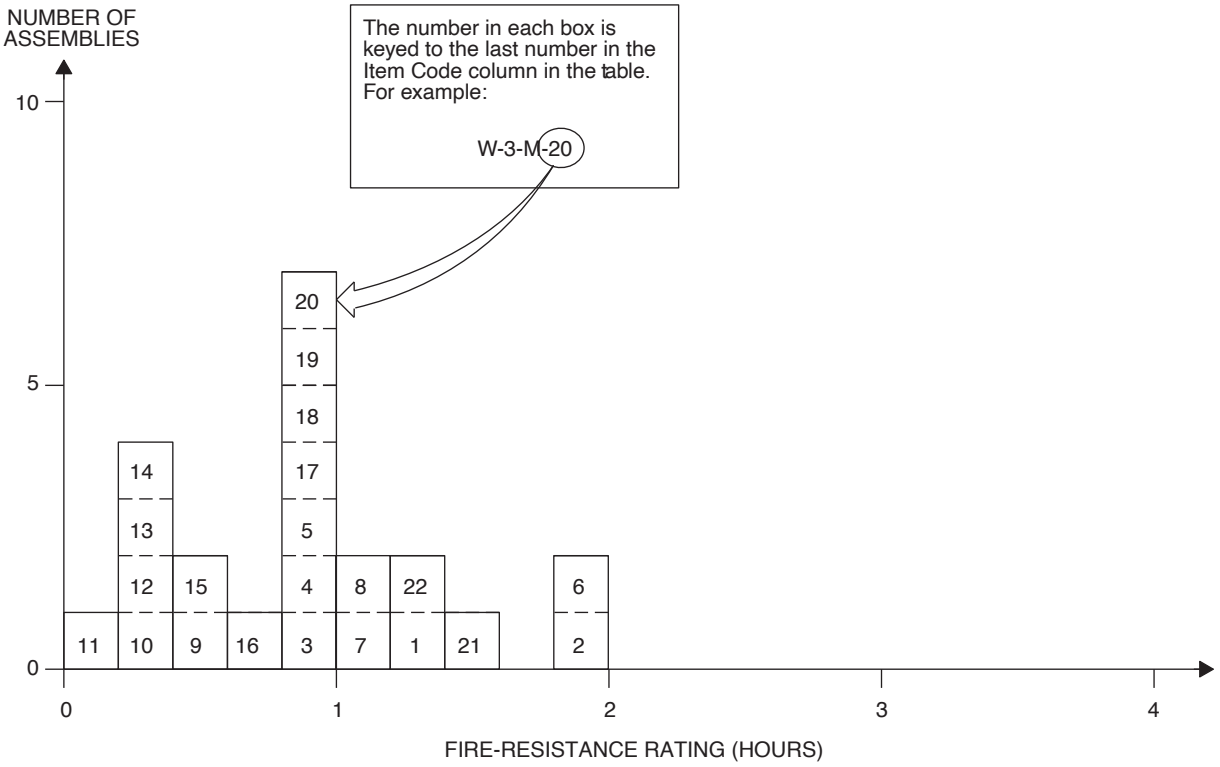


TABLE 1.1.1
MASONRY WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-2-M-1	$2^1/_4$″	Solid partition; $^3/_4$″ gypsum plank—10′ ×1′6″; $^3/_4$″ plus gypsum plaster each side.	N/A	1 hr 22 min			7	1	$1^1/_4$
W-3-M-2	3″	Concrete block (18″ × 9″ × 3″) of fuel ash, Portland cement and plasticizer; cement/sand mortar.	N/A	2 hrs			7	2, 3	2
W-2-M-3	2″	Solid gypsum block wall; no facings	N/A	1 hr		1		4	1
W-3-M-4	3″	Solid gypsum blocks, laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar.	N/A	1 hr		1		4	1
W-3-M-5	3″	Magnesium oxysulfate wood fiber blocks; 2″ thick, laid in Portland cement-lime mortar; facings: $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster on both sides.	N/A	1 hr		1		4	1
W-3-M-6	3″	Magnesium oxysulfate bound wood fiber blocks; 3″ thick; laid in Portland cement-lime mortar; facings: $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster on both sides.	N/A	2 hrs		1		4	2

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.1—continued
MASONRY WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-3-M-7	3″	Clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; face plaster: $^5/_8$″ (both sides) 1:3 sanded gypsum; design “E,” construction “A.”	N/A	1 hr 6 min			2	5, 6, 7, 11, 12, 39	1
W-3-M-8	3″	Clay tile; Illinois surface clay; single cell thick; face plaster: $^5/_8$″ (both sides) 1:3 sanded gypsum; design “A,” construction “E.”	N/A	1 hr 1 min			2	5, 8, 9, 11, 12, 39	1
W-3-M-9	3″	Clay tile; Illinois surface clay; single cell thick; no face plaster; design “A,” construction “C.”	N/A	25 min			2	5, 10, 11, 12, 39	$^1/_3$
W-3-M-10	$3^7/_8$″	8″ × $4^7/_8$″ glass blocks; weight 4 lbs each; Portland cement-lime mortar; horizontal mortar joints reinforced with metal lath.	N/A	15 min		1		4	$^1/_4$
W-3-M-11	3″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 18, 13; no facings.	N/A	10 min		1		5, 11, 26	$^1/_6$
W-3-M-12	3″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 19, 23; no facings.	N/A	20 min		1		5, 11, 26	$^1/_3$
W-3-M-13	$3^5/_8$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 18, 23; facings: unexposed side; see Note 20.	N/A	20 min		1		5, 11, 26	$^1/_3$
W-3-M-14	$3^5/_8$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 19, 23; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 20.	N/A	20 min		1		5, 11, 26	$^1/_3$
W-3-M-15	$3^5/_8$″	Core: clay structural tile; see Notes 14, 18, 23; facings: side exposed to fire; see Note 20.	N/A	30 min		1		5, 11, 26	$^1/_2$
W-3-M-16	$3^5/_8$″	Core: clay structural tile; see Notes 14, 19, 23; facings: side exposed to fire; see Note 20.	N/A	45 min		1		5, 11, 26	$^3/_4$
W-2-M-17	2″	2″ thick solid gypsum blocks; see Note 27.	N/A	1 hr		1		27	1
W-3-M-18	3″	Core: 3″ thick gypsum blocks 70% solid; see Note 2; no facings.	N/A	1 hr		1		27	1
W-3-M-19	3″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 29, 35, 36, 38; no facings.	N/A	1 hr		1		27	1
W-3-M-20	3″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 35, 36, 37, 38; no facings.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-3-M-21	$3^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 35, 36, 37, 38; facings: one side; see Note 37.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			$1^1/_2$
W-3-M-22	$3^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 29, 35, 36, 38; facings: one side, see Note 37.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			$1^1/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

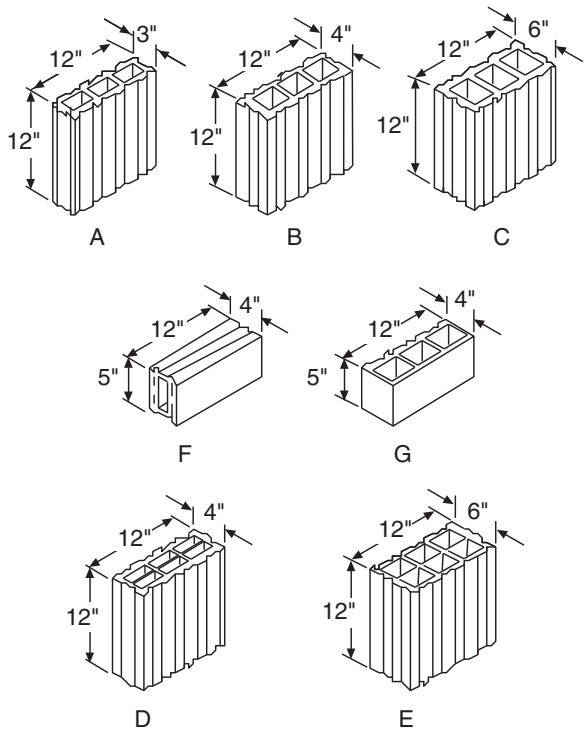
Notes:

1. Failure mode—flame thru.
2. Passed 2-hour fire test (Grade “C” fire res. - British).
3. Passed hose stream test.
4. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. A2-1934. As non-load-bearing partitions.
5. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. 42-1934 (ASTM C19-33), except that hose stream testing where carried out was run on test specimens exposed for full test duration, not for a reduced period as is contemporarily done.
6. Failure by thermal criteria—maximum temperature rise 325°F.
7. Hose stream failure.
8. Hose stream—pass.
9. Specimen removed prior to any failure occurring.
10. Failure mode—collapse.
11. For clay tile walls, unless the source or density of the clay can be positively identified or determined, it is suggested that the lowest hourly rating for the fire endurance of a clay tile partition of that thickness be followed. Identified sources of clay showing longer fire endurance can lead to longer time recommendations.
12. See appendix for construction and design details for clay tile walls.
13. Load: 80 psi for gross wall area.
14. One cell in wall thickness.
15. Two cells in wall thickness.
16. Double shells plus one cell in wall thickness.
17. One cell in wall thickness, cells filled with broken tile, crushed stone, slag cinders or sand mixed with mortar.
18. Dense hard-burned clay or shale tile.
19. Medium-burned clay tile.
20. Not less than $^5/_8$ inch thickness of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.

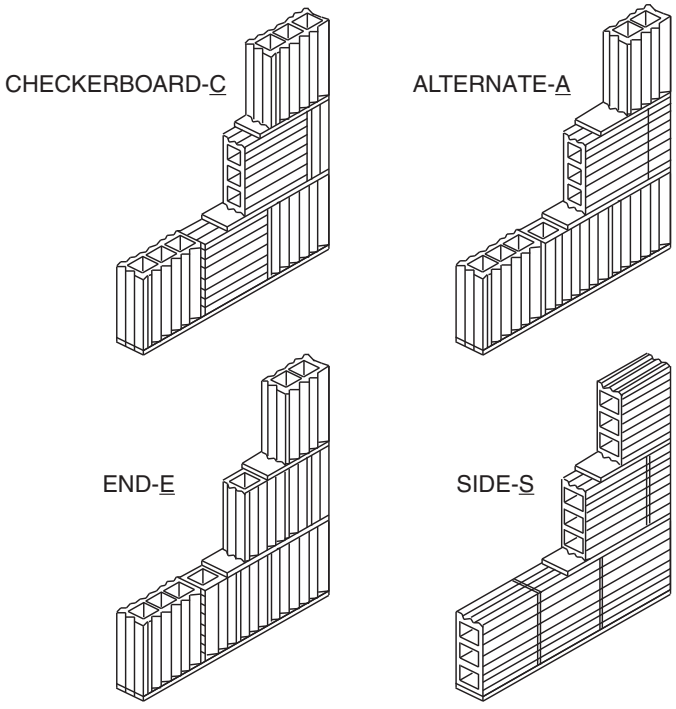
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.1—continued
MASONRY WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

21. Units of not less than 30 percent solid material.
22. Units of not less than 40 percent solid material.
23. Units of not less than 50 percent solid material.
24. Units of not less than 45 percent solid material.
25. Units of not less than 60 percent solid material.
26. All tiles laid in Portland cement-lime mortar.
27. Blocks laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar voids in blocks not to exceed 30 percent.
28. Units of expanded slag or pumice aggregate.
29. Units of crushed limestone, blast furnace, slag, cinders and expanded clay or shale.
30. Units of calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.
31. Units of siliceous sand and gravel. Ninety percent or more quartz, chert or flint.
32. Unit at least 49 percent solid.
33. Unit at least 62 percent solid.
34. Unit at least 65 percent solid.
35. Unit at least 73 percent solid.
36. Ratings based on one unit and one cell in wall thickness.
37. Minimum of $^1/_2$ inch—1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
38. Non-load-bearing.
39. See clay tile partition design construction drawings below.



DESIGNS OF TILES USED IN FIRE-TEST PARTITIONS



THE FOUR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION USED IN FIRE-TEST PARTITIONS

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

FIGURE 1.1.2
MASONRY WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

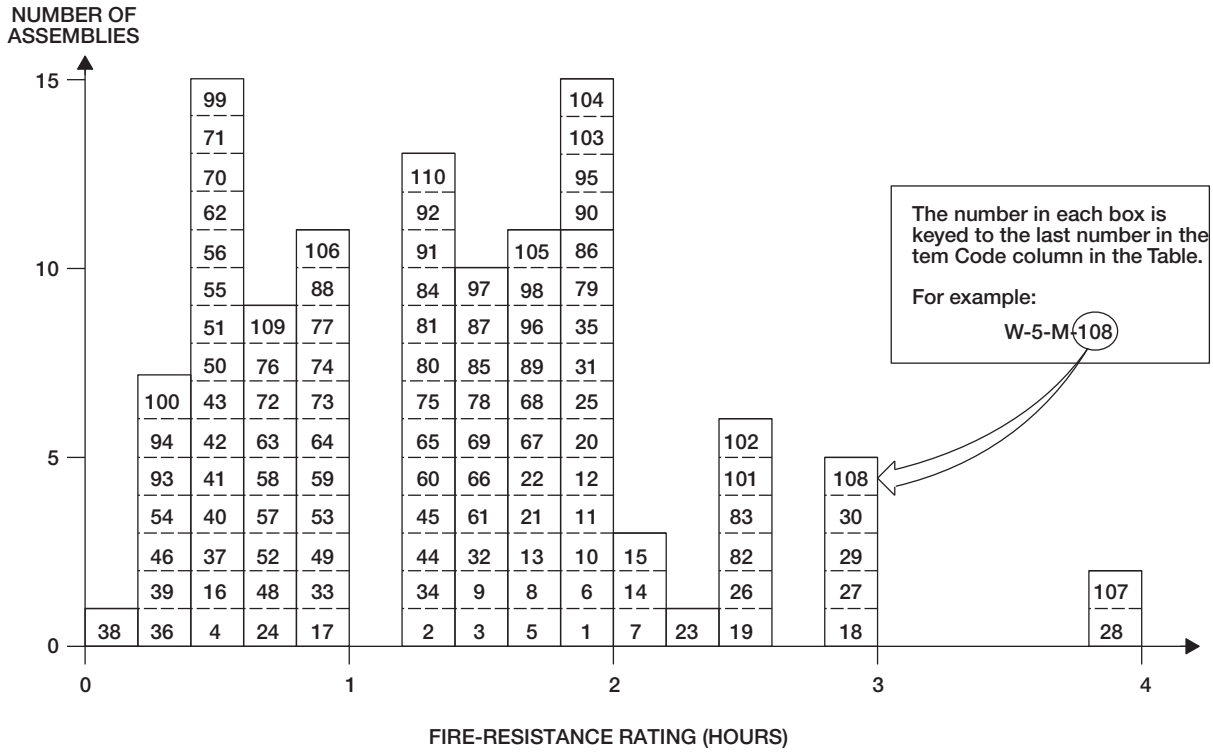


TABLE 1.1.2
MASONRY WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-M-1	4″	Solid 3″ thick, gypsum blocks laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar; facings: $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster (both sides).	N/A	2 hrs		1		1	2
W-4-M-2	4″	Solid clay or shale brick.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 2	$1^1/_4$
W-4-M-3	4″	Concrete; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		1	$1^1/_2$
W-4-M-4	4″	Clay tile; Illinois surface clay; single cell thick; no face plaster; design “B,” construction “C.”	N/A	25 min			2	3–7, 36	$^1/_3$
W-4-M-5	4″	Solid sand-lime brick.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1		1	$1^3/_4$
W-4-M-6	4″	Solid wall; 3″ thick block; $^1/_2$″ plaster each side; $17^3/_4$″ × $8^3/_4$″ × 4″ “Breeze Blocks”; Portland cement/sand mortar.	N/A	1 hr 52 min			7	2	$1^3/_4$
W-4-M-7	4″	Concrete (4020 psi); reinforcement: vertical $^3/_8$″; horizontal $^1/_4$″; 6″ × 6″ grid.	N/A	2 hrs 10 min			7	2	2
W-4-M-8	4″	Concrete wall (4340 psi crush); reinforcement $^1/_4$″ diameter rebar on 8″ centers (vertical and horizontal).	N/A	1 hr 40 min			7	2	$1^2/_3$
W-4-M-9	$4^3/_{16}$″	$4^3/_{16}$″ × $2^5/_8$″ cellular fletton brick (1873 psi) with $^1/_2$″ sand mortar; bricks are U-shaped yielding hollow cover (approx. 2″ × 4″) in final cross-section configuration.	N/A	1 hr 25 min			7	2	$1^1/_3$
W-4-M-10	$4^1/_4$″	$4^1/_4$″ × $2^1/_2$″ fletton (1831 psi) brick in $^1/_2$″ sand mortar.	N/A	1 hr 53 min			7	2	$1^3/_4$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.2—continued
MASONRY WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-M-11	4 1/4″	4 1/4″ × 2 1/2″ London stock (683 psi) brick; 1/2″ grout.	N/A	1 hr 52 min			7	2	1 3/4
W-4-M-12	4 1/2″	4 1/4″ × 2 1/2″ Leicester red, wire-cut brick (4465 psi) in 1/2″ sand mortar.	N/A	1 hr 56 min			7	6	1 3/4
W-4-M-13	4 1/4″	4 1/4″ × 2 1/2″ stairfoot brick (7527 psi) 1/2″ sand mortar.	N/A	1 hr 37 min			7	2	1 1/2
W-4-M-14	4 1/4″	4 1/4″ × 2 1/2″ sand-lime brick (2603 psi) 1/2″ sand mortar.	N/A	2 hrs 6 min			7	2	2
W-4-M-15	4 1/4″	4 1/4″ × 2 1/2″ concrete brick (2527 psi) 1/2″ sand mortar.	N/A	2 hrs 10 min			7	2	2
W-4-M-16	4 1/2″	4″ thick clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; no plaster exposed face; 1/2″ 1:2 gypsum back face; design “F,” construction “S.”	N/A	31 min			2	3–6, 36	1/2
W-4-M-17	4 1/2″	4″ thick clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; plaster exposed face; 1/2″ 1:2 sanded gypsum; back face: none; construction “S,” design “F.”	80 psi	50 min			2	3–5, 8, 36	3/4
W-4-M-18	4 1/2″	Core: solid sand-lime brick; 1/2″ sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 11	3
W-4-M-19	4 1/2″	Core: solid sand-lime brick; 1/2″ sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 11	2 1/2
W-4-M-20	4 1/2″	Core: concrete brick 1/2″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 11	2
W-4-M-21	4 1/2″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; 1/2″ thick, 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on fire sides.	80 psi	1 hr 45 min		1		1, 2, 11	1 3/4
W-4-M-22	4 3/4″	4″ thick clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; cells filled with cement and broken tile concrete; plaster on exposed face; none on unexposed face; 3/4″ 1:3 sanded gypsum; design “G,” construction “E.”	N/A	1 hr 48 min			2	2, 3–5, 9, 36	1 3/4
W-4-M-23	4 3/4″	4″ thick clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; cells filled with cement and broken tile concrete; no plaster exposed faced; 3/4″ neat gypsum plaster on unexposed face; design “G,” construction “E.”	N/A	2 hrs 14 min			2	2, 3–5, 9, 36	2
W-5-M-24	5″	3″ × 13″ air space; 1″ thick metal reinforced concrete facings on both sides; faces connected with wood splines.	2,250 lbs/ft	45 min		1		1	3/4
W-5-M-25	5″	Core: 3″ thick void filled with “nondulated” mineral wool weighing 10 lbs/ft^3; 1″ thick metal reinforced concrete facings on both sides.	2,250 lbs/ft	2 hrs		1		1	2
W-5-M-26	5″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; 1/2″ thick, 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	40 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 2, 11	2 1/2
W-5-M-27	5″	Core: solid 4″ thick gypsum blocks, laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar; 1/2″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	N/A	3 hrs		1		1	3
W-5-M-28	5″	Core: 4″ thick hollow gypsum blocks with 30% voids; blocks laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar; no facings.	N/A	4 hrs		1		1	4
W-5-M-29	5″	Core: concrete brick; 1/2″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	160 psi	3 hrs		1		1	3
W-5-M-30	5 1/4″	4″ thick clay tile; Illinois surface clay; double cell thick; plaster: 5/8″ sanded gypsum 1:3 both faces; design “D,” construction “S.”	N/A	2 hrs 53 min			2	2–5, 9, 36	2 3/4
W-5-M-31	5 1/4″	4″ thick clay tile; New Jersey fire clay; double cell thick; plaster: 5/8″ sanded gypsum 1:3 both faces; design “D,” construction “S.”	N/A	1 hr 52 min			2	2–5, 9, 36	1 3/4
W-5-M-32	5 1/4″	4″ thick clay tile; New Jersey fire clay; single cell thick; plaster: 5/8″ sanded gypsum 1:3 both faces; design “D,” construction “S.”	N/A	1 hr 34 min	2		2	2–5, 9, 36	1 1/2

TABLE 1.1.2—continued
MASONRY WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-5-M-33	5 1/4″	4″ thick clay tile; New Jersey fire clay; single cell thick; face plaster: 5/8″ both sides; 1:3 sanded gypsum; design “B,” construction “S.”	N/A	50 min			2	3–5, 8, 36	3/4
W-5-M-34	5 1/4″	4″ thick clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; face plaster: 5/8″ both sides; 1:3 sanded gypsum; design “B,” construction “A.”	N/A	1 hr 19 min			2	2–5, 9, 36	1 1/4
W-5-M-35	5 1/4″	4″ thick clay tile; Illinois surface clay; single cell thick; face plaster: 5/8″ both sides; 1:3 sanded gypsum; design “B,” construction “S.”	N/A	1 hr 59 min			2	2–5, 10 36	1 3/4
W-4-M-36	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 21; no facings.	N/A	15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/4
W-4-M-37	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 21; no facings.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-38	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; no facings.	N/A	10 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/6
W-4-M-39	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; no facings.	N/A	20 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-40	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 23; no facings.	N/A	30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-41	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 23; no facings.	N/A	35 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-42	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 21; no facings.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-43	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 21; no facings.	N/A	30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-44	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 20; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/4
W-4-M-45	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 20; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/4
W-4-M-46	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 16, 22; no facings.	N/A	20 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-47	4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 17, 22; no facings.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-48	4 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 21; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	45 min		1		3, 4, 24	3/4
W-4-M-49	4 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 21; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 4, 24	1
W-4-M-50	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 21; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-51	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 21; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-52	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 21; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	45 min		1		3, 4, 24	3/4
W-4-M-53	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 21; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 4, 24	1
W-4-M-54	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; facings: unexposed side; see Note 18.	N/A	20 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-55	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; facings: exposed side; see Note 18.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/3
W-4-M-56	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-57	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	45 min		1		3, 4, 24	3/4
W-4-M-58	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 23; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	40 min		1		3, 4, 24	2/3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.2—continued
MASONRY WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-M-59	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 23; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 4, 24	1
W-4-M-60	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 23; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/4
W-4-M-61	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 23; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/2
W-4-M-62	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 21; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	35 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-63	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 21; facings: unexposed face only; see Note 18.	N/A	45 min		1		3, 4, 24	3/4
W-4-M-64	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 23; facings: exposed face only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 4, 24	1
W-4-M-65	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 21; facings: exposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/4
W-4-M-66	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 20; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/2
W-4-M-67	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 20; facings: exposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 3/4
W-4-M-68	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 20; facings: exposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 3/4
W-4-M-69	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 20; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/2
W-4-M-70	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 16, 22; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-71	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 17, 22; facings: exposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	35 min		1		3, 4, 24	1/2
W-4-M-72	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 16, 22; facings: fire side of wall only; see Note 18.	N/A	45 min		1		3, 4, 24	3/4
W-4-M-73	4 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 17, 22; facings: fire side of wall only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 4, 24	1
W-5-M-74	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 21; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 4, 24	1
W-5-M-75	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 21; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/4
W-5-M-76	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	45 min		1		3, 4, 24	3/4
W-5-M-77	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 4, 24	1
W-5-M-78	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 23; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/2
W-5-M-79	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 23; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs		1		3, 4, 24	2
W-5-M-80	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 21; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/4
W-5-M-81	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 21; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/2
W-5-M-82	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 20; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	2 1/2
W-5-M-83	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 20; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	2 1/2
W-5-M-84	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 16, 22; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/4
W-5-M-85	5 1/4″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 14, 17, 22; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 4, 24	1 1/2
W-4-M-86	4″	Core: 3″ thick gypsum blocks 70% solid; see Note 26; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2

TABLE 1.1.2—continued
MASONRY WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-M-87	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 27, 34, 35; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			1 1/2
W-4-M-88	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 33, 35; no facings.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-4-M-89	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 34, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1			1 3/4
W-4-M-90	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 27, 34, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-4-M-91	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 27, 32, 35; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			1 1/4
W-4-M-92	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 34, 35; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			1 1/4
W-4-M-93	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 29, 32, 35; no facings.	N/A	20 min		1			1/3
W-4-M-94	4″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 30, 34, 35; no facings.	N/A	15 min		1			1/4
W-4-M-95	4 1/2″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 27, 34, 35; facings: one side only; see Note 25.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-4-M-96	4 1/2″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 27, 32, 35; facings: one side only; see Note 25.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1			1 3/4
W-4-M-97	4 1/2″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 33, 35; facings: one side; see Note 25.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			1 1/2
W-4-M-98	4 1/2″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 34, 35; facings: one side only; see Note 25.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1			1 3/4
W-4-M-99	4 1/2″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 29, 32, 35; facings: one side; see Note 25.	N/A	30 min		1			1/2
W-4-M-100	4 1/2″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 30, 34, 35; facings: one side; see Note 25.	N/A	20 min		1			1/3
W-5-M-101	5″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 27, 34, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			2 1/2
W-5-M-102	5″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 27, 32, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			2 1/2
W-5-M-103	5″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 33, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-5-M-104	5″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 28, 31, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-5-M-105	5″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 29, 32, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1			1 3/4
W-5-M-106	5″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 30, 34, 35; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-5-M-107	5″	Core: 5″ thick solid gypsum blocks; see Note 26; no facings.	N/A	4 hrs		1			4
W-5-M-108	5″	Core: 4″ thick hollow gypsum blocks; see Note 26; facings: both sides; see Note 25.	N/A	3 hrs		1			3
W-4-M-109	4″	Concrete with 4″ × 4″ No. 6 welded wire mesh at wall center.	100 psi	45 min			43	2	3/4
W-4-M-110	4″	Concrete with 4″ × 4″ No. 6 welded wire mesh at wall center.	N/A	1 hr 15 min			43	2	1 1/4

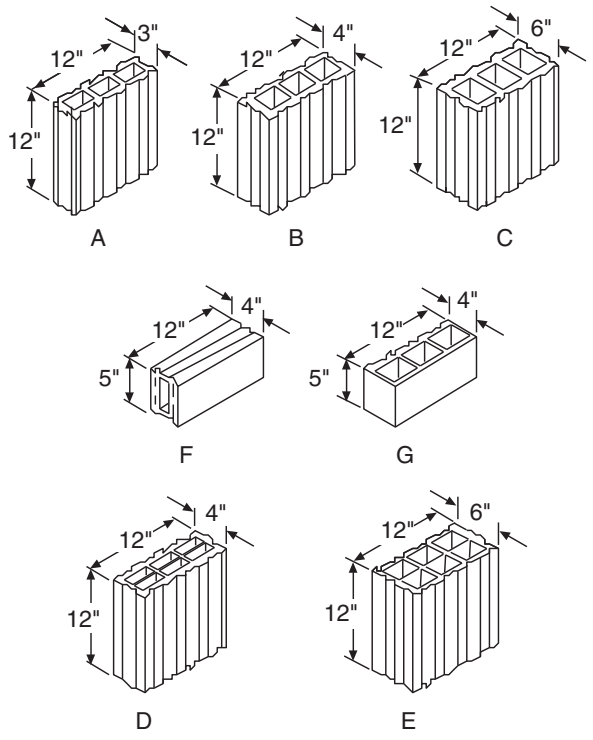
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

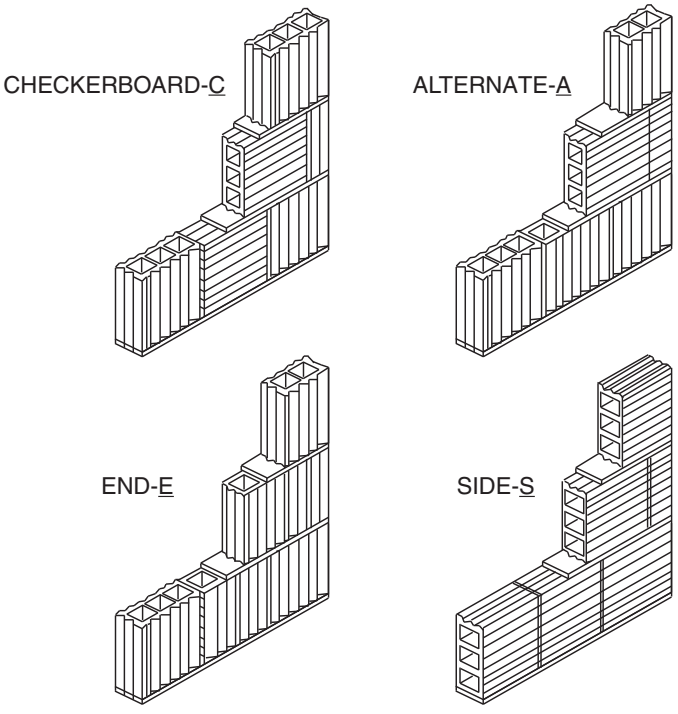
1. Tested as NBS under ASA Spec. No. A 2-1934.
2. Failure mode—maximum temperature rise.
3. Treated at NBS under ASA Spec. No. 42-1934 (ASTM C19-53) except that hose stream testing where carried out was run on test specimens exposed for full test duration, not for a reduced period as is contemporarily done.
4. For clay tile walls, unless the source the clay can be positively identified, it is suggested that the most pessimistic hour rating for the fire endurance of a clay tile partition of that thickness be followed. Identified sources of clay showing longer fire endurance can lead to longer time recommendations.

TABLE 1.1.2—continued
MASONRY WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

5. See appendix for construction and design details for clay tile walls.
6. Failure mode—flame thru or crack formation showing flames.
7. Hole formed at 25 minutes; partition collapsed at 42 minutes on removal from furnace.
8. Failure mode—collapse.
9. Hose stream pass.
10. Hose stream hole formed in specimen.
11. Load: 80 psi for gross wall cross-sectional area.
12. One cell in wall thickness.
13. Two cells in wall thickness.
14. Double cells plus one cell in wall thickness.
15. One cell in wall thickness, cells filled with broken tile, crushed stone, slag, cinders or sand mixed with mortar.
16. Dense hard-burned clay or shale tile.
17. Medium-burned clay tile.
18. Not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch thickness of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
19. Units of not less than 30 percent solid material.
20. Units of not less than 40 percent solid material.
21. Units of not less than 50 percent solid material.
22. Units of not less than 45 percent solid material.
23. Units of not less than 60 percent solid material.
24. All tiles laid in Portland cement-lime mortar.
25. Minimum $^{1}/_{2}$ inch—1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
26. Laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar. Voids in hollow units not to exceed 30 percent.
27. Units of expanded slag or pumice aggregate.
28. Units of crushed limestone, blast furnace slag, cinders and expanded clay or shale.
29. Units of calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.
30. Units of siliceous sand and gravel. Ninety percent or more quartz, chert or flint.
31. Unit at least 49 percent solid.
32. Unit at least 62 percent solid.
33. Unit at least 65 percent solid.
34. Unit at least 73 percent solid.
35. Ratings based on one unit and one cell in wall thickness.
36. See clay tile partition design construction drawings below.



DESIGNS OF TILES USED IN FIRE-TEST PARTITIONS



THE FOUR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION USED IN FIRE-TEST PARTITIONS

FIGURE 1.1.3
MASONRY WALLS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

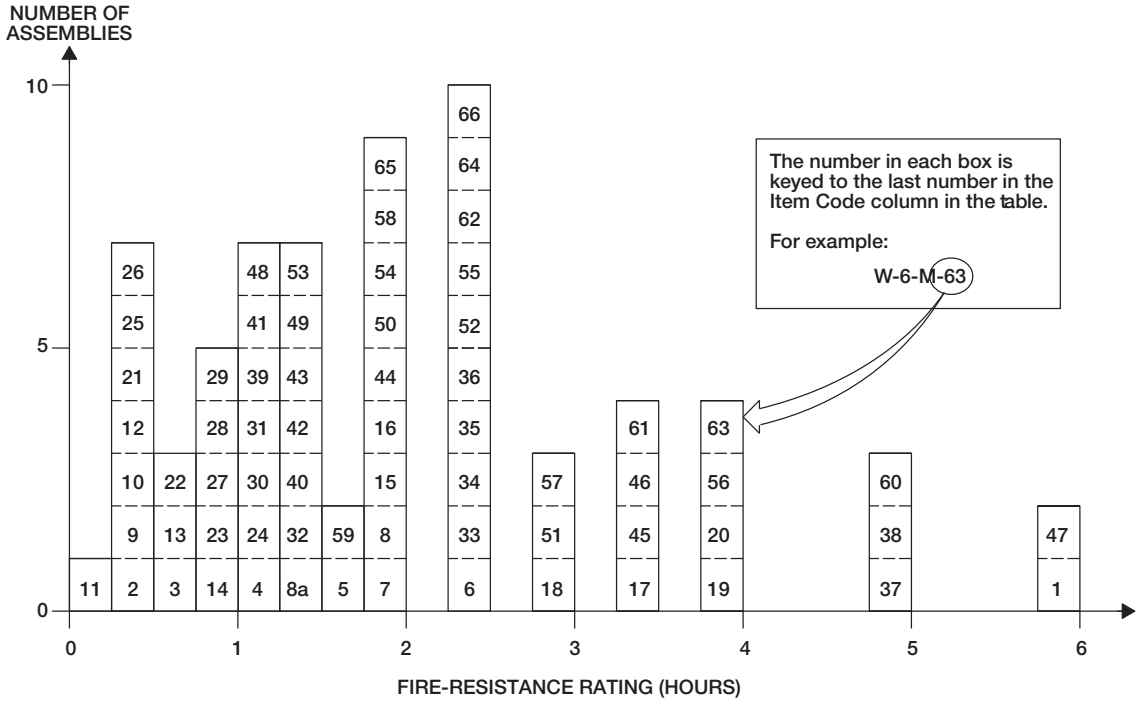


TABLE 1.1.3
MASONRY WALLS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-6-M-1	6″	Core: 5″ thick, solid gypsum blocks laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	N/A	6 hrs		1			6
W-6-M-2	6″	6″ clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; no plaster; design “C,” construction “A.”	N/A	17 min			2	1, 3, 4, 6, 55	$^1/_4$
W-6-M-3	6″	6″ clay tile; Illinois surface clay; double cell thick; no plaster; design “E,” construction “C.”	N/A	45 min			2	1–4, 7, 55	$^3/_4$
W-6-M-4	6″	6″ clay tile; New Jersey fire clay; double cell thick; no plaster; design “E,” construction “S.”	N/A	1 hr 1 min			2	1–4, 8, 55	1
W-7-M-5	$7^1/_4$″	6″ clay tile; Illinois surface clay; double cell thick; plaster: $^5/_8$″—1:3 sanded gypsum both faces; design “E,” construction “A.”	N/A	1 hr 41 min			2	1–4, 55	$1^2/_3$
W-7-M-6	$7^1/_4$″	6″ clay tile; New Jersey fire clay; double cell thick; plaster: $^5/_8$″—1:3 sanded gypsum both faces; design “E,” construction “S.”	N/A	2 hrs 23 min			2	1–4, 9, 55	$2^1/_3$
W-7-M-7	$7^1/_4$″	6″ clay tile; Ohio fire clay; single cell thick; plaster: $^5/_8$″ sanded gypsum, 1:3 both faces; design “C,” construction “A.”	N/A	1 hr 54 min			2	1–4, 9, 55	$2^3/_4$
W-7-M-8	$7^1/_4$″	6″ clay tile; Illinois surface clay; single cell thick; plaster: $^5/_8$″ sanded gypsum, 1:3 both faces; design “C,” construction “S.”	N/A	2 hrs			2	1, 3, 4, 9, 10, 55	2
W-7-M-8a	$7^1/_4$″	6″ clay tile; Illinois surface clay; single cell thick; plaster: $^5/_8$″ sanded gypsum, 1:3 both faces; design “C,” construction “E.”	N/A	1 hr 23 min			2	1–4, 9, 10, 55	$1^1/_4$
W-6-M-9	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; no facings.	N/A	20 min		1		3, 5, 24	$^1/_3$
W-6-M-10	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; no facings.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 5, 24	$^1/_3$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.3—continued
MASONRY WALLS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-6-M-11	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 19; no facings.	N/A	15 min		1		3, 5, 24	1/4
W-6-M-12	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 19; no facings.	N/A	20 min		1		3, 5, 24	1/3
W-6-M-13	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 22; no facings.	N/A	45 min		1		3, 5, 24	3/4
W-6-M-14	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 22; no facings.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 5, 24	1
W-6-M-15	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 19; no facings.	N/A	2 hrs		1		3, 5, 24	2
W-6-M-16	6″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 19; no facings.	N/A	2 hrs		1		3, 5, 24	2
W-6-M-17	6″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 12, 34, 36, 38, 41; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		5, 25	3 1/2
W-6-M-18	6″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 12, 33, 36, 38, 41; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		5, 25	3
W-6-M-19	6 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 12, 34, 36, 38, 41; facings: side 1; see Note 35.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		5, 25	4
W-6-M-20	6 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 12, 33, 36, 38, 41; facings: side 1; see Note 35.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		5, 25	4
W-6-M-21	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; facings: unexposed face only; see Note 18.	N/A	30 min		1		3, 5, 24	1/2
W-6-M-22	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; facings: unexposed face only; see Note 18.	N/A	40 min		1		3, 5, 24	2/3
W-6-M-23	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; facings: exposed face only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 5, 24	1
W-6-M-24	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; facings: exposed face only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 5 min		1		3, 5, 24	1
W-6-M-25	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 19; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	25 min		1		3, 5, 24	1/3
W-6-M-26	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 19; facings: unexposed face only; see Note 18.	N/A	30 min		1		3, 5, 24	1/2
W-6-M-27	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 19; facings: exposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 5, 24	1
W-6-M-28	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 5, 24	1
W-6-M-29	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 22; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr		1		3, 5, 24	1
W-6-M-30	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 22; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 5, 24	1 1/4
W-6-M-31	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 22; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 5, 24	1 1/4
W-6-M-32	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 22; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	1 1/2
W-6-M-33	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 19; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	2 1/2
W-6-M-34	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 19; facings: unexposed side only; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	2 1/2
W-6-M-35	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	2 1/2
W-6-M-36	6 5/8″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	2 1/2
W-7-M-37	7″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 12, 34, 36, 38, 41; see Note 35 for facings on both sides.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		5, 25	5
W-7-M-38	7″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 12, 33, 36, 38, 41; see Note 35 for facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		5, 25	5

TABLE 1.1.3—continued
MASONRY WALLS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-7-M-39	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 20; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 5, 24	$1^1/_4$
W-7-M-40	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 20; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	$1^1/_2$
W-7-M-41	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 16, 19; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		3, 5, 24	$1^1/_4$
W-7-M-42	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 12, 17, 19; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	$1^1/_2$
W-7-M-43	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 16, 22; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	$1^1/_2$
W-7-M-44	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 13, 17, 22; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 18.	N/A	2 hrs		1		3, 5, 24	2
W-7-M-45	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 16, 19; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	3 hrs 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	$3^1/_2$
W-7-M-46	$7^1/_4$″	Core: structural clay tile; see Notes 15, 17, 19; facings: both sides; see Note 18.	N/A	3 hrs 30 min		1		3, 5, 24	$3^1/_2$
W-6-M-47	6″	Core: 5″ thick solid gypsum blocks; see Note 45; facings: both sides; see Note 35.	N/A	6 hrs		1			6
W-6-M-48	6″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 50, 54; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			$1^1/_4$
W-6-M-49	6″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 50, 54; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			$1^1/_2$
W-6-M-50	6″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 41, 46, 54; no facings.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-6-M-51	6″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 53, 54; no facings.	N/A	3 hrs		1			3
W-6-M-52	6″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 53, 54; no facings.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			$2^1/_2$
W-6-M-53	6″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 51, 54; no facings.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			$1^1/_2$
W-6-M-54	$6^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 50, 54; facings: one side only; see Note 35.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-6-M-55	$6^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 51, 54; facings: one side; see Note 35.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			$2^1/_2$
W-6-M-56	$6^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 53, 54; facings: one side; see Note 35.	N/A	4 hrs		1			4
W-6-M-57	$6^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 53, 54; facings: one side; see Note 35.	N/A	3 hrs		1			3
W-6-M-58	$6^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 51, 54; facings: one side; see Note 35.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-6-M-59	$6^1/_2$″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 50, 54; facings: one side; see Note 35.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1			$1^3/_4$
W-7-M-60	7″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 53, 54; facings: both sides; see Note 35.	N/A	5 hrs		1			5
W-7-M-61	7″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 51, 54; facings: both sides; see Note 35.	N/A	3 hrs 30 min		1			$3^1/_2$
W-7-M-62	7″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 46, 50, 54; facings: both sides; see Note 35.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			$2^1/_2$
W-7-M-63	7″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 53, 54; facings: both sides; see Note 35.	N/A	4 hrs		1			4
W-7-M-64	7″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 51, 54; facings: both sides; see Note 35.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			$2^1/_2$
W-7-M-65	7″	Core: hollow concrete units; see Notes 47, 50, 54; facings: both sides; see Note 35.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-6-M-66	6″	Concrete wall with 4″ × 4″ No. 6 wire fabric (welded) near wall center for reinforcement.	300 psi	2 hrs 30 min			43	2	$2^1/_2$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.3—continued
MASONRY WALLS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

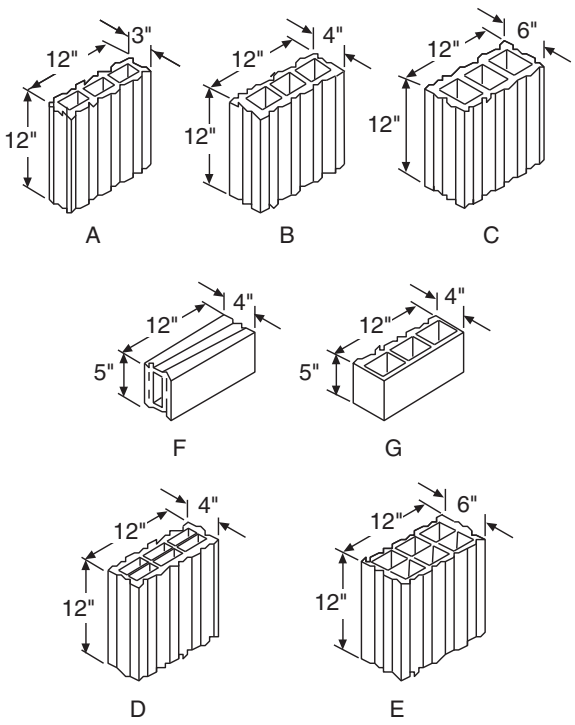
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

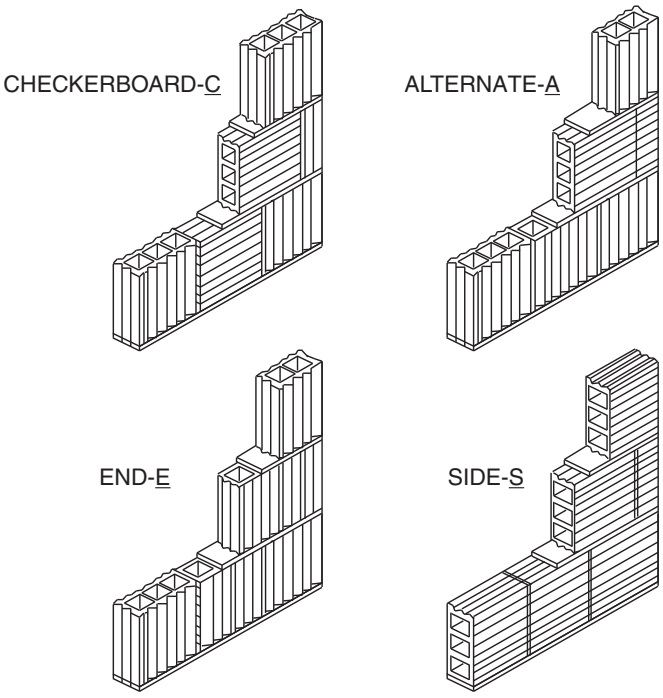
1. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. 43-1934 (ASTM C19-53), except that hose stream testing where carried out was run on test specimens exposed for full test duration, not for a reduced period as is contemporarily done.
2. Failure by thermal criteria—maximum temperature rise.
3. For clay tile walls, unless the source or density of the clay can be positively identified or determined, it is suggested that the lowest hourly rating for the fire endurance of a clay tile partition of that thickness be followed. Identified sources of clay showing longer fire endurance can lead to longer time recommendations.
4. See Note 55 for construction and design details for clay tile walls.
5. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. A2-1934.
6. Failure mode—collapse.
7. Collapsed on removal from furnace at 1 hour 9 minutes.
8. Hose stream—failed.
9. Hose stream—passed.
10. No end point met in test.
11. Wall collapsed at 1 hour 28 minutes.
12. One cell in wall thickness.
13. Two cells in wall thickness.
14. Double shells plus one cell in wall thickness.
15. One cell in wall thickness, cells filled with broken tile, crushed stone, slag, cinders or sand mixed with mortar.
16. Dense hard-burned clay or shale tile.
17. Medium-burned clay tile.
18. Not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch thickness of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
19. Units of not less than 30 percent solid material.
20. Units of not less than 40 percent solid material.
21. Units of not less than 50 percent solid material.
22. Units of not less than 45 percent solid material.
23. Units of not less than 60 percent solid material.
24. All tiles laid in Portland cement-lime mortar.
25. Load: 80 psi for gross cross-sectional area of wall.
26. Three cells in wall thickness.
27. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 52.
28. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 54.
29. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 55.
30. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 57.
31. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 62.
32. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 65.
33. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 70.
34. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 76.
35. Not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
36. Noncombustible or no members framed into wall.
37. Combustible members framed into wall.
38. One unit in wall thickness.
39. Two units in wall thickness.
40. Three units in wall thickness.
41. Concrete units made with expanded slag or pumice aggregates.
42. Concrete units made with expanded burned clay or shale, crushed limestone, air-cooled slag or cinders.
43. Concrete units made with calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.
44. Concrete units made with siliceous sand and gravel. Ninety percent or more quartz, chert or flint.
45. Laid in 1:3 sanded gypsum mortar.
46. Units of expanded slag or pumice aggregate.
47. Units of crushed limestone, blast furnace, slag, cinder and expanded clay or shale.
48. Units of calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.
49. Units of siliceous sand and gravel. Ninety percent or more quartz, chert or flint.
50. Unit minimum 49 percent solid.
51. Unit minimum 62 percent solid.
52. Unit minimum 65 percent solid.
53. Unit minimum 73 percent solid.
54. Ratings based on one unit and one cell in wall section.
55. See clay tile partition design construction drawings:

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.3—continued
MASONRY WALL
6" TO LESS THAN 8" THICK



DESIGNS OF TILES USED IN FIRE-TEST PARTITIONS



THE FOUR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION USED IN FIRE-TEST PARTITIONS

FIGURE 1.1.4
MASONRY WALLS
8² TO LESS THAN 10² THICK

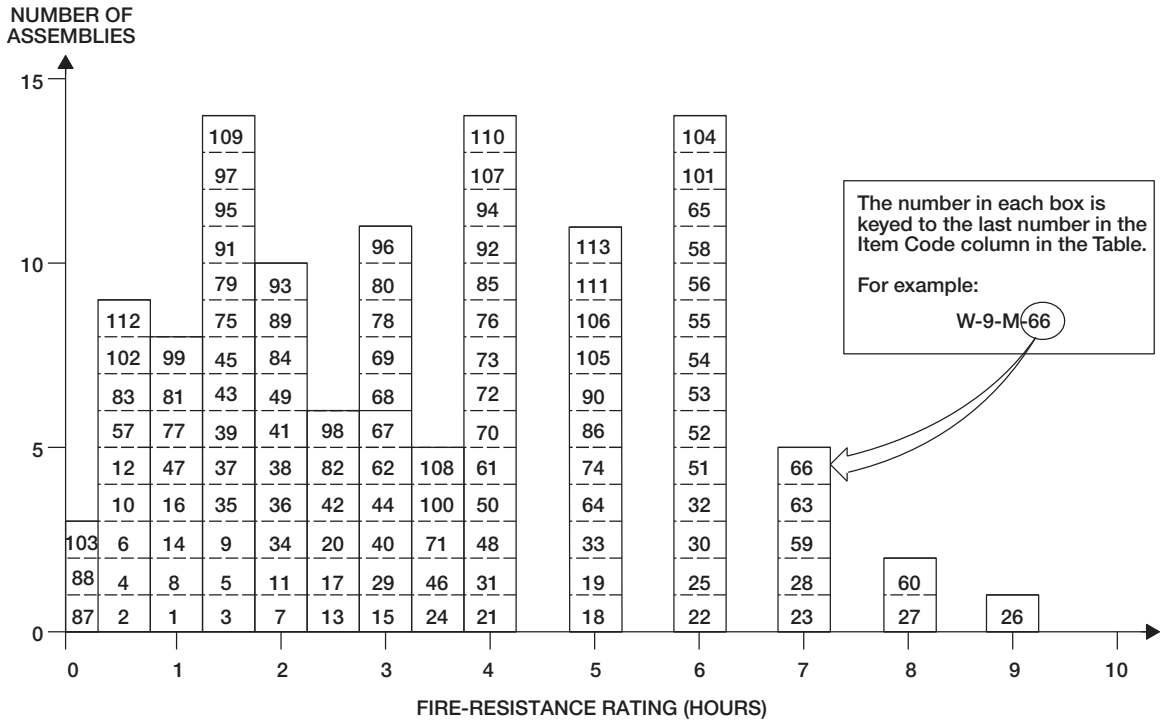


TABLE 1.1.4
MASONRY WALLS
8″ TO LESS THAN 10″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-8-M-1	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 40.	80 psi	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 20	1 1/4
W-8-M-2	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 40; no facings; result for wall with combustible members framed into interior.	80 psi	45 min		1		1, 20	3/4
W-8-M-3	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 43.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	1 1/2
W-8-M-4	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 43; no facings; combustible members framed into wall.	80 psi	45 min		1		1, 20	3/4
W-8-M-5	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 2, 5, 10, 18, 20, 21	1 1/2
W-8-M-6	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	45 min		1		1, 2, 5, 10,19, 20, 21	3/4
W-8-M-7	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	2 hrs		1		1, 2, 5, 13, 18, 20, 21	2
W-8-M-8	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 2, 5, 13, 19, 20, 21	1 1/4
W-8-M-9	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	1 hr 45 min		1		1, 2, 6, 9, 18, 20, 21	1 3/4
W-8-M-10	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	45 min		1		1, 2, 6, 9, 19, 20, 21	3/4
W-8-M-11	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	2 hrs		1		1, 2, 6, 10, 18, 20, 21	2
W-8-M-12	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	45 min		1		1, 2, 6, 10, 19, 20, 21	3/4
W-8-M-13	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 3, 6, 12, 18, 20, 21	2 1/2
W-8-M-14	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	1 hr		1		1, 2, 6, 12, 19, 20, 21	1
W-8-M-15	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 2, 6, 16, 18, 20, 21	3
W-8-M-16	8″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; no facings.	See notes	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 2, 6, 16, 19, 20, 21	1 1/4
W-8-M-17	8″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 1; minimum % solids: 70; no facings.	See notes	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 44	2 1/2
W-8-M-18	8″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 2; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids: 87; no facings.	See notes	5 hrs		1		1, 45	5
W-8-M-19	8″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; no facings.	See notes	5 hrs		1		1, 22, 45	5

TABLE 1.1.4—continued
MASONRY WALLS
8″ TO LESS THAN 10″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-8-M-20	8″	Core: hollow rolok of clay or shale.	See notes	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 22, 45	$2^1/_2$
W-8-M-21	8″	Core: hollow rolok bak of clay or shale; no facings.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 45	4
W-8-M-22	8″	Core: concrete brick; no facings.	See notes	6 hrs		1		1, 45	6
W-8-M-23	8″	Core: sand-lime brick; no facings.	See notes	7 hrs		1		1, 45	7
W-8-M-24	8″	Core: 4″, 40% solid clay or shale structural tile; 1 side 4″ brick facing.	See notes	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	$3^1/_2$
W-8-M-25	8″	Concrete wall (3220 psi); reinforcing vertical rods 1″ from each face and 1″ diameter; horizontal rods $^5/_8$″ diameter.	22,200 lbs/ft	6 hrs			7		6
W-8-M-26	8″	Core: sand-line brick; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	9 hrs		1		1, 45	9
W-8-M-27	$8^1/_2$″	Core: sand-line brick; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	8 hrs		1		1, 45	8
W-8-M-28	$8^1/_2$″	Core: concrete; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	7 hrs		1		1, 45	7
W-8-M-29	$8^1/_2$″	Core: hollow rolok of clay or shale; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 45	3
W-8-M-30	$8^1/_2$″	Core: solid clay or shale brick $^1/_2$″ thick, 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	6 hrs		1		1, 22, 45	6
W-8-M-31	$8^1/_2$″	Core: cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 1; minimum % solids: 70; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 44	4
W-8-M-32	$8^1/_2$″	Core: cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 2; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids: 87; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	6 hrs		1		1, 45	6
W-8-M-33	$8^1/_2$″	Core: hollow rolok bak of clay or shale; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	5 hrs		1		1, 45	5
W-8-M-34	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 40; $^5/_8$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	2 hrs		1		1, 20, 21	2
W-8-M-35	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 40; exposed face: $^5/_8$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.	See notes	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20, 21	$1^1/_2$
W-8-M-36	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 43; $^5/_8$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	2 hrs				1, 20, 21	2
W-8-M-37	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 43; $^5/_8$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster of the exposed face only.	See notes	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20, 21	$1^1/_2$
W-8-M-38	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: side 1; see Note 17.	See notes	2 hrs		1		1, 2, 5, 10, 18, 20, 21	2
W-8-M-39	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: exposed side only; see Note 17.	See notes	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 2, 5, 10, 19, 20, 21	$1^1/_2$
W-8-M-40	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: exposed side only; see Note 17.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 2, 5, 13, 18, 20, 21	3
W-8-M-41	$8^5/_8$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: exposed side only; see Note 17.	See notes	2 hrs		1		1, 2, 5, 13, 19, 20, 21	2

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.4—continued
MASONRY WALLS
8″ TO LESS THAN 10″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-8-M-42	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: side 1; see Note 17.	See notes	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 2, 6, 9, 18, 20, 21	$2^{1}/_{2}$
W-8-M-43	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: exposed side only; see Note 17.	See notes	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 2, 6, 9, 19, 20, 21	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-8-M-44	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 2, 6, 10, 18, 20, 21	3
W-8-M-45	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	See notes	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 2, 6, 10, 19, 20, 21	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-8-M-46	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	See notes	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 2, 6, 12, 18, 20, 21	$3^{1}/_{2}$
W-8-M-47	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: exposed side only; see Note 17.	See notes	1 hr 45 min		1		1, 2, 6, 12, 19, 20, 21	$1^{3}/_{4}$
W-8-M-48	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 2, 6, 16, 18, 20, 21	4
W-8-M-49	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	See notes	2 hrs		1		1, 2, 6, 16, 19, 20, 21	2
W-8-M-50	$8^{5}/_{8}$″	Core: 4″, 40% solid clay or shale clay structural tile; 4″ brick plus $^{5}/_{8}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-8-M-51	$8^{3}/_{4}$″	$8^{3}/_{4}$″ × $2^{1}/_{2}$″ and 4″ × $2^{1}/_{2}$″ cellular fletton (1873 psi) single and triple cell hollow brick set in $^{1}/_{2}$″ sand mortar in alternate courses.	3.6 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 29	6
W-8-M-52	$8^{3}/_{4}$″	$8^{3}/_{4}$″ thick cement brick (2527 psi) with Portland cement and sand mortar.	3.6 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-8-M-53	$8^{3}/_{4}$″	$8^{3}/_{4}$″ × $2^{1}/_{2}$″ fletton brick (1831 psi) in $^{1}/_{2}$″ sand mortar.	3.6 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-8-M-54	$8^{3}/_{4}$″	$8^{3}/_{4}$″ × $2^{1}/_{2}$″ London stock brick (683 psi) in $^{1}/_{2}$″ Portland cement and sand mortar.	7.2 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-9-M-55	9″	9″ × $2^{1}/_{2}$″ Leicester red wire-cut brick (4465 psi) in $^{1}/_{2}$″ Portland cement and sand mortar.	6.0 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-9-M-56	9″	9″ × 3″ sand-lime brick (2603 psi) in $^{1}/_{2}$″ Portland cement and sand mortar.	3.6 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-9-M-57	9″	2 layers $2^{7}/_{8}$″ fletton brick (1910 psi) with $3^{1}/_{4}$″ air space; cement and sand mortar.	1.5 tons/ft	32 min			7	23, 25	$^{1}/_{3}$
W-9-M-58	9″	9″ × 3″ stairfoot brick (7527 psi) in $^{1}/_{2}$″ sand-cement mortar.	7.2 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-9-M-59	9″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; $^{1}/_{2}$″ thick; 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	7 hrs		1		1, 22, 45	7
W-9-M-60	9″	Core: concrete brick; $^{1}/_{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	8 hrs		1		1, 45	8
W-9-M-61	9″	Core: hollow rolok of clay or shale; $^{1}/_{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 45	4
W-9-M-62	9″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 1; minimum % solids: 70; $^{1}/_{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 44	3
W-9-M-63	9″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 2; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids: 87; $^{1}/_{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	7 hrs		1		1, 45	7
W-9-M-64	9-10″	Core: cavity wall of clay or shale brick; no facings.	See notes	5 hrs		1		1, 45	5
W-9-M-65	9-10″	Core: cavity construction of clay or shale brick; $^{1}/_{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	See notes	6 hrs		1		1, 45	6
W-9-M-66	9-10″	Core: cavity construction of clay or shale brick; $^{1}/_{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	7 hrs		1		1, 45	7

TABLE 1.1.4—continued
MASONRY WALLS
8″ TO LESS THAN 10″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-9-M-67	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 40; 5/8″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 20, 21	3
W-9-M-68	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids in units: 43; 5/8″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 20, 21	3
W-9-M-69	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: sides 1 and 2; see Note 17.	See notes	3 hrs		1		1, 2, 5, 10, 18, 20, 21	3
W-9-M-70	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: sides 1 and 2; see Note 17.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 2, 5, 13, 18, 20, 21	4
W-9-M-71	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: sides 1 and 2; see Note 17.	See notes	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 2, 6, 9, 18, 20, 21	3 1/2
W-9-M-72	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: sides 1 and 2; see Note 17.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 2, 6, 10, 18, 20, 21	4
W-9-M-73	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: sides 1 and 2; see Note 17.	See notes	4 hrs		1		1, 2, 6, 12, 18, 20, 21	4
W-9-M-74	9 1/4″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; facings: sides 1 and 2; see Note 17.	See notes	5 hrs		1		1, 2, 6 16, 18, 20, 21	5
W-8-M-75	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 34, 40; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	1 1/2
W-8-M-76	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 40; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-8-M-77	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 31, 40; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 20	1 1/4
W-8-M-78	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 31, 40; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 20	3
W-8-M-79	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 36, 41; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	1 1/2
W-8-M-80	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 36, 41; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 20	3
W-8-M-81	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 34, 41; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr		1		1, 20	1
W-8-M-82	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 41; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	2 1/2
W-8-M-83	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 29, 41; no facings.	80 psi	45 min		1		1, 20	3/4
W-8-M-84	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 29, 41; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-8-M-85	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 26, 34, 41; facings: 2 1/4″ brick.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-8-M-86	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 26, 34, 41; facings: 3 3/4″ brick face.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-8-M-87	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 30, 43; no facings.	80 psi	12 min		1		1, 20	1/5
W-8-M-88	8″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 30, 43; no facings.	80 psi	12 min		1		1, 20	1/5
W-8-M-89	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 34, 40; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-8-M-90	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 40; facings: side 1; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-8-M-91	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 31, 40; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	1 hr 45 min		1		1, 20	1 3/4
W-8-M-92	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 31, 40; facings: one side; see Note 38.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.4—continued
MASONRY WALLS
8″ TO LESS THAN 10″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-8-M-93	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 36, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-8-M-94	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 36, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-8-M-95	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 34, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	1 1/2
W-8-M-96	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 41; facings: one side; see Note 38.	80 psi	3 hrs				1, 20	3
W-8-M-97	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 29, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	1 1/2
W-8-M-98	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 29, 41; facings: one side; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	2 1/2
W-8-M-99	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 19, 23, 27, 41; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 20	1 1/4
W-8-M-100	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 23, 27, 41; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	3 1/2
W-8-M-101	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 26, 34, 41; facings: 3 3/4″ brick face; one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-8-M-102	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 30, 43; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	30 min		1		1, 20	1/2
W-8-M-103	8 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 30, 43; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	12 min		1		1, 20	1/5
W-9-M-104	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 40; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-9-M-105	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 31, 40; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-9-M-106	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 36, 41; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-9-M-107	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 41; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-9-M-108	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 29, 41; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	3 1/2
W-9-M-109	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 19, 23, 27, 40; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	1 hr 45 min		1		1, 20	1 3/4
W-9-M-110	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 23, 27, 41; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-9-M-111	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 26, 34, 41; 2 1/4″ brick face on one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-9-M-112	9″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 30, 43; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	30 min		1		1, 20	1/2
W-9-M-113	9 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 23, 27, 41; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. 43-1934 (ASTM C19-53).
2. One unit in wall thickness.
3. Two units in wall thickness.
4. Two or three units in wall thickness.
5. Two cells in wall thickness.

TABLE 1.1.4—continued
MASONRY WALLS
8″ TO LESS THAN 10″ THICK

6. Three or four cells in wall thickness.
7. Four or five cells in wall thickness.
8. Five or six cells in wall thickness.
9. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 40%.
10. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 43%.
11. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 46%.
12. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 48%.
13. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 49%.
14. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 45%.
15. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 51%.
16. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 53%.
17. Not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch thickness of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
18. Noncombustible or no members framed into wall.
19. Combustible members framed into wall.
20. Load: 80 psi for gross cross-sectional area of wall.
21. Portland cement-lime mortar.
22. Failure mode—thermal.
23. British test.
24. Passed all criteria.
25. Failed by sudden collapse with no preceding signs of impending failure.
26. One cell in wall thickness.
27. Two cells in wall thickness.
28. Three cells in wall thickness.
29. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 52.
30. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 54.
31. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 55.
32. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 57.
33. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 60.
34. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 62.
35. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 65.
36. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 70.
37. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 76.
38. Not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
39. Three units in wall thickness.
40. Concrete units made with expanded slag or pumice aggregates.
41. Concrete units made with expanded burned clay or shale, crushed limestone, air-cooled slag or cinders.
42. Concrete units made with calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.
43. Concrete units made with siliceous sand and gravel. Ninety percent or more quartz, chert and dolomite.
44. Load: 120 psi for gross cross-sectional area of wall.
45. Load: 160 psi for gross cross-sectional area of wall.

FIGURE 1.1.5
MASONRY WALLS
10″ TO LESS THAN 12″ THICK

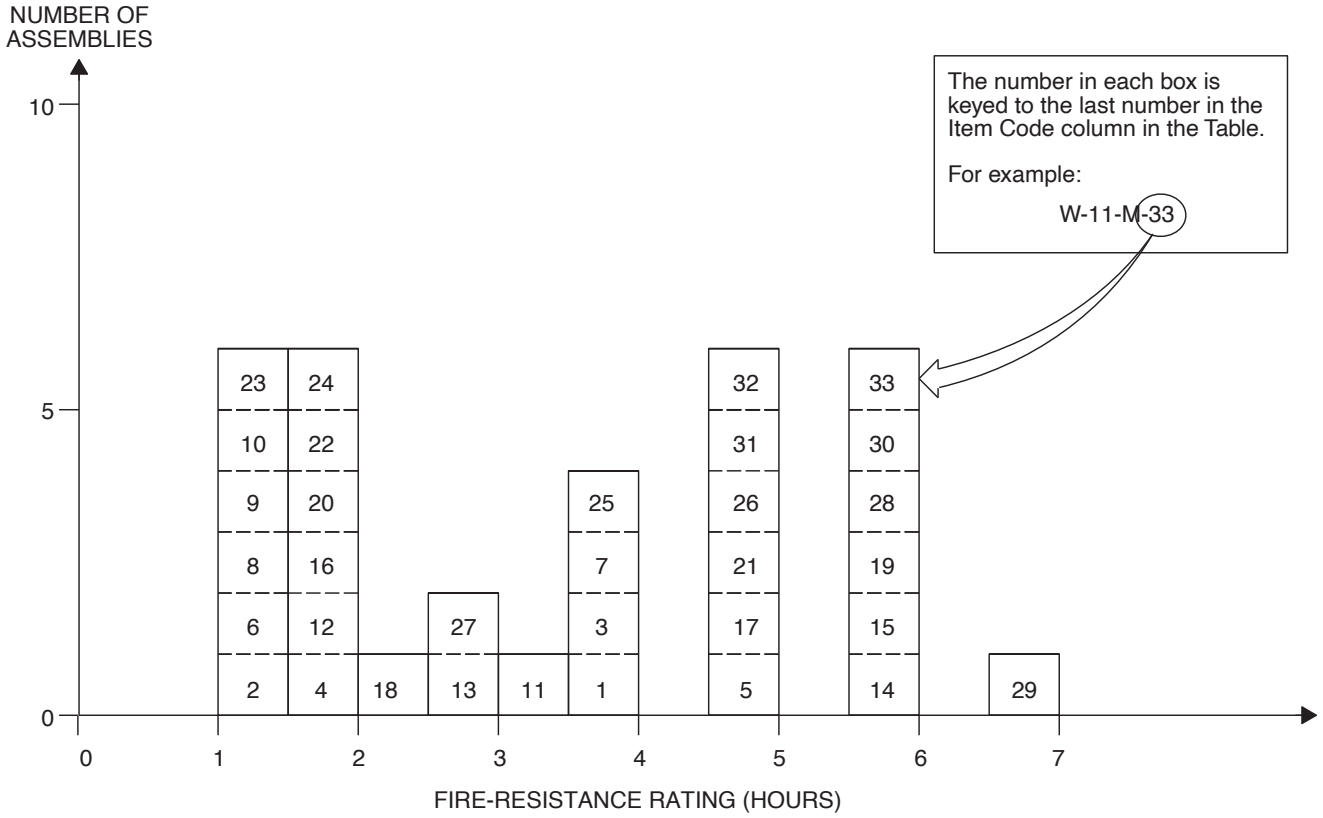


TABLE 1.1.5
MASONRY WALLS
10″ TO LESS THAN 12″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-10-M-1	10″	Core: two $3^{3}/_{4}$″, 40% solid clay or shale structural tiles with 2″ air space between; facings: $^{3}/_{4}$″ Portland cement plaster on stucco on both sides.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-10-M-2	10″	Core: cored concrete masonry, 2″ air cavity; see Notes 3, 19, 27, 34, 40; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-10-M-3	10″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 40; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-10-M-4	10″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 33, 40; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-10-M-5	10″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 33, 40; no facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-10-M-6	10″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 33, 41; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-10-M-7	10″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 33, 41; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-10-M-8	10″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 19, 27, 34, 42; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 20	$1^{1}/_{4}$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.5—continued
MASONRY WALLS
10″ TO LESS THAN 12″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-10-M-9	10″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 42; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 20	1 1/4
W-10-M-10	10″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 19, 27, 34, 41; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 20	1 1/4
W-10-M-11	10″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 41; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	3 1/2
W-10-M-12	10″	9″ thick concrete block (11 3/4″ × 9″ × 4 1/4″) with two 2″ thick voids included; 3/8″ P.C. plaster 1/8″ neat gypsum.	N/A	1 hr 53 min			7	23, 44	1 3/4
W-10-M-13	10″	Holly clay tile block wall—8 1/2″ block with two 3″ voids in each 8 1/2″ section; 3/4″ gypsum plaster each face.	N/A	2 hrs 42 min			7	23, 25	2 1/2
W-10-M-14	10″	Two layers 4 1/4″ thick Fletton brick (1910 psi) with 1 1/2″ air space; no ties; sand cement mortar.	N/A	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-10-M-15	10″	Two layers 4 1/4″ thick Fletton brick (1910 psi); 1 1/2″ air space; ties: 18″ o.c. vertical; 3′ o.c. horizontal.	N/A	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6
W-10-M-16	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; 2″ air cavity; see Notes 3, 19, 27, 34, 40; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-10-M-17	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 40; facings: side 1 only; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-10-M-18	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 33, 40; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	2 1/2
W-10-M-19	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 33, 40; facings: one side; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-10-M-20	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 33, 41; facings: fire side of wall only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-10-M-21	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 33, 41; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-10-M-22	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 19, 27, 34, 42; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	1 hr 45 min		1		1, 20	1 3/4
W-10-M-23	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 42; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 20	1 1/4
W-10-M-24	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 19, 27, 34, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-10-M-25	10 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 41; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-10-M-26	10 5/8″	Core: 8″, 40% solid tile plus 2″ furring tile; 5/8″ sanded gypsum plaster between tile types; facings: both sides 3/4″ Portland cement plaster or stucco.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-10-M-27	10 5/8″	Core: 8″, 40% solid tile plus 2″ furring tile; 5/8″ sanded gypsum plaster between tile types; facings: one side 3/4″ Portland cement plaster or stucco.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	3 1/2
W-11-M-28	11″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 40; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-11-M-29	11″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 33, 40; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-11-M-30	11″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 33, 41; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-11-M-31	11″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 42; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-11-M-32	11″	Cored concrete masonry (cavity type 2″ air space); see Notes 3, 18, 27, 34, 41; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-11-M-33	11″	Two layers brick (4 1/2″ Fletton, 2428 psi) 2″ air space; galvanized ties 18″ o.c. horizontal, 3′ o.c. vertical.	3 tons/ft	6 hrs			7	23, 24	6

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.5—continued
MASONRY WALLS
10″ TO LESS THAN 12″ THICK

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. A2-1934.
2. One unit in wall thickness.
3. Two units in wall thickness.
4. Two or three units in wall thickness.
5. Two cells in wall thickness.
6. Three or four cells in wall thickness.
7. Four or five cells in wall thickness.
8. Five or six cells in wall thickness.
9. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 40%.
10. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 43%.
11. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 46%.
12. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 48%.
13. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 49%.
14. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 45%.
15. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 51%.
16. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 53%.
17. Not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch thickness of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
18. Noncombustible or no members framed into wall.
19. Combustible members framed into wall.
20. Load: 80 psi for gross cross-sectional area of wall.
21. Portland cement-lime mortar.
22. Failure mode—thermal.
23. British test.
24. Passed all criteria.
25. Failed by sudden collapse with no preceding signs of impending failure.
26. One cell in wall thickness.
27. Two cells in wall thickness.
28. Three cells in wall thickness.
29. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 52%.
30. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 54%.
31. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 55%.
32. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 57%.
33. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 60%.
34. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 62%.
35. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 65%.
36. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 70%.
37. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 76%.
38. Not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
39. Three units in wall thickness.
40. Concrete units made with expanded slag or pumice aggregates.
41. Concrete units made with expanded burned clay or shale, crushed limestone, air-cooled slag or cinders.
42. Concrete units made with calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

FIGURE 1.1.6
MASONRY WALLS
12″ TO LESS THAN 14″ THICK

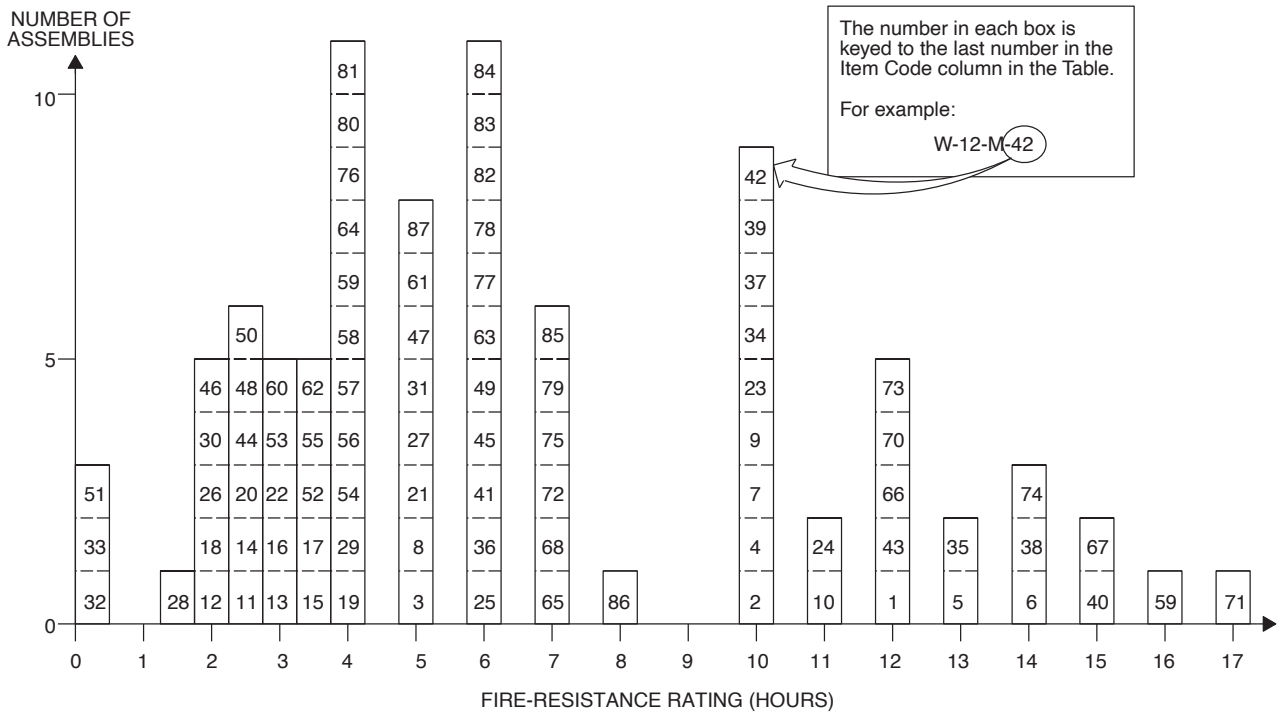

NUMBER OF ASSEMBLIES
10
5
0
The number in each box is keyed to the last number in the Item Code column in the Table.
For example:
W-12-M-42
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (HOURS)

TABLE 1.1.6
MASONRY WALLS
12″ TO LESS THAN 14″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-12-M-1	12″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; no facings.	N/A	12 hrs		1		1	12
W-12-M-2	12″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; no facings.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10
W-12-M-3	12″	Core: hollow rolok of clay or shale; no facings.	160 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 44	5
W-12-M-4	12″	Core: hollow rolok bak of clay or shale; no facings.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10
W-12-M-5	12″	Core: concrete brick; no facings.	160 psi	13 hrs		1		1, 44	13
W-12-M-6	12″	Core: sand-lime brick; no facings.	N/A	14 hrs		1		1	14
W-12-M-7	12″	Core: sand-lime brick; no facings.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10
W-12-M-8	12″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids: 70; no facings.	120 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 45	5
W-12-M-9	12″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 3; cells in wall thickness: 3; minimum % solids: 87; no facings.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10
W-12-M-10	12″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 3; cells in wall thickness: 3; minimum % solids: 87; no facings.	N/A	11 hrs		1		1	11
W-12-M-11	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 9, 18; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	$2^1/_2$
W-12-M-12	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 4, 9, 19; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-12-M-13	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 14, 19; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 20	3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.6—continued
MASONRY WALLS
12″ TO LESS THAN 14″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-12-M-14	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 14, 18; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	$2^1/_2$
W-12-M-15	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 4, 13, 18; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	$3^1/_2$
W-12-M-16	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 4, 13, 19; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 20	3
W-12-M-17	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 9, 18; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	$3^1/_2$
W-12-M-18	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 9, 19; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-12-M-19	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 14, 18; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-12-M-20	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 14, 19; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	$2^1/_2$
W-12-M-21	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 16, 18; no facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-12-M-22	12″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 16, 19; no facings.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 20	3
W-12-M-23	12″	Core: 8″, 70% solid clay or shale structural tile; 4″ brick facings on one side.	80 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 20	10
W-12-M-24	12″	Core: 8″, 70% solid clay or shale structural tile; 4″ brick facings on one side.	N/A	11 hrs		1		1	11
W-12-M-25	12″	Core: 8″, 40% solid clay or shale structural tile; 4″ brick facings on one side.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-12-M-26	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 1, 9, 15, 16, 20; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-12-M-27	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 41; no facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-12-M-28	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 31, 41; no facings.	80 psi	1 hr 30 min		1		1, 20	$1^1/_2$
W-12-M-29	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 31, 41; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-12-M-30	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 19, 27, 31, 43; no facings.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-12-M-31	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 27, 31, 43; no facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-12-M-32	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 32, 43; no facings.	80 psi	25 min		1		1, 20	$^1/_3$
W-12-M-33	12″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 32, 43; no facings.	80 psi	25 min		1		1, 20	$^1/_3$
W-12-M-34	$12^1/_2$″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10
W-12-M-35	$12^1/_2$″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	N/A	13 hrs		1		1	13
W-12-M-36	$12^1/_2$″	Core: hollow rolok of clay or shale; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	160 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 44	6
W-12-M-37	$12^1/_2$″	Core: hollow rolok bak of clay or shale; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10
W-12-M-38	$12^1/_2$″	Core: concrete; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	160 psi	14 hrs		1		1, 44	14
W-12-M-39	$12^1/_2$″	Core: sand-lime brick; $^1/_2$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10

TABLE 1.1.6—continued
MASONRY WALLS
12″ TO LESS THAN 14″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-12-M-40	12 1/2″	Core: sand-lime brick; 1/2″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	N/A	15 hrs		1		1	15
W-12-M-41	12 1/2″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids: 70; 1/2″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	120 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 45	6
W-12-M-42	12 1/2″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 3; cells in wall thickness: 3; minimum % solids: 87; 1/2″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	160 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 44	10
W-12-M-43	12 1/2″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 3; cells in wall thickness: 3; minimum % solids: 87; 1/2″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on one side.	N/A	12 hrs		1		1	12
W-12-M-44	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 34, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	2 1/2
W-12-M-45	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 39, 41; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-12-M-46	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 31, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs		1		1, 20	2
W-12-M-47	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 31, 41; facings: one side of wall only; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-12-M-48	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 19, 27, 31, 43; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	2 1/2
W-12-M-49	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 27, 31, 43; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-12-M-50	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 19, 26, 32, 43; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	2 1/2
W-12-M-51	12 1/2″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 32, 43; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	25 min		1		1, 20	1/3
W-12-M-52	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 9, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	3 1/2
W-12-M-53	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 9, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 20	3
W-12-M-54	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 14, 19; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-12-M-55	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 14, 18; facings: exposed side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	3 1/2
W-12-M-56	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 4, 13, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-12-M-57	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 1, 4, 13, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-12-M-58	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 9, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-12-M-59	12 5/8″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 9, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	3 hrs		1		1, 20	3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.6—continued
MASONRY WALLS
12″ TO LESS THAN 14″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-12-M-60	$12\frac{5}{8}$″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 14, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-12-M-61	$12\frac{5}{8}$″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 14, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 20	$3\frac{1}{2}$
W-12-M-62	$12\frac{5}{8}$″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 16, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-12-M-63	$12\frac{5}{8}$″	Clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 16, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-12-M-64	$12\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: 8″, 40% solid clay or shale structural tile; facings: 4″ brick plus $\frac{5}{8}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster on one side.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-13-M-65	13″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	160 psi	12 hrs		1		1, 44	12
W-13-M-66	13″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	N/A	15 hrs		1		1, 20	15
W-13-M-67	13″	Core: solid clay or shale brick; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	N/A	15 hrs		1		1	15
W-13-M-68	13″	Core: hollow rolok of clay or shale; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-13-M-69	13″	Core: concrete brick; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	160 psi	16 hrs		1		1, 44	16
W-13-M-70	13″	Core: sand-lime brick; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	160 psi	12 hrs		1		1, 44	12
W-13-M-71	13″	Core: sand-lime brick; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	N/A	17 hrs		1		1	17
W-13-M-72	13″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 1; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids: 70; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	120 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 45	7
W-13-M-73	13″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 3; cells in wall thickness: 3; minimum % solids: 87; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	160 psi	12 hrs		1		1, 44	12
W-13-M-74	13″	Cored clay or shale brick; units in wall thickness: 3; cells in wall thickness: 2; minimum % solids: 87; $\frac{1}{2}$″ of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster facings on both sides.	N/A	14 hrs		1		1	14
W-13-M-75	13″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 18, 23, 28, 39, 41; no facings.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-13-M-76	13″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 19, 23, 28, 39, 41; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-13-M-77	13″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 3, 18, 27, 31, 43; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-13-M-78	13″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 31, 41; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-13-M-79	13″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 2, 18, 26, 34, 41; facings: both sides of wall; see Note 38.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-13-M-80	$13\frac{1}{4}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 9, 18; facings: both sides; see Note 17.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4

TABLE 1.1.6—continued
MASONRY WALLS
12″ TO LESS THAN 14″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-13-M-81	$13^1/_4$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 6, 14, 19; facings: both sides; see Note 17.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-13-M-82	$13^1/_4$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 2, 4, 13, 18; facings: both sides; see Note 17.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-13-M-83	$13^1/_4$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 9, 18; facings: both sides; see Note 17.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-13-M-84	$13^1/_4$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 14, 18; facings: both sides; see Note 17.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-13-M-85	$13^1/_4$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 6, 16, 18; facings: both sides; see Note 17.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-13-M-86	$13^1/_2$″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 18, 23, 28, 39, 41; facings: one side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	8 hrs		1		1, 20	8
W-13-M-87	$13^1/_2$″	Cored concrete masonry; see Notes 19, 23, 28, 39, 41; facings: fire side only; see Note 38.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. A2-1934.
2. One unit in wall thickness.
3. Two units in wall thickness.
4. Two or three units in wall thickness.
5. Two cells in wall thickness.
6. Three or four cells in wall thickness.
7. Four or five cells in wall thickness.
8. Five or six cells in wall thickness.
9. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 40%.
10. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 43%.
11. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 46%.
12. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 48%.
13. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 49%.
14. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 45%.
15. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 51%.
16. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 53%.
17. Not less than $^5/_8$ inch thickness of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
18. Noncombustible or no members framed into wall.
19. Combustible members framed into wall.
20. Load: 80 psi for gross area.
21. Portland cement-lime mortar.
22. Failure mode–thermal.
23. British test.
24. Passed all criteria.
25. Failed by sudden collapse with no preceding signs of impending failure.
26. One cell in wall thickness.
27. Two cells in wall thickness.
28. Three cells in wall thickness.
29. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 52%.
30. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 54%.
31. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 55%.
32. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 57%.
33. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 60%.
34. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 62%.
35. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 65%.
36. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 70%.
37. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 76%.
38. Not less than $^1/_2$ inch of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
39. Three units in wall thickness.
40. Concrete units made with expanded slag or pumice aggregates.
41. Concrete units made with expanded burned clay or shale, crushed limestone, air-cooled slag or cinders.

TABLE 1.1.6—continued
MASONRY WALLS
12″ TO LESS THAN 14″ THICK

42. Concrete units made with calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.
43. Concrete units made with siliceous sand and gravel. Ninety percent or more quartz, chert or flint.
44. Load: 160 psi of gross wall cross-sectional area.
45. Load: 120 psi of gross wall cross-sectional area.

FIGURE 1.1.7
MASONRY WALLS
14″ OR MORE THICK

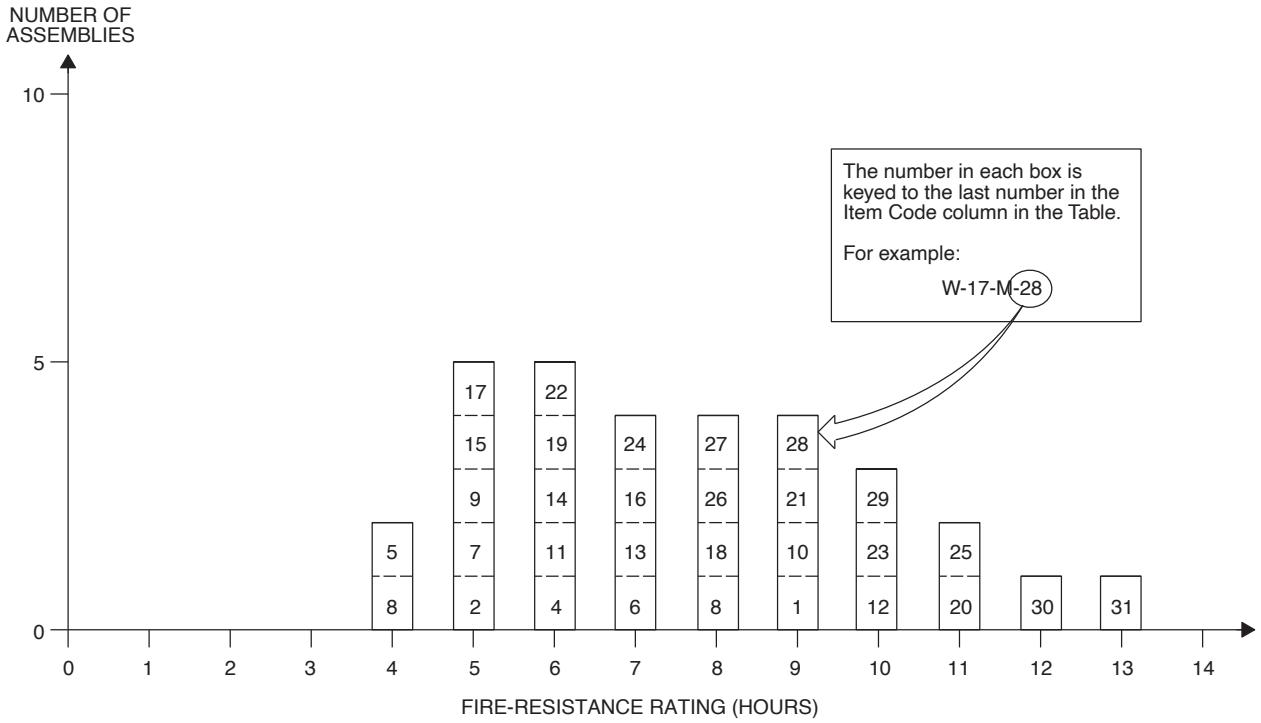

NUMBER OF ASSEMBLIES
10
5
0
The number in each box is keyed to the last number in the Item Code column in the Table.
For example:
W-17-M-28
5 7 9 15 17
8 2 4 6 8 1 12 20 30 31
10 11 13 16 18 21 23 25 14 19 22 24 26 27 28 29
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (HOURS)

TABLE 1.1.7
MASONRY WALLS
14″ OR MORE THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-14-M-1	14″	Core: cored masonry; see Notes 18, 28, 35, 39, 41; facings: both sides; see Note 38.	80 psi	9 hrs		1		1, 20	9
W-16-M-2	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 9, 19; no facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-16-M-3	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 9, 19; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-16-M-4	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 10, 18; no facings.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-16-M-5	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 10, 19; no facings.	80 psi	4 hrs		1		1, 20	4
W-16-M-6	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 11, 18; no facings.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-16-M-7	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 11, 19; no facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-16-M-8	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 13, 18; no facings.	80 psi	8 hrs		1		1, 20	8
W-16-M-9	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 13, 19; no facings.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5

TABLE 1.1.7—continued
MASONRY WALLS
14″ OR MORE THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-16-M-10	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 15, 18; no facings.	80 psi	9 hrs		1		1, 20	9
W-16-M-11	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 3, 7, 14, 18; no facings.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-16-M-12	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 16, 18; no facings.	80 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 20	10
W-16-M-13	16″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 6, 16, 19; no facings.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-16-M-14	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 9, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-16-M-15	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 9, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-16-M-16	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 10, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-16-M-17	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 10, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	5 hrs		1		1, 20	5
W-16-M-18	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 11, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	8 hrs		1		1, 20	8
W-16-M-19	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 11, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-16-M-20	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 13, 18; facings: sides 1 and 2, see Note 17.	80 psi	11 hrs		1		1, 20	11
W-16-M-21	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 13 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	9 hrs		1		1, 20	9
W-16-M-22	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 13, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	6 hrs		1		1, 20	6
W-16-M-23	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 15, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 20	10
W-16-M-24	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 15, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	7 hrs		1		1, 20	7
W-16-M-25	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 6, 16, 18; facings: side 1, see Note 17; side 2, none.	80 psi	11 hrs		1		1, 20	11
W-16-M-26	$16\frac{5}{8}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 6, 16, 19; facings: fire side only; see Note 17.	80 psi	8 hrs		1		1, 20	8
W-17-M-27	$17\frac{1}{4}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 9, 18; facings: sides 1 and 2, see Note 17.	80 psi	8 hrs		1		1, 20	8
W-17-M-28	$17\frac{1}{4}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 10, 18; facings: sides 1 and 2, see Note 17.	80 psi	9 hrs		1		1, 20	9
W-17-M-29	$17\frac{1}{4}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 7, 11, 18; facings: sides 1 and 2, see Note 17.	80 psi	10 hrs		1		1, 20	10
W-17-M-30	$17\frac{1}{4}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 8, 15, 18; facings: sides 1 and 2, see Note 17.	80 psi	12 hrs		1		1, 20	12

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.1.7—continued
MASONRY WALLS
14″ OR MORE THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-17-M-31	$17^{1}/_{4}$″	Core: clay or shale structural tile; see Notes 4, 6, 16, 18; facings: sides 1 and 2, see Note 17.	80 psi	13 hrs		1		1, 20	13

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Tested at NBS under ASA Spec. No. A2-1934.
2. One unit in wall thickness.
3. Two units in wall thickness.
4. Two or three units in wall thickness.
5. Two cells in wall thickness.
6. Three or four cells in wall thickness.
7. Four or five cells in wall thickness.
8. Five or six cells in wall thickness.
9. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 40%.
10. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 43%.
11. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 46%.
12. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 48%.
13. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 49%.
14. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 45%.
15. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 51%.
16. Minimum percent of solid materials in units = 53%.
17. Not less than $^{5}/_{8}$ inch thickness of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
18. Noncombustible or no members framed into wall.
19. Combustible members framed into wall.
20. Load: 80 psi for gross area.
21. Portland cement-lime mortar.
22. Failure mode—thermal.
23. British test.
24. Passed all criteria.
25. Failed by sudden collapse with no preceding signs of impending failure.
26. One cell in wall thickness.
27. Two cells in wall thickness.
28. Three cells in wall thickness.
29. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 52%.
30. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 54%.
31. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 55%.
32. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 57%.
33. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 60%.
34. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 62%.
35. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 65%.
36. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 70%.
37. Minimum percent of solid material in concrete units = 76%.
38. Not less than $^{1}/_{2}$ inch of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.
39. Three units in wall thickness.
40. Concrete units made with expanded slag or pumice aggregates.
41. Concrete units made with expanded burned clay or shale, crushed limestone, air-cooled slag or cinders.
42. Concrete units made with calcareous sand and gravel. Coarse aggregate, 60 percent or more calcite and dolomite.
43. Concrete units made with siliceous sand and gravel. Ninety percent or more quartz, chert or flint.

FIGURE 1.2.1
METAL FRAME WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

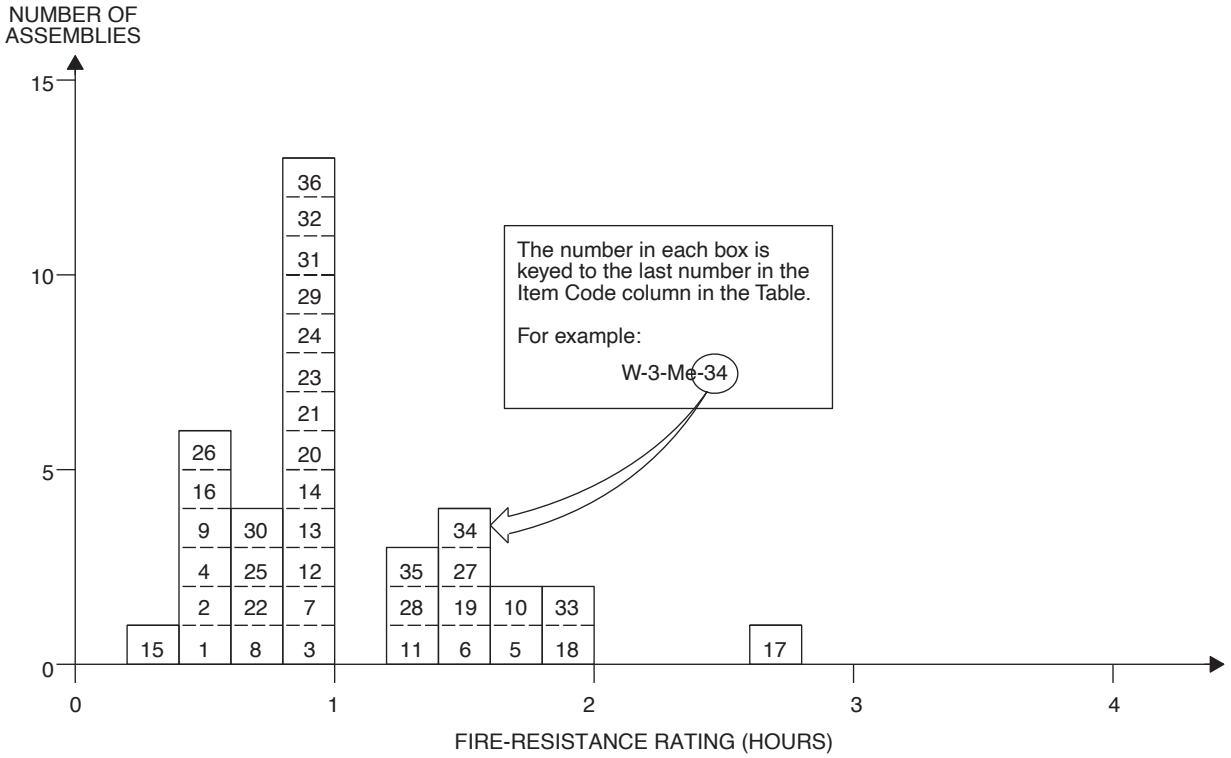


TABLE 1.2.1
METAL FRAME WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-3-Me-1	3″	Core: steel channels having three rows of 4″ × $^1/_8$″ staggered slots in web; core filled with heat expanded vermiculite weighing 1.5 lbs/ft^2 of wall area; facings: sides 1 and 2, 18 gage steel, spot welded to core.	N/A	25 min		1			$^1/_3$
W-3-Me-2	3″	Core: steel channels having three rows of 4″ × $^1/_8$″ staggered slots in web; core filled with heat expanded vermiculite weighing 2 lbs/ft^2 of wall area; facings: sides 1 and 2, 18 gage steel, spot welded to core.	N/A	30 min		1			$^1/_2$
W-2-Me-3	2$^1/_2$″	Solid partition: $^3/_8$″ tension rods (vertical) 3′ o.c. with metal lath; scratch coat: cement/sand/lime plaster; float coats: cement/sand/lime plaster; finish coats: neat gypsum plaster.	N/A	1 hr			7	1	1
W-2-Me-4	2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 1; 2″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 Portland cement on metal lath.	N/A	30 min		1			$^1/_2$
W-2-Me-5	2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 1; 2″ thickness of neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1			1$^3/_4$
W-2-Me-6	2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 1; 2″ thickness of 1:$^1/_2$; 1:$^1/_2$ gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			1$^1/_2$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.2.1—continued
METAL FRAME WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-2-Me-7	2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2″ thickness of 1:1; 1:1 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-2-Me-8	2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 1; 2″ thickness of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	45 min		1			3/4
W-2-Me-9	2 1/4″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/4″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 Portland cement on metal lath.	N/A	30 min		1			1/2
W-2-Me-10	2 1/4″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/4″ thickness of neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-2-Me-11	2 1/4″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/4″thickness of 1:1/2; 1:1/2 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1			1 3/4
W-2-Me-12	2 1/4″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/4″ thickness of 1:1; 1:1 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			1 1/4
W-2-Me-13	2 1/4″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/4″ thickness of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-2-Me-14	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 1; 2 1/2″ thickness of 4.5:1:7; 4.5:1:7 Portland cement, sawdust and sand sprayed on wire mesh; see Note 3 for wire mesh.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-2-Me-15	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of 1:4; 1:4 Portland cement sprayed on wire mesh; see Note 3.	N/A	20 min		1			1/3
W-2-Me-16	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 Portland cement on metal lath.	N/A	30 min		1			1/2
W-2-Me-17	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			2 1/2
W-2-Me-18	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of 1:1/2; 1:1/2 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-2-Me-19	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of 1:1; 1:1 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			1 1/2
W-2-Me-20	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-2-Me-21	2 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-3-Me-22	3″	Core: steel channel per Note 2; 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 3/4″ soft asbestos lath; plaster thickness 2″.	N/A	45 min		1			3/4
W-3-Me-23	3 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; 2 1/2″ thickness of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 3/4″ asbestos lath.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-3-Me-24	3 1/2″	Solid wall: steel channel per Note 2; lath over and 1:2 1/2; 1:2 1/2 gypsum plaster on 1″ magnesium oxysulfate wood fiberboard; plaster thickness 2 1/2″.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-3-Me-25	3 1/2″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: 3/4″ thickness of 1:1/30:2; 1:1/30:3 Portland cement and asbestos fiber plaster.	N/A	45 min		1			3/4

TABLE 1.2.1—continued
METAL FRAME WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-3-Me-26	$3^1/_2$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 Portland cement.	N/A	30 min		1			$^1/_2$
W-3-Me-27	$3^1/_2$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thickness of neat gypsum plaster.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			$1^1/_2$
W-3-Me-28	$3^1/_2$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thickness of 1:$^1/_2$; 1:$^1/_2$ gypsum plaster.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			$1^1/_4$
W-3-Me-29	$3^1/_2$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thickness of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-3-Me-30	$3^1/_2$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster.	N/A	45 min		1			$^3/_4$
W-3-Me-31	$3^3/_4$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^7/_8$″ thickness of 1:$^1/_{30}$: 2; 1:$^1/_{30}$: 3 Portland cement and asbestos fiber plaster.	N/A	1 hr		1			1
W-3-Me-32	$3^3/_4$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^7/_8$″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 Portland cement.	N/A	45 min		1			$^3/_4$
W-3-Me-33	$3^3/_4$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^7/_8$″ thickness of neat gypsum plaster.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-3-Me-34	$3^3/_4$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^7/_8$″ thickness of 1:$^1/_2$; 1:$^1/_2$ gypsum plaster.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1			$1^1/_2$
W-3-Me-35	$3^3/_4$″	Core: steel studs; see Note 4; facings: both sides $^7/_8$″ thickness of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			$1^1/_4$
W-3-Me-36	$3^3/_4$″	Core: steel; see Note 4; facings: $^7/_8$″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on both sides.	N/A	1 hr		1			1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—local temperature rise—back face.
2. Three-fourths inch or 1 inch channel framing—hot-rolled or strip-steel channels.
3. Reinforcement is 4-inch square mesh of No. 6 wire welded at intersections (no channels).
4. Ratings are for any usual type of non-load-bearing metal framing providing 2 inches (or more) air space.

General Note:

The construction details of the wall assemblies are as complete as the source documentation will permit. Data on the method of attachment of facings and the gage of steel studs was provided when known. The cross-sectional area of the steel stud can be computed, thereby permitting a reasoned estimate of actual loading conditions. For load-bearing assemblies, the maximum allowable stress for the steel studs has been provided in the table "Notes." More often, it is the thermal properties of the facing materials, rather than the specific gage of the steel, that will determine the degree of fire resistance. This is particularly true for nonbearing wall assemblies.

FIGURE 1.2.2
METAL FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

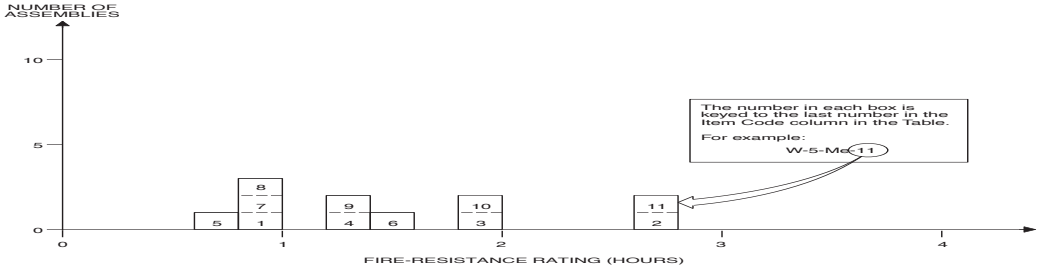


TABLE 1.2.2
METAL FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-5-Me-1	$5^1/_2$″	3″ cavity with 16 gage channel studs ($3^1/_2$′ o.c.) of $^1/_2$″ × $^1/_2$″ channel and 3″ spacer; metal lath on ribs with plaster (three coats) $^3/_4$″ over face of lath; plaster (each side): scratch coat, cement/lime/sand with hair; float coat, cement/lime/sand; finish coat, neat gypsum.	N/A	1 hr 11 min			7	1	1
W-4-Me-2	4″	Core: steel studs; see Note 2; facings: both sides 1″ thickness of neat gypsum plaster.	N/A	2 hrs 30 min		1			$2^1/_2$
W-4-Me-3	4″	Core: steel studs; see Note 2; facings: both sides 1″ thickness of 1:$^1/_2$; 1:$^1/_2$ gypsum plaster.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2
W-4-Me-4	4″	Core: steel; see Note 2; facings: both sides 1″ thickness of 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1			$1^1/_4$
W-4-Me-5	$4^1/_2$″	Core: lightweight steel studs 3″ in depth; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thick sanded gypsum plaster, 1:2 scratch coat, 1:3 brown coat applied on metal lath.	See Note 4	45 min		1		5	$^3/_4$
W-4-Me-6	$4^1/_2$″	Core: lightweight steel studs 3″ in depth; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thick neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	See Note 4	1 hr 30 min		1		5	$1^1/_2$
W-4-Me-7	$4^1/_2$″	Core: lightweight steel studs 3″ in depth; facings: both sides $^3/_4$″ thick sanded gypsum plaster, 1:2 scratch and brown coats applied on metal lath.	See Note 4	1 hr		1		5	1
W-4-Me-8	$4^3/_4$″	Core: lightweight steel studs 3″ in depth; facings: both sides $^7/_8$″ thick sanded gypsum plaster, 1:2 scratch coat, 1:3 brown coat, applied on metal lath.	See Note 4	1 hr		1		5	1
W-4-Me-9	$4^3/_4$″	Core: lightweight steel studs 3″ in depth; facings: both sides $^7/_8$″ thick sanded gypsum plaster, 1:2 scratch and 1:3 brown coats applied on metal lath.	See Note 4	1 hr 15 min		1		5	$1^1/_4$

TABLE 1.2.2—continued
METAL FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-5-Me-10	5″	Core: lightweight steel studs 3″ in depth; facings: both sides 1″ thick neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	See Note 4	2 hrs		1		5	2
W-5-Me-11	5″	Core: lightweight steel studs 3″ in depth; facings: both sides 1″ thick neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	See Note 4	2 hrs 30 min		1		5, 6	$2^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—local back face temperature rise.
2. Ratings are for any usual type of nonbearing metal framing providing a minimum 2-inch air space.
3. Facing materials secured to lightweight steel studs not less than 3 inches deep.
4. Rating based on loading to develop a maximum stress of 7270 psi for net area of each stud.
5. Spacing of steel studs must be sufficient to develop adequate rigidity in the metal-lath or gypsum-plaster base.
6. As per Note 4 but load/stud not to exceed 5120 psi.

General Note:

The construction details of the wall assemblies are as complete as the source documentation will permit. Data on the method of attachment of facings and the gage of steel studs was provided when known. The cross-sectional area of the steel stud can be computed, thereby permitting a reasoned estimate of actual loading conditions. For load-bearing assemblies, the maximum allowable stress for the steel studs has been provided in the table "Notes." More often, it is the thermal properties of the facing materials, rather than the specific gage of the steel, that will determine the degree of fire resistance. This is particularly true for nonbearing wall assemblies.

TABLE 1.2.3
METAL FRAME WALLS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-6-Me-1	$6^5/_8$″	On one side of 1″ magnesium oxysulfate wood fiberboard sheathing attached to steel studs (see Notes 1 and 2), 1″ air space, $3^3/_4$″ brick secured with metal ties to steel frame every fifth course; inside facing of $^7/_8$″ 1:2 sanded gypsum plaster on metal lath secured directly to studs; plaster side exposed to fire.	See Note 2	1 hr 45 min		1		1	$1^3/_4$
W-6-Me-2	$6^5/_8$″	On one side of 1″ magnesium oxysulfate wood fiberboard sheathing attached to steel studs (see Notes 1 and 2), 1″ air space, $3^3/_4$″ brick secured with metal ties to steel frame every fifth course; inside facing of $^7/_8$″ 1:2 sanded gypsum plaster on metal lath secured directly to studs; brick face exposed to fire.	See Note 2	4 hrs		1		1	4
W-6-Me-3	$6^5/_8$″	On one side of 1″ magnesium oxysulfate wood fiberboard sheathing attached to steel studs (see Notes 1 and 2), 1″ air space, $3^3/_4$″ brick secured with metal ties to steel frame every fifth course; inside facing of $^7/_8$″ vermiculite plaster on metal lath secured directly to studs; plaster side exposed to fire.	See Note 2	2 hrs		1		1	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Lightweight steel studs (minimum 3 inches deep) used. Stud spacing dependent on loading, but in each case, spacing is to be such that adequate rigidity is provided to the metal lath plaster base.
2. Load is such that stress developed in studs is not greater than 5120 psi calculated from net stud area.

General Note:

The construction details of the wall assemblies are as complete as the source documentation will permit. Data on the method of attachment of facings and the gage of steel studs was provided when known. The cross-sectional area of the steel stud can be computed, thereby permitting a reasoned estimate of actual loading conditions. For load-bearing assemblies, the maximum allowable stress for the steel studs has been provided in the table "Notes." More often, it is the thermal properties of the facing materials, rather than the specific gage of the steel, that will determine the degree of fire resistance. This is particularly true for nonbearing wall assemblies.

TABLE 1.2.4
METAL FRAME WALLS
8″ TO LESS THAN 10″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-9-Me-1	$9^1/_{16}$″	On one side of $^1/_2$″ wood fiberboard sheathing next to studs, $^3/_4$″ air space formed with $^3/_4$″ × $1^5/_8$″ wood strips placed over the fiberboard and secured to the studs, paper-backed wire lath nailed to strips $3^3/_4$″ brick veneer held in place by filling a $^3/_4$″ space between the brick and paper-backed lath with mortar; inside facing of $^3/_4$″ neat gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to $^5/_{16}$″ plywood strips secured to edges of steel studs; rated as combustible because of the sheathing; see Notes 1 and 2; plaster exposed.	See Note 2	1 hr 30 min		1		1	$1^1/_2$
W-9-Me-2	$9^1/_{16}$″	Same as above with brick exposed.	See Note 2	4 hrs		1		1	4
W-8-Me-3	$8^1/_2$″	On one side of paper-backed wire lath attached to studs and $3^3/_4$″ brick veneer held in place by filling a 1″ space between the brick and lath with mortar; inside facing of 1″ paper-enclosed mineral wool blanket weighing 0.6 lb./ft^2 attached to studs, metal lath or paper-backed wire lath laid over the blanket and attached to the studs, $^3/_4$″ sanded gypsum plaster 1:2 for the scratch coat and 1:3 for the brown coat; see Notes 1 and 2; plaster face exposed.	See Note 2	4 hrs		1		1	4
W-8-Me-4	$8^1/_2$″	Same as above with brick exposed.	See Note 2	5 hrs		1		1	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Lightweight steel studs ≥ 3 inches in depth. Stud spacing dependent on loading, but in any case, the spacing is to be such that adequate rigidity is provided to the metal-lath plaster base.
2. Load is such that stress developed in studs is ≤ 5120 psi calculated from the net area of the stud.

General Note:

The construction details of the wall assemblies are as complete as the source documentation will permit. Data on the method of attachment of facings and the gage of steel studs was provided when known. The cross-sectional area of the steel stud can be computed, thereby permitting a reasoned estimate of actual loading conditions. For load-bearing assemblies, the maximum allowable stress for the steel studs has been provided in the table "Notes." More often, it is the thermal properties of the facing materials, rather than the specific gage of the steel, that will determine the degree of fire resistance. This is particularly true for nonbearing wall assemblies.

TABLE 1.3.1
WOOD FRAME WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-3-W-1	$3^3/_4$″	Solid wall: $2^1/_4$″ wood-wool slab core; $^3/_4$″ gypsum plaster each side.	N/A	2 hrs			7	1, 6	2
W-3-W-2	$3^7/_8$″	2 × 4 stud wall; $^3/_{16}$″ thick cement asbestos board on both sides of wall.	360 psi net area	10 min		1		2–5	$^1/_6$
W-3-W-3	$3^7/_8$″	Same as W-3-W-2 but stud cavities filled with 1 lb./ft^2 mineral wool batts.	360 psi net area	40 min		1		2–5	$^2/_3$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

Notes:

1. Achieved "Grade C" fire resistance (British).
2. Nominal 2 × 4 wood studs of No. 1 common or better lumber set edgewise, 2 × 4 plates at top and bottom and blocking at mid-height of wall.
3. All horizontal joints in facing material backed by 2 × 4 blocking in wall.
4. Load: 360 psi of net stud cross-sectional area.
5. facings secured with 6d casing nails. Nail holes predrilled and 0.02 inch to 0.03 inch smaller than nail diameter.
6. The wood-wool core is a pressed excelsior slab which possesses insulating properties similar to cellulosic insulation.

FIGURE 1.3.2
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

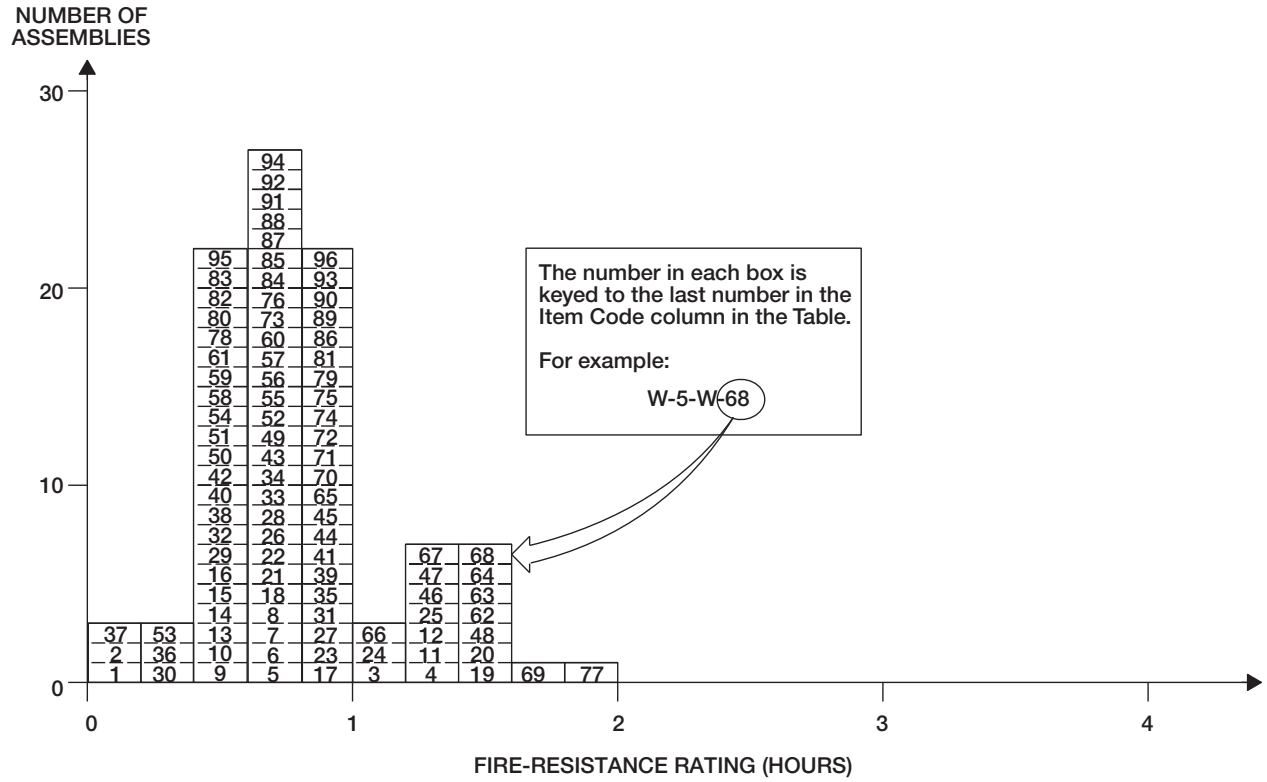


TABLE 1.3.2
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-W-1	4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB; no insulation; design A.	35 min	10 min			4	1–10	$^{1}/_{6}$
W-4-W-2	$4^{1}/_{8}$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB; no insulation; design A.	38 min	9 min			4	1–10	$^{1}/_{6}$
W-4-W-3	$4^{3}/_{4}$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB and $^{3}/_{8}$″ gypsum board face (both sides); design B.	62 min	64 min			4	1–10	1
W-5-W-4	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB and $^{1}/_{2}$″ gypsum board (both sides); design B.	79 min	Greater than 90 min			4	1–10	1
W-4-W-5	$4^{3}/_{4}$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB and $^{3}/_{8}$″ gypsum board (both sides); design B.	45 min	45 min			4	1–12	—
W-5-W-6	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB and $^{1}/_{2}$″ gypsum board face (both sides); design B.	45 min	45 min			4	1–10, 12, 13	—
W-4-W-7	4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB face; $3^{1}/_{2}$″ mineral wool insulation; design C.	40 min	42 min			4	1–10	$^{2}/_{3}$
W-4-W-8	4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB face; $3^{1}/_{2}$″ mineral wool insulation; design C.	46 min	46 min			4	1–10, 43	$^{2}/_{3}$
W-4-W-9	4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB face; $3^{1}/_{2}$″ mineral wool insulation; design C.	30 min	30 min			4	1–10, 12, 14	—
W-4-W-10	$4^{1}/_{8}$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{16}$″ CAB face; $3^{1}/_{2}$″ mineral wool insulation; design C.	—	30 min			4	1–8, 12, 14	—

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.3.2—continued
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-W-11	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 3/16″ CAB face; 3/8″ gypsum strips over studs; 5 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design D.	79 min	79 min			4	1–10	1
W-4-W-12	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 3/16″ CAB face; 3/8″ gypsum strips at stud edges; 7 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design D.	82 min	82 min			4	1–10	1
W-4-W-13	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 3/16″ CAB face; 3/8″ gypsum board strips over studs; 5 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design D.	30 min	30 min			4	1–12	—
W-4-W-14	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 3/16″ CAB face; 3/8″ gypsum board strips over studs; 7″ mineral wool insulation; design D.	30 min	30 min			4	1–12	—
W-5-W-15	5 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: CAB shingles over 1″ × 6″; unexposed face: 1/8″ CAB sheet; 7/16″ fiberboard (wood); design E.	34 min	—			4	1–10	1/2
W-5-W-16	5 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: 1/8″ CAB sheet; 7/16″ fiberboard; unexposed face: CAB shingles over 1″ × 6″; design E.	32 min	33 min			4	1–10	1/2
W-5-W-17	5 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: CAB shingles over 1″ × 6″; unexposed face: 1/8″ CAB sheet; gypsum board at stud edges; 3 1/2″ mineral wood insulation; design F.	51 min	—			4	1–10	3/4
W-5-W-18	5 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: 1/8″ CAB sheet; gypsum board at stud edges; unexposed face: CAB shingles over 1″ × 6″; 3 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design F.	42 min	—			4	1–10	2/3
W-5-W-19	5 5/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: CAB shingles over 1″ × 6″; unexposed face: 1/8″ CAB sheet; gypsum board at stud edges; 5 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design G.	74 min	85 min			4	1–10	1
W-5-W-20	5 5/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: 1/8″ CAB sheet; gypsum board at 3/16″ stud edges; 7/16″ fiberboard; unexposed face: CAB shingles over 1″ × 6″; 5 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design G.	79 min	85 min			4	1–10	1 1/4
W-5-W-21	5 5/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: CAB shingles 1″ × 6″ sheathing; unexposed face: CAB sheet; gypsum board at stud edges; 5 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design G.	38 min	38 min			4	1–10, 12, 14	—
W-5-W-22	5 5/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exposed face: CAB sheet; gypsum board at stud edges; unexposed face: CAB shingles 1″ × 6″ sheathing; 5 1/2″ mineral wool insulation; design G.	38 min	38 min			4	1–12	—
W-6-W-23	6″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 16″ o.c.; 1/2″ gypsum board each side; 1/2″ gypsum plaster each side.	N/A	60 min			7	15	1
W-6-W-24	6″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 16″ o.c.; 1/2″ gypsum board each side; 1/2″ gypsum plaster each side.	N/A	68 min			7	16	1
W-6-W-25	6 7/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 18″ o.c.; 3/4″ gypsum plank each side; 3/16″ gypsum plaster each side.	N/A	80 min			7	15	1 1/3
W-5-W-26	5 1/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 16″ o.c.; 3/8″ gypsum board each side; 3/16″ gypsum plaster each side.	N/A	37 min			7	15	1/2
W-5-W-27	5 3/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 16″ o.c.; 3/8″ gypsum lath each side; 1/2″ gypsum plaster each side.	N/A	52 min			7	15	3/4
W-5-W-28	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 16″ o.c.; 1/2″ gypsum board each side.	N/A	37 min			7	16	1/2

TABLE 1.3.2—continued
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-5-W-29	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ fiberboard both sides 14% M.C. with F.R. paint at 35 gm/ft^2.	N/A	28 min			7	15	1/3
W-4-W-30	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; fire side: 1/2″ (wood) fiberboard; back side: 1/4″ CAB; 16″ o.c.	N/A	17 min			7	15, 16	1/4
W-5-W-31	5 1/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 16″ o.c.; 1/2″ fiberboard insulation with 1/32″ asbestos (both sides of each board).	N/A	50 min			7	16	3/4
W-4-W-32	4 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 3/8″ thick gypsum wallboard on both faces; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	25 min		1		17, 18, 23	1/3
W-4-W-33	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick gypsum wallboard on both faces.	See Note 17	40 min		1		17, 23	1/3
W-4-W-34	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick gypsum wallboard on both faces; insulated cavities.	See Note 17	45 min		1		17, 18, 23	3/4
W-4-W-35	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick gypsum wallboard on both faces; insulated cavities.	N/A	1 hr		1		17, 18, 24	1
W-4-W-36	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick, 1.1 lbs/ft^2 wood fiberboard sheathing on both faces.	See Note 23	15 min		1		17, 23	1/4
W-4-W-37	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick, 0.7 lb./ft^2 wood fiberboard sheathing on both faces.	See Note 23	10 min		1		17, 23	1/6
W-4-W-38	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick, flameproofed 1.6 lbs/ft^2 wood fiberboard sheathing on both faces.	See Note 23	30 min		1		17, 23	1/2
W-4-W-39	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick gypsum wallboard on both faces; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 18, 23	1
W-4-W-40	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick, 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on wood lath on both faces.	See Note 23	30 min		1		17, 21, 23	1/2
W-4-W-41	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick, 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on wood lath on both faces; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 18, 21, 23	1
W-4-W-42	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″, 1:5; 1:7.5 lime plaster on wood lath on both wall faces.	See Note 23	30 min		1		17, 21, 23	1/2
W-4-W-43	4 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick 1:5; 1:7.5 lime plaster on wood lath on both faces; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	45 min		1		17, 18, 21, 23	3/4
W-4-W-44	4 5/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 3/16″ thick cement-asbestos over 3/8″ thick gypsum board on both faces.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		23, 25, 26, 27	1
W-4-W-45	4 5/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; studs faced with 4″ wide strips of 3/8″ thick gypsum board; 3/16″ thick gypsum cement-asbestos board on both faces; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		23, 25, 27, 28	1
W-4-W-46	4 5/8″	Same as W-4-W-45 but non-load-bearing.	N/A	1 hr 15 min		1		24, 28	1 1/4
W-4-W-47	4 7/8″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 3/16″ thick cement-asbestos board over 1/2″ thick gypsum sheathing on both faces.	See Note 23	1 hr 15 min		1		23, 25, 26, 27	1 1/4
W-4-W-48	4 7/8″	Same as W-4-W-47 but non-load-bearing.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		24, 27	1 1/2
W-5-W-49	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exterior face: 3/4″ wood sheathing; asbestos felt 14 lbs/100 ft^2 and 5/32″ cement-asbestos shingles; interior face: 4″ wide strips of 3/8″ gypsum board over studs; wall faced with 3/16″ thick cement-asbestos board.	See Note 23	40 min		1		18, 23, 25, 26, 29	2/3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.3.2—continued
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-5-W-50	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; exterior face: as per W-5-W-49; interior face: $^{9}/_{16}$″ composite board consisting of $^{7}/_{16}$″ thick wood fiberboard faced with $^{1}/_{8}$″ thick cement-asbestos board; exterior side exposed to fire.	See Note 23	30 min		1		23, 25, 26, 30	$^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-51	5″	Same as W-5-W-50 but interior side exposed to fire.	See Note 23	30 min		1		23, 25, 26	$^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-52	5″	Same as W-5-W-49 but exterior side exposed to fire.	See Note 23	45 min		1		18, 23, 25, 26	$^{3}/_{4}$
W-5-W-53	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick T&G wood boards on both sides.	See Note 23	20 min		1		17, 23	$^{1}/_{3}$
W-5-W-54	5″	Same as W-5-W-53 but with insulated cavities.	See Note 23	35 min		1		17, 18, 23	$^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-55	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick T&G wood boards on both sides with 30 lbs/100 ft^2 asbestos; paper, between studs and boards.	See Note 23	45 min		1		17, 23	$^{3}/_{4}$
W-5-W-56	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{1}/_{2}$″ thick, 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	45 min		1		17, 21, 23	$^{3}/_{4}$
W-5-W-57	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 2:1:8; 2:1:12 lime and Keene's cement plaster over metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	45 min		1		17, 21, 23	$^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-58	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 2:1:8; 2:1:10 lime Portland cement plaster over metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	30 min		1		17, 21, 23	$^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-59	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:5; 1:7.5 lime plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	30 min		1		17, 21, 23	$^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-60	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:$^{1}/_{30}$:2; 1:$^{1}/_{30}$:3 Portland cement, asbestos fiber plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	45 min		1		17, 21, 23	$^{3}/_{4}$
W-5-W-61	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:2; 1:3 Portland cement plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	30 min		1		17, 21, 23	$^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-62	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick neat gypsum plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	1 hr 30 min		1		17, 22, 24	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-63	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick neat gypsum plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	1 hr 30 min		1		17, 21, 23	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-64	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	1 hr 30 min		1		17, 18, 21, 23	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-65	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; same as W-5-W-64 but cavities not insulated.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 21, 23	1
W-5-W-66	5″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	1 hr 15 min		1		17, 18, 21, 23	$1^{1}/_{4}$
W-5-W-67	$5^{1}/_{16}$″	Same as W-5-W-49 except cavity insulation of 1.75 lbs/ft^2 mineral wool bats; rating applies when either wall side exposed to fire.	See Note 23	1 hr 15 min		1		23, 25, 26	$1^{1}/_{4}$
W-5-W-68	$5^{1}/_{4}$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall, $^{7}/_{8}$″ thick 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on metal lath on both sides of wall; insulated cavities.	See Note 23	1 hr 30 min		1		17, 18, 21, 23	$1^{1}/_{2}$
W-5-W-69	$5^{1}/_{4}$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^{7}/_{8}$″ thick neat gypsum plaster applied on metal lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	1 hr 45 min		1		17, 22, 24	$1^{3}/_{4}$

TABLE 1.3.2—continued
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-5-W-70	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick neat gypsum plaster on 3/8″ plain gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 22, 23	1
W-5-W-71	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 3/8″ thick plain gypsum lath with 1 3/4″ × 1 3/4″ metal lath pads nailed 8″ o.c. vertically and 16″ o.c. horizontally on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 21, 23	1
W-5-W-72	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 3/8″ perforated gypsum lath, one 3/4″ diameter hole or larger per 16″ square of lath surface, on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 21, 23	1
W-5-W-73	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 3/8″ gypsum lath (plain, indented or perforated) on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	45 min		1		17, 21, 23	3/4
W-5-W-74	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 7/8″ thick of 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster over metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 21, 23	1
W-5-W-75	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 7/8″ thick of 1:1/30:2; 1:1/30:3 Portland cement, asbestos plaster applied over metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	1 hr		1		17, 21, 23	1
W-5-W-76	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 7/8″ thick of 1:2; 1:3 Portland cement plaster over metal lath on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	45 min		1		17, 21, 23	3/4
W-5-W-77	5 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1″ thick neat gypsum plaster over metal lath on both sides of wall; non-load-bearing.	N/A	2 hrs		1		17, 22, 24	2
W-5-W-78	5 1/2″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 1/2″ thick, 0.7 lb./ft^2 wood fiberboard on both sides of wall.	See Note 23	35 min		1		17, 21, 23	1/2
W-4-W-79	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over wood lath on both sides of wall; mineral wool insulation.	N/A	1 hr			43	21, 31, 35, 38	1
W-4-W-80	4 3/4″	Same as W-4-W-79 but uninsulated.	N/A	35 min			43	21, 31, 35	1/2
W-4-W-81	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 3:1:8; 3:1:12 lime, Keene's cement, sand plaster over wood lath on both sides of wall; mineral wool insulation.	N/A	1 hr			43	21, 31, 35, 40	1
W-4-W-82	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 1:6 1/4; 1:6 1/4 lime Keene's cement plaster over wood lath on both sides of wall; mineral wool insulation.	N/A	30 min			43	21, 31, 35, 40	1/2
W-4-W-83	4 3/4″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; 1/2″ thick of 1:5; 1:7.5 lime plaster over wood lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	30 min			43	21, 31, 35	1/2
W-5-W-84	5 1/8″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; 11/16″ thick of 1:5; 1:7.5 lime plaster over wood lath on both sides of wall; mineral wool insulation.	N/A	45 min			43	21, 31, 35, 39	3/4
W-5-W-85	5 1/4″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; 3/4″thick of 1:5; 1:7 lime plaster over wood lath on both sides of wall; mineral wool insulation.	N/A	40 min			43	21, 31, 35, 40	2/3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.3.2—continued
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-5-W-86	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 2:1:12 lime, Keene's cement and sand scratch coat; $^1/_2$″ thick 2:1:18 lime, Keene's cement and sand brown coat over wood lath on both sides of wall; mineral wool insulation.	N/A	1 hr			43	21, 31, 35, 40	1
W-5-W-87	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^3/_8$″ plaster board on both sides of wall.	N/A	45 min			43	21, 31	$^3/_4$
W-5-W-88	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^3/_8$″ gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	45 min			43	21, 31	$^3/_4$
W-5-W-89	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^3/_8$″ gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	1 hr			43	21, 31, 33	1
W-5-W-90	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4 ″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick neat plaster over $^3/_8$″ thick gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	1 hr			43	21, 22, 31	1
W-5-W-91	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^3/_8$″ thick indented gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	45 min			43	21, 31	$^3/_4$
W-5-W-92	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^3/_8$″ thick perforated gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	45 min			43	21, 31, 34	$^3/_4$
W-5-W-93	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^3/_8$″ perforated gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	1 hr			43	21, 31	1
W-5-W-94	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^3/_8$″ thick perforated gypsum lath on both sides of wall.	N/A	45 min			43	21, 31, 34	$^3/_4$
W-5-W-95	$5^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^1/_2$″ thick wood fiber-board plaster base on both sides of wall.	N/A	35 min			43	21, 31, 36	$^1/_2$
W-5-W-96	$5^3/_4$″	2″ × 4″ wood stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster over $^7/_8$″ thick flame-proofed wood fiberboard on both sides of wall.	N/A	1 hr			43	21, 31, 37	1

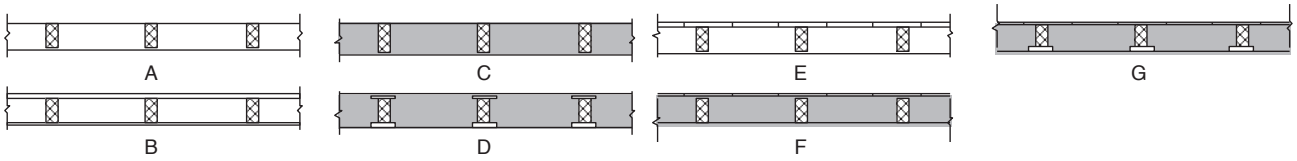
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. All specimens 8 feet or 8 feet 8 inches by 10 feet 4 inches, i.e. one-half of furnace size. See Note 42 for design cross section.
2. Specimens tested in tandem (two per exposure).
3. Test per ASA No. A2-1934, except where unloaded. Also, panels were of "half" size of furnace opening. Time value signifies a thermal failure time.
4. Two-inch by 4-inch studs: 16 inches on center; where 10 feet 4 inches, blocking at 2-foot 4-inch height.
5. Facing 4 feet by 8 feet, cement-asbestos board sheets, $^3/_{16}$ inch thick.
6. Sheathing (diagonal): $^{25}/_{32}$ inch by $5^1/_2$ inch, 1 inch by 6 inches pine.
7. Facing shingles: 24 inches by 12 inches by $^5/_{32}$ inch where used.
8. Asbestos felt: asphalt set between sheathing and shingles.
9. Load: 30,500 pounds or 360 psi/stud where load was tested.
10. Walls were tested beyond achievement of first test end point. A load-bearing time in excess of performance time indicates that, although thermal criteria were exceeded, load-bearing ability continued.
11. Wall was rated for one-hour combustible use in original source.
12. Hose steam test specimen. See table entry of similar design for recommended rating.
13. Rated one and one-fourth hour load bearing. Rated one and one-half hour non-load-bearing.
14. Failed hose stream.
15. Test terminated due to flame penetration.
16. Test terminated—local back face temperature rise.
17. Nominal 2-inch by 4-inch wood studs of No. 1 common or better lumber set edgewise. Two-inch by four-inch plates at top and bottom and blocking at mid-height of wall.
18. Cavity insulation consists of rock wool bats 1.0 lb./ft^2 of filled cavity area.
19. Cavity insulation consists of glass wool bats 0.6 lb./ft^2 of filled cavity area.
20. Cavity insulation consists of blown-in rock wool 2.0 lbs/ft^2 of filled cavity area

TABLE 1.3.2—continued
WOOD FRAME WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

21. Mix proportions for plastered walls as follows: first ratio indicates scratch coat mix, weight of dry plaster to dry sand; second ratio indicates brown coat mix.
22. "Neat" plaster is taken to mean unsanded wood-fiber gypsum plaster.
23. Load: 360 psi of net stud cross-sectional area.
24. Rated as non-load-bearing.
25. Nominal 2-inch by 4-inch studs per Note 17, spaced at 16 inches on center.
26. Horizontal joints in facing material supported by 2-inch by 4-inch blocking within wall.
27. facings secured with 6d casing nails. Nail holes predrilled and were 0.02 to 0.03 inch smaller than nail diameter.
28. Cavity insulation consists of mineral wool bats weighing 2 lbs/ft^2 of filled cavity area.
29. Interior wall face exposed to fire.
30. Exterior wall faced exposed to fire.
31. Nominal 2-inch by 4-inch studs of yellow pine or Douglas-fir spaced 16 inches on center in a single row.
32. Studs as in Note 31 except double row, with studs in rows staggered.
33. Six roofing nails with metal-lath pads around heads to each 16-inch by 48-inch lath.
34. Areas of holes less than $2^3/_4$ percent of area of lath.
35. Wood laths were nailed with either 3d or 4d nails, one nail to each bearing, and the end joining broken every seventh course.
36. One-half-inch thick fiberboard plaster base nailed with 3d or 4d common wire nails spaced 4 to 6 inches on center.
37. Seven-eighths-inch thick fiberboard plaster base nailed with 5d common wire nails spaced 4 to 6 inches on center.
38. Mineral wood bats 1.05 to 1.25 lbs/ft^2 with waterproofed-paper backing.
39. Blown-in mineral wool insulation, 2.2 lbs/ft^2.
40. Mineral wool bats, 1.4 lbs/ft^2 with waterproofed-paper backing.
41. Mineral wood bats, 0.9 lb./ft^2.
42. See wall design diagram below:



43. Duplicate specimen of W-4-W-7, tested simultaneously with W-4-W-7 in 18-foot test furnace.

TABLE 1.3.3
WOOD FRAME WALLS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-6-W-1	$6^1/_4$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick, 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on $^7/_8$″ flameproofed wood fiberboard weighing 2.8 lbs/ft^2 on both sides of wall.	See Note 3	1 hr		1		1–3	1
W-6-W-2	$6^1/_2$″	2″ × 4″ stud wall; $^1/_2$″ thick, 1:3; 1:3 gypsum plaster on 1″ thick magnesium oxysulfate wood fiberboard on both sides of wall.	See Note 3	45 min		1		1–3	$^3/_4$
W-7-W-3	$7^1/_4$″	Double row of 2″ × 4″ studs, $^1/_2$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster applied over $^3/_8$″ thick perforated gypsum lath on both sides of wall; mineral wool insulation.	N/A	1 hr			43	2, 4, 5	1
W-7-W-4	$7^1/_2$″	Double row of 2″ × 4″ studs, $^5/_8$″ thick of 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster applied over $^3/_8$″ thick perforated gypsum lath over laid with 2″ × 2″, 16 gage wire fabric, on both sides of wall.	N/A	1 hr 15 min			43	2, 4	$1^1/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. Nominal 2-inch by 4-inch wood studs of No. 1 common or better lumber set edgewise. Two-inch by 4-inch plates at top and bottom and blocking at mid height of wall.
2. Mix proportions for plastered walls as follows: first ratio indicates scratch coat mix, weight of dry plaster to dry sand; second ratio indicates brown coat mix.
3. Load: 360 psi of net stud cross-sectional area.
4. Nominal 2-inch by 4-inch studs of yellow pine of Douglas-fir spaced 16 inches in a double row, with studs in rows staggered.
5. Mineral wool bats, 0.19 lb./ft^2.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.4.1
MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS WALLS
0″ TO LESS THAN 4″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-3-Mi-1	$3\frac{7}{8}$″	Glass brick wall: (bricks $5\frac{3}{4}$″ × $5\frac{3}{4}$″ × $3\frac{7}{8}$″) $\frac{1}{4}$″ mortar bed, cement/lime/sand; mounted in brick (9″) wall with mastic and $\frac{1}{2}$″ asbestos rope.	N/A	1 hr			7	1, 2	1
W-3-Mi-2	3″	Core: 2″ magnesium oxysulfate wood-fiber blocks laid in Portland cement-lime mortar; facings: on both sides; see Note 3.	N/A	1 hr		1		3	1
W-3-Mi-3	$3\frac{7}{8}$″	Core: 8″ × $4\frac{7}{8}$″ glass blocks $3\frac{7}{8}$″ thick weighing 4 lbs each laid in Portland cement-lime mortar; horizontal mortar joints reinforced with metal lath.	N/A	15 min		1			$\frac{1}{4}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN.

Notes:

1. No failure reached at 1 hour.
2. These glass blocks are assumed to be solid based on other test data available for similar but hollow units which show significantly reduced fire endurance.
3. Minimum of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster required to develop this rating.

TABLE 1.4.2
MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS WALLS
4″ TO LESS THAN 6″ THICK

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
W-4-Mi-1	4″	Core: 3″ magnesium oxysulfate wood-fiber blocks laid in Portland cement mortar; facings: both sides; see Note 1.	N/A	2 hrs		1			2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Notes:

1. One-half inch sanded gypsum plaster. Voids in hollow blocks to be not more than 30 percent.

FIGURE 1.5.1
FINISH RATINGS—INORGANIC MATERIALS

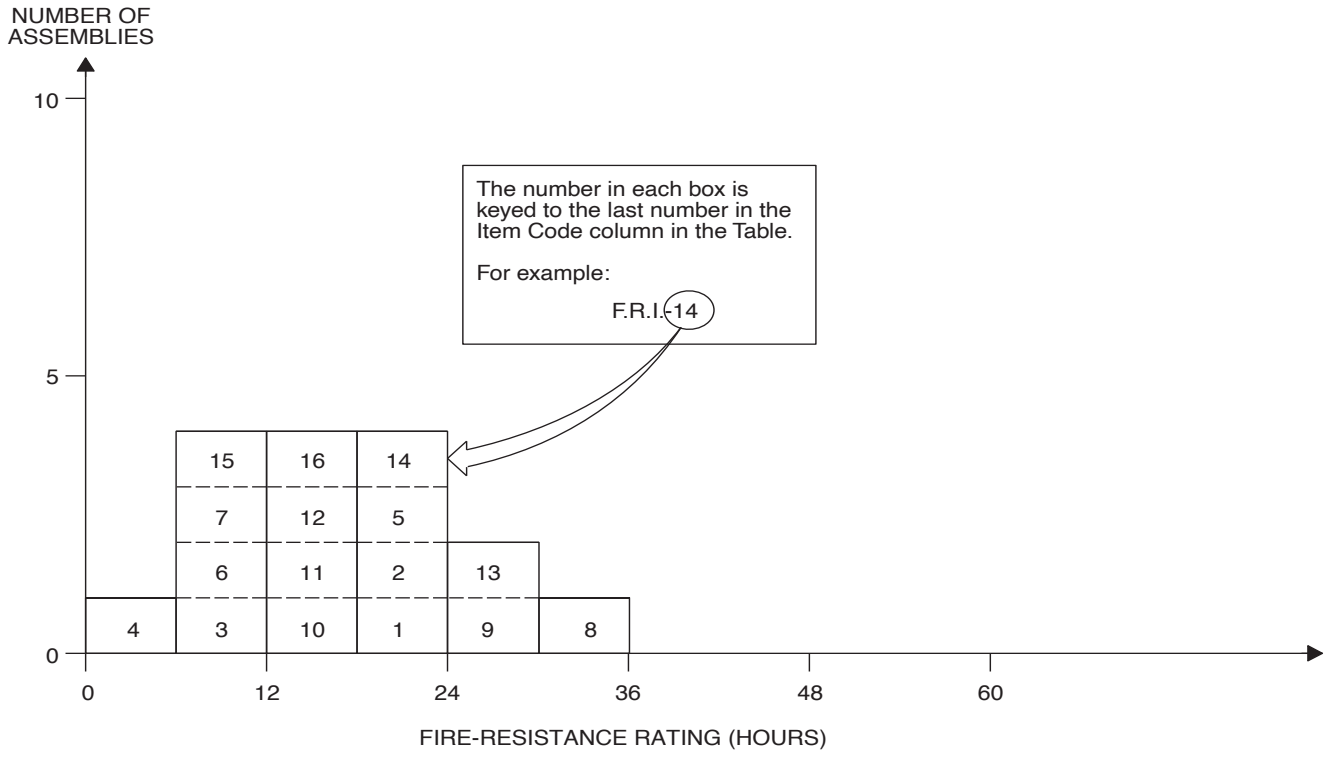


TABLE 1.5.1
FINISH RATINGS—INORGANIC MATERIALS

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE	REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC F.R. (MIN)
			FINISH RATING	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
FR-I-1	$^{9}/_{16}$″	$^{3}/_{8}$″ gypsum wallboard faced with $^{3}/_{16}$″ cement-asbestos board.	20 minutes		1		1, 2	15
FR-I-2	$^{11}/_{16}$″	$^{1}/_{2}$″ gypsum sheathing faced with $^{3}/_{16}$″ cement-asbestos board.	20 minutes		1		1, 2	20
FR-I-3	$^{3}/_{16}$″	$^{3}/_{16}$″ cement-asbestos board over uninsulated cavity.	10 minutes		1		1, 2	5
FR-I-4	$^{3}/_{16}$″	$^{3}/_{16}$″ cement-asbestos board over insulated cavities.	5 minutes		1		1, 2	5
FR-I-5	$^{3}/_{4}$″	$^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster over paper-backed metal lath.	20 minutes		1		1–3	20
FR-I-6	$^{3}/_{4}$″	$^{3}/_{4}$″ thick Portland cement plaster on metal lath.	10 minutes		1		1, 2	10
FR-I-7	$^{3}/_{4}$″	$^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:5; 1:7.5 lime plaster on metal lath.	10 minutes		1		1, 2	10
FR-I-8	1″	1″ thick neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	35 minutes		1		1, 2, 4	35
FR-I-9	$^{3}/_{4}$″	$^{3}/_{4}$″ thick neat gypsum plaster on metal lath.	30 minutes		1		1, 2, 4	30
FR-I-10	$^{3}/_{4}$″	$^{3}/_{4}$″ thick 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on metal lath.	15 minutes		1		1–3	15
FR-I-11	$^{1}/_{2}$″	Same as FR-1-7, except $^{1}/_{2}$″ thick on wood lath.	15 minutes		1		1–3	15

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 1.5.1—continued
FINISH RATINGS—INORGANIC MATERIALS

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE	REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC F.R. (MIN)
			LOAD	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
FR-I-12	1/2″	1/2″ thick 1:2; 1:3 gypsum plaster on wood lath.	15 minutes		1		1–3	15
FR-I-13	7/8″	1/2″ thick 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 3/8″ perforated gypsum lath.	30 minutes		1		1–3	30
FR-I-14	7/8″	1/2″ thick 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster on 3/8″ thick plain or indented gypsum plaster.	20 minutes		1		1–3	20
FR-I-15	3/8″	3/8″ gypsum wallboard.	10 minutes		1		1, 2	10
FR-I-16	1/2″	1/2″ gypsum wallboard.	15 minutes		1		1, 2	15

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

Notes:

1. The finish rating is the time required to obtain an average temperature rise of 250°F, or a single point rise of 325°F, at the interface between the material being rated and the substrate being protected.
2. Tested in accordance with the *Standard Specifications for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials*, ASA No. A2-1932.
3. Mix proportions for plasters as follows: first ratio, dry weight of plaster to dry weight of sand for scratch coat; second ratio, plaster to sand for brown coat.
4. Neat plaster means unsanded wood-fiber gypsum plaster.

TABLE 1.5.2
FINISH RATINGS—ORGANIC MATERIALS

ITEM CODE	THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE	REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. F.R. (min)
			FINISH RATING	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
FR-O-1	9/16″	7/16″ wood fiberboard faced with 1/8″ cement-asbestos board.	15 minutes		1		1, 2	15
FR-O-2	29/32″	3/4″ wood sheathing, asbestos felt weighing 14 lbs/100 ft^2 and 5/32″ cement-asbestos shingles.	20 minutes		1		1, 2	20
FR-O-3	1 1/2″	1″ thick magnesium oxysulfate wood fiberboard faced with 1:3; 1:3 gypsum plaster, 1/2″ thick.	20 minutes		1		1–3	20
FR-O-4	1/2″	1/2″ thick wood fiberboard.	5 minutes		1		1, 2	5
FR-O-5	1/2″	1/2″ thick flameproofed wood fiberboard.	10 minutes		1		1, 2	10
FR-O-6	1″	1/2″ thick wood fiberboard faced with 1/2″ thick 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster.	15 minutes		1		1–3	15
FR-O-7	1 3/8″	7/8″ thick flameproofed wood fiberboard faced with 1/2″ thick 1:2; 1:2 gypsum plaster.	30 minutes		1		1–3	30
FR-O-8	1 1/4″	1 1/4″ thick plywood.	30 minutes			35		30

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

Notes:

1. The finish rating is the time required to obtain an average temperature rise of 250°F, or a single point rise of 325°F, at the interface between the material being rated and he substrate being protected.
2. Tested in accordance with the *Standard Specifications for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials*, ASA No. A2-1932.
3. Plaster ratios as follows: first ratio is for scratch coat, weight of dry plaster to weight of dry sand; second ratio is for the brown coat.

General Note:

The finish rating of thinner materials, particularly thinner woods, have not been listed because the possible effects of shrinkage, warpage and aging cannot be predicted.

SECTION II—COLUMNS

TABLE 2.1.1
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 0″ TO LESS THAN 6″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-6-RC-1	6″	6″ × 6″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4030 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{7}/_{8}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	34.7 tons	1 hr 2 min			7	1, 2	1
C-6-RC-2	6″	6″ × 6″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4200 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	21 tons	1 hr 9 min			7	1, 2	1

Notes:
1. Collapse.
2. British test.

FIGURE 2.1.2
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

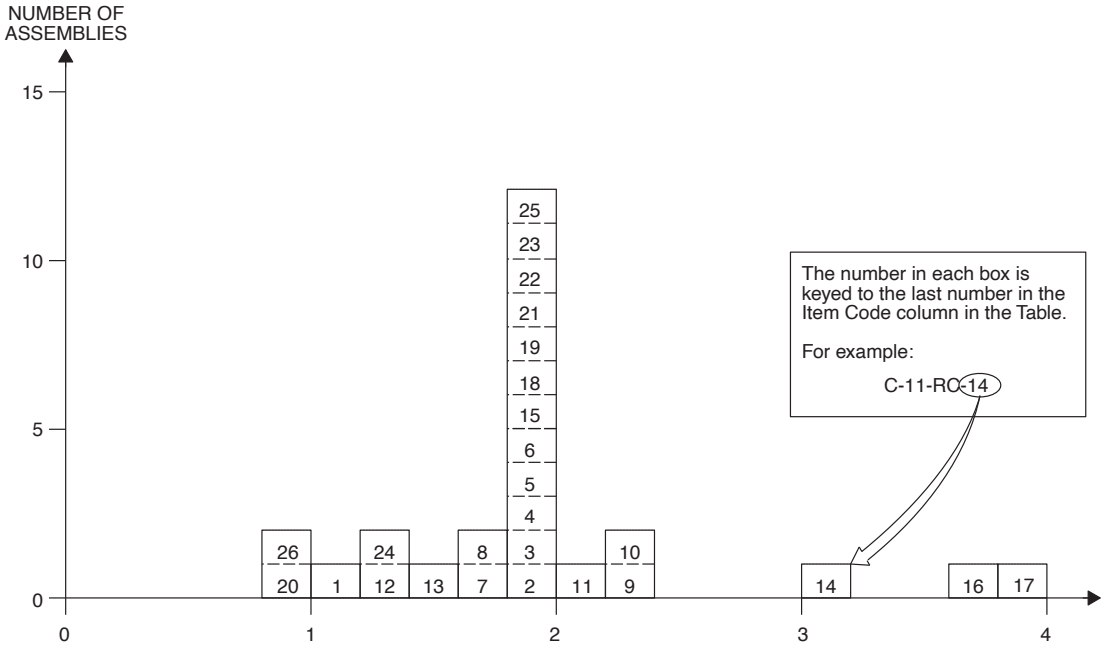


TABLE 2.1.2
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
C-10-RC-1	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (4260 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{4}$″.	92.2 tons	1 hr 2 min			7	1	1
C-10-RC-2	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (2325 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	46.7 tons	1 hr 52 min			7	1	$1^{3}/_{4}$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.1.2—continued
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
C-10-RC-3	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (5370 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	46.5 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 3, 11	2
C-10-RC-4	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (5206 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	46.5 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 7	2
C-10-RC-5	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (5674 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	46.7 tons	2 hrs			7	1	2
C-10-RC-6	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (5150 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	66 tons	1 hr 43 min			7	1	$1^{3}/_{4}$
C-10-RC-7	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (5580 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{8}$″.	62.5 tons	1 hr 38 min			7	1	$1^{1}/_{2}$
C-10-RC-8	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (4080 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{8}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{8}$″.	72.8 tons	1 hr 48 min			7	1	$1^{3}/_{4}$
C-10-RC-9	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (2510 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	51 tons	2 hrs 16 min			7	1	$2^{1}/_{4}$
C-10-RC-10	10″	10″ square columns; aggregate concrete (2170 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	45 tons	2 hrs 14 min			7	12	$2^{1}/_{4}$
C-10-RC-11	10″	10″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4015 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{1}/_{2}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	46.5 tons	2 hrs 6 min			7	1	2
C-11-RC-12	11″	11″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4150 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at $7^{1}/_{2}$″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{2}$″.	61 tons	1 hr 23 min			7	1	$1^{1}/_{4}$
C-11-RC-13	11″	11″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4380 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at $7^{1}/_{2}$″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{2}$″.	61 tons	1 hr 26 min			7	1	$1^{1}/_{4}$
C-11-RC-14	11″	11″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4140 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at $7^{1}/_{2}$″ pitch; steel mesh around reinforcement; cover: $1^{1}/_{2}$″.	61 tons	3 hrs 9 min			7	1	3
C-11-RC-15	11″	11″ square columns; slag aggregate concrete (3690 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at $7^{1}/_{2}$″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{2}$″.	91 tons	2 hrs			7	2–5	2
C-11-RC-16	11″	11″ square columns; limestone aggregate concrete (5230 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at $7^{1}/_{2}$″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{2}$″.	91.5 tons	3 hrs 41 min			7	1	$3^{1}/_{2}$
C-11-RC-17	11″	11″ square columns; limestone aggregate concrete (5530 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at $7^{1}/_{2}$″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{2}$″.	91.5 tons	3 hrs 47 min			7	1	$3^{1}/_{2}$

TABLE 2.1.2—continued
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
C-11-RC-18	11″	11″ square columns; limestone aggregate concrete (5280 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^1/_4$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at $7^1/_2$″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	91.5 tons	2 hrs			7	2–4, 6	2
C-11-RC-19	11″	11″ square columns; limestone aggregate concrete (4180 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 7″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	71.4 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 7	2
C-11-RC-20	11″	11″ square columns; gravel concrete (4530 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 7″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″ with $^1/_2$″ plaster.	58.8 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 3, 9	2
C-11-RC-21	11″	11″ square columns; gravel concrete (3520 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 7″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	Variable	1 hr 24 min			7	1, 8	$1^1/_4$
C-11-RC-22	11″	11″ square columns; aggregate concrete (3710 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 7″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	58.8 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 3, 10	2
C-11-RC-23	11″	11″ square columns; aggregate concrete (3190 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 7″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	58.8 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 3, 10	2
C-11-RC-24	11″	11″ square columns; aggregate concrete (4860 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 7″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	86.1 tons	1 hr 20 min			7	1	$1^1/_3$
C-11-RC-25	11″	11″ square columns; aggregate concrete (4850 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 7″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	58.8 tons	1 hr 59 min			7	1	$1^3/_4$
C-11-RC-26	11″	11″ square columns; aggregate concrete (3834 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ ties at $4^1/_2$″ pitch; cover: $1^1/_2$″.	71.4 tons	53 min			7	1	$^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.
2. Passed 2-hour fire exposure.
3. Passed hose stream test.
4. Reloaded effectively after 48 hours but collapsed at load in excess of original test load.
5. Failing load was 150 tons.
6. Failing load was 112 tons.
7. Failed during hose stream test.
8. Range of load 58.8 tons (initial) to 92 tons (92 minutes) to 60 tons (80 minutes).
9. Collapsed at 44 tons in reload after 96 hours.
10. Withstood reload after 72 hours.
11. Collapsed on reload after 48 hours.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.1.3
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-12-RC-1	12″	12″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (2647 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^{5}/_{8}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{5}/_{16}$″ ties at $4^{1}/_{2}$″ pitch; cover: 2″.	78.2 tons	38 min		1	7	1	$^{1}/_{2}$
C-12-RC-2	12″	Reinforced columns with $1^{1}/_{2}$″ concrete outside of reinforced steel; gross diameter or side of column: 12″; Group I, Column A.	—	6 hrs		1		2, 3	6
C-12-RC-3	12″	Description as per C-12-RC-2; Group I, Column B.	—	4 hrs		1		2, 3	4
C-12-RC-4	12″	Description as per C-12-RC-2; Group II, Column A.	—	4 hrs		1		2, 3	4
C-12-RC-5	12″	Description as per C-12-RC-2; Group II, Column B.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1		2, 3	$2^{1}/_{2}$
C-12-RC-6	12″	Description as per C-12-RC-2; Group III, Column A.	—	3 hrs		1		2, 3	3
C-12-RC-7	12″	Description as per C-12-RC-2; Group III, Column B.	—	2 hrs		1		2, 3	2
C-12-RC-8	12″	Description as per C-12-RC-2; Group IV, Column A.	—	2 hrs		1		2, 3	2
C-12-RC-9	12″	Description as per C-12-RC-2; Group IV, Column B.	—	1 hr 30 min		1		2, 3	$1^{1}/_{2}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—unspecified structural.
2. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.
3. Groupings of aggregates and ties are the same as for structural steel columns protected solidly with concrete, the ties to be placed over the vertical reinforcing bars and the mesh where required, to be placed within 1 inch from the surface of the column.
   Column A: working loads are assumed as carried by the area of the column inside of the lines circumscribing the reinforcing steel.
   Column B: working loads are assumed as carried by the gross area of the column.

TABLE 2.1.4
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 14″ TO LESS THAN 16″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
C-14-RC-1	14″	14″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4295 psi); reinforcement: vertical four $^{3}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal: $^{1}/_{4}$″ ties at 9″ pitch; cover: $1^{1}/_{2}$″	86 tons	1 hr 22 min			7	1	$1^{1}/_{4}$
C-14-RC-2	14″	Reinforced concrete columns with $1^{1}/_{2}$″ concrete outside reinforcing steel; gross diameter or side of column: 14″; Group I, Column A.	—	7 hrs		1		2, 3	7
C-14-RC-3	14″	Description as per C-14-RC-2; Group I, Column B.	—	5 hrs		1		2, 3	5
C-14-RC-4	14″	Description as per C-14-RC-2; Group II, Column A.	—	5 hrs		1		2, 3	5
C-14-RC-5	14″	Description as per C-14-RC-2; Group II, Column B.	—	3 hrs 30 min		1		2, 3	$3^{1}/_{2}$
C-14-RC-6	14″	Description as per C-14-RC-2; Group III, Column A.	—	4 hrs		1		2, 3	4
C-14-RC-7	14″	Description as per C-14-RC-2; Group III, Column B.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1		2, 3	$2^{1}/_{2}$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.1.4—continued
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 14″ TO LESS THAN 16″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
C-14-RC-8	14″	Description as per C-14-RC-2; Group IV, Column A.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1		2, 3	$2^1/_2$
C-14-RC-9	14″	Description as per C-14-RC-2; Group IV, Column B.	—	1 hr 30 min		1		2, 3	$1^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—main rebars buckled between links at various points.
2. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.
3. Groupings of aggregates and ties are the same as for structural steel columns protected solidly with concrete, the ties to be placed over the vertical reinforcing bars and the mesh where required, to be placed within 1 inch from the surface of the column.
   Column A: working loads are assumed as carried by the area of the column inside of the lines circumscribing the reinforcing steel.
   Column B: working loads are assumed as carried by the gross area of the column.

FIGURE 2.1.5
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 16″ TO LESS THAN 18″

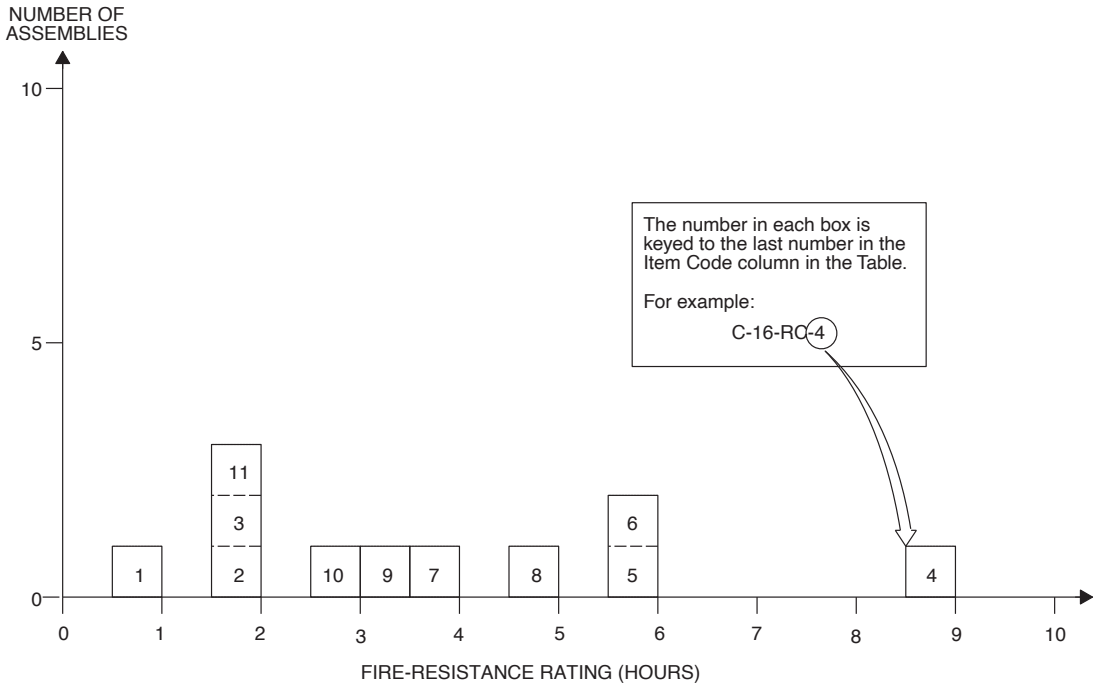


TABLE 2.1.5
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 16″ TO LESS THAN 18″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-16-RC-1	16″	16″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4550 psi); reinforcement: vertical, eight $1^3/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch $1^3/_8$″ below column surface and $^5/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch linking center rebars of each face forming a smaller square in column cross section.	237 tons	1 hr			7	1–3	1

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.1.5—continued
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 16″ TO LESS THAN 18″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-16-RC-2	16″	16″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (3360 psi); reinforcement: vertical, eight $1^3/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: $1^3/_8$″.	210 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 4–6	2
C-16-RC-3	16″	16″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (3980 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $^7/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^3/_8$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover: 1″.	123.5 tons	2 hrs			7	2, 4, 7	2
C-16-RC-4	16″	Reinforced concrete columns with $1^1/_2$″ concrete outside reinforcing steel; gross diameter or side of column: 16″; Group I, Column A.	—	9 hrs		1		8, 9	9
C-16-RC-5	16″	Description as per C-16-RC-4; Group I, Column B.	—	6 hrs		1		8, 9	6
C-16-RC-6	16″	Description as per C-16-RC-4; Group II, Column A.	—	6 hrs		1		8, 9	6
C-16-RC-7	16″	Description as per C-16-RC-4; Group II, Column B.	—	4 hrs		1		8, 9	4
C-16-RC-8	16″	Description as per C-16-RC-4; Group III, Column A.	—	5 hrs		1		8, 9	5
C-16-RC-9	16″	Description as per C-16-RC-4; Group III, Column B.	—	3 hrs 30 min		1		8, 9	$3^1/_2$
C-16-RC-10	16″	Description as per C-16-RC-4; Group IV, Column A.	—	3 hrs		1		8, 9	3
C-16-RC-11	16″	Description as per C-16-RC-4; Group IV, Column B.	—	2 hrs		1		8, 9	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. Column passed 1-hour fire test.
2. Column passed hose stream test.
3. No reload specified.
4. Column passed 2-hour fire test.
5. Column reloaded successfully after 24 hours.
6. Reinforcing details same as C-16-RC-1.
7. Column passed reload after 72 hours.
8. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.
9. Groupings of aggregates and ties are the same as for structural steel columns protected solidly with concrete, the ties to be placed over the vertical reinforcing bars and the mesh where required, to be placed within 1 inch from the surface of the column.
   Column A: working loads are assumed as carried by the area of the column inside of the lines circumscribing the reinforcing steel.
   Column B: working loads are assumed as carried by the gross area of the column.

TABLE 2.1.6
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 18″ TO LESS THAN 20″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
C-18-RC-1	18″	Reinforced concrete columns with $1^1/_2$″ concrete outside reinforced steel; gross diameter or side of column: 18″; Group I, Column A.	—	11 hrs		1		1, 2	11
C-18-RC-2	18″	Description as per C-18-RC-1; Group I, Column B.	—	8 hrs		1		1, 2	8
C-18-RC-3	18″	Description as per C-18-RC-1; Group II, Column A.	—	7 hrs		1		1, 2	7
C-18-RC-4	18″	Description as per C-18-RC-1; Group II, Column B.	—	5 hrs		1		1, 2	5
C-18-RC-5	18″	Description as per C-18-RC-1; Group III, Column A.	—	6 hrs		1		1, 2	6
C-18-RC-6	18″	Description as per C-18-RC-1; Group III, Column B.	—	4 hrs		1		1, 2	4
C-18-RC-7	18″	Description as per C-18-RC-1; Group IV, Column A.	—	3 hrs 30 min		1		1, 2	$3^1/_2$
C-18-RC-8	18″	Description as per C-18-RC-1; Group IV, Column B.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1		1, 2	$2^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint and, tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.
2. Groupings of aggregates and ties are the same as for structural steel columns protected solidly with concrete, the ties to be placed over the vertical reinforcing bars and the mesh where required, to be placed within 1 inch from the surface of the column.
   Column A: working loads are assumed as carried by the area of the column inside of the lines circumscribing the reinforcing steel.
   Column B: working loads are assumed as carried by the gross area of the column.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

FIGURE 2.1.7
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 20″ TO LESS THAN 22″

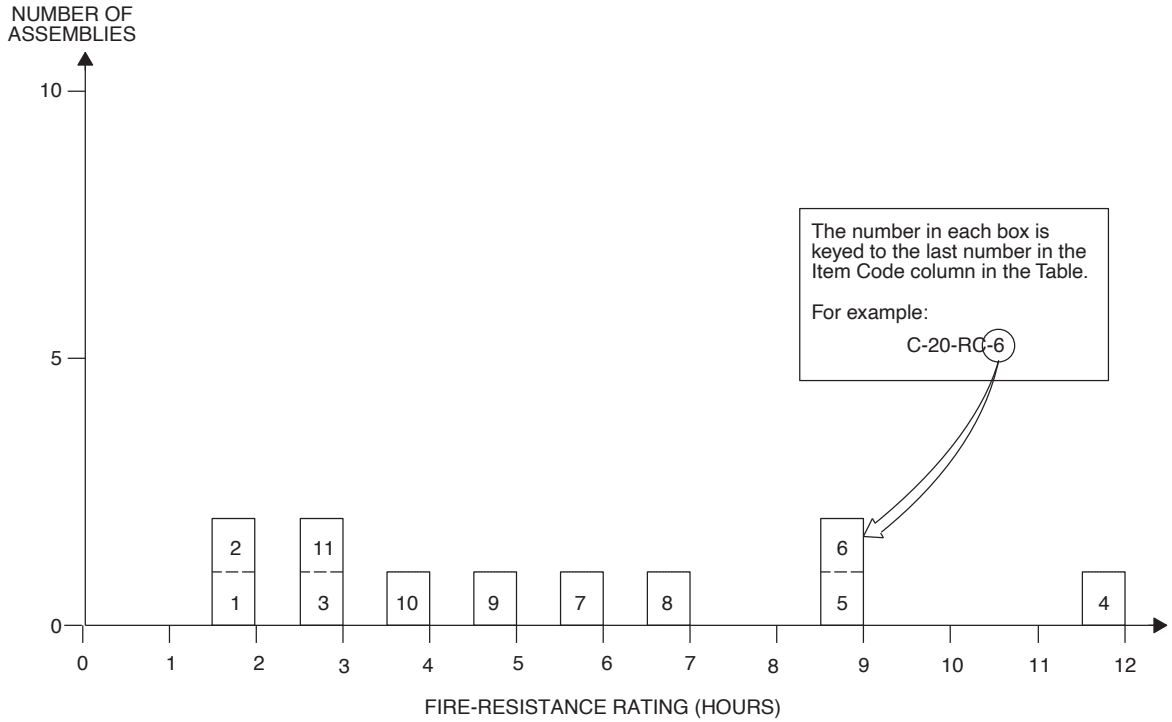


TABLE 2.1.7
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 20″ TO LESS THAN 22″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-20-RC-1	20″	20″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (6690 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{3}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ wire at 6″ pitch; cover $1^{3}/_{4}$″.	367 tons	2 hrs			7	1–3	2
C-20-RC-2	20″	20″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4330 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{3}/_{4}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ ties at 6″ pitch; cover $1^{3}/_{4}$″.	327 tons	2 hrs			7	1, 2, 4	2
C-20-RC-3	$20^{1}/_{4}$″	20″ square columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4230 psi); reinforcement: vertical, four $1^{1}/_{8}$″ rebars; horizontal, $^{3}/_{8}$″ wire at 5″ pitch; cover $1^{1}/_{8}$″.	199 tons	2 hrs 56 min			7	5	$2^{3}/_{4}$
C-20-RC-4	20″	Reinforced concrete columns with $1^{1}/_{2}$″ concrete outside of reinforcing steel; gross diameter or side of column: 20″; Group I, Column A.	—	12 hrs		1		6, 7	12
C-20-RC-5	20″	Description as per C-20-RC-4; Group I, Column B.	—	9 hrs		1		6, 7	9
C-20-RC-6	20″	Description as per C-20-RC-4; Group II, Column A.	—	9 hrs		1		6, 7	9
C-20-RC-7	20″	Description as per C-20-RC-4; Group II, Column B.	—	6 hrs		1		6, 7	6
C-20-RC-8	20″	Description as per C-20-RC-4; Group III, Column A.	—	7 hrs		1		6, 7	7

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.1.7—continued
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 20″ TO LESS THAN 22″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-20-RC-9	20″	Description as per C-20-RC-4; Group III, Column B.	—	5 hrs		1		6, 7	5
C-20-RC-10	20″	Description as per C-20-RC-4; Group IV, Column A.	—	4 hrs		1		6, 7	4
C-20-RC-11	20″	Description as per C-20-RC-4; Group IV, Column B.	—	3 hrs		1		6, 7	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Passed 2-hour fire test.
2. Passed hose stream test.
3. Failed during reload at 300 tons.
4. Passed reload after 72 hours.
5. Failure mode—collapse.
6. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.
7. Groupings of aggregates and ties are the same as for structural steel columns protected solidly with concrete, the ties to be placed over the vertical reinforcing bars and the mesh where required, to be placed within 1 inch from the surface of the column.
   Column A: working loads are assumed as carried by the area of the column inside of the lines circumscribing the reinforcing steel.
   Column B: working loads are assumed as carried by the gross area of the column.

TABLE 2.1.8
HEXAGONAL REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-12-HRC-1	12″	12″ hexagonal columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4420 psi); reinforcement: vertical, eight $^1/_2$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ helical winding at 1$^1/_2$″ pitch; cover: $^1/_2$″.	88 tons	58 min			7	1	$^3/_4$
C-12-HRC-2	12″	12″ hexagonal columns; gravel aggregate concrete (3460 psi); reinforcement: vertical, eight $^1/_2$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ helical winding at 1$^1/_2$″ pitch; cover: $^1/_2$″.	78.7 tons	1 hr			7	2	1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.
2. Test stopped at 1 hour.

TABLE 2.1.9
HEXAGONAL REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 14″ TO LESS THAN 16″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-14-HRC-1	14″	14″ hexagonal columns; gravel aggregate concrete (4970 psi); reinforcement: vertical, eight $^1/_2$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ helical winding on 2″ pitch; cover: $^1/_2$″.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	1–3	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Withstood 2-hour fire test.
2. Withstood hose stream test.
3. Withstood reload after 48 hours.

TABLE 2.1.10
HEXAGONAL REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION—16″ TO LESS THAN 18″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-16-HRC-1	16″	16″ hexagonal columns; gravel concrete (6320 psi); reinforcement: vertical, eight $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ helical winding on $^3/_4$″ pitch; cover: $^1/_2$″.	140 tons	1 hr 55 min			7	1	$1^3/_4$
C-16-HRC-2	16″	16″ hexagonal columns; gravel aggregate concrete (5580 psi); reinforcement: vertical, eight $^5/_8$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ helical winding on $1^3/_4$″ pitch; cover: $^1/_2$″	124 tons	2 hrs			7	2	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.
2. Failed on furnace removal.

TABLE 2.1.11
HEXAGONAL REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS
MINIMUM DIMENSION—20″ TO LESS THAN 22″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-20-HRC-1	20″	20″ hexagonal columns; gravel concrete (6080 psi); reinforcement: vertical, $^3/_4$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ helical winding on $1^3/_4$″ pitch; cover: $^1/_2$″.	211 tons	2 hrs			7	1	2
C-20-HRC-2	20″	20″ hexagonal columns; gravel concrete (5080 psi); reinforcement: vertical, $^3/_4$″ rebars; horizontal, $^5/_{16}$″ wire on $1^3/_4$″ pitch; cover: $^1/_2$″.	184 tons	2 hrs 15 min			7	2–4	$2^1/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Column collapsed on furnace removal.
2. Passed $2^1/_4$-hour fire test.
3. Passed hose stream test.
4. Withstood reload after 48 hours.

TABLE 2.2
ROUND CAST IRON COLUMNS

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-7-CI-1	7″ O.D.	Column: 0.6″ minimum metal thickness; unprotected.	—	30 min		1			$^1/_2$
C-7-CI-2	7″ O.D.	Column: 0.6″ minimum metal thickness concrete filled, outside unprotected.	—	45 min		1			$^3/_4$
C-11-CI-3	11″ O.D.	Column: 0.6″ minimum metal thickness; protection: $1^1/_2$″ Portland cement plaster on high ribbed metal lath, $^1/_2$″ broken air space.	—	3 hrs		1			3
C-11-CI-4	11″ O.D.	Column: 0.6″ minimum metal thickness; protection: 2″ concrete other than siliceous aggregate.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1			$2^1/_2$
C-12-CI-5	12.5″ O.D.	Column: 7″ O.D., 0.6″ minimum metal thickness; protection: 2″ porous hollow tile, $^3/_4$″ mortar between tile and column, outside wire ties.	—	3 hrs		1			3
C-7-CI-6	7.6″ O.D.	Column: 7″ I.D., $^3/_{10}$″ minimum metal thickness; concrete filled; unprotected.	—	30 min		1			$^1/_2$
C-8-CI-7	8.6″ O.D.	Column: 8″ I.D., $^3/_{10}$″ minimum metal thickness; concrete filled reinforced with four $3^1/_2$″ × $^3/_8$″ angles, in fill; unprotected outside.	—	1 hr		1			1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE 2.3
STEEL COLUMNS—GYPSUM ENCASEMENTS

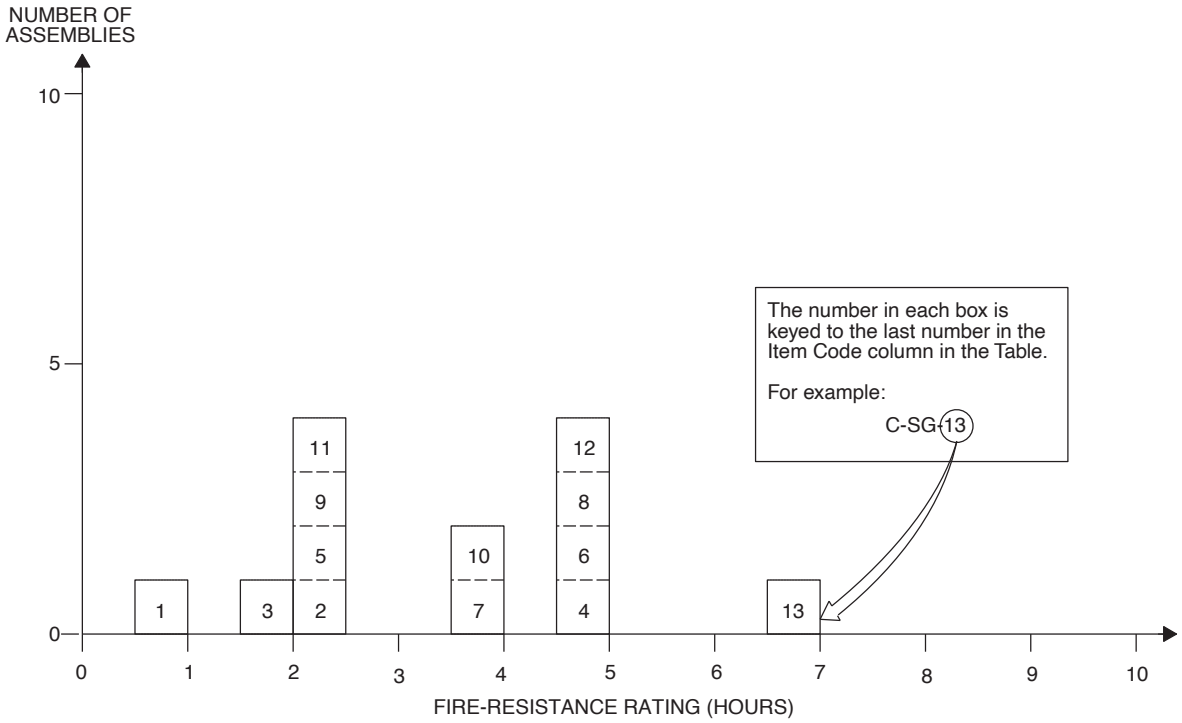


TABLE 2.3
STEEL COLUMNS—GYPSUM ENCASEMENTS

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM AREA OF SOLID MATERIAL	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-SG-1	—	Steel protected with $^3/_4$″ 1:3 sanded gypsum or 1″ 1:2$^1/_2$ Portland cement plaster on wire or lath; one layer.	—	1 hr		1			1
C-SG-2	—	Same as C-SG-1; two layers.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1			2$^1/_2$
C-SG-3	130 in.^{2}	2″ solid blocks with wire mesh in horizontal joints; 1″ mortar on flange; reentrant space filled with block and mortar.	—	2 hrs		1			2
C-SG-4	150 in.^{2}	Same as C-SG-3 with $^1/_2$″ sanded gypsum plaster.	—	5 hrs		1			5
C-SG-5	130 in.^{2}	2″ solid blocks with wire mesh in horizontal joints; 1″ mortar on flange; reentrant space filled with gypsum concrete.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1			2$^1/_2$
C-SG-6	150 in.^{2}	Same as C-SG-5 with $^1/_2$″ sanded gypsum plaster.	—	5 hrs		1			5
C-SG-7	300 in.^{2}	4″ solid blocks with wire mesh in horizontal joints; 1″ mortar on flange; reentrant space filled with block and mortar.	—	4 hrs		1			4
C-SG-8	300 in.^{2}	Same as C-SG-7 with reentrant space filled with gypsum concrete.	—	5 hrs		1			5
C-SG-9	85 in.^{2}	2″ solid blocks with cramps at horizontal joints; mortar on flange only at horizontal joints; reentrant space not filled.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1			2$^1/_2$
C-SG-10	105 in.^{2}	Same as C-SG-9 with $^1/_2$″ sanded gypsum plaster.	—	4 hrs		1			4

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.3—continued
STEEL COLUMNS—GYPSUM ENCASEMENTS

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM AREA OF SOLID MATERIAL	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-SG-11	95 in.^{2}	3″ hollow blocks with cramps at horizontal joints; mortar on flange only at horizontal joints; reentrant space not filled.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1			$2^1/_2$
C-SG-12	120 in.^{2}	Same as C-SG-11 with $^1/_2$″ sanded gypsum plaster.	—	5 hrs		1			5
C-SG-13	130 in.^{2}	2″ neat fibered gypsum reentrant space filled poured solid and reinforced with 4″ × 4″ wire mesh $^1/_2$″ sanded gypsum plaster.	—	7 hrs		1			7

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm^2.

TABLE 2.4
TIMBER COLUMNS MINIMUM DIMENSION

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-11-TC-1	11″	With unprotected steel plate cap.	—	30 min		1		1, 2	$^1/_2$
C-11-TC-2	11″	With unprotected cast iron cap and pintle.	—	45 min		1		1, 2	$^3/_4$
C-11-TC-3	11″	With concrete or protected steel or cast iron cap.	—	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 2	$1^1/_4$
C-11-TC-4	11″	With $^3/_8$″ gypsum wallboard over column and over cast iron or steel cap.	—	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 2	$1^1/_4$
C-11-TC-5	11″	With 1″ Portland cement plaster on wire lath over column and over cast iron or steel cap; $^3/_4$″ air space.	—	2 hrs		1		1, 2	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm^2.

Notes:

1. Minimum area: 120 square inches.
2. Type of wood: long leaf pine or Douglas fir.

TABLE 2.5.1.1
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION LESS THAN 6″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-5-SC-1	5″	5″ × 6″ outer dimensions; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel concrete (4900 psi) 6″ × 4″ - 13 SWG mesh.	12 tons	1 hr 29 min			7	1	$1^1/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.

TABLE 2.5.1.2
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
6″ TO LESS THAN 8″ THICK

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-7-SC-1	7″	7″ × 8″ column; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs “H” beam; protection: brick filled concrete (6220 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh; 1″ below column surface.	12 tons	2 hrs 46 min			7	1	$2^3/_4$
C-7-SC-2	7″	7″ × 8″ column; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel concrete (5140 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh; 1″ below surface.	12 tons	3 hrs 1 min			7	1	3
C-7-SC-3	7″	7″ × 8″ column; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs “H” beam; protection: concrete (4540 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh; 1″ below column surface.	12 tons	3 hrs 9 min			7	1	3
C-7-SC-4	7″	7″ × 8″ column; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel concrete (5520 psi); 4″ × 4″—16 SWG mesh.	12 tons	2 hrs 50 min			7	1	$2^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.

FIGURE 2.5.1.3
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 8″ TO LESS THAN 10″

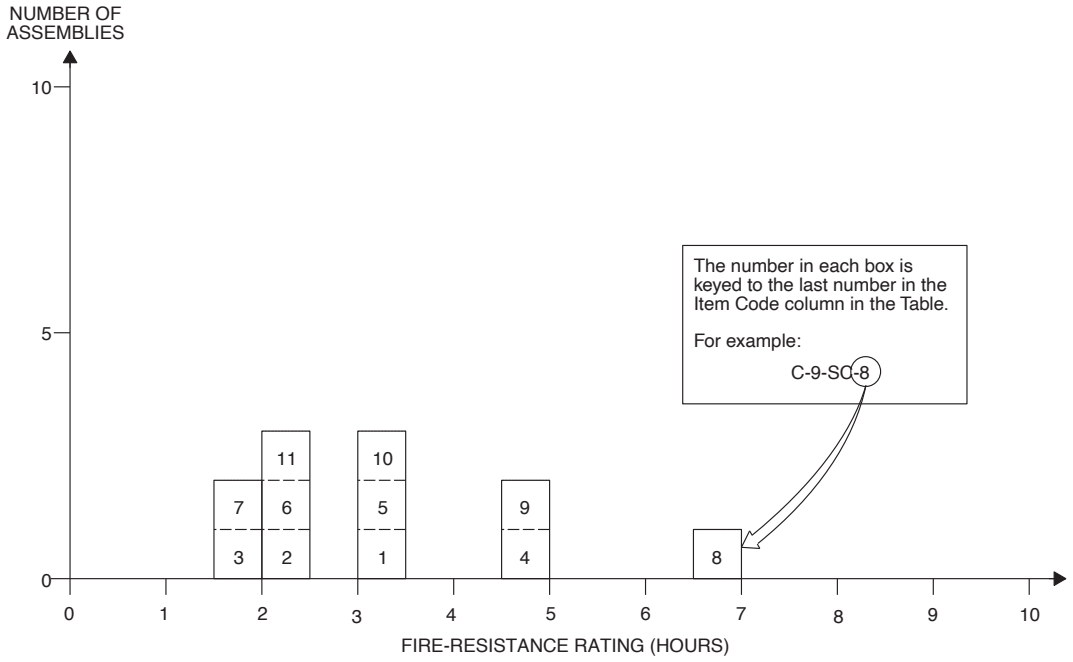


TABLE 2.5.1.3
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 8″ TO LESS THAN 10″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-8-SC-1	$8^1/_2$″	$8^1/_2$″ × 10″ column; 6″ × $4^1/_2$″ × 20 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel concrete (5140 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh.	39 tons	3 hrs 8 min			7	1	3
C-8-SC-2	8″	8″ × 10″ column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “I” beam; protection: gravel concrete (4240 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh; $^1/_2$″ cover.	90 tons	2 hrs 1 min			7	1	2

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.5.1.3—continued
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 8″ TO LESS THAN 10″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-8-SC-7	8″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 2″ outside protection; Group IV.	—	1 hr 45 min		1		2	$1^{3}/_{4}$
C-8-SC-3	8″	8″ × 10″ concrete encased column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (3750 psi); 4″—16 SWG mesh, reinforcing $^{1}/_{2}$″ below column surface.	90 tons	1 hr 58 min			7	1	$1^{3}/_{4}$
C-8-SC-4	8″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 2″ outside protection; Group I.	—	5 hrs		1		2	5
C-8-SC-5	8″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 2″ outside protection; Group II.	—	3 hrs 30 min		1		2	$3^{1}/_{2}$
C-8-SC-6	8″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 2″ outside protection; Group III.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1		2	$2^{1}/_{2}$
C-9-SC-8	9″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 3″ outside protection; Group I.	—	7 hrs		1		2	7
C-9-SC-9	9″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 3″ outside protection; Group II.	—	5 hrs		1		2	5
C-9-SC-10	9″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 3″ outside protection; Group III.	—	3 hrs 30 min		1		2	$3^{1}/_{2}$
C-9-SC-11	9″	6″ × 6″ steel column; 3″ outside protection; Group IV.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1		2	$2^{1}/_{2}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.
2. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.

   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.

   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.

   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.

FIGURE 2.5.1.4
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

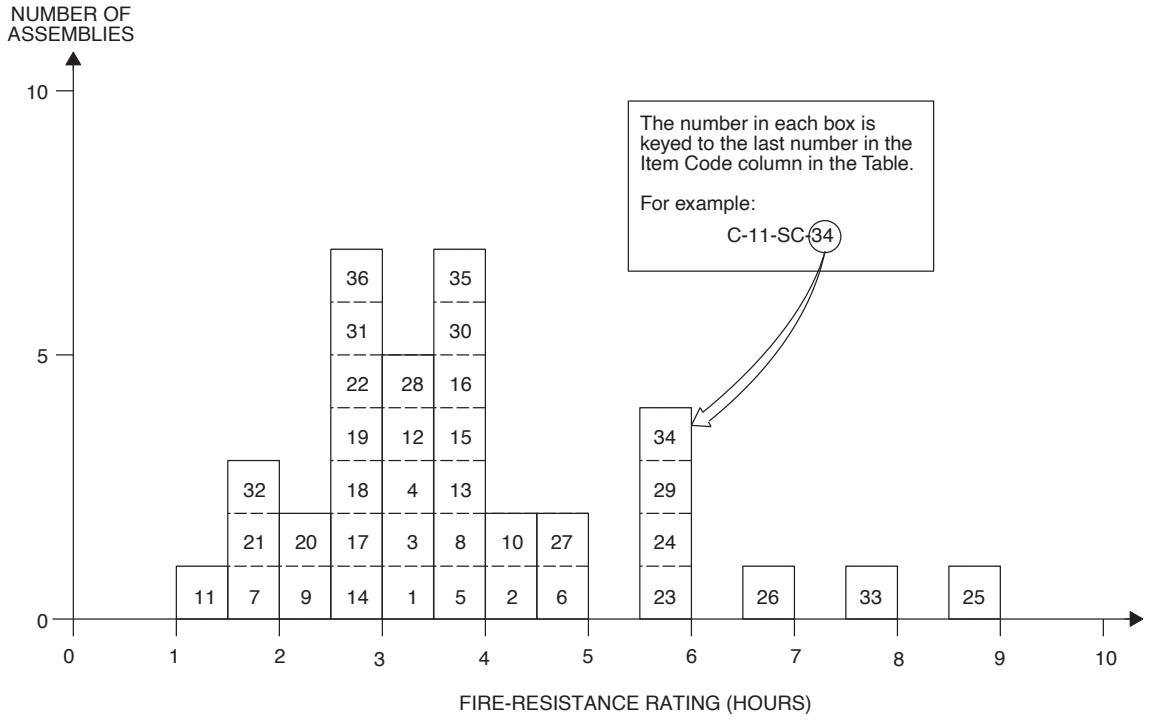


TABLE 2.5.1.4
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-10-SC-1	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel aggregate concrete (3640 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh, 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs 7 min			7	1, 2	3
C-10-SC-2	10″	10″ × 16″ column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: clay brick concrete (3630 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh, 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	4 hrs 6 min			7	2	4
C-10-SC-3	10″	10″ × 12″ column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: crushed stone and sand concrete (3930 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh, 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs 17 min			7	2	$3^1/_4$
C-10-SC-4	10″	10″ × 12″ column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: crushed basalt and sand concrete (4350 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh, 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs 22 min			7	2	$3^1/_3$
C-10-SC-5	10″	10″ × 12″ column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel aggregate concrete (5570 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh.	90 tons	3 hrs 39 min			7	2	$3^1/_2$
C-10-SC-6	10″	10″ × 16″ column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “I” beam; protection: gravel concrete (4950 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh, 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	4 hrs 32 min			7	2	$4^1/_2$
C-10-SC-7	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (1370 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcing 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	3, 4	2

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.5.1.4—continued
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-10-SC-8	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” column; protection: aggregate concrete (4000 psi); 13 SWG iron wire loosely around column at 6″ pitch about 2″ beneath column surface.	86 tons	3 hrs 36 min			7	2	$3^{1}/_{2}$
C-10-SC-9	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (3290 psi); 2″ cover minimum.	86 tons	2 hrs 8 min			7	2	2
C-10-SC-10	10″	10″ × 14″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” column; protection: crushed brick filled concrete (5310 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	4 hrs 28 min			7	2	$4^{1}/_{3}$
C-10-SC-11	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (3420 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ below surface.	90 tons	1 hr 2 min			7	2	1
C-10-SC-12	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (4480 psi); four $^{3}/_{8}$″ vertical bars at “H” beam edges with $^{3}/_{16}$″ spacers at beam surface at 3′ pitch and $^{3}/_{16}$″ binders at 10″ pitch; 2″ concrete cover.	90 tons	3 hrs 2 min			7	2	3
C-10-SC-13	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (5070 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcing at 6″ beam sides wrapped and held by wire ties across (open) 8″ beam face; reinforcements wrapped in 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh throughout; $^{1}/_{2}$″ cover to column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs 59 min			7	2	$3^{3}/_{4}$
C-10-SC-14	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (4410 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcement $1^{1}/_{4}$″ below column surface; $^{1}/_{2}$″ limestone cement plaster with $^{3}/_{8}$″ gypsum plaster finish.	90 tons	2 hrs 50 min			7	2	$2^{3}/_{4}$
C-10-SC-15	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: crushed clay brick filled concrete (4260 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcing 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs 54 min			7	2	$3^{3}/_{4}$
C-10-SC-16	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: limestone aggregate concrete (4350 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcing 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs 54 min			7	2	$3^{3}/_{4}$
C-10-SC-17	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: limestone aggregate concrete (5300 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh, 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs			7	4, 5	3
C-10-SC-18	10″	10″ × 12″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: limestone aggregate concrete (4800 psi) with 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ below surface.	90 tons	3 hrs			7	4, 5	3
C-10-SC-19	10″	10″ × 14″ concrete encased steel column; 12″ × 8″ × 65 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (3900 psi); 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcing $^{1}/_{2}$″ below column surface.	118 tons	2 hrs 42 min			7	2	2

TABLE 2.5.1.4—continued
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-10-SC-20	10″	10″ × 14″ concrete encased steel column; 12″ × 8″ × 65 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (4930 psi); 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcing $^{1}/_{2}$″ below column surface.	177 tons	2 hrs 8 min			7	2	2
C-10-SC-21	$10^{3}/_{8}$″	$10^{3}/_{8}$″ × $12^{3}/_{8}$″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (835 psi) with 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcing $1^{3}/_{16}$″ below column surface; $^{3}/_{16}$″ gypsum plaster finish.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	3, 4	2
C-11-SC-22	11″	11″ × 13″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: ″open texture″ brick filled concrete (890 psi) with 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcing $1^{1}/_{2}$″ below column surface; $^{3}/_{8}$″ lime cement plaster; $^{1}/_{8}$″ gypsum plaster finish.	90 tons	3 hrs			7	6, 7	3
C-11-SC-23	11″	11″ × 12″ column; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs “H” beam; gravel concrete (4550 psi); 6″ × 4″—13 SWG mesh reinforcing; 1″ below column surface.	12 tons	6 hrs			7	7, 8	6
C-11-SC-24	11″	11″ × 12″ column; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel aggregate concrete (3830 psi); with 4″ × 4″—16 SWG mesh, 1″ below column surface.	16 tons	5 hrs 32 min			7	2	$5^{1}/_{2}$
C-10-SC-25	10″	6″ × 6″ steel column with 4″ outside protection; Group I.	—	9 hrs		1		9	9
C-10-SC-26	10″	Description as per C-SC-25; Group II.	—	7 hrs		1		9	7
C-10-SC-27	10″	Description as per C-SC-25; Group III.	—	5 hrs		1		9	5
C-10-SC-28	10″	Description as per C-10-SC-25; Group IV.	—	3 hrs 30 min		1		9	$3^{1}/_{2}$
C-10-SC-29	10″	8″ × 8″ steel column with 2″ outside protection; Group I.	—	6 hrs		1		9	6
C-10-SC-30	10″	Description as per C-10-SC-29; Group II.	—	4 hrs		1		9	4
C-10-SC-31	10″	Description as per C-10-SC-29; Group III.	—	3 hrs		1		9	3
C-10-SC-32	10″	Description as per C-10-SC-29; Group IV.	—	2 hrs		1		9	2
C-11-SC-33	11″	8″ × 8″ steel column with 3″ outside protection; Group I.	—	8 hrs		1		9	8
C-11-SC-34	11″	Description as per C-10-SC-33; Group II.	—	6 hrs		1		9	6
C-11-SC-35	11″	Description as per C-10-SC-33; Group III.	—	4 hrs		1		9	4
C-11-SC-36	11″	Description as per C-10-SC-33; Group IV.	—	3 hrs		1		9	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Tested under total restraint load to prevent expansion—minimum load 90 tons.
2. Failure mode—collapse.
3. Passed 2-hour fire test (Grade “C,” British).
4. Passed hose stream test.
5. Column tested and passed 3-hour grade fire resistance (British).
6. Column passed 3-hour fire test.
7. Column collapsed during hose stream testing.
8. Column passed 6-hour fire test.
9. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.

   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.

   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.

   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.

FIGURE 2.5.1.5
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

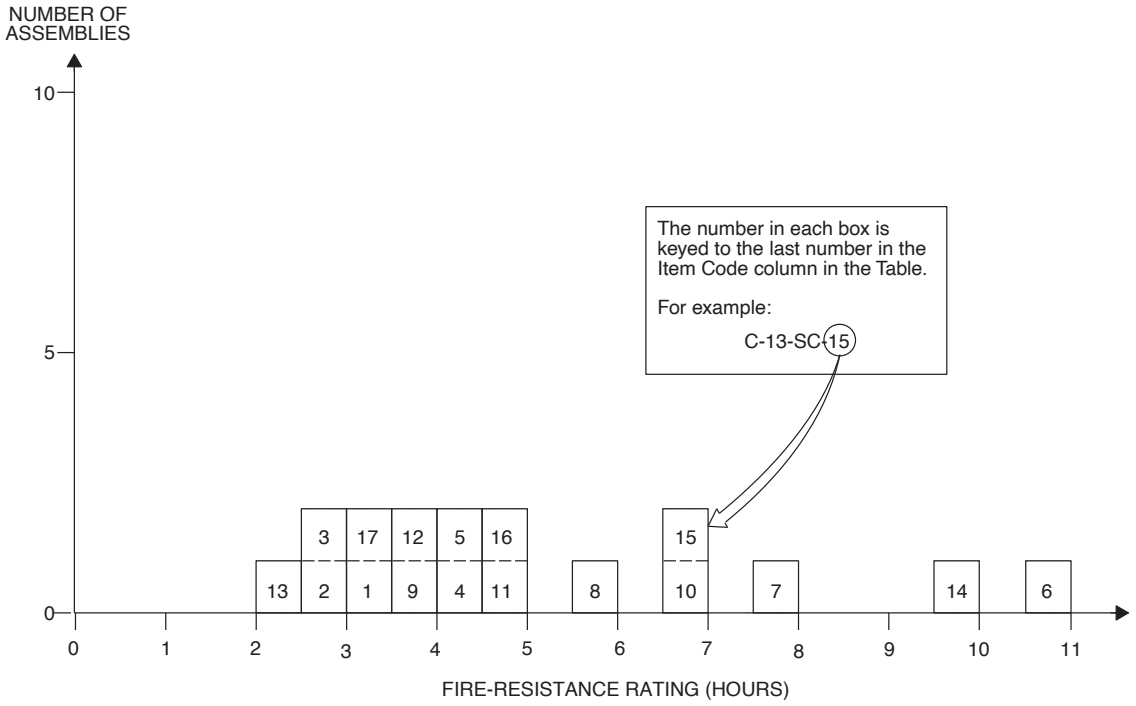


TABLE 2.5.1.5
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-12-SC-1	12″	12″ × 14″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (4150 psi) with 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcing 1″ below column surface.	120 tons	3 hrs 24 min			7	1	$3^1/_3$
C-12-SC-2	12″	12″ × 16″ concrete encased column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (4300 psi) with 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcing 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	2 hrs 52 min			7	1	$2^3/_4$
C-12-SC-3	12″	12″ × 16″ concrete encased steel column; 12″ × 8″ × 65 lbs “H” column; protection: gravel aggregate concrete (3550 psi) with 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ below column surface.	177 tons	2 hrs 31 min			7	1	$2^1/_2$
C-12-SC-4	12″	12″ × 16″ concrete encased column; 12″ × 8″ × 65 lbs “H” beam; protection: aggregate concrete (3450 psi) with 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ below column surface.	118 tons	4 hrs 4 min			7	1	4
C-12-SC-5	$12^1/_2$″	$12^1/_2$″ × 14″ column; 6″ × $4^1/_2$″ × 20 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel aggregate concrete (3750 psi) with 4″ × 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcing 1″ below column surface.	52 tons	4 hrs 29 min			7	1	$4^1/_3$
C-12-SC-6	12″	8″ × 8″ steel column; 2″ outside protection; Group I.	—	11 hrs			1	2	11

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.5.1.5—continued
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

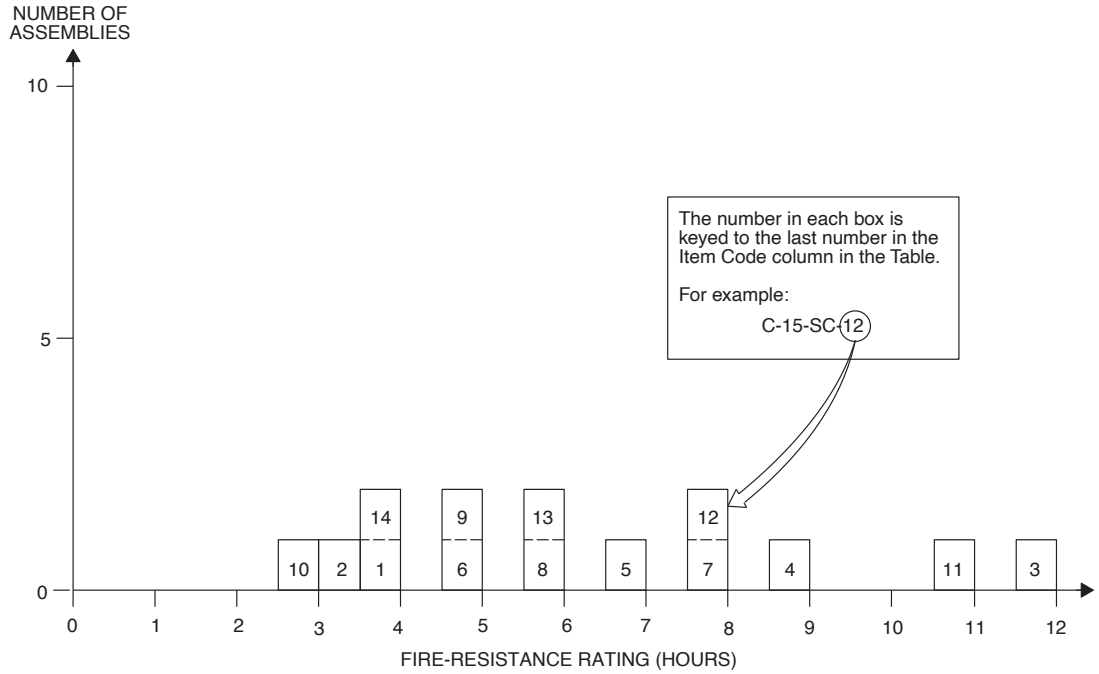
ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-12-SC-7	12″	Description as per C-12-SC-6; Group II.	—	8 hrs		1		2	8
C-12-SC-8	12″	Description as per C-12-SC-6; Group III.	—	6 hrs		1		2	6
C-12-SC-9	12″	Description as per C-12-SC-6; Group IV.	—	4 hrs		1		2	4
C-12-SC-10	12″	10″ × 10″ steel column; 2″ outside protection; Group I.	—	7 hrs		1		2	7
C-12-SC-11	12″	Description as per C-12-SC-10; Group II.	—	5 hrs		1		2	5
C-12-SC-12	12″	Description as per C-12-SC-10; Group III.	—	4 hrs		1		2	4
C-12-SC-13	12″	Description as per C-12-SC-10; Group IV.	—	2 hrs 30 min		1		2	$2^1/_2$
C-13-SC-14	13″	10″ × 10″ steel column; 3″ outside protection; Group I.	—	10 hrs		1		2	10
C-13-SC-15	13″	Description as per C-13-SC-14; Group II.	—	7 hrs		1		2	7
C-13-SC-16	13″	Description as per C-13-SC-14; Group III.	—	5 hrs		1		2	5
C-13-SC-17	13″	Description as per C-13-SC-14; Group IV.	—	3 hrs 30 min		1		2	$3^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.
2. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.

FIGURE 2.5.1.6
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 14″ TO LESS THAN 16″



INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 2.5.1.6
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 14″ TO LESS THAN 16″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-14-SC-1	14″	14″ × 16″ concrete encased steel column; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” column; protection: aggregate concrete (4240 psi); 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcing 1″ below column surface.	90 tons	3 hrs 40 min			7	1	3
C-14-SC-2	14″	14″ × 18″ concrete encased steel column; 12″ × 8″ × 65 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel aggregate concrete (4000 psi) with 4″—16 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ below column surface.	177 tons	3 hrs 20 min			7	1	3
C-14-SC-3	14″	10″ × 10″ steel column; 4″ outside protection; Group I.	—	12 hrs		1		2	12
C-14-SC-4	14″	Description as per C-14-SC-3; Group II.	—	9 hrs		1		2	9
C-14-SC-5	14″	Description as per C-14-SC-3; Group III.	—	7 hrs		1		2	7
C-14-SC-6	14″	Description as per C-14-SC-3; Group IV.	—	5 hrs		1		2	5
C-14-SC-7	14″	12″ × 12″ steel column; 2″ outside protection; Group I.	—	8 hrs		1		2	8
C-14-SC-8	14″	Description as per C-14-SC-7; Group II.	—	6 hrs		1		2	6
C-14-SC-9	14″	Description as per C-14-SC-7; Group III.	—	5 hrs		1		2	5
C-14-SC-10	14″	Description as per C-14-SC-7; Group IV	—	3 hrs		1		2	3
C-15-SC-11	15″	12″ × 12″ steel column; 3″ outside protection; Group I.	—	11 hrs		1		2	11
C-15-SC-12	15″	Description as per C-15-SC-11; Group II.	—	8 hrs		1		2	8
C-15-SC-13	15″	Description as per C-15-SC-11; Group III.	—	6 hrs		1		2	6
C-15-SC-14	15″	Description as per C-15-SC-11; Group IV.	—	4 hrs		1		2	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square yard = 5.3 N/m^2, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Collapse.
2. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.

TABLE 2.5.1.7
STEEL COLUMNS—CONCRETE ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 16″ TO LESS THAN 18″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-16-SC-1	16″	12″ × 12″ steel column; 4″ outside protection; Group I.	—	14 hrs		1		1	14
C-16-SC-2	16″	Description as per C-16-SC-1; Group II.	—	10 hrs		1		1	10
C-16-SC-3	16″	Description as per C-16-SC-1; Group III.	—	8 hrs		1		1	8
C-16-SC-4	16″	Description as per C-16-SC-1; Group IV.	—	5 hrs		1		1	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Notes:

1. Group I: includes concrete having calcareous aggregate containing a combined total of not more than 10 percent of quartz, chert and flint for the coarse aggregate.
   Group II: includes concrete having trap-rock aggregate applied without metal ties and also concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group III: includes concrete having cinder, sandstone or granite aggregate tied with No. 5 gage steel wire, wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties, and concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, if held in place with wire mesh or expanded metal having not larger than 4-inch mesh, weighing not less than 1.7 lbs/yd^2, placed not more than 1 inch from the surface of the concrete.
   Group IV: includes concrete having siliceous aggregates containing a combined total of 60 percent or more of quartz, chert and flint, and tied with No. 5 gage steel wire wound spirally over the column section on a pitch of 8 inches, or equivalent ties.

TABLE 2.5.2.1
STEEL COLUMNS—BRICK AND BLOCK ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-10-SB-1	$10^1/_2$″	$10^1/_2$″ × 13″ brick encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection. Fill of broken brick and mortar; 2″ brick on edge; joints broken in alternate courses; cement-sand grout; 13 SWG wire reinforcement in every third horizontal joint.	90 tons	3 hrs 6 min			7	1	3
C-10-SB-2	$10^1/_2$″	$10^1/_2$″ × 13″ brick encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 2″ brick; joints broken in alternate courses; cement-sand grout; 13 SWG iron wire reinforcement in alternate horizontal joints.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	2–4	2
C-10-SB-3	10″	10″ × 12″ block encased columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 2″ foamed slag concrete blocks; 13 SWG wire at each horizontal joint; mortar at each joint.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	5	2
C-10-SB-4	$10^1/_2$″	$10^1/_2$″ × 12″ block encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: gravel aggregate concrete fill (unconsolidated) 2″ thick hollow clay tiles with mortar at edges.	86 tons	56 min			7	1	$^3/_4$
C-10-SB-5	$10^1/_2$″	$10^1/_2$″ × 12″ block encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 2″ hollow clay tiles with mortar at edges.	86 tons	22 min			7	1	$^1/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.
2. Passed 2-hour fire test (Grade “C,” British).
3. Passed hose stream test.
4. Passed reload test.
5. Passed 2-hour fire exposure but collapsed immediately following hose stream test.

TABLE 2.5.2.2
STEEL COLUMNS—BRICK AND BLOCK ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-12-SB-1	12″	12″ × 15″ brick encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: $2^5/_8$″ thick brick; joints broken in alternate courses; cement-sand grout; fill of broken brick and mortar.	90 tons	1 hr 49 min			7	1	$1^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.

TABLE 2.5.2.3
STEEL COLUMNS—BRICK AND BLOCK ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 14″ TO LESS THAN 16″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-15-SB-1	15″	15″ × 17″ brick encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: $4^1/_2$″ thick brick; joints broken in alternate courses; cement-sand grout; fill of broken brick and mortar.	45 tons	6 hrs			7	1	6
C-15-SB-2	15″	15″ × 17″ brick encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection. Fill of broken brick and mortar; $4^1/_2$″ brick; joints broken in alternate courses; cement-sand grout.	86 tons	6 hrs			7	2–4	6
C-15-SB-3	15″	15″ × 18″ brick encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: $4^1/_2$″ brick work; joints alternating; cement-sand grout.	90 tons	4 hrs			7	5, 6	4
C-14-SB-4	14″	14″ × 16″ block encased steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 4″ thick foam slag concrete blocks; 13 SWG wire reinforcement in each horizontal joint; mortar in joints.	90 tons	5 hrs 52 min			7	7	$4^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Only a nominal load was applied to specimen.
2. Passed 6-hour fire test (Grade “A,” British).
3. Passed (6 minute) hose stream test.
4. Reload not specified.
5. Passed 4-hour fire exposure.
6. Failed by collapse between first and second minute of hose stream exposure.
7. Mode of failure—collapse.

TABLE 2.5.3.1
STEEL COLUMNS—PLASTER ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 6″ TO LESS THAN 8″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-7-SP-1	$7^1/_2$″	$7^1/_2$″ × $9^1/_2$″ plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 24 SWG wire metal lath; $1^1/_4$″ lime plaster.	90 tons	57 min			7	1	$^3/_4$
C-7-SP-2	$7^7/_8$″	$7^7/_8$″ × 10″ plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: $^3/_8$″ gypsum board; 16 SWG wire helically wound at 4″ pitch; $^1/_2$″ gypsum plaster.	90 tons	1 hr 13 min			7	1	1
C-7-SP-3	$7^1/_4$″	$7^1/_4$″ × $9^3/_8$″ plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: $^3/_8$″ gypsum board; 16 SWG wire helically wound at 4″ pitch; $^1/_4$″ gypsum plaster finish.	90 tons	1 hr 14 min			7	1	1

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.

TABLE 2.5.3.2
STEEL COLUMNS—PLASTER ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 8″ TO LESS THAN 10″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-8-SP-1	8″	8″ × 10″ plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 24 SWG wire lath; 1″ gypsum plaster.	86 tons	1 hr 23 min			7	1	$1^1/_4$
C-8-SP-2	$8^1/_2$″	$8^1/_2$″ × $10^1/_2$″ plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 24 SWG metal lath wrap; $1^1/_4$″ gypsum plaster.	90 tons	1 hr 36 min			7	1	$1^1/_2$
C-9-SP-3	9″	9″ × 11″ plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 24 SWG metal lath wrap; $^1/_8$″ M.S. ties at 12″ pitch; wire netting $1^1/_2$″ × 22 SWG between first and second plaster coats; $1^1/_2$″ gypsum plaster.	90 tons	1 hr 33 min			7	1	$1^1/_2$
C-8-SP-4	$8^3/_4$″	$8^3/_4$″ × $10^3/_4$″ plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: $^3/_4$″ gypsum board; wire wound spirally (#16 SWG) at $1^1/_2$″ pitch; $^1/_2$″ gypsum plaster.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	2–4	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.
2. Passed 2 hour fire exposure test (Grade “C,” British).
3. Passed hose stream test.
4. Passed reload test.

TABLE 2.5.4.1
STEEL COLUMNS—MISCELLANEOUS ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 6″ TO LESS THAN 8″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-7-SM-1	$7^5/_8$″	$7^5/_8$″ × $9^1/_2$″ (asbestos plaster) protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 20 gage $^1/_2$″ metal lath; $^9/_{16}$″ asbestos plaster (minimum).	90 tons	1 hr 52 min			7	1	$1^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Failure mode—collapse.

TABLE 2.5.4.2
STEEL COLUMNS—MISCELLANEOUS ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 8″ TO LESS THAN 10″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-9-SM-1	$9^5/_8$″	$9^5/_8$″ × $11^3/_8$″ asbestos slab and cement plaster-protected columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: 1″ asbestos slab; wire wound; $^5/_8$″ plaster.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	1, 2	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Passed 2-hour fire exposure test.
2. Collapsed during hose stream test.

TABLE 2.5.4.3
STEEL COLUMNS—MISCELLANEOUS ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-11-SM-1	$11^1/_2$″	$11^1/_2$″ × $13^1/_2$″ wood, wool and plaster-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: wood-wool-cement paste as fill and to 2″ cover over beam; $^3/_4$″ gypsum plaster finish.	90 tons	2 hrs			7	1–3	2
C-10-SM-2	10″	10″ × 12″ asbestos-protected steel columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: sprayed on asbestos paste to 2″ cover over column.	90 tons	4 hrs			7	2–4	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Passed 2-hour fire exposure (Grade “C,” British).
2. Passed hose stream test.
3. Passed reload test.
4. Passed 4-hour fire exposure test.

TABLE 2.5.4.4
STEEL COLUMNS—MISCELLANEOUS ENCASEMENTS
MINIMUM DIMENSION 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

ITEM CODE	MINIMUM DIMENSION	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
C-12-SM-1	12″	12″ × $14^1/_4$″ cement- and asbestos-protected columns; 8″ × 6″ × 35 lbs “H” beam; protection: fill of asbestos packing pieces 1″ thick 1′3″ o.c.; cover of 2″ molded asbestos inner layer; 1″ molded asbestos outer layer; held in position by 16 SWG nichrome wire ties; wash of refractory cement on outer surface.	86 tons	4 hrs 43 min			7	1–3	$4^2/_3$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Passed 4 hour fire exposure (Grade “B,” British).
2. Passed hose stream test.
3. Passed reload test.

SECTION III—FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES

FIGURE 3.1
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—REINFORCED CONCRETE

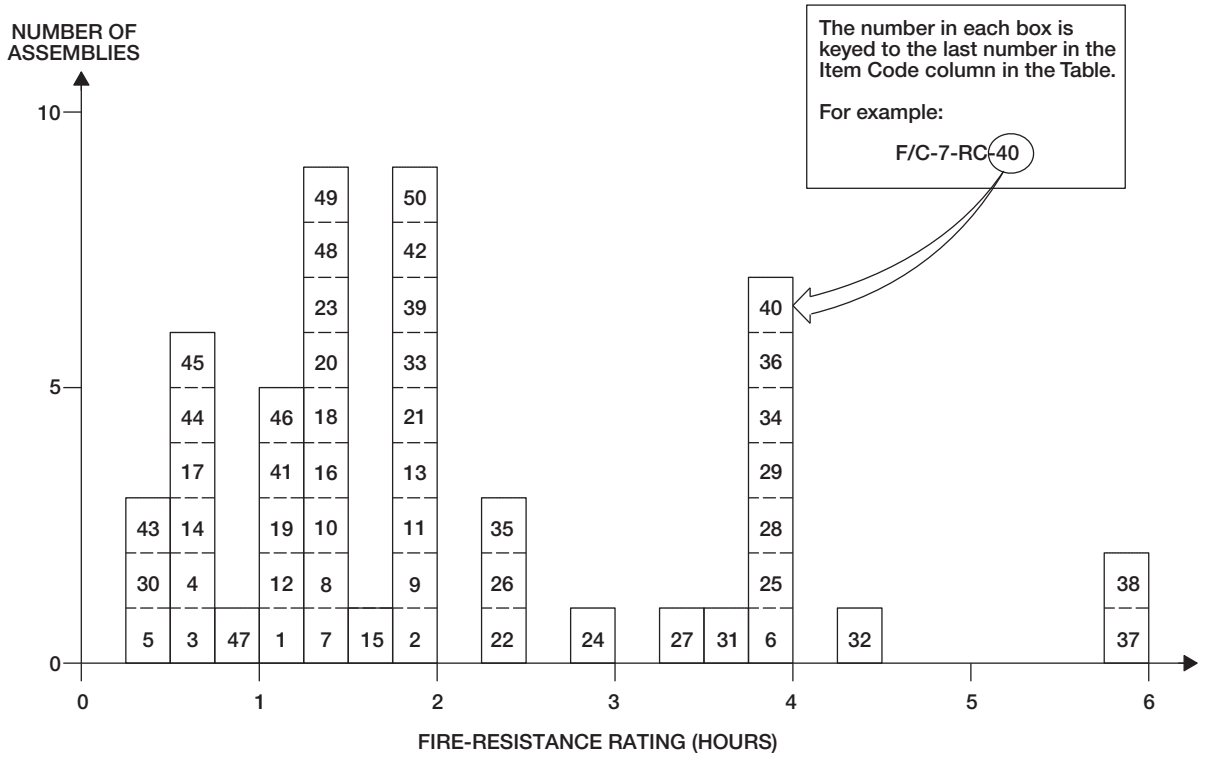

NUMBER OF ASSEMBLIES
10
5
0
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (HOURS)
The number in each box is keyed to the last number in the Item Code column in the Table.
For example:
F/C-7-RC-40
5 30 43 45 44 17 3 4 14 47 1 46 41 19 12 7 49 48 23 20 18 16 10 8 15 2 50 42 39 33 21 13 11 9 22 35 24 27 31 6 40 36 34 29 28 25 32 38 37

TABLE 3.1
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—REINFORCED CONCRETE

ITEM CODE	ASSEMBLY THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-3-RC-1	$3^3/_4$″	$3^3/_4$″ thick floor; $3^1/_4$″ (5475 psi) concrete deck; $^1/_2$″ plaster under deck; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $5^1/_2$″ pitch with $^7/_8$″ concrete cover; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $4^1/_2$″ pitch perpendicular with $^1/_2$″ concrete cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	24 min			7	1, 2	$^1/_3$
F/C-3-RC-2	$3^1/_4$″	$3^1/_4$″ deep (3540 psi) concrete deck; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $5^1/_2$″ pitch with $^7/_8$″ cover; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $4^1/_2$″ pitch perpendicular with $^1/_2$″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3, 4	2
F/C-3-RC-3	$3^1/_4$″	$3^1/_4$″ deep (4175 psi) concrete deck; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $5^1/_2$″ pitch with $^7/_8$″ cover; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $4^1/_2$″ pitch perpendicular with $^1/_2$″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	31 min			7	1, 5	$^1/_2$
F/C-3-RC-4	$3^1/_4$″	$3^1/_4$″ deep (4355 psi) concrete deck; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $5^1/_2$″ pitch with $^7/_8$″ cover; $^3/_8$″ main reinforcement bars at $4^1/_2$″ pitch perpendicular with $^1/_2$″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	41 min			7	1, 5, 6	$^1/_2$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.1—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—REINFORCED CONCRETE

ITEM CODE	ASSEMBLY THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-3-RC-5	3 1/4″	3 1/4″ thick (3800 psi) concrete deck; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 5 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 4 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	1 hr 5 min			7	1, 5	1
F/C-4-RC-6	4 1/4″	4 1/4″ thick; 3 1/4″ (4000 psi) concrete deck; 1″ sprayed asbestos lower surface; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 5 7/8″ pitch with 7/8″ concrete cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 4 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ concrete cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	4 hrs			7	1, 7	4
F/C-4-RC-7	4″	4″ (5025 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 3/4″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 3/4″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	140 psf	1 hr 16 min			7	1, 2	1 1/4
F/C-4-RC-8	4″	4″ thick (4905 psi) deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 3/4″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	100 psf	1 hr 23 min			7	1, 2	1 1/3
F/C-4-RC-9	4″	4″ deep (4370 psi); 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 6″ pitch with 3/4″ cover; 1/4″ main reinforcement bars at 4″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	150 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3	2
F/C-4-RC-10	4″	4″ thick (5140 psi) deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 3/4″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	140 psf	1 hr 16 min			7	1, 5	1 1/4
F/C-4-RC-11	4″	4″ thick (4000 psi) concrete deck; 3″ × 1 1/2″ × 4 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S.; flush with top surface; 4″ × 6″ x 13 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ from bottom of slab; 6′6″ span restrained.	150 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3	2
F/C-4-RC-12	4″	4″ deep (2380 psi) concrete deck; 3″ × 1 1/2″ × 4 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S.; flush with top surface; 4″ × 6″ x 13 SWG mesh reinforcement 1″ from bottom surface; 6′6″ span restrained.	150 psf	1 hr 3 min			7	1, 2	1
F/C-4-RC-13	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ thick (5200 psi) deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/4″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 3/4″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	140 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3	2
F/C-4-RC-14	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ deep (2525 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 3/8″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	150 psf	42 min			7	1, 5	2/3
F/C-4-RC-15	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ deep (4830 psi) concrete deck; 1 1/2″ × No. 15 gage wire mesh; 3/8″ reinforcement bars at 15″ pitch with 1″ cover; 1/2″ main reinforcement bars at 6″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	75 psf	1 hr 32 min			7	1, 8	1 1/2
F/C-4-RC-16	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ deep (4595 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	75 psf	1 hr 20 min			7	1, 8	1 1/3

TABLE 3.1—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—REINFORCED CONCRETE

ITEM CODE	ASSEMBLY THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-4-RC-17	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ deep (3625 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	75 psf	35 min			7	1, 8	1/2
F/C-4-RC-18	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ deep (4410 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	85 psf	1 hr 27 min			7	1, 8	1 1/3
F/C-4-RC-19	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ deep (4850 psi) deck; 3/8″ reinforcement bars at 15″ pitch with 1″ cover; 1/2″ main reinforcement bars at 6″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	75 psf	2 hrs 15 min			7	1, 9	2 1/4
F/C-4-RC-20	4 1/2″	4 1/2″ deep (3610 psi) deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	75 psf	1 hr 22 min			7	1, 8	1 1/3
F/C-5-RC-21	5″	5″ deep; 4 1/2″ (5830 psi) concrete deck; 1/2″ plaster finish bottom of slab; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	69 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3	2
F/C-5-RC-22	5″	4 1/2″ (5290 psi) concrete deck; 1/2″ plaster finish bottom of slab; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	No load	2 hrs 28 min			7	1, 10, 11	2 1/4
F/C-5-RC-23	5″	5″ (3020 psi) concrete deck; 3″ × 1 1/2″ × 4 lbs R.S.J.; 2′ C.R.S. with 1″ cover on bottom and top flanges; 8′ span restrained.	172 psf	1 hr 24 min			7	1, 2, 12	1 1/4
F/C-5-RC-24	5 1/2″	5″ (5180 psi) concrete deck; 1/2″ retarded plaster underneath slab; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 1 3/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1″ cover; 12′ span simply supported.	60 psf	2 hrs 48 min			7	1, 10	2 3/4
F/C-6-RC-25	6″	6″ deep (4800 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 7/8″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	4 hrs			7	1, 7	4
F/C-6-RC-26	6″	6″ (4650 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ main reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	2 hrs 23 min			7	1, 2	2 1/4
F/C-6-RC-27	6″	6″ deep (6050 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 7 1/2″ pitch with 7/8″ cover; 3/8″ reinforcement bars at 3 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	195 psf	3 hrs 30 min			7	1, 10	3 1/2
F/C-6-RC-28	6″	6″ deep (5180 psi) concrete deck; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 8″ pitch with 3/4″ cover; 1/4″ reinforcement bars at 5 1/2″ pitch perpendicular with 1/2″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	150 psf	4 hrs			7	1, 7	4

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.1—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—REINFORCED CONCRETE

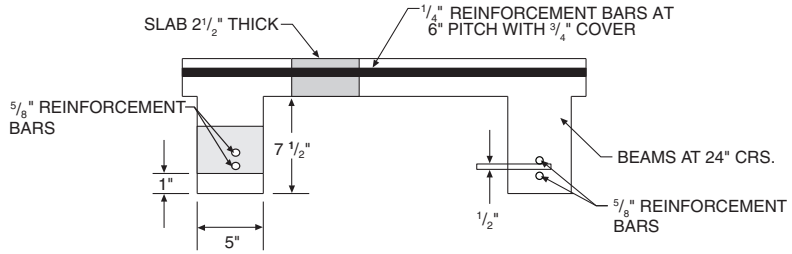
ITEM CODE	ASSEMBLY THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-6-RC-29	6″	6″ thick (4180 psi) concrete deck; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S. with 1″ cover on both top and bottom flanges; 13′1″ span restrained.	160 psf	3 hrs 48 min			7	1, 10	$3^{3}/_{4}$
F/C-6-RC-30	6″	6″ thick (3720 psi) concrete deck; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S. with 1″ cover on both top and bottom flanges; 12′ span simply supported.	115 psf	29 min			7	1, 5, 13	$^{1}/_{4}$
F/C-6-RC-31	6″	6″ deep (3450 psi) concrete deck; 4″ × $1^{3}/_{4}$″ × 5 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S. with 1″ cover on both top and bottom flanges; 12′ span simply supported.	25 psf	3 hrs 35 min			7	1, 2	$3^{1}/_{2}$
F/C-6-RC-32	6″	6″ deep (4460 psi) concrete deck; 4″ × $1^{3}/_{4}$″ × 5 lbs R.S.J.; 2′ C.R.S. with 1″ cover on both top and bottom flanges; 12′ span simply supported.	60 psf	4 hrs 30 min			7	1, 10	$4^{1}/_{2}$
F/C-6-RC-33	6″	6″ deep (4360 psi) concrete deck; 4″ × $1^{3}/_{4}$″ × 5 lbs R.S.J.; 2′ C.R.S. with 1″ cover on both top and bottom flanges; 13′1″ span restrained.	60 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3	2
F/C-6-RC-34	$6^{1}/_{4}$″	$6^{1}/_{4}$″ thick; $4^{3}/_{4}$″ (5120 psi) concrete core; 1″ T&G board flooring; $^{1}/_{2}$″ plaster undercoat; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 3′ C.R.S. flush with top surface concrete; 12′ span simply supported; 2″ × 1′3″ clinker concrete insert.	100 psf	4 hrs			7	1, 7	4
F/C-6-RC-35	$6^{1}/_{4}$″	$4^{3}/_{4}$″ (3600 psi) concrete core; 1″ T&G board flooring; $^{1}/_{2}$″ plaster undercoat; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 3′ C.R.S. flush with top surface concrete; 12′ span simply supported; 2″ × 1′3″ clinker concrete insert.	100 psf	2 hrs 30 min			7	1, 5	$2^{1}/_{2}$
F/C-6-RC-36	$6^{1}/_{4}$″	$4^{3}/_{4}$″ (2800 psi) concrete core; 1″ T&G board flooring; $^{1}/_{2}$″ plaster undercoat; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 3′ C.R.S. flush with top surface concrete; 12″ span simply supported; 2″ × 1′3″ clinker concrete insert.	80 psf	4 hrs			7	1, 7	4
F/C-7-RC-37	7″	(3640 psi) concrete deck; $^{1}/_{4}$″ reinforcement bars at 6″ pitch with $1^{1}/_{2}$″ cover; $^{1}/_{4}$″ reinforcement bars at 5″ pitch perpendicular with $1^{1}/_{2}$″ cover; 13′1″ span restrained.	169 psf	6 hrs			7	1, 14	6
F/C-7-RC-38	7″	(4060 psi) concrete deck; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S. with $1^{1}/_{2}$″ cover on both top and bottom flanges; 4″ × 6″ × 13 SWG mesh reinforcement $1^{1}/_{2}$″ from bottom of slab; 13′1″ span restrained.	175 psf	6 hrs			7	1, 14	6
F/C-7-RC-39	$7^{1}/_{4}$″	$5^{3}/_{4}$″ (4010 psi) concrete core; 1″ T&G board flooring; $^{1}/_{2}$″ plaster undercoat; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S. 1″ down from top surface of concrete; 12′ simply supported span; 2″ × 1′3″ clinker concrete insert.	95 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3	2
F/C-7-RC-40	$7^{1}/_{4}$″	$5^{3}/_{4}$″ (3220 psi) concrete core; 1″ T&G board flooring; $^{1}/_{2}$″ plaster undercoat; 4″ × 3″ × 10 lbs R.S.J.; 2′6″ C.R.S. 1″ down from top surface of concrete; 12′ simply supported span; 2″ × 1′3″ clinker concrete insert.	95 psf	4 hrs			7	1, 7	4

TABLE 3.1—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—REINFORCED CONCRETE

ITEM CODE	ASSEMBLY THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-10-RC-41	10″ ($2^1/_4$″ slab)	Ribbed floor, see Note 15 for details; slab $2^1/_2$″ deep (3020 psi); $^1/_4$″ reinforcement bars at 6″ pitch with $^3/_4$″ cover; beams $7^1/_2$″ deep × 5″ wide; 24″ C.R.S.; $^5/_8$″ reinforcement bars two rows $^1/_2$″ vertically apart with 1″ cover; 13′1″ span restricted.	195 psf	1 hr 4 min			7	1, 2, 15	1
F/C-5-RC-42	$5^1/_2$″	Composite ribbed concrete slab assembly; see Note 17 for details.	See Note 16	2 hrs			43	16, 17	2
F/C-3-RC-43	3″	2500 psi concrete; $^5/_8$″ cover; fully restrained at test.	See Note 16	30 min			43	16	$^1/_2$
F/C-3-RC-44	3″	2000 psi concrete; $^5/_8$″ cover; free or partial restraint at test.	See Note 16	45 min			43	16	$^3/_4$
F/C-4-RC-45	4″	2500 psi concrete; $^5/_8$″ cover; fully restrained at test.	See Note 16	40 min			43	16	$^2/_3$
F/C-4-RC-46	4″	2000 psi concrete; $^3/_4$″ cover; free or partial restraint at test.	See Note 16	1 hr 15 min			43	16	$1^1/_4$
F/C-5-RC-47	5″	2500 psi concrete; $^3/_4$″ cover; fully restrained at test.	See Note 16	1 hr			43	16	1
F/C-5-RC-48	5″	2000 psi concrete; $^3/_4$″ cover; free or partial restraint at test.	See Note 16	1 hr 30 min			43	16	$1^1/_2$
F/C-6-RC-49	6″	2500 psi concrete; 1″ cover; fully restrained at test.	See Note 16	1 hr 30 min			43	16	$1^1/_2$
F/C-6-RC-50	6″	2000 psi concrete; 1″ cover; free or partial restraint at test.	See Note 16	2 hrs			43	16	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. British test.
2. Failure mode—local back face temperature rise.
3. Tested for Grade "C" (2-hour) fire resistance
4. Collapse imminent following hose stream.
5. Failure mode—flame thru.
6. Void formed with explosive force and report.
7. Achieved Grade "B" (4-hour) fire resistance (British).
8. Failure mode—collapse.
9. Test was run to 2 hours, but specimen was partially supported by the furnace at $1^1/_4$ hours.
10. Failure mode—average back face temperature.
11. Recommended endurance for non-load-bearing performance only.
12. Floor maintained load-bearing ability to 2 hours at which point test was terminated.
13. Test was run to 3 hours at which time failure mode 2 (above) was reached in spite of crack formation at 29 minutes.
14. Tested for Grade "A" (6-hour) fire resistance.
15. 

16. Load unspecified.
17. Total assembly thickness $5^1/_2$ inches. Three-inch thick blocks of molded excelsior bonded with Portland cement used as inserts with $2^1/_2$-inch cover (concrete) above blocks and $^3/_4$-inch gypsum plaster below. Nine-inch-wide ribs containing reinforcing steel of unspecified size interrupted 20-inch-wide segments of slab composite (i.e., plaster, excelsior blocks, concrete cover).

FIGURE 3.2
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—STEEL STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

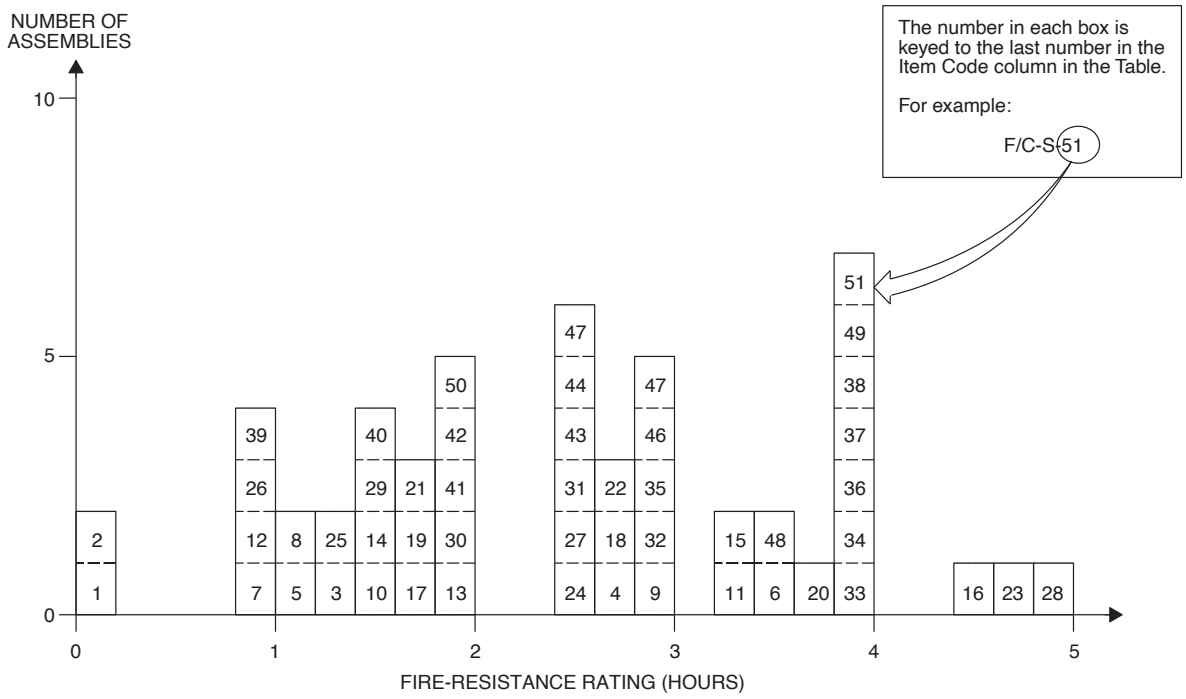


TABLE 3.2
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—STEEL STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-S-1	0″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete; membrane: none.	145 psf	7 min			3	1, 2, 3, 8	0
F/C-S-2	0″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete; membrane: none	145 psf	7 min			3	1, 2, 3, 8	0
F/C-S-3	$^1/_2$″	10′ × 13′ 6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete, 1:2:4; membrane: furring 12″ o.c.; clips A, B, G; no extra reinforcement; $^1/_2$″ plaster, 1.5:2.5.	145 psf	1 hr 15 min			3	2, 3, 8	$1^1/_4$
F/C-S-4	$^1/_2$″	10′ × 13′ 6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete, 1:2:4; membrane: furring 16″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; diagonal wire reinforcement; $^1/_2$″ plaster, 1.5:2.5.	145 psf	2 hrs 46 min			3	3, 8	$2^3/_4$
F/C-S-5	$^1/_2$″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete, 1:2:4; membrane: furring 16″ o.c.; clips A, B, G; no extra reinforcement; $^1/_2$″ plaster, 1.5:2.5.	145 psf	1 hr 4 min			3	2, 3, 8	1
F/C-S-6	$^1/_2$″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete, 1:2:4; membrane: furring 16″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; hexagonal mesh reinforcement; $^1/_2$″ plaster.	145 psf	3 hrs 28 min			3	2, 4, 8	$2^1/_3$
F/C-S-7	$^1/_2$″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 4 lbs rib lath; 6″ × 6″ 10 × 10 gage reinforcement; 2″ deck gravel concrete; membrane: furring 16″ o.c.; clips C, E; reinforcement: none; $^1/_2$″ plaster, 1.5:2.5 mill mix.	N/A	55 min			3	5, 8	$^3/_4$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.2—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—STEEL STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-S-8	1/2″	Spec. 9′ × 4′4″; S.J. 103 bar joists, 18″ o.c.; deck: 4 lbs rib lath base; 6″ × 6″ 10 × 10 gage reinforcement; 2″ deck 1:2:4 gravel concrete; membrane: furring, 3/4″ C.R.S., 16″ o.c.; clips C, E; reinforcement: none; 1/2″ plaster, 1.5:2.5 mill mix.	300 psf	1 hr 10 min			3	2, 3, 8	1
F/C-S-9	5/8″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete, 1:2:4; membrane: furring 12″ o.c.; clips A, B, G; Extra “A” clips reinforcement; 5/8″ plaster, 1.5:2, 1.5:3.	145 psf	3 hrs			3	6, 8	3
F/C-S-10	5/8″	18′ × 13′6″; joists, S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 4 lbs rib lath; 6″ × 6″ 10 × 10 gage reinforcement; 2″ deck, 1:2:3.5 gravel concrete; membrane: furring, spacing 16″ o.c.; clips C, E; reinforcement: none; 5/8″ plaster, 1.5:2.5 mill mix.	145 psf	1 hr 25 min			3	2, 3, 8	1 1/3
F/C-S-11	5/8″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete, 1:2:4; membrane: furring 12″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; diagonal wire reinforcement; 5/8″ plaster, 1.5:2; 0.5:3.	145 psf	3 hrs 15 min			3	2, 4, 8	3 1/4
F/C-S-12	5/8″	10′ × 13′6″; joists, S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 3.4 lbs rib lath; 6″ × 6″ 10 × 10 gage reinforcement; 2″ deck, 1:2:4 gravel concrete; membrane: furring 16″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; reinforcement: none; 5/8″ plaster, 1.5:2.5.	145 psf	1 hr			3	7, 8	1
F/C-S-13	3/4″	Spec. 9′ × 4′4″; S.J. 103, 18″ o.c.; deck: 4 lbs rib lath; 6″ × 6″ 10 × 10 gage reinforcement; 2″ deck, 1:2:4 gravel concrete; membrane: furring, 3/4″ C.R.S., 16″ o.c.; clips C, E; reinforcement: none; 3/4″ plaster, 1.5:2.5 mill mix.	300 psf	1 hr 56 min			3	3, 8	1 3/4
F/C-S-14	7/8″	Floor finish: 1″ concrete; plate cont. weld; 4″ 7.7 lbs “I” beams; ceiling: 1/4″ rods 12″ o.c.; 7/8″ gypsum sand plaster.	105 psf	1 hr 35 min			6	2, 4, 9, 10	1 1/2
F/C-S-15	1″	Floor finish: 1 1/2″ L.W. concrete; 1/2″ limestone cement; plate cont. weld; 5″, 10 lbs “I” beams; ceiling: 1/4″ rods, 12″ o.c. tack welded to beams; metal lath; 1″ P. C. plaster.	165 psf	3 hrs 20 min			6	4, 9, 11	3 1/3
F/C-S-16	1″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete, 1:2:4; membrane: furring 12″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; hexagonal mesh reinforcement; 1″ thick plaster, 1.5:2; 1.5:3.	145 psf	4 hrs 26 min			3	2, 4, 8	4 1/3
F/C-S-17	1″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 3.4 lbs rib lath; 6″ × 6″ 10 × 10 gage reinforcement; 2″ deck 1:2:4 gravel concrete; membrane: furring 16″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; 1″ plaster.	145 psf	1 hr 42 min			3	2, 4, 8	1 2/3
F/C-S-18	1 1/8″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 2″ concrete 1:2:4; membrane: furring 12″ o.c.; clips C, E, F, G; diagonal wire reinforcement; 1 1/8″ plaster.	145 psf	2 hrs 44 min			3	2, 4, 8	2 2/3
F/C-S-19	1 1/8″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 1 1/2″ gypsum concrete over; 1/2″ gypsum board base; membrane: furring 12″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; 1 1/8″ plaster, 1.5:2; 1.5:3.	145 psf	1 hr 40 min			3	2, 3, 8	1 2/3
F/C-S-20	1 1/8″	2 1/2″ cinder concrete; 1/2″ topping; plate 6″ welds 12″ o.c.; 5″ 18.9 lbs “H” center; 5″ 10 lbs “I” ends; 1″ channels 18″ o.c.; 1 1/8″ gypsum sand plaster.	150 psf	3 hrs 43 min			6	2, 4, 9, 11	3 2/3
F/C-S-21	1 1/4″	10′ × 13′6″; S.J. 103, 24″ o.c.; deck: 1 1/2″ gypsum concrete over; 1/2″ gypsum board base; membrane: furring 12″ o.c.; clips D, E, F, G; 1 1/4″ plaster, 1.5:2; 1.5:3.	145 psf	1 hr 48 min			3	2, 3, 8	1 2/3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.2—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—STEEL STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-S-22	1 1/4″	Floor finish: 1 1/2″ limestone concrete; 1/2″ sand cement topping; plate to beams 3 1/2″; 12″ o.c. welded; 5″ 10 lbs “I” beams; 1″ channels 18″ o.c.; 1 1/4″ wood fiber gypsum sand plaster on metal lath.	292 psf	2 hrs 45 min			6	2, 4, 9, 10	2 3/4
F/C-S-23	1 1/2″	2 1/2″ L.W. (gas exp.) concrete; deck: 1/2″ topping; plate 6 1/4″ welds 12″ o.c.; beams: 5″ 18.9 lbs “H” center; 5″ 10 lbs “I” ends; membrane: 1″ channels 18″ o.c.; 1 1/2″ gypsum sand plaster.	150 psf	4 hrs 42 min			6	2, 4, 9	4 2/3
F/C-S-24	1 1/2″	Floor finish: 1 1/2″ limestone concrete; 1/2″ cement topping; plate 3 1/2″ 12″ o.c. welded; 5″ 10 lbs “I” beams; ceiling: 1″ channels 18″ o.c.; 1 1/2″ gypsum plaster.	292 psf	2 hrs 34 min			6	2, 4, 9, 10	2 1/2
F/C-S-25	1 1/2″	Floor finish: 1 1/2″ gravel concrete on exp. metal; plate cont. weld; 4″ 7.7 lbs “I” beams; ceiling: 1/4″ rods 12″ o.c. welded to beams; 1 1/2″ fiber gypsum sand plaster.	70 psf	1 hr 24 min			6	2, 4, 9, 10	1 1/3
F/C-S-26	2 1/2″	Floor finish: bare plate; 6 1/4″ welding, 12″ o.c.; 5″ 18.9 lbs “H” girders (inner); 5″ 10 lbs “I” girders (two outer); 1″ channels 18″ o.c.; 2″ reinforced gypsum tile; 1/2″ gypsum sand plaster.	122 psf	1 hr			6	7, 9, 11	1
F/C-S-27	2 1/2″	Floor finish: 2″ gravel concrete; plate to beams 3 1/2″ welded 12″ o.c.; 4″ 7.7 lbs “I” beams; 2″ gypsum ceiling tiles; 1/2″ 1:3 gypsum sand plaster.	105 psf	2 hrs 31 min			6	2, 4, 9, 10	2 1/2
F/C-S-28	2 1/2″	Floor finish: 1 1/2″ gravel concrete; 1/2″ gypsum asphalt; plate continuous weld; 4″ 7.7 lbs “I” beams; 12″ 31.8 lbs “I” beams, girder at 5′ from one end; 1″ channels 18″ o.c.; 2″ reinforcement gypsum tile; 1/2″ 1:3 gypsum sand plaster.	200 psf	4 hrs 55 min			6	2, 4, 9, 11	4 2/3
F/C-S-29	3/4″	Floor: 2″ reinforced concrete or 2″ precast reinforced gypsum tile; ceiling: 3/4″ Portland cement-sand plaster 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat with 15 lbs hydrated lime and 3 lbs of short asbestos fiber bag per cement or 3/4″ sanded gypsum plaster 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat.	See Note 12	1 hr 30 min		1		12–14	1 1/2
F/C-S-30	3/4″	Floor: 2 1/4″ reinforced concrete or 2″ reinforced gypsum tile, the latter with 1/4″ mortar finish; ceiling: 3/4″ sanded gypsum plaster, 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat.	See Note 12	2 hrs		1		12–14	2
F/C-S-31	3/4″	Floor: 2 1/2″ reinforced concrete or 2″ reinforced gypsum tile, the latter with 1/4″ mortar finish; ceiling: 1″ neat gypsum plaster or 3/4″ gypsum-vermiculite plaster, ratio of gypsum to fine vermiculite 2:1 to 3:1.	See Note 12	2 hrs 30 min		1		12–14	2 1/2
F/C-S-32	3/4″	Floor: 2 1/2″ reinforced concrete or 2″ reinforced gypsum tile, the latter with 1/2″ mortar finish; ceiling: 1″ neat gypsum plaster or 3/4″ gypsum-vermiculite plaster, ratio of gypsum to fine vermiculite 2:1 to 3:1.	See Note 12	3 hrs		1		12–14	3
F/C-S-33	1″	Floor: 2 1/2″ reinforced concrete or 2″ reinforced gypsum slabs, the latter with 1/2″ mortar finish; ceiling: 1″ gypsum-vermiculite plaster applied on metal lath in a ratio of 2:1 to 3:1 gypsum to vermiculite by weight.	See Note 12	4 hrs		1		12–14	4

TABLE 3.2—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—STEEL STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-S-34	$2^1/_2$″	Floor: 2″ reinforced concrete or 2″ precast reinforced Portland cement concrete or gypsum slabs, precast slabs to be finished with $^1/_4$″ mortar top coat; ceiling: 2″ precast reinforced gypsum tile, anchored into beams with metal ties or clips and covered with $^1/_2$″ 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 12	4 hrs		1		12–14	4
F/C-S-35	1″	Floor: 1:3:6 Portland cement, sand and gravel concrete applied directly to the top of steel units and $1^1/_2$″ thick at top of cells, plus $^1/_2$″ 1:$2^1/_2$″ cement-sand finish, total thickness at top of cells, 2″; ceiling: 1″ neat gypsum plaster, back of lath 2″ or more from underside of cellular steel.	See Note 15	3 hrs		1		15–18	3
F/C-S-36	1″	Floor: same as F/C-S-35; ceiling: 1″ gypsum-vermiculite plaster (ratio of gypsum to vermiculite 2:1 to 3:1), the back of lath 2″ or more from under-side of cellular steel.	See Note 15	4 hrs		1		15–18	4
F/C-S-37	1″	Floor: same as F/C-S-35; ceiling: 1″ neat gypsum plaster; back of lath 9″ or more from underside of cellular steel.	See Note 15	4 hrs		1		15–18	4
F/C-S-38	1″	Floor: same as F/C-S-35; ceiling: 1″ gypsum-vermiculite plaster (ratio of gypsum to vermiculite 2:1 to 3:1), the back of lath being 9″ or more from underside of cellular steel.	See Note 15	5 hrs		1		15–18	5
F/C-S-39	$^3/_4$″	Floor: asbestos paper 14 lbs/100 ft^2 cemented to steel deck with waterproof linoleum cement, wood screeds and $^7/_8$″ wood floor; ceiling: $^3/_4$″ sanded gypsum plaster 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat.	See Note 19	1 hr		1		19–22	1
F/C-S-40	$^3/_4$″	Floor: $1^1/_2$″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: $^3/_4$″ sanded gypsum plaster 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat.	See Note 19	1 hr 30 min		1		19–22	$1^1/_2$
F/C-S-41	$^3/_4$″	Floor: 2″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: $^3/_4$″ sanded gypsum plaster, 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat.	See Note 19	2 hrs		1		19–22	2
F/C-S-42	1″	Floor: 2″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: 1″ Portland cement-sand plaster with 10 lbs of hydrated lime for each bag of cement, 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:$2^1/_2$ for brown coat.	See Note 19	2 hrs		1		19–22	2
F/C-S-43	$1^1/_2$″	Floor: 2″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: $1^1/_2$″ 1:2 sanded gypsum plaster on ribbed metal lath.	See Note 19	2 hrs 30 min		1		19–22	$2^1/_2$
F/C-S-44	$1^1/_8$″	Floor: 2″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: $1^1/_8$″ 1:1 sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 19	2 hrs 30 min		1		19–22	$2^1/_2$
F/C-S-45	1″	Floor: $2^1/_2$″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: 1″ 1:2 sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 19	2 hrs 30 min		1		19–22	$2^1/_2$
F/C-S-46	$^3/_4$″	Floor: $2^1/_2$″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: 1″ neat gypsum plaster or $^3/_4$″ gypsum-vermiculite plaster, ratio of gypsum to vermiculite 2:1 to 3:1.	See Note 19	3 hrs		1		19–22	3
F/C-S-47	$1^1/_8$″	Floor: $2^1/_2$″ 1:2:4 Portland cement, sand and cinder concrete plus $^1/_2$″ 1:$2^1/_2$ cement-sand finish; total thickness 3″; ceiling: $1^1/_8$″ 1:1 sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 19	3 hrs		1		19–22	3
F/C-S-48	$1^1/_8$″	Floor: $2^1/_2$″ gas expanded Portland cement-sand concrete plus $^1/_2$″ 1:2.5 cement-sand finish; total thickness 3″; ceiling: $1^1/_8$″ 1:1 sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 19	3 hrs 30 min		1		19–22	$3^1/_2$

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.2—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—STEEL STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-S-49	1″	Floor: $2^1/_2$″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: 1″ gypsum vermiculite plaster, ratio of gypsum to vermiculite 2:1 to 3:1.	See Note 19	4 hrs		1		19–22	4
F/C-S-50	$2^1/_2$″	Floor: 2″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: 2″ interlocking gypsum tile supported on upper face of lower flanges of beams, $^1/_2$″ 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 19	2 hrs		1		19–22	2
F/C-S-51	$2^1/_2$″	Floor: 2″ 1:2:4 Portland cement concrete; ceiling: 2″ precast metal reinforced gypsum tile, $^1/_2$″ 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster (tile clipped to channels which are clipped to lower flanges of beams).	See Note 19	4 hrs		1		12, 20–22	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. No protective membrane over structural steel.
2. Performance time indicates first endpoint reached; only several tests were continued to points where other failures occurred.
3. Load failure.
4. Thermal failure.
5. This is an estimated time to load-bearing failure. The same joist and deck specimen was used for a later test with different membrane protection.
6. Test stopped at 3 hours to reuse specimen; no endpoint reached.
7. Test stopped at 1 hour to reuse specimen; no endpoint reached.
8. All plaster used = gypsum.
9. Specimen size: 18 feet by $13^1/_2$ inches. Floor deck base material: $^1/_4$-inch by 18-foot steel plate welded to “I” beams.
10. “I” beams, 24 inches o.c.
11. “I” beams, 48 inches o.c.
12. Apply to open-web joists, pressed steel joists or rolled steel beams, which are not stressed beyond 18,000 lbs/in.^{2} in flexure for open-web pressed or light rolled joists, and 20,000 lbs/in.^{2} for American standard or heavier rolled beams.
13. Ratio of weight of Portland cement to fine and coarse aggregates combined for floor slabs shall not be less than $1{:}6^1/_2$.
14. Plaster for ceiling shall be applied on metal lath which shall be tied to supports to give the equivalent of single No. 18 gage steel wires 5 inches o.c.
15. Load: maximum fiber stress in steel not to exceed 16,000 psi.
16. Prefabricated units 2 feet wide with length equal to the span, composed of two pieces of No. 18 gage formed steel welded together to give four longitudinal cells.
17. Depth not less than 3 inches and distance between cells not less than 2 inches.
18. Ceiling: metal lath tied to furring channels secured to runner channels hung from cellular steel.
19. Load: rolled steel supporting beams and steel plate base shall not be stressed beyond 20,000 psi in flexure. Formed steel (with wide upper flange) construction shall not be stressed beyond 16,000 psi.
20. Some type of expanded metal or woven wire shall be embedded to prevent cracking in concrete flooring.
21. Ceiling plaster shall be metal lath wired to rods or channels which are clipped or welded to steel construction. Lath shall be no smaller than 18 gage steel wire and not more than 7 inches o.c.
22. The securing rods or channels shall be at least as effective as single $^3/_{16}$-inch rods with 1-inch of their length bent over the lower flanges of beams with the rods or channels tied to this clip with 14 gage iron wire.

FIGURE 3.3
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—WOOD JOIST

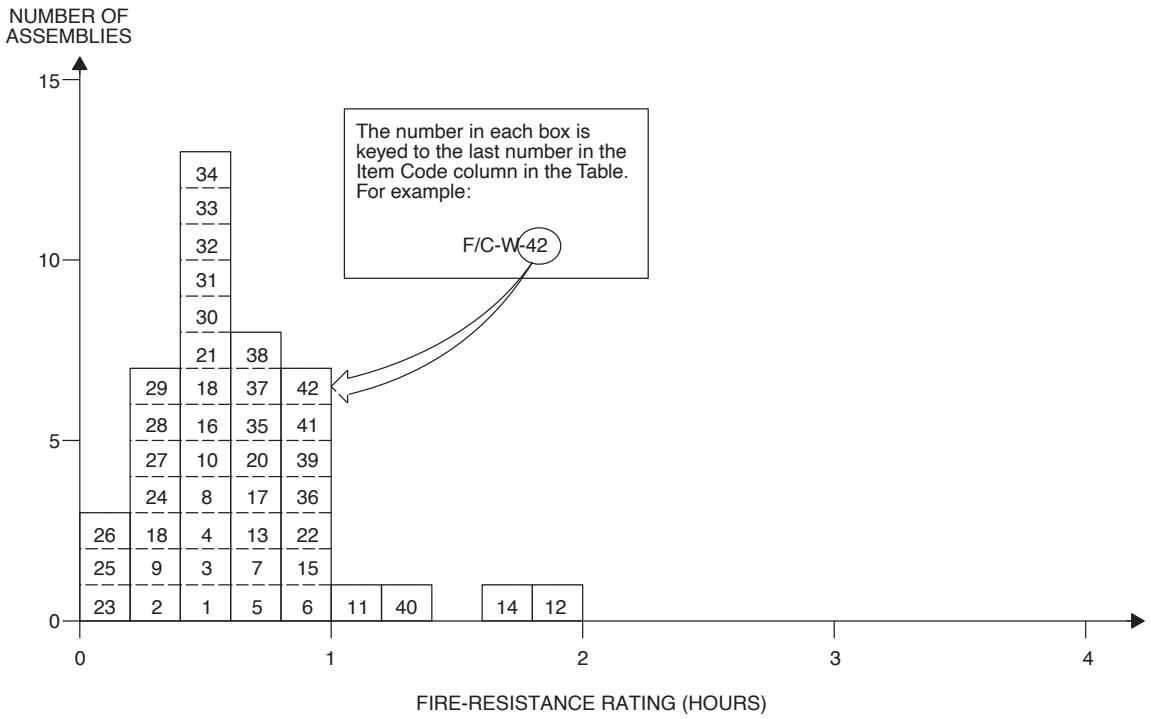


TABLE 3.3
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—WOOD JOIST

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-W-1	3/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 18″ o.c.; deck: 1″ T&G; filler: 3″ of ashes on 1/2″ boards nailed to joist sides 2″ from bottom; 2″ air space; membrane: 3/8″ gypsum board.	60 psf	36 min			7	1, 2	1/2
F/C-W-2	1/2″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 7″ joists 15″ o.c.; deck: 1″ nominal lumber; membrane: 1/2″ fiberboard.	60 psf	22 min			7	1–3	1/4
F/C-W-3	1/2″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 7″ wood joists 16″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ bridging at center; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: 1/2″ fiberboard; 2 coats “distemper” paint.	30 psf	28 min			7	1, 3, 15	1/3
F/C-W-4	3/16″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 7″ wood joists 16″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ bridging at center span; deck: 1″ nominal lumber; membrane: 1/2″ fiberboard under 3/16″ gypsum plaster.	30 psf	32 min			7	1, 2	1/2
F/C-W-5	5/8″	As per F/C-W-4, except membrane is 5/8″ lime plaster.	70 psf	48 min			7	1, 2	3/4
F/C-W-6	5/8″	As per F/C-W-5, except membrane is 5/8″ gypsum plaster on 22 gage 3/8″ metal lath.	70 psf	49 min			7	1, 2	3/4
F/C-W-7	1/2″	As per F/C-W-6, except membrane is 1/2″ fiberboard under 1/2″ gypsum plaster.	60 psf	43 min			7	1–3	2/3
F/C-W-8	1/2″	As per F/C-W-7, except membrane is 1/2″ gypsum board.	60 psf	33 min			7	1–3	1/2
F/C-W-9	9/16″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 7″ wood joists 15″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ bridging at center; deck: 1″ nominal lumber; membrane: 3/8″ gypsum board; 3/16″ gypsum plaster.	60 psf	24 min			7	1–3	1/3

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.3—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—WOOD JOIST

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-W-10	5/8″	As per F/C-W-9, except membrane is 5/8″ gypsum plaster on wood lath.	60 psf	27 min			7	1–3	1/3
F/C-W-11	7/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 15″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ bridging at center span; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: original ceiling joists have 3/8″ plaster on wood lath; 4″ metal hangers attached below joists creating 15″ chases filled with mineral wool and closed with 7/8″ plaster (gypsum) on 3/8″ S.W.M. metal lath to form new ceiling surface.	75 psf	1 hr 10 min			7	1, 2	1
F/C-W-12	7/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 15″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ bridging at center; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: 3″ mineral wool below joists; 3″ hangers to channel below joists; 7/8″ gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to channels.	75 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 4	2
F/C-W-13	7/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 16″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ bridging at center span; deck: 1″ T&G on 1″ bottoms on 3/4″ glass wool strips on 3/4″ gypsum board nailed to joists; membrane: 3/4″ glass wool strips on joists; 3/8″ perforated gypsum lath; 1/2″ gypsum plaster.	60 psf	41 min			7	1, 3	2/3
F/C-W-14	7/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 15″ o.c.; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: 3″ foam concrete in cavity on 1/2″ boards nailed to joists; wood lath nailed to 1″ × 1 1/4″ straps 14 o.c. across joists; 7/8″ gypsum plaster.	60 psf	1 hr 40 min			7	1, 5	1 2/3
F/C-W-15	7/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 18″ o.c.; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: 2″ foam concrete on 1/2″ boards nailed to joist sides 2″ from joist bottom; 2″ air space; 1″ × 1 1/4″ wood straps 14″ o.c. across joists; 7/8″ lime plaster on wood lath.	60 psf	53 min			7	1, 2	3/4
F/C-W-16	7/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: 3″ ashes on 1/2″ boards nailed to joist sides 2″ from joist bottom; 2″ air space; 1″ × 1 1/4″ wood straps 14″ o.c.; 7/8″ gypsum plaster on wood lath.	60 psf	28 min			7	1, 2	1/3
F/C-W-17	7/8″	As per F/C-W-16 but with lime plaster mix.	60 psf	41 min			7	1, 2	2/3
F/C-W-18	7/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 18″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ bridging at center; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: 7/8″ gypsum plaster on wood lath.	60 psf	36 min			7	1, 2	1/2
F/C-W-19	7/8″	As per F/C-W-18, except with lime plaster membrane and deck is 1″ nominal boards (plain edge).	60 psf	19 min			7	1, 2	1/4
F/C-W-20	7/8″	As per F/C-W-19, except deck is 1″ T&G boards.	60 psf	43 min			7	1, 2	2/3
F/C-W-21	1″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 16″ o.c.; 2″ × 1 1/2″ center bridging; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: 3/8″ gypsum base board; 5/8″ gypsum plaster.	70 psf	29 min			7	1, 2	1/3
F/C-W-22	1 1/8″	12′ clear span, 2″ × 9″ wood joists 16″ o.c.; 2″ × 2″ wood bridging at center; deck: 1″ T&G; membrane: hangers, channel with 3/8″ gypsum baseboard affixed under 3/4″ gypsum plaster.	60 psf	1 hr			7	1–3	1
F/C-W-23	3/8″	Deck: 1″ nominal lumber; joists 2″ × 7″, 15″ o.c.; membrane: 3/8″ plasterboard with plaster skim coat.	60 psf	11 1/2 min			12	2, 6	1/6
F/C-W-24	1/2″	Deck: 1″ T&G lumber; joists 2″ × 9″, 16″ o.c.; membrane: 1/2″ plasterboard.	60 psf	18 min			12	2, 7	1/4
F/C-W-25	1/2″	Deck: 1″ T&G lumber; joists 2″ × 7″, 16″ o.c.; membrane: 1/2″ fiber insulation board.	30 psf	8 min			12	2, 8	2/15

TABLE 3.3—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—WOOD JOIST

ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-W-26	1/2″	Deck: 1″ nominal lumber; joists: 2″ × 7″, 15″ o.c.; membrane: 1/2″ fiber insulation board.	60 psf	8 min			12	2, 9	2/15
F/C-W-27	5/8″	Deck: 1″ nominal lumber; joists: 2″ × 7″, 15″ o.c.; membrane: 5/8″ gypsum plaster on wood lath.	60 psf	17 min			12	2, 10	1/4
F/C-W-28	5/8″	Deck: 1″ T&G lumber; joists: 2″ × 9″, 16″ o.c.; membrane: 1/2″ fiber insulation board; 1/2″ plaster.	60 psf	20 min			12	2, 11	1/3
F/C-W-29	No membrane	Exposed wood joists.	See Note 13	15 min		1		1, 12–14	1/4
F/C-W-30	3/8″	Gypsum wallboard: 3/8″ or 1/2″ with 1 1/2″ No. 15 gage nails with 3/16″ heads spaced 6″ o.c. with asbestos paper applied with paperhangers' paste and finished with casein paint.	See Note 13	25 min		1		1, 12–14	1/3
F/C-W-31	1/2″	Gypsum wallboard: 1/2″ with 1 3/4″ No. 12 gage nails with 1/2″ heads, 6″ o.c., and finished with casein paint.	See Note 13	25 min		1		1, 12–14	1/3
F/C-W-32	1/2″	Gypsum wallboard: 1/2″ with 1 1/2″ No. 12 gage nails with 1/2″ heads, 18″ o.c., with asbestos paper applied with paperhangers' paste and secured with 1 1/2″ No. 15 gage nails with 3/16″ heads and finished with casein paint; combined nail spacing 6″ o.c.	See Note 13	30 min		1		1, 12–14	1/2
F/C-W-33	3/8″	Gypsum wallboard: two layers 3/8″ secured with 1 1/2″ No. 15 gage nails with 3/8″ heads, 6″ o.c.	See Note 13	30 min		1		1, 12–14	1/2
F/C-W-34	1/2″	Perforated gypsum lath: 3/8″, plastered with 1 1/8″ No. 13 gage nails with 5/16″ heads, 4″ o.c.; 1/2″ sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 13	30 min		1		1, 12–14	1/2
F/C-W-35	1/2″	Same as F/C-W-34, except with 1 1/8″ No. 13 gage nails with 3/8″ heads, 4″ o.c.	See Note 13	45 min		1		1, 12–14	3/4
F/C-W-36	1/2″	Perforated gypsum lath: 3/8″, nailed with 1 1/8″ No. 13 gage nails with 3/8″ heads, 4″ o.c.; joints covered with 3″ strips of metal lath with 1 3/4″ No. 12 gage nails with 1/2″ heads, 5″ o.c.; 1/2″ sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 13	1 hr		1		1, 12–14	1
F/C-W-37	1/2″	Gypsum lath: 3/8″ and lower layer of 3/8″ perforated gypsum lath nailed with 1 3/4″ No. 13 gage nails with 5/16″ heads, 4″ o.c.; 1/2″ sanded gypsum plaster or 1/2″ Portland cement plaster.	See Note 13	45 min		1		1, 12–14	3/4
F/C-W-38	3/4″	Metal lath: nailed with 1 1/4″ No. 11 gage nails with 3/8″ heads or 6d common nails driven 1″ and bent over, 6″ o.c.; 3/4″ sanded gypsum plaster.	See Note 13	45 min		1		1, 12–14	3/4
F/C-W-39	3/4″	Same as F/C-W-38, except nailed with 1 1/2″ No. 11 barbed roof nails with 7/16″ heads, 6″ o.c.	See Note 13	1 hr		1		1, 12–14	1
F/C-W-40	3/4″	Same as F/C-W-38, except with lath nailed to joists with additional supports for lath 27″ o.c.; attached to alternate joists and consisting of two nails driven 1 1/4″, 2″ above bottom on opposite sides of the joists, one loop of No. 18 wire slipped over each nail, the ends twisted together below lath.	See Note 13	1 hr 15 min		1		1, 12–14	1 1/4

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.3—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—WOOD JOIST

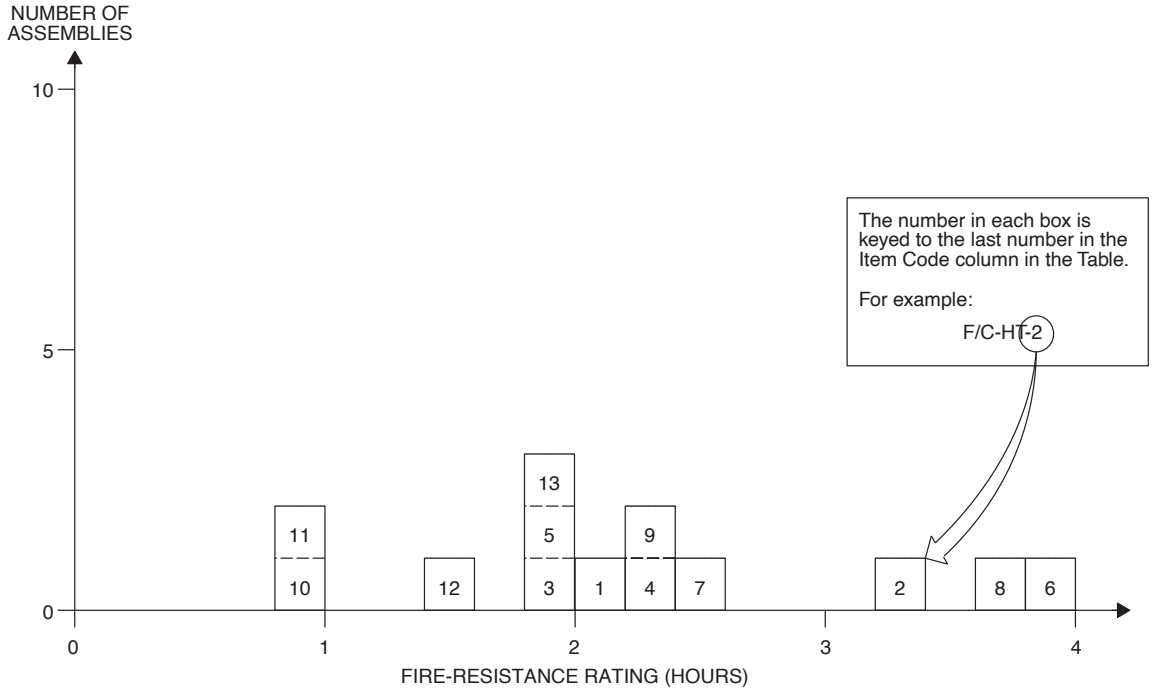
ITEM CODE	MEMBRANE THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-W-41	$^3/_4$″	Metal lath: nailed with $1^1/_2$″ No. 11 barbed roof nails with $^7/_{16}$″ heads, 6 o.c., with $^3/_4$″ Portland cement plaster for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, 3 lbs of asbestos fiber and 15 lbs of hydrated lime per 94 lbs bag of cement.	See Note 13	1 hr		1		1, 12–14	1
F/C-W-42	$^3/_4$″	Metal lath: nailed with 8d No. $11^1/_2$ gage barbed box nails, $2^1/_2$″ driven, $1^1/_4$″ on slant and bent over, 6″ o.c.; $^3/_4$″ sanded gypsum plaster, 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for below coat.	See Note 13	1 hr		1		1, 12–14	1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

Notes:

1. Thickness indicates thickness of first membrane protection on ceiling surface.
2. Failure mode—flame thru.
3. Failure mode—collapse.
4. No endpoint reached at termination of test.
5. Failure imminent—test terminated.
6. Joist failure—11.5 minutes; flame thru—13 minutes; collapse—24 minutes.
7. Joist failure—17 minutes; flame thru—18 minutes; collapse—33 minutes.
8. Joist failure—18 minutes; flame thru—8 minutes; collapse—30 minutes.
9. Joist failure—12 minutes; flame thru—8 minutes; collapse—22 minutes.
10. Joist failure—11 minutes; flame thru—17 minutes; collapse—27 minutes.
11. Joist failure—17 minutes; flame thru—20 minutes; collapse—43 minutes.
12. Joists: 2-inch by 10-inch southern pine or Douglas fir, No. 1 common or better. Subfloor: $^3/_4$-inch wood sheathing diaphragm of asbestos paper, and finish of tongue-and-groove wood flooring.
13. Loadings: not more than 1,000 psi maximum fiber stress in joists.
14. Perforations in gypsum lath are to be not less than $^3/_4$-inch diameter with one perforation for not more than 16/in.^{2} diameter.
15. "Distemper" is a British term for a water-based paint such as white wash or calcimine.

FIGURE 3.4
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—HOLLOW CLAY TILE WITH REINFORCED CONCRETE



INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

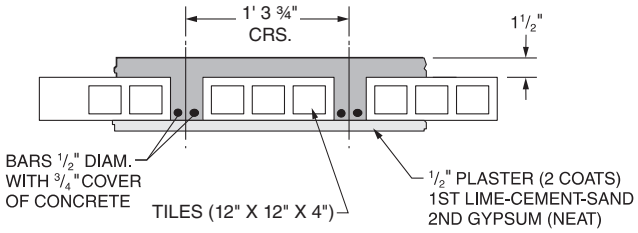
TABLE 3.4
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—HOLLOW CLAY TILE WITH REINFORCED CONCRETE

ITEM CODE	ASSEMBLY THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
F/C-HT-1	6″	Cover: $1^1/_2$″ concrete (6080 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; $3^1/_4$″ concrete between tiles, including two $^1/_2$″ rebars with $^3/_4$″ concrete cover; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover, lower.	75 psf	2 hrs 7 min			7	1–3	2
F/C-HT-2	6″	Cover: $1^1/_2$″ concrete (5840 psi); three-cell, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; $3^1/_4$″ concrete between tiles, including two $^1/_2$″ rebars each with $^1/_2$″ concrete cover and $^5/_8$″ filler tiles, between hollow tiles; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover, lower.	61 psf	3 hrs 23 min			7	3, 4, 6	$3^1/_3$
F/C-HT-3	6″	Cover: $1^1/_2$″ concrete (6280 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; $3^1/_4$″ concrete between tiles, including two $^1/_2$″ rebars with $^1/_2$″ cover; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover, lower.	122 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3, 5, 8	2
F/C-HT-4	6″	Cover: $1^1/_2$″ concrete (6280 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; $3^1/_4$″ concrete between tiles, including two $^1/_2$″ rebars with $^3/_4$″ cover; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover, lower.	115 psf	2 hrs 23 min			7	1, 3, 7	$2^1/_3$
F/C-HT-5	6″	Cover: $1^1/_2$″ concrete (6470 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; $3^1/_4$″ concrete between tiles, including two $^1/_2$″ rebars with $^1/_2$″ cover; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover, lower.	122 psf	2 hrs			7	1, 3, 5, 8	2
F/C-HT-6	8″	Floor cover: $1^1/_2$″ gravel cement (4300 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 6″; $3^1/_2$″ space between tiles, including two $^1/_2$″ rebars with 1″ cover from concrete bottom; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover, lower.	165 psf	4 hrs			7	1, 3, 9, 10	4
F/C-HT-7	9″ (nom.)	Deck: $^7/_8$″ T&G on 2″ × $1^1/_2$″ bottoms (18″ o.c.), $1^1/_2$″ concrete cover (4600 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; 3″ concrete between tiles, including one $^3/_4$″ rebar $^3/_4$″ from tile bottom; $^3/_4$″ plaster cover.	95 psf	2 hrs 26 min			7	4, 11–13	$2^1/_3$
F/C-HT-8	9″ (nom.)	Deck: $^7/_8$″ T&G on 2″ × $1^1/_2$″ bottoms (18″ o.c.), $1^1/_2$″ concrete cover (3850 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; 3″ concrete between tiles, including one $^3/_4$″ rebar $^3/_4$″ from tile bottoms; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover.	95 psf	3 hrs 28 min			7	4, 11–13	
F/C-HT-9	9″ (nom.)	Deck: $^7/_8$″ T&G on 2″ × $1^1/_2$″ bottoms (18″ o.c.), $1^1/_2$″ concrete cover (4200 psi); three-cell hollow clay tiles, 12″ × 12″ × 4″; 3″ concrete between tiles, including one $^3/_4$″ rebar $^3/_4$″ from tile bottoms; $^1/_2$″ plaster cover.	95 psf	2 hrs 14 min			7	3, 5, 8, 11	
F/C-HT-10	$5^1/_2$″	Fire clay tile (4″ thick); $1^1/_2$″ concrete cover; for general details, see Note 15.	See Note 14	1 hr			43	15	1
F/C-HT-11	8″	Fire clay tile (6″ thick); 2″ cover.	See Note 14	1 hr			43	15	1
F/C-HT-12	$5^1/_2$″	Fire clay tile (4″ thick); $1^1/_2$″ cover; $^5/_8$″ gypsum plaster, lower.	See Note 14	1 hr 30 min			43	15	$1^1/_2$
F/C-HT-13	8″	Fire clay tile (6″ thick); 2″ cover; $^5/_8$″ gypsum plaster, lower.	See Note 14	2 hrs			43	15	$1^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 pound per square foot = 47.9 N/m^2.

Notes:

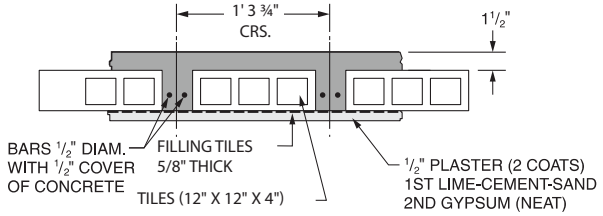
1. A generalized cross section of this floor type follows:



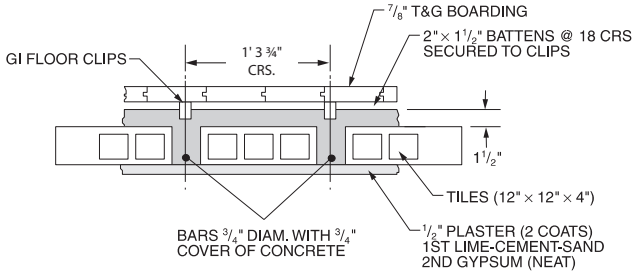
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 3.4—continued
FLOOR/CEILING ASSEMBLIES—HOLLOW CLAY TILE WITH REINFORCED CONCRETE

2. Failure mode - structural.
3. Plaster: base coat—lime-cement-sand; top coat—gypsum (neat).
4. Failure mode—collapse.
5. Test stopped before any endpoints were reached.
6. A generalized cross section of this floor type follows:


1' 3 ¾" CRS.
1 1/2"
BARS 1/2" DIAM. WITH 1/2" COVER OF CONCRETE
FILLING TILES 5/8" THICK
TILES (12" X 12" X 4")
1/2" PLASTER (2 COATS) 1ST LIME-CEMENT-SAND 2ND GYPSUM (NEAT)

7. Failure mode—thermal; back face temperature rise.
8. Passed hose stream test.
9. Failed hose stream test.
10. Test stopped at 4 hours before any endpoints were reached.
11. A generalized cross section of this floor type follows:


7/8" T&G BOARDING
2" × 1 1/2" BATTENS @ 18 CRS SECURED TO CLIPS
GI FLOOR CLIPS
1' 3 ¾" CRS.
1 1/2"
TILES (12" × 12" × 4")
BARS 3/4" DIAM. WITH 3/4" COVER OF CONCRETE
1/2" PLASTER (2 COATS) 1ST LIME-CEMENT-SAND 2ND GYPSUM (NEAT)

12. Plaster: base coat—retarded hemihydrate gypsum-sand; second coat—neat gypsum.
13. Concrete in Item 7 is Portland cement-based but with crushed brick aggregates, while in Item 8, river sand and river gravels are used with the Portland cement.
14. Load—unspecified.
15. The 12-inch by 12-inch fire-clay tiles were laid end to end in rows spaced $2^1/_2$ inches or 4 inches apart. The reinforcing steel was placed between these rows and the concrete cast around them and over the tile to form the structural floor.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

SECTION IV—BEAMS

TABLE 4.1.1
REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS
DEPTH 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	DEPTH	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
B-11-RC-1	11″	24″ wide × 11″ deep reinforced concrete “T” beam (3290 psi); details: see Note 5 figure.	8.8 tons	4 hrs 2 min			7	1, 2, 14	4
B-10-RC-2	10″	24″ wide × 10″ deep reinforced concrete “T” beam (4370 psi); details: see Note 6 figure.	8.8 tons	1 hr 53 min			7	1, 3	$1^{3}/_{4}$
B-10-RC-3	$10^{1}/_{2}$″	24″ wide × $10^{1}/_{2}$″ deep reinforced concrete “T” beam (4450 psi); details: see Note 7 figure.	8.8 tons	2 hrs 40 min			7	1, 3	$2^{2}/_{3}$
B-11-RC-4	11″	24″ wide × 11″ deep reinforced concrete “T” beam (2400 psi); details: see Note 8 figure.	8.8 tons	3 hrs 32 min			7	1, 3, 14	$3^{1}/_{2}$
B-11-RC-5	11″	24″ wide × 11″ deep reinforced concrete “T” beam (4250 psi); details: see Note 9 figure.	8.8 tons	3 hrs 3 min			7	1, 3, 14	3
B-11-RC-6	11″	Concrete flange: 4″ deep × 2' wide (4895 psi) concrete; concrete beam: 7″ deep × $6^{1}/_{2}$″ wide; “I” beam reinforcement; 10″ × $4^{1}/_{2}$″ × 25 lbs R.S.J.; 1″ cover on flanges; flange reinforcement: $^{3}/_{8}$″ diameter bars at 6″ pitch parallel to “T”; $^{1}/_{4}$″ diameter bars perpendicular to “T”; beam reinforcement: 4″ × 6″ No. 13 SWG wire mesh; span: 11' restrained; details: see Note 10 figure.	10 tons	6 hrs			7	1, 4	6
B-11-RC-7	11″	Concrete flange: 6″ deep × 1' $6^{1}/_{2}$″ wide (3525 psi) concrete; concrete beam: 5″ deep × 8″ wide precast concrete blocks $8^{3}/_{4}$″ long; “I” beam reinforcement; 7″ × 4″ × 16 lbs R.S.J.; 2″ cover on bottom; $1^{1}/_{2}$″ cover on top; flange reinforcement: two rows $^{1}/_{2}$″ diameter rods parallel to “T”; beam reinforcement: $^{1}/_{8}$″ wire mesh perpendicular to “T”; span: 1′3″ simply supported; details: see Note 11 figure.	3.9 tons	4 hrs			7	1, 2	4
B-11-RC-8	11″	Concrete flange: 4″ deep × 2' wide (3525 psi) concrete; concrete beam 7″ deep × $4^{1}/_{2}$″ wide (scaled from drawing); “I” beam reinforcement; 10″ × $4^{1}/_{2}$″ × 25 lbs R.S.J.; no concrete cover on bottom; flange reinforcement: $^{3}/_{8}$″ diameter bars at 6 pitch parallel to “T”; $^{1}/_{4}$″ diameter bars perpendicular to “T”; span: 11′ restricted; details: see Note 12 figure.	10 tons	4 hrs			7	1, 2	4
B-11-RC-9	$11^{1}/_{2}$″	24″ wide × $11^{1}/_{2}$″ deep reinforced concrete “T” beam (4390 psi); details: see Note 13 figure.	8.8 tons	3 hrs 24 min			7	1, 3	$3^{1}/_{3}$

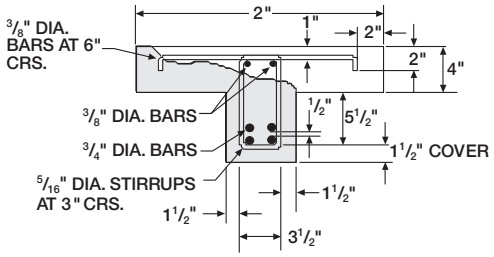
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

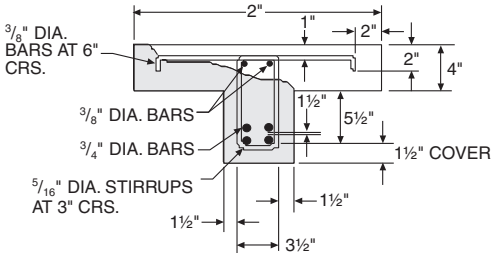
1. Load concentrated at mid-span.
2. Achieved 4-hour performance (Class “B,” British).
3. Failure mode—collapse.
4. Achieved 6-hour performance (Class “A,” British).

TABLE 4.1.1—continued
REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS
DEPTH 10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

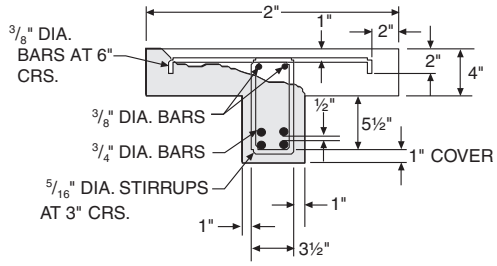
5.



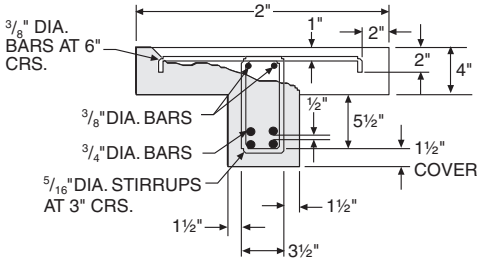
6.



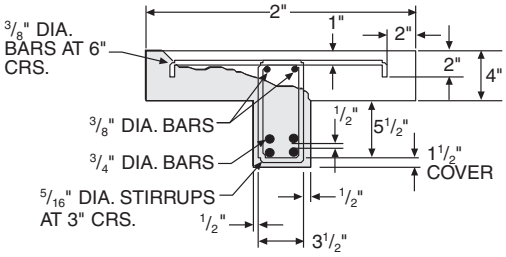
7.



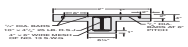
8.



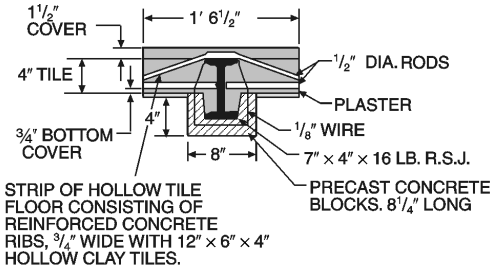
9.



10.

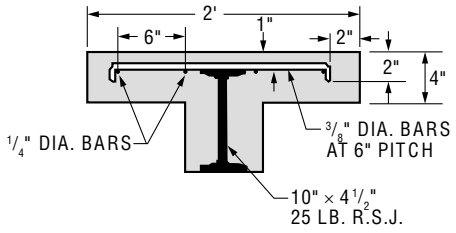


11.

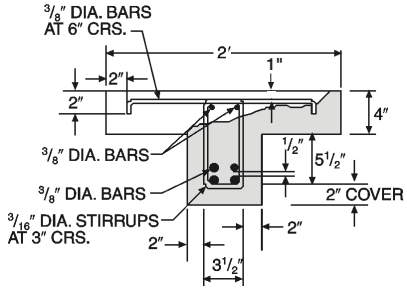

1 1/2" COVER
1′ 6 1/2″
4″ TILE
1/2″ DIA. RODS
PLASTER
4″
3/4″ BOTTOM COVER
1/8″ WIRE
8″
7″ × 4″ × 16 LB. R.S.J.
PRECAST CONCRETE BLOCKS. 8 1/4″ LONG
STRIP OF HOLLOW TILE FLOOR CONSISTING OF REINFORCED CONCRETE RIBS, 3/4″ WIDE WITH 12″ × 6″ × 4″ HOLLOW CLAY TILES.

SPAN AND END CONDITIONS:-10′-3″ (CLEAR). SIMPLY SUPPORTED.

12.



13.



14. The different performances achieved by B-11-RC-1, B-11-RC-4 and B-11-RC-5 are attributable to differences in concrete aggregate compositions reported in the source document but unreported in this table. This demonstrates the significance of material composition in addition to other details.

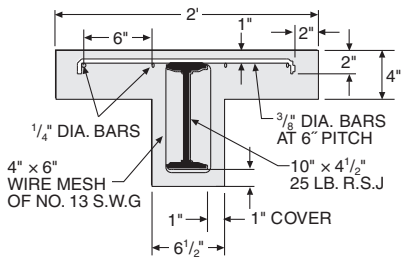
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

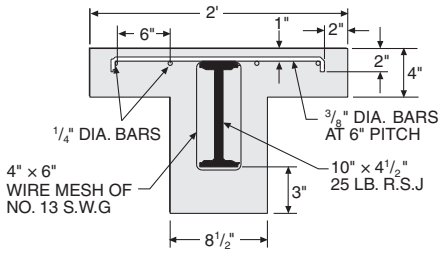
TABLE 4.1.2
REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS
DEPTH 12″ TO LESS THAN 14″

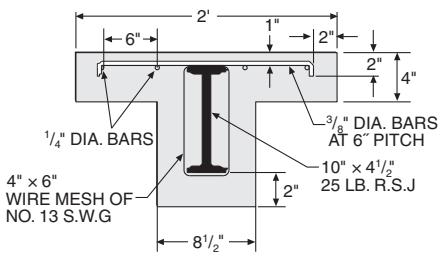
ITEM CODE	DEPTH	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
B-12-RC-1	12″	12″ × 8″ section; 4160 psi aggregate concrete; reinforcement: four $^{7}/_{8}$″ rebars at corners; 1″ below each surface; $^{1}/_{4}$″ stirrups 10″ o.c.	5.5 tons	2 hrs			7	1	2
B-12-RC-2	12″	Concrete flange: 4″ deep × 2' wide (3045 psi) concrete at 35 days; concrete beam: 8″ deep; "I" beam reinforcement: 10″ × $4^{1}/_{2}$″ × 25 lbs R.S.J.; 1″ cover on flanges; flange reinforcement: $^{3}/_{8}$″ diameter bars at 6″ pitch parallel to "T"; $^{1}/_{4}$″ diameter bars perpendicular to "T"; beam reinforcement: 4″ × 6″ No. 13 SWG wire mesh; span: 10′3″ simply supported.	10 tons	4 hrs			7	2, 3, 5	4
B-13-RC-3	13″	Concrete flange: 4″ deep × 2' wide (3825 psi) concrete at 46 days; concrete beam: 9″ deep × $8^{1}/_{2}$″ wide (scaled from drawing); "I" beam reinforcement: 10″ × $4^{1}/_{2}$″ × 25 lbs R.S.J.; 3″ cover on bottom flange; 1″ cover on top flange; flange reinforcement: $^{3}/_{8}$″ diameter bars at 6″ pitch parallel to "T"; $^{1}/_{4}$″ diameter bars perpendicular to "T"; beam reinforcement: 4″ × 6″ No. 13 SWG wire mesh; span: 11′ restrained.	10 tons	6 hrs			7	2, 3, 6, 8, 9	4
B-12-RC-4	12″	Concrete flange: 4″ deep × 2' wide (3720 psi) concrete at 42 days; concrete beam: 8″ deep × $8^{1}/_{2}$″ wide (scaled from drawing); "I" beam reinforcement: 10″ × $4^{1}/_{2}$″ × 25 lbs R.S.J.; 2″ cover bottom flange; 1″ cover top flange; flange reinforcement: $^{3}/_{8}$″ diameter bars at 6″ pitch parallel to "T"; $^{1}/_{4}$″ diameter bars perpendicular to "T"; beam reinforcement: 4″ × 6″ No. 13 SWG wire mesh; span: 11′ restrained.	10 tons	6 hrs			7	2–4, 7–9	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Qualified for 2-hour use. British test (Grade "C") included hose stream and reload at 48 hours.
2. Load concentrated at mid-span.
3. British test.
4. British test—qualified for 6-hour use (Grade "A").
5. 

6. 

7. 

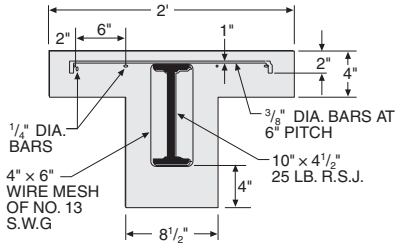
8. See Table 4.1.3, Note 5.
9. Hourly rating based upon B-12-RC-2.

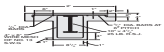
TABLE 4.1.3
REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS
DEPTH 14″ TO LESS THAN 16″

ITEM CODE	DEPTH	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE-BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
B-15-RC-1	15″	Concrete flange: 4″ deep × 2' wide (3290 psi) concrete; concrete beam: 10″ deep × $8^1/_2$″ wide; "I" beam reinforcement: 10″ × $4^1/_2$″ × 25 lbs R.S.J.; 4″ cover on bottom flange; 1″ cover on top flange; flange reinforcement: $^3/_8$″ diameter bars at 6″ pitch parallel to "T"; $^1/_4$″ diameter bars perpendicular to "T"; beam reinforcement: 4″ × 6″ No. 13 SWG wire mesh; span: 11′ restrained.	10 tons	6 hrs			7	1–3, 5, 6	4
B-15-RC-2	15″	Concrete flange: 4″ deep × 2' wide (4820 psi) concrete; concrete beam: 10″ deep × $8^1/_2$″ wide; "I" beam reinforcement: 10″ × $4^1/_2$″ × 25 lbs R.S.J.; 1″ cover over wire mesh on bottom flange; 1″ cover on top flange; flange reinforcement: $^3/_8$″ diameter bars at 6″ pitch parallel to "T"; $^1/_4$″ diameter bars perpendicular to "T"; beam reinforcement: 4″ × 6″ No. 13 SWG wire mesh; span: 11′ restrained.	10 tons	6 hrs			7	1, 2, 4–6	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Load concentrated at mid-span.
2. Achieved 6-hour fire rating (Grade "A," British).
3. 

4. 
5. Section 43.147 of the 1979 edition of the *Uniform Building Code Standards* provides:

"A restrained condition in fire tests, as used in this standard, is one in which expansion at the supports of a load-carrying element resulting from the effects of the fire is resisted by forces external to the element. An unrestrained condition is one in which the load-carrying element is free to expand and rotate at its support.

"Restraint in buildings is defined as follows: Floor and roof assemblies and individual beams in buildings shall be considered restrained when the surrounding or supporting structure is capable of resisting the thermal expansion throughout the range of anticipated elevated temperatures. Construction not complying . . . is assumed to be free to rotate and expand and shall be considered as unrestrained.

"Restraint may be provided by the lateral stiffness of supports for floor and roof assemblies and intermediate beams forming part of the assembly. In order to develop restraint, connections must adequately transfer thermal thrusts to such supports. The rigidity of adjoining panels or structures shall be considered in assessing the capabilities of a structure to resist thermal expansion."

Because it is difficult to determine whether an existing building's structural system is capable of providing the required restraint, the lower hourly ratings of a similar but unrestrained assembly have been recommended.

6. Hourly rating based upon Table 4.2.1, Item B-12-RC-2.

TABLE 4.2.1
REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS—UNPROTECTED DEPTH
10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	DEPTH	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST-BMS-92		
B-SU-1	10″	10″ × $4^1/_2$″ × 25 lbs "I" beam.	10 tons	39 min			7	1	$^1/_3$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Concentrated at mid-span.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 4.2.2
STEEL BEAMS—CONCRETE PROTECTION DEPTH
10″ TO LESS THAN 12″

ITEM CODE	DEPTH	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. HOURS
			LOAD	TIME	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
B-SC-1	10″	10″ × 8″ rectangle; aggregate concrete (4170 psi) with 1″ top cover and 2″ bottom cover; No. 13 SWG iron wire loosely wrapped at approximately 6″ pitch about 7″ × 4″ × 16 lbs "I" beam.	3.9 tons	3 hrs 46 min			7	1–3	$3^3/_4$
B-SC-2	10″	10″ × 8″ rectangle; aggregate concrete (3630 psi) with 1″ top cover and 2″ bottom cover; No. 13 SWG iron wire loosely wrapped at approximately 6″ pitch about 7″ × 4″ × 16 lbs "I" beam.	5.5 tons	5 hrs 26 min			7	1, 4–7	$3^3/_4$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa, 1 ton = 8.896 kN.

Notes:

1. Load concentrated at mid-span.
2. Specimen 10-foot 3-inch clear span simply supported.
3. Passed Grade "C" fire resistance (British), including hose stream and reload.
4. Specimen 11-foot clear span—restrained.
5. Passed Grade "B" fire resistance (British), including hose stream and reload.
6. See Table 4.1.3, Note 5.
7. Hourly rating based upon B-SC-1.

SECTION V—DOORS

FIGURE 5.1
RESISTANCE OF DOORS TO FIRE EXPOSURE

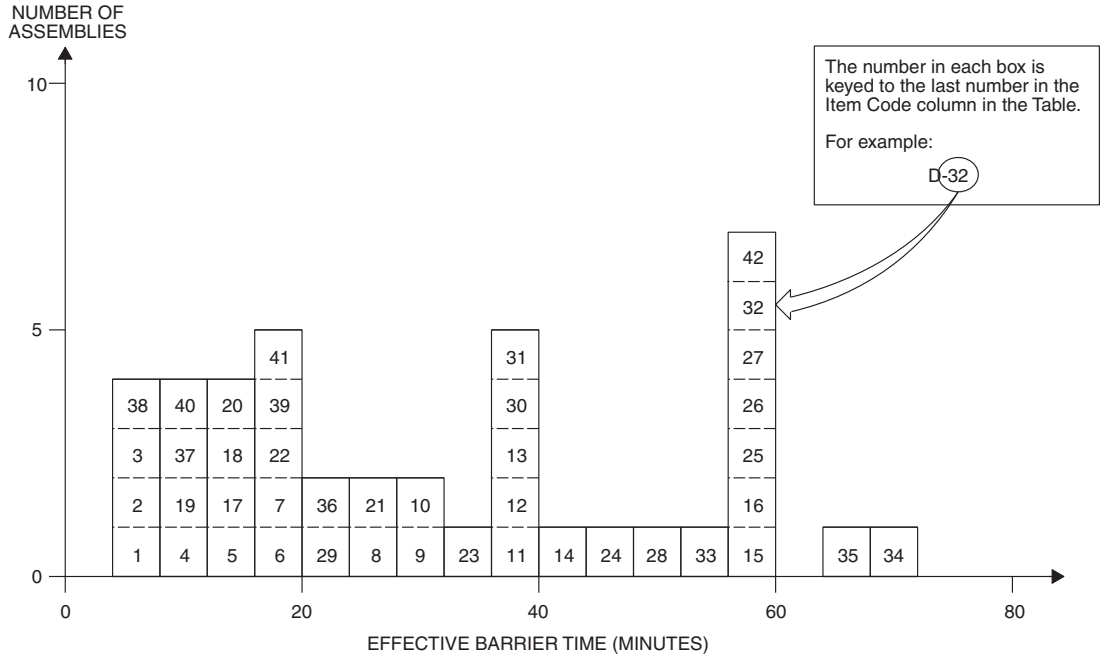


TABLE 5.1
RESISTANCE OF DOORS TO FIRE EXPOSURE

ITEM CODE	DOOR MINIMUM THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. (min)
			EFFECTIVE BARRIER	EDGE FLAMING	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
D-1	$^{3}/_{8}$″	Panel door; pine perimeter ($1^{3}/_{8}$″); painted (enamel).	5 min 10 sec.	N/A			90	1, 2	5
D-2	$^{3}/_{8}$″	As above, with two coats UL-listed intumescent coating.	5 min 30 sec.	5 min			90	1, 2, 7	5
D-3	$^{3}/_{8}$″	As D-1, with standard primer and flat interior paint.	5 min 55 sec.	N/A			90	1, 3, 4	5
D-4	$2^{5}/_{8}$″	As D-1, with panels covered each side with $^{1}/_{2}$″ plywood; edge grouted with sawdust-filled plaster; door faced with $^{1}/_{8}$″ hardboard each side; paint see Note 5.	11 min 15 sec.	3 min 45 sec.			90	1, 2, 5, 7	10
D-5	$^{3}/_{8}$″	As D-1, except surface protected with glass-fiber-reinforced intumescent fire-retardant coating.	16 min	N/A			90	1, 3, 4, 7	15
D-6	$1^{5}/_{8}$″	Door detail as per D-4, except with $^{1}/_{8}$″ cement asbestos board facings with aluminum foil; door edges protected by sheet metal.	17 min	10 min 5 sec.			90	1, 3, 4	10
D-7	$1^{5}/_{8}$″	Door detail with $^{1}/_{8}$″ hardboard cover each side as facings; glass-fiber-reinforced intumescent coating applied.	20 min	N/A			90	1, 3, 4, 7	20
D-8	$1^{5}/_{8}$″	Door detail as per D-4; paint was glass-reinforced epoxy intumescent.	26 min	24 min 45 sec.			90	1, 3, 4, 6, 7	25

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 5.1—continued
RESISTANCE OF DOORS TO FIRE EXPOSURE

ITEM CODE	DOOR MINIMUM THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. (min)
			EFFECTIVE BARRIER	EDGE FLAMING	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
D-9	$1^5/_8$″	Door detail as per D-4 with facings of $^1/_8$″ cement asbestos board.	29 min	3 min 15 sec.			90	1, 2	5
D-10	$1^5/_8$″	As per D-9.	31 min 30 sec.	7 min 20 sec.			90	1, 3, 4	6
D-11	$1^5/_8$″	As per D-7; painted with epoxy intumescent coating including glass-fiber roving.	36 min 25 sec.	N/A			90	1, 3, 4	35
D-12	$1^5/_8$″	As per D-4 with intumescent fire-retardant paint.	37 min 30 sec.	24 min 40 sec.			90	1, 3, 4	30
D-13	$1^1/_2$″ (nom.)	As per D-4, except with 24 gage galvanized sheet metal facings.	39 min	39 min			90	1, 3, 4	39
D-14	$1^5/_8$″	As per D-9.	41 min 30 sec.	17 min 20 sec.			90	1, 3, 4, 6	20
D-15	—	Class C steel fire door.	60 min	58 min			90	7, 8	60
D-16	—	Class B steel fire door.	60 min	57 min			90	7, 8	60
D-17	$1^3/_4$″	Solid core flush door; core staves laminated to facings but not each other; birch plywood facings $^1/_2$″ rebate in door frame for door; $^3/_{32}$″ clearance between door and wood frame.	15 min	13 min			37	11	13
D-18	$1^3/_4$″	As per D-17.	14 min	13 min			37	11	13
D-19	$1^3/_4$″	Door same as D-17, except with 16 gage steel; $^3/_{32}$″ door frame clearance.	12 min	—			37	9, 11	10
D-20	$1^3/_4$″	As per D-19.	16 min	—			37	10, 11	10
D-21	$1^3/_4$″	Door as per D-17; intumescent paint applied to top and side edges.	26 min	—			37	11	25
D-22	$1^3/_4$″	Door as per D-17, except with $^1/_2$″ × $^1/_8$″ steel strip set into edges of door at top and side-facing stops; matching strip on stop.	18 min	6 min			37	11	18
D-23	$1^3/_4$″	Solid oak door.	36 min	22 min			15	13	25
D-24	$1^7/_8$″	Solid oak door.	45 min	35 min			15	13	35
D-25	$1^7/_8$″	Solid teak door.	58 min	34 min			15	13	35
D-26	$1^7/_8$″	Solid (pitch) pine door.	57 min	36 min			15	13	35
D-27	$1^7/_8$″	Solid deal (pine) door.	57 min	30 min			15	13	30
D-28	$1^7/_8$″	Solid mahogany door.	49 min	40 min			15	13	45
D-29	$1^7/_8$″	Solid poplar door.	24 min	3 min			15	13, 14	5
D-30	$1^7/_8$″	Solid oak door.	40 min	33 min			15	13	35
D-31	$1^7/_8$″	Solid walnut door.	40 min	15 min			15	13	20
D-32	$2^5/_8$″	Solid Quebec pine door.	60 min	60 min			15	13	60
D-33	$2^5/_8$″	Solid pine door.	55 min	39 min			15	13	40
D-34	$2^5/_8$″	Solid oak door.	69 min	60 min			15	13	60
D-35	$2^5/_8$″	Solid teak door.	65 min	17 min			15	13	60
D-36	$1^1/_2$″	Solid softwood door.	23 min	$8^1/_2$ min			15	13	10
D-37	$^3/_4$″	Panel door.	8 min	$7^1/_2$ min			15	13	5
D-38	$^5/_{16}$″	Panel door.	5 min	5 min			15	13	5
D-39	$^3/_4$″	Panel door, fire retardant treated.	$17^1/_2$ min	13 min			15	13	8
D-40	$^3/_4$″	Panel door, fire retardant treated.	$8^1/_2$ min	$8^1/_2$ min			15	13	8
D-41	$^3/_4$″	Panel door, fire retardant treated.	$16^3/_4$ min	$11^1/_2$ min			15	13	8

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

TABLE 5.1—continued
RESISTANCE OF DOORS TO FIRE EXPOSURE

ITEM CODE	DOOR MINIMUM THICKNESS	CONSTRUCTION DETAILS	PERFORMANCE		REFERENCE NUMBER			NOTES	REC. (min)
			EFFECTIVE BARRIER	EDGE FLAMING	PRE- BMS-92	BMS-92	POST- BMS-92		
D-42	$1^{5}/_{8}$″	Wood frame single-lite door with side lites and transom; includes proprietary fire-resistance glazing.	66 min				167		66

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm.

Notes:

1. All door frames were of standard lumber construction.
2. Wood door stop protected by asbestos millboard.
3. Wood door stop protected by sheet metal.
4. Door frame protected by sheet metal and weather strip.
5. Surface painted with intumescent coating.
6. Door edge sheet metal protected.
7. Door edge intumescent paint protected.
8. Formal steel frame and door stop.
9. Door opened into furnace at 12 feet.
10. Similar door opened into furnace at 12 feet.
11. The doors reported in these tests represent the type contemporaries used as 20-minute solid-core wood doors. The test results demonstrate the necessity of having wall-anchored metal frames with the minimum clearance possible between door, frame and stops. They also indicate the utility of long throw latches and the possible use of intumescent paints to seal doors to frames in event of a fire.
12. Minimum working clearance and good latch closure are absolute necessities for effective containment for all such working door assemblies.
13. Based on British tests.
14. Failure at door-frame interface.

102102163

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Central Housing Committee on Research, Design, and Construction; Subcommittee on Fire Resistance Classifications, "Fire-Resistance Classifications of Building Constructions," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 92, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Oct. 1942. (Available from NTIS No. COM-73-10974)
2. Foster, H. D., Pinkston, E. R., and Ingberg, S. H., "Fire Resistance of Structural Clay Tile Partitions," *Building Materials and Structures, Report* BMS 113, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Oct. 1948.
3. Ryan, J. V., and Bender, E.W., "Fire Endurance of Open-Web Steel-Joist Floors with Concrete Slabs and Gypsum Ceilings," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 141, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Aug. 1954.
4. Mitchell, N. D., "Fire Tests of Wood-Framed Walls and Partitions with Asbestos-Cement facings," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 123, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, May 1951.
5. Robinson, H. E., Cosgrove, L. A., and Powell, F. J., "Thermal Resistance of Airspace and Fibrous Insulations Bounded by Reflective Surfaces," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 151, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Nov. 1957.
6. Shoub, H., and Ingberg, S. H., "Fire Resistance of Steel Deck Floor Assemblies," *Building Science Series,* 11, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Dec. 1967.
7. Davey, N., and Ashton, L. A., "Investigations on Building Fires, Part V: Fire Tests of Structural Elements," *National Building Studies,* Research Paper, No. 12, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research (Building Research Station), London, 1953.
8. National Board of Fire Underwriters, *Fire Resistance Ratings of Beam, Girder, and Truss Protections, Ceiling Constructions, Column Protections, Floor and Ceiling Constructions, Roof Constructions, Walls and Partitions,* New York, April 1959.
9. Mitchell, N.D., Bender, E.D., and Ryan, J.V., "Fire Resistance of Shutters for Moving-Stairway Openings," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 129, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, March 1952.
10. National Board of Fire Underwriters, *National Building Code; an Ordinance Providing for Fire Limits, and Regulations Governing the Construction, Alteration, Equipment, or Removal of Buildings or Structures,* New York, 1949.
11. Department of Scientific and Industrial Research and of the Fire Offices' Committee, Joint Committee of the Building Research Board, "Fire Gradings of Buildings, Part I: General Principles and Structural Precautions," *Post-War Building Studies,* No. 20, Ministry of Works, London, 1946.
12. Lawson, D. I., Webster, C. T., and Ashton, L. A., "Fire Endurance of Timber Beams and Floors," *National Building Studies,* Bulletin, No. 13, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research and Fire Offices' Committee (Joint Fire Research Organization), London, 1951.
13. Parker, T. W., Nurse, R. W., and Bessey, G. E., "Investigations on Building Fires. Part I: The Estimation of the Maximum Temperature Attained in Building Fires from Examination of the Debris, and Part II: The Visible Change in Concrete or Mortar Exposed to High Temperatures," *National Building Studies,* Technical Paper, No. 4, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research (Building Research Station), London, 1950.
14. Bevan, R. C., and Webster, C. T., "Investigations on Building Fires, Part III: Radiation from Building Fires," *National Building Studies,* Technical Paper, No. 5, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research (Building Research Station), London, 1950.
15. Webster, D. J., and Ashton, L. A., "Investigations on Building Fires, Part IV: Fire Resistance of Timber Doors," *National Building Studies,* Technical Paper, No. 6, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research (Building Research Station), London, 1951.
16. Kidder, F. E., *Architects' and Builders' Handbook: Data for Architects, Structural Engineers, Contractors, and Draughtsmen,* comp. by a Staff of Specialists and H. Parker, editor-in-chief, 18th ed., enl., J. Wiley, New York, 1936.
17. Parker, H., Gay, C. M., and MacGuire, J. W., *Materials and Methods of Architectural Construction,* 3rd ed., J. Wiley, New York, 1958.
18. Diets, A. G. H., *Dwelling House Construction,* The MIT Press, Cambridge, 1971.
19. Crosby, E. U., and Fiske, H. A., *Handbook of Fire Protection,* 5th ed., The Insurance Field Company, Louisville, Ky., 1914.
20. Crosby, E. U., Fiske, H. A., and Forster, H.W., *Handbook of Fire Protection,* 8th ed., R. S. Moulton, general editor, National Fire Protection Association, Boston, 1936.
21. Kidder, F. E., *Building Construction and Superintendence,* rev. and enl., by T. Nolan, W. T. Comstock, New York, 1909-1913, 2 vols.
22. National Fire Protection Association, Committee on Fire-Resistive Construction, *The Baltimore Conflagration,* 2nd ed., Chicago, 1904.
23. Przetak, L., *Standard Details for Fire-Resistive Building Construction,* McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1977.
24. Hird, D., and Fischl, C. F., "Fire Hazard of Internal Linings," *National Building Studies,* Special Report, No. 22, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research and Fire Offices' Committee (Joint Fire Research Organization), London, 1954.
25. Menzel, C. A., *Tests of the Fire-Resistance and Strength of Walls Concrete Masonry Units,* Portland Cement Association, Chicago, 1934.
26. Hamilton, S. B., "A Short History of the Structural Fire Protection of Buildings Particularly in England," *National Building Studies,* Special Report, No. 27, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research (Building Research Station), London, 1958.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

27. Sachs, E. O., and Marsland, E., "The Fire Resistance of Doors and Shutters being Tabulated Results of Fire Tests Conducted by the Committee," *Journal of the British Fire Prevention Committee,* No. VII, London, 1912.
28. Egan, M. D., *Concepts in Building Firesafety,* J. Wiley, New York, 1978.
29. Sachs, E. O., and Marsland, E., "The Fire Resistance of Floors being Tabulated Results of Fire Tests Conducted by the Committee," *Journal of the British Fire Prevention Committee,* No. VI, London, 1911.
30. Sachs, E. O., and Marsland, E., "The Fire Resistance of Partitions being Tabulated Results of Fire Tests Conducted by the Committee," *Journal of the British Fire Prevention Committee,* No. IX, London, 1914.
31. Ryan, J. V., and Bender, E. W., "Fire Tests of Precast Cellular Concrete Floors and Roofs," *National Bureau of Standards Monograph,* 45, Washington, April 1962.
32. Kingberg, S. H., and Foster, H. D., "Fire Resistance of Hollow Load-Bearing Wall Tile," *National Bureau of Standards* Research Paper, No. 37, (Reprint from *NBS Journal of Research*, Vol. 2) Washington, 1929.
33. Hull, W. A., and Ingberg, S. H., "Fire Resistance of Concrete Columns," *Technologic Papers of the Bureau of Standards,* No. 272, Vol. 18, Washington, 1925, pp. 635-708.
34. National Board of Fire Underwriters, *Fire Resistance Ratings of Less than One Hour,* New York, Aug. 1956.
35. Harmathy, T. Z., "Ten Rules of Fire Endurance Rating," *Fire Technology,* Vol. 1, May 1965, pp. 93-102.
36. Son, B. C., "Fire Endurance Test on a Steel Tubular Column Protected with Gypsum Board," *National Bureau of Standards,* NBSIR, 73-165, Washington, 1973.
37. Galbreath, M., "Fire Tests of Wood Door Assemblies," *Fire Study,* No. 36, Div. of Building Research, National Research Council Canada, Ottawa, May 1975.
38. Morris, W. A., "An Investigation into the Fire Resistance of Timber Doors," *Fire Research Note,* No. 855, Fire Research Station, Boreham Wood, Jan. 1971.
39. Hall, G. S., "Fire Resistance Tests of Laminated Timber Beams," *Timber Association Research Report,* WR/RR/1, High Sycombe, July 1968.
40. Goalwin, D. S., "Fire Resistance of Concrete Floors," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 134, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Dec. 1952.
41. Mitchell, N. D., and Ryan, J. V., "Fire Tests of Steel Columns Encased with Gypsum Lath and Plaster," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 135, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, April 1953.
42. Ingberg, S. H., "Fire Tests of Brick Walls," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 143, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Nov. 1954.
43. National Bureau of Standards, "Fire Resistance and Sound-Insulation Ratings for Walls, Partitions, and Floors," *Technical Report on Building Materials,* 44, Washington, 1944.
44. Malhotra, H. L., "Fire Resistance of Brick and Block Walls," *Fire Note,* No. 6, Ministry of Technology and Fire Offices' Committee Joint Fire Research Organization, London, HMSO, 1966.
45. Mitchell, N. D., "Fire Tests of Steel Columns Protected with Siliceous Aggregate Concrete," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 124, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, May 1951.
46. Freitag, J. K., *Fire Prevention and Fire Protection as Applied to Building Construction; a Handbook of Theory and Practice,* 2nd ed., J. Wiley, New York, 1921.
47. Ingberg, S. H., and Mitchell, N. D., "Fire Tests of Wood and Metal-Framed Partition," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 71, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, 1941.
48. Central Housing Committee on Research, Design, and Construction, Subcommittee on Definitions, "A Glossary of Housing Terms," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 91, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Sept. 1942.
49. Crosby, E. U., Fiske, H. A., and Forster, H.W., *Handbook of Fire Protection,* 7th ed., D. Van Nostrand Co., New York, 1924.
50. Bird, E. L., and Docking, S. J., *Fire in Buildings,* A. & C. Black, London, 1949.
51. American Institute of Steel Construction, Fire Resistant Construction in Modern Steel-Framed Buildings, New York, 1959.
52. Central Dockyard Laboratory, "Fire Retardant Paint Tests—a Critical Review," CDL Technical Memorandum*,* No. P87/73, H. M. Naval Base, Portsmouth, Dec. 1973.
53. Malhotra, H. L., "Fire Resistance of Structural Concrete Beams," *Fire Research Note,* No. 741, Fire Research Station, Borehamwood, May 1969.
54. Abrams, M. S., and Gustaferro, A. H., "Fire Tests of Poke-Thru Assemblies," *Research and Development Bulletin,* 1481-1, Portland Cement Association, Skokie, 1971.
55. Bullen, M. L., "A Note on the Relationship between Scale Fire Experiments and Standard Test Results," *Building Research Establishment Note,* N51/75, Borehamwood, May 1975.
56. The America Fore Group of Insurance Companies, Research Department, *Some Characteristic Fires in Fire Resistive Buildings,* Selected from twenty years record in the files of the N.F.P.A. "Quarterly," New York, c. 1933.
57. Spiegelhalter, F., "Guide to Design of Cavity Barriers and Fire Stops," *Current Paper,* CP 7/77, Building Research Establishment, Borehamwood, Feb. 1977.

58. Wardle, T. M. "Notes on the Fire Resistance of Heavy Timber Construction," *Information Series,* No. 53, New Zealand Forest Service, Wellington, 1966.
59. Fisher, R. W., and Smart, P. M. T., "Results of Fire Resistance Tests on Elements of Building Construction," *Building Research Establishment Report,* G R6, London, HMSO, 1975.
60. Serex, E. R., "Fire Resistance of Alta Bates Gypsum Block Non-Load Bearing Wall," Report to Alta Bates Community Hospital, *Structural Research Laboratory Report,* ES-7000, University of Calif., Berkeley, 1969.
61. Thomas, F. G., and Webster, C. T., "Investigations on Building Fires, Part VI: The Fire Resistance of Reinforced Concrete Columns," *National Building Studies,* Research Paper, No. 18, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research (Building Research Station), London, HMSO, 1953.
62. Building Research Establishment, "Timber Fire Doors," *Digest,* 220, Borehamwood, Nov. 1978.
63. *Massachusetts State Building Code; Recommended Provisions,* Article 22: Repairs, Alterations, Additions, and Change of Use of Existing Buildings, Boston, Oct. 23, 1978.
64. Freitag, J. K., *Architectural Engineering; with Especial Reference to High Building Construction, Including Many Examples of Prominent Office Buildings,* 2nd ed., rewritten, J. Wiley, New York, 1906.
65. Architectural Record, *Sweet's Indexed Catalogue of Building Construction for the Year 1906,* New York, 1906.
66. Dept. of Commerce, Building Code Committee, "Recommended Minimum Requirements for Fire Resistance in Buildings," *Building and Housing,* No. 14, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, 1931.
67. British Standards Institution, "Fire Tests on Building Materials and Structures," *British Standards,* 476, Pt. 1, London, 1953.
68. Lonberg-Holm, K., "Glass," *The Architectural Record,* Oct. 1930, pp. 345-357.
69. Structural Clay Products Institute, "Fire Resistance," *Technical Notes on Brick and Tile Construction,* 16 rev., Washington, 1964.
70. Ramsey, C. G., and Sleeper, H. R., *Architectural Graphic Standards for Architects, Engineers, Decorators, Builders, and Draftsmen,* 3rd ed., J. Wiley, New York, 1941.
71. Underwriters' Laboratories, *Fire Protection Equipment List,* Chicago, Jan. 1957.
72. Underwriters' Laboratories, *Fire Resistance Directory; with Hourly Ratings for Beams, Columns, Floors, Roofs, Walls, and Partitions,* Chicago, Jan. 1977.
73. Mitchell, N. D., "Fire Tests of Gunite Slabs and Partitions," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 131, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, May 1952.
74. Woolson, I. H., and Miller, R. P., "Fire Tests of Floors in the United States," *Proceedings International Association for Testing Materials,* VIth Congress, New York, 1912, Section C, pp. 36-41.
75. Underwriters' Laboratories, "An Investigation of the Effects of Fire Exposure upon Hollow Concrete Building Units, Conducted for American Concrete Institute, Concrete Products Association, Portland Cement Association, Joint Submittors," *Retardant Report,* No. 1555, Chicago, May 1924.
76. Dept. of Scientific & Industrial Research and of the Fire Offices' Committee, Joint Committee of the Building Research Board, "Fire Gradings of Buildings. Part IV: Chimneys and Flues," *Post-War Building Studies,* No. 29, London, HMSO, 1952.
77. National Research Council of Canada. Associate Committee on the National Building Code, *Fire Performance Ratings,* Suppl. No. 2 to the National Building Code of Canada, Ottawa, 1965.
78. Associated Factory Mutual Fire Insurance Companies, The National Board of Fire Underwriters, and the Bureau of Standards, *Fire Tests of Building Columns; an Experimental Investigation of the Resistance of Columns, Loaded and Exposed to Fire or to Fire and Water, with Record of Characteristic Effects,* Jointly Conducted at Underwriters. Laboratories, Chicago, 1917-19.
79. Malhotra, H. L., "Effect of Age on the Fire Resistance of Reinforced Concrete Columns," *Fire Research Memorandum,* No. 1, Fire Research Station, Borehamwood, April 1970.
80. Bond, H., ed., *Research on Fire; a Description of the Facilities, Personnel and Management of Agencies Engaged in Research on Fire,* a Staff Report, National Fire Protection Association, Boston, 1957.
81. *California State Historical Building Code,* Draft, 1978.
82. Fisher, F. L., et al., "A Study of Potential Flashover Fires in Wheeler Hall and the Results from a Full Scale Fire Test of a Modified Wheeler Hall Door Assembly," *Fire Research Laboratory Report,* UCX 77-3; UCX-2480, University of Calif., Dept. of Civil Eng., Berkeley, 1977.
83. Freitag, J. K., *The Fireproofing of Steel Buildings,* 1st ed., J. Wiley, New York, 1906.
84. Gross, D., "Field Burnout Tests of Apartment Dwellings Units," *Building Science Series,* 10, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, 1967.
85. Dunlap, M. E., and Cartwright, F. P., "Standard Fire Tests for Combustible Building Materials," *Proceedings of the American Society for Testing Materials,* vol. 27, Philadelphia, 1927, pp. 534-546.
86. Menzel, C. A., "Tests of the Fire Resistance and Stability of Walls of Concrete Masonry Units," *Proceedings of the American Society for Testing Materials,* vol. 31, Philadelphia, 1931, pp. 607-660.

87. Steiner, A. J., "Method of Fire-Hazard Classification of Building Materials," *Bulletin of the American Society for Testing and Materials,* March 1943, Philadelphia, 1943, pp. 19-22.
88. Heselden, A. J. M., Smith, P. G., and Theobald, C. R., "Fires in a Large Compartment Containing Structural Steelwork; Detailed Measurements of Fire Behavior," *Fire Research Note,* No. 646, Fire Research Station, Borehamwood, Dec. 1966.
89. Ministry of Technology and Fire Offices' Committee Joint Fire Research Organization, "Fire and Structural Use of Timber in Buildings; Proceedings of the Symposium Held at the Fire Research Station, Borehamwood, Herts on 25th October, 1967," *Symposium*, No. 3, London, HMSO, 1970.
90. Shoub, H., and Gross, D., "Doors as Barriers to Fire and Smoke," *Building Science Series,* 3, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, 1966.
91. Ingberg, S. H., "The Fire Resistance of Gypsum Partitions," *Proceedings of the American Society for Testing and Materials,* vol. 25, Philadelphia, 1925, pp. 299-314.
92. Ingberg, S.H., "Influence of Mineral Composition of Aggregates on Fire Resistance of Concrete," *Proceedings of the American Society for Testing and Materials,* vol. 29, Philadelphia, 1929, pp. 824-829.
93. Ingberg, S. H., "The Fire Resistive Properties of Gypsum," *Proceedings of the American Society for Testing and Materials,* vol. 23, Philadelphia, 1923, pp. 254-256.
94. Gottschalk, F.W., "Some Factors in the Interpretation of Small-Scale Tests for Fire-Retardant Wood," *Bulletin of the American Society for Testing and Materials,* October 1945, pp. 40-43.
95. Ministry of Technology and Fire Offices' Committee Joint Fire Research Organization, "Behaviour of Structural Steel in Fire; Proceedings of the Symposium Held at the Fire Research Station Borehamwood, Herts on 24th January, 1967," *Symposium,* No. 2, London, HMSO, 1968.
96. Gustaferro, A. H., and Martin, L. D., *Design for Fire Resistance of Pre-cast Concrete,* prep. for the Prestressed Concrete Institute Fire Committee, 1st ed., Chicago, PCI, 1977.
97. "The Fire Endurance of Concrete; a Special Issue," *Concrete Construction,* vol. 18, no. 8, Aug. 1974, pp. 345-440.
98. The British Constructional Steelwork Association, "Modern Fire Protection for Structural Steelwork," *Publication,* No. FPl, London, 1961.
99. Underwriters' Laboratories, "Fire Hazard Classification of Building Materials," *Bulletin,* No. 32, Sept. 1944, Chicago, 1959.
100. Central Housing Committee on Research, Design, and Construction, Subcommittee on Building Codes, "Recommended Building Code Requirements for New Dwelling Construction with Special Reference to War Housing; Report," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 88, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, Sept. 1942.
101. De Coppet Bergh, D., *Safe Building Construction; a Treatise Giving in Simplest Forms Possible Practical and Theoretical Rules and Formulae Used in Construction of Buildings and General Instruction,* new ed., thoroughly rev. Macmillan Co., New York, 1908.
102. *Cyclopedia of Fire Prevention and Insurance; a General Reference Work on Fire and Fire Losses, Fireproof Construction, Building Inspection...,* prep. by architects, engineers, underwriters and practical insurance men. American School of Correspondence, Chicago, 1912.
103. Setchkin, N. P., and Ingberg, S. H., "Test Criterion for an Incombustible Material," *Proceedings of the American Society for Testing Materials,* vol. 45, Philadelphia, 1945, pp. 866-877.
104. Underwriters' Laboratories, "Report on Fire Hazard Classification of Various Species of Lumber," *Retardant,* 3365, Chicago, 1952.
105. Steingiser, S., "A Philosophy of Fire Testing," Journal of Fire & Flammability, vol. 3, July 1972, pp. 238-253.
106. Yuill, C. H., Bauerschlag, W. H., and Smith, H. M., "An Evaluation of the Comparative Performance of 2.4.1 Plywood and Two-Inch Lumber Roof Decking under Equivalent Fire Exposure," *Fire Protection Section, Final Report,* Project No. 717A-3-211, Southwest Research Institute, Dept. of Structural Research, San Antonio, Dec. 1962.
107. Ashton, L. A., and Smart, P.M. T., *Sponsored Fire-Resistance Tests on Structural Elements,* London, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research and Fire Offices. Committee, London, 1960.
108. Butcher, E. G., Chitty, T. B., and Ashton, L. A., "The Temperature Attained by Steel in Building Fires," *Fire Research Technical Paper,* No. 15, Ministry of Technology and Fire Offices. Committee, Joint Fire Research Organization, London, HMSO, 1966.
109. Dept. of the Environment and Fire Offices' Committee, Joint Fire Research Organization, "Fire-Resistance Requirements for Buildings—a New Approach; Proceedings of the Symposium Held at the Connaught Rooms, London, 28 September 1971," *Symposium,* No. 5, London, HMSO, 1973.
110. Langdon Thomas, G. J., "Roofs and Fire," *Fire Note,* No. 3, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research and Fire Offices' Committee, Joint Fire Research Organization, London, HMSO, 1963.
111. National Fire Protection Association and the National Board of Fire Underwriters, *Report on Fire in the Edison Phonograph Works,* Thomas A. Edison, Inc., West Orange, N.J., December 9, 1914, Boston, 1915.
112. Thompson, J. P., *Fire Resistance of Reinforced Concrete Floors,* Portland Cement Association, Chicago, 1963.
113. Forest Products Laboratory, "Fire Resistance Tests of Plywood Covered Wall Panels," Information reviewed and reaffirmed, *Forest Service Report,* No. 1257, Madison, April 1961.

114. Forest Products Laboratory, "Charring Rate of Selected Woods—Transverse to Grain," Forest Service *Research Paper,* FLP 69, Madison, April 1967.

115. Bird, G. I., "Protection of Structural Steel Against Fire," *Fire Note,* No. 2, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research and Fire Offices' Committee, Joint Fire Research Organization, London, HMSO, 1961.

116. Robinson, W. C., *The Parker Building Fire,* Underwriters' Laboratories, Chicago, c. 1908.

117. Ferris, J. E., "Fire Hazards of Combustible Wallboards," *Commonwealth Experimental Building Station Special Report,* No. 18, Sydney, Oct. 1955.

118. Markwardt, L. J., Bruce, H. D., and Freas, A. D., "Brief Description of Some Fire-Test Methods Used for Wood and Wood-Based Materials," *Forest Service Report,* No. 1976, Forest Products Laboratory, Madison, 1976.

119. Foster, H. D., Pinkston, E. R., and Ingberg, S. H., "Fire Resistance of Walls of Gravel-Aggregate Concrete Masonry Units," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report, BMS 120, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, March 1951.

120. Foster, H. D., Pinkston, E.R., and Ingberg, S. H., "Fire Resistance of Walls of Lightweight-Aggregate Concrete Masonry Units," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 117, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, May 1950.

121. Structural Clay Products Institute, "Structural Clay Tile Fireproofing," *Technical Notes on Brick & Tile Construction,* vol. 1, no. 11, San Francisco, Nov. 1950.

122. Structural Clay Products Institute, "Fire Resistance Ratings of Clay Masonry Walls—I," *Technical Notes on Brick & Tile Construction,* vol. 3, no. 12, San Francisco, Dec. 1952.

123. Structural Clay Products Institute, "Estimating the Fire Resistance of Clay Masonry Walls—II," *Technical Notes on Brick & Tile Construction*, vol. 4, no. 1, San Francisco, Jan. 1953.

124. Building Research Station, "Fire: Materials and Structures," *Digest,* No. 106, London, HMSO, 1958.

125. Mitchell, N. D., "Fire Hazard Tests with Masonry Chimneys," *NFPA Publication,* No. Q-43-7, Boston, Oct. 1949.

126. Clinton Wire Cloth Company, *Some Test Data on Fireproof Floor Construction Relating to Cinder Concrete, Terra Cotta and Gypsum,* Clinton, 1913.

127. Structural Engineers Association of Southern California, Fire Ratings Subcommittee, "Fire Ratings, a Report," part of *Annual Report,* Los Angeles, 1962, pp. 30-38.

128. Lawson, D. I., Fox, L. L., and Webster, C. T., "The Heating of Panels by Flue Pipes," *Fire Research, Special Report,* No. 1, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research and Fire Offices' Committee, London, HMSO, 1952.

129. Forest Products Laboratory, "Fire Resistance of Wood Construction," excerpt from "Wood Handbook—Basic Information on Wood as a Material of Construction with Data for its Use in Design and Specification," *Dept. of Agriculture Handbook,* No. 72, Washington, 1955, pp. 337-350.

130. Goalwin, D. S., "Properties of Cavity Walls," *Building Materials and Structures,* Report BMS 136, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, May 1953.

131. Humphrey, R. L., "The Fire-Resistive Properties of Various Building Materials," *Geological Survey Bulletin,* 370, Washington, 1909.

132. National Lumber Manufacturers Association, "Comparative Fire Test on Wood and Steel Joists," *Technical Report,* No. 1, Washington, 1961.

133. National Lumber Manufacturers Association, "Comparative Fire Test of Timber and Steel Beams," *Technical Report,* No. 3, Washington, 1963.

134. Malhotra, H. L., and Morris, W. A., "Tests on Roof Construction Subjected to External Fire," *Fire Note,* No. 4, Dept. of Scientific and Industrial Research and Fire Offices' Committee, Joint Fire Research Organization, London, HMSO, 1963.

135. Brown, C. R., "Fire Tests of Treated and Untreated Wood Partitions," *Research Paper,* RP 1076, part of *Journal of Research of the National Bureau of Standards,* vol. 20, Washington, Feb. 1938, pp. 217-237.

136. Underwriters' Laboratories, "Report on Investigation of Fire Resistance of Wood Lath and Lime Plaster Interior Finish," *Publication,* SP. 1.230, Chicago, Nov. 1922.

137. Underwriters' Laboratories, "Report on Interior Building Construction Consisting of Metal Lath and Gypsum Plaster on Wood Supports," *Retardant,* No. 1355, Chicago, 1922.

138. Underwriters' Laboratories, "An Investigation of the Effects of Fire Exposure upon Hollow Concrete Building Units," *Retardant,* No. 1555, Chicago, May 1924.

139. Moran, T. H., "Comparative Fire Resistance Ratings of Douglas Fir Plywood," *Douglas Fir Plywood Association Laboratory Bulletin,* 57-A, Tacoma, 1957.

140. Gage Babcock & Association, "The Performance of Fire-Protective Materials under Varying Conditions of Fire Severity," Report 6924, Chicago, 1969.

141. International Conference of Building Officials, *Uniform Building Code* (1979 ed.), Whittier, CA, 1979.

142. Babrauskas, V., and Williamson, R. B., "The Historical Basis of Fire Resistance Testing, Part I and Part II," *Fire Technology,* vol. 14, no. 3 & 4, Aug. & Nov. 1978, pp. 184-194, 205, 304-316.

143. Underwriters' Laboratories, "Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials," 8th ed., *Standard for Safety,* UL263, Chicago, 1971.

144. Hold, H. G., *Fire Protection in Buildings,* Crosby, Lockwood, London, 1913.

145. Kollbrunner, C. F., "Steel Buildings and Fire Protection in Europe," *Journal of the Structural Division,* ASCE, vol. 85, no. ST9, Proc. Paper 2264, Nov. 1959, pp. 125-149.
146. Smith, P., "Investigation and Repair of Damage to Concrete Caused by Formwork and Falsework Fire," *Journal of the American Concrete Institute,* vol. 60, Title no. 60-66, Nov. 1963, pp. 1535-1566.
147. "Repair of Fire Damage," 3 parts, *Concrete Construction,* March-May, 1972.
148. National Fire Protection Association, *National Fire Codes; a Compilation of NFPA Codes, Standards, Recommended Practices and Manuals,* 16 vols., Boston, 1978.
149. Ingberg, S. H. "Tests of Severity of Building Fires," *NFPA Quarterly,* vol. 22, no. 1, July 1928, pp. 43-61.
150. Underwriters' Laboratories, "Fire Exposure Tests of Ordinary Wood Doors," *Bulletin of Research,* no. 6, Dec. 1938, Chicago, 1942.
151. Parson, H., "The Tall Building under Test of Fire," *Red Book,* no. 17, British Fire Prevention Committee, London, 1899.
152. Sachs, E. O., "The British Fire Prevention Committee Testing Station," *Red Book,* no. 13, British Fire Prevention Committee, London, 1899.
153. Sachs, E. O., "Fire Tests with Unprotected Columns," *Red Book,* no. 11, British Fire Prevention Committee, London, 1899.
154. British Fire Prevention Committee, "Fire Tests with Floors a Floor by the Expended Metal Company," *Red Book,* no. 14, London, 1899.
155. *Engineering News,* vol. 56, Aug. 9, 1906, pp. 135-140.
156. *Engineering News,* vol. 36, Aug. 6, 1896, pp. 92-94.
157. Bauschinger, J., *Mittheilungen de Mech.-Tech. Lab. der K. Tech. Hochschule, Müchen,* vol. 12, 1885.
158. *Engineering News,* vol. 46, Dec. 26, 1901, pp. 482-486, 489-490.
159. *The American Architect and Building News,* vol. 31, March 28, 1891, pp. 195-201.
160. British Fire Prevention Committee, First International Fire Prevention Congress, *Official Congress Report,* London, 1903.
161. American Society for Testing Materials, *Standard Specifications for Fire Tests of Materials and Construction (C19-18),* Philadelphia, 1918.
162. International Organization for Standardization, *Fire Resistance Tests on Elements of Building Construction (R834),* London, 1968.
163. *Engineering Record,* vol. 35, Jan. 2, 1897, pp. 93-94; May 29, 1897, pp. 558-560; vol. 36, Sept. 18, 1897, pp. 337-340; Sept. 25, 1897, pp. 359-363; Oct. 2, 1897, pp. 382-387; Oct. 9, 1897, pp. 402-405.
164. Babrauskas, Vytenis, "Fire Endurance in Buildings," PhD Thesis. *Fire Research Group,* Report, No. UCB FRG 76-16, University of California, Berkeley, Nov. 1976.
165. The Institution of Structural Engineers and The Concrete Society, *Fire Resistance of Concrete Structures,* London, Aug. 1975.

INDEX

Accessibility *1.8.2.1.2, 1.9.1,* 104.2.4, 306, 801.1, 901.2, 1101.2, 1508, Appendix B
Additions Chapter 11, 101.2, 101.3, 101.4, 104.3, 104.3.1, 104.2.4.1, 106.2.3, 109.3.3, 113.2, 115.5, 202, 301.1, 301.3, 302.2, 302.2.1, 303.2, 304.1, 304.2, 307.1, 308.1, 309, 501.1, 502, 601.1, 606, 1301.1, 1301.1.1, 1302.1, 1302.1.3, 1303.1, 1304.1.1, 1304.1.3, 1501.3, 1505.2
Administration Chapter 1
Alterations Chapter 7, Chapter 8, Chapter 9, 101.2, 101.3, 101.4, 101.6, 104.3, 104.3.1, 104.3.2, 104.2.4.1, 105.1.1, 105.1.2, 105.2.2, 105.2.3, 106.2.3, 106.2.6, 108.5, 110.2, 113.2, 115.5, 202, 301.1, 301.3, 302.2, 302.2.1, 302.4, 304, 307.1, 308.1, 309.1, 501.1, 501.1.1, 502.1, 502.3, 502.4, 503, 504.1, 601.1, 602, 603, 604, 1101.3, 1103.1, 1103.2, 1301.1, 1301.1.1, 1302.1, 1302.1.4, 1302.1.6, 1303.1, 1304.1.1, 1304.1.3, 1307.1.1, 1401.2, 1501.3, 1504.1, 1505.2, A105.2, A304.1.1, A402.1, A403.2
  Level 1 Chapter 7, 104.3.2, 602, 603.2, 604.2, 801.2
  Level 2 Chapter 8, 106.2.3, 505.2, 603
  Level 3 Chapter 9, 106.2.3, 604, 1011.4
Alternative Materials, Design and Methods of Construction 104.2.3
Ambulatory Care Facility 202, 302.2.1, 406.1.2, 408.3, 501.3, 503.15, 503.17, 804.4, 902.3
Appeals 104.8, 112, 116.6
Approved 202
Approved Agency A304.2.6, 104.2.3.6.1, 202
Archaic Materials and Assemblies Resource A
Architect (see Registered Design Professional)
Area (see Building)
Automatic Sprinkler System 110.2, 501.2, 504.5, 802.2.1, 802.6, 803.1.1, 803.2, 804.5.1.1, Table 804.5.1.1(1), 804.5.1.2.1, 804.5.1.2.2, 804.7.1, 804.8, 904.1, 1011.2.1, 1011.6.1, 1011.6.1.1, 1011.7.3, 1011.8.3, 1305.1.1, Table 1305.2.9, 1305.2.10.1, 1305.2.17, 1305.2.17.1, Table 1305.2.17, 1305.2.19, Table 1305.2.19, 1507

Board of Appeals 104.8, 112, Appendix D
Building
  Area 503.5, 503.7, 503.8, 503.9, 503.10, 503.11, 503.16, 503.18, 506.5.2, 506.5.3, 506.6, 603.1, 604.1, 1006.2, 1006.3, 1011.6, 1011.6.1, 1011.6.1.1, 1011.6.2, Table 1011.6, 1102, 1302.1.3, 1305.2.2
  Dangerous 104.4, 114.1, 117.1, 202, 302.1
  Height 202, 502.1, 804.4.1.1, 1011.6, Table 1011.6, 1011.7.1, 1011.7.3, 1102, 1302.1.3, 1305.2.1, Table 1306.1, A301.2
  Historic Chapter 12, 202, 401.1, 501.1, 507, 601.1, 607, 701.1, 1301.1, B101
  Relocatable 202, 1401.1
  Relocated Chapter 14, 301.4
  Relocation of 101.2, 101.3, 101.4, 104.3, 301.1
  Unsafe 104.4, 115, 116, 117.1, 202

Carbon Monoxide 308
Carpeting 105.2, 702.2
Ceiling 702.1, 801.4, 802.2.1, 802.4, 903.2.1, 1011.3, 1011.5.1, 1305.2.3.3, A105.3, A113.1
Certificate of Occupancy 110, 506.2, 1001.2, 1001.3
Change of Occupancy Chapter 10, 101.2, 101.3, 101.4, 104.3, 104.3.2, 106.2.6, 110.1, 115.5, 202, 301.1, 301.3, 307.1, 308.1, 501.1, 505.3, 506, 601.1, 605, 702.5, 1301.1, 1302.1, 1302.1.6, 1304.1.1, 1304.1.3, 1305.2.17, 1307.1.1, 1401.2, B101.2, B101.3, B101.4, C101.1, C201.1
Change of Use 202
Classroom Acoustics 502.6, 503.16, 506.6, 903.4, 1011.4, 1101.4
Code Official Chapter 1, 202, 301.3, 302.1, 302.3, 303.2.1, 304.2, 405.2.3.1, 501.2, 506.1, 506.1.1, 802.6, 804.2, 1001.2, 1011.5.1, 1303.1, 1303.1.1, 1304.1.2, 1304.1.3, 1402.7, 1501.6.7, 1509.1, A102.2, A107.1, A108.1, A113.7, A205.3.2, A301.1, A301.2, A301.3, A302.1, A303.1, A304.2.1, A304.2.2, A304.2.3, Table A304.2.3(1), A304.2.3(2), Table A304.2.3(2), A304.5, A403.8, A403.9.3.2, A404.1, A405.3, A405.3.2
Compartmentation 1305.2.3, Table 1305.2.3, 1305.2.20, Table 1305.2.20, Table 1306.1
Compliance Methods Chapter 3
  Performance compliance method Chapter 13, 301.3.3
  Prescriptive compliance method Chapter 5, 301.3.1
  Work area compliance method Chapter 6, Chapter 7, Chapter 8, Chapter 9, Chapter 10, Chapter 11, 301.3.2
Conflict 102.1, 102.4.1, 102.4.2, 104.2.4.1, 113.1, 302.2, 1302.1.2
Construction Documents 104.3, 105.3, 105.3.1, 105.4, 106, 113.4, 202, 601.2, A105.4, A205.3, A301.1, A406, A407.1
Construction Safeguards 101.5, Chapter 15
  Accessibility 1511
  Adjoining property 1505
  Automatic sprinklers 1510
  Fire extinguishers 1507
  Means of egress 1508
  Owner's responsibilities 1502
  Protection of pedestrians 1504
  Sanitary 1503
  Standpipes 1509
  Water supply 1512
Corridor
  Dead-end 801.4, 804.8, 1011.5.1, 1305.2.12, 1305.2.12.1, Table 1306.1
  Doors 804.7.1, 1011.5.1
  Exit access 801.4, 802.2.1, 802.4, 802.4.1, 901.2, 1011.8.2
  Openings 804.7, 804.7.1, 804.7.2, 804.7.3, 804.7.3.1, 804.7.4, 1011.5.1, 1011.8.2
  Projections 704.1.1
  Rating 803.1.1, 1011.5.1, 1305.2.5, 1305.2.5.1, Table 1305.2.5, Table 1306.1

Dangerous
  Nonstructural 115.1, 116.1
  Structural 104.4, 114.1, 117.1, 202, 302.1
Deferred Submittal 106.3.4, 106.6, 202
Definitions 202
Demolition 101.5, 104.3, 106.2.6, 108.5, 113.2, 115.5, 117, 1501.6, 1501.6.1, 1501.7, 1502.1, 1503.1, 1504.1, 1505.2
Department of Building Safety 104.2.4, 105.3, 109.3.8
Disproportionate Earthquake Damage 202, 405.2.2, 502.2

Egress (see Means of Egress)
Electrical A102.1, 105.1, 105.1.1, 105.2, 108.3, 109.3.4, 202, 406, 801.3, 801.4, 806, 1007, 1101.2
Elevator 905.4, 1011.8.3, 1102.2, 1305.2.14, 1305.2.14.1, Table 1305.2.14, Table 1306.1
Emergency Escape and Rescue Openings 202, 505, 506.4, 702.4, 702.5, 702.5.1, 702.6
Emergency Power 804.6.5, 1305.2.15.1
Energy 302.2, 702.7, 708, 809, 907, 1104
Engineer (see Registered Design Professional)
Equipment or Fixture 202
Existing (see Building)
Existing Building 202
Existing Structure 202
Exit 504.1.4, 802.2.1, 802.4, 802.4.1, 804, 903.1, 903.3, 905.2, 905.3, 1011.5, 1011.5.1, Table 1011.5, 1011.8.2, 1102.2, 1305.2.3.2, 1305.2.6, 1305.2.10.1, 1305.2.11, 1305.2.11.1, 1305.2.12, 1305.2.13, 1305.2.15.1, Table 1305.2.15, Table 1306.1, A402
Exit, Horizontal 503.15, 804.10, 1305.2.3.1
Exterior Wall Covering 202
  Addition and replacement 309
  Automatic sprinkler systems 309.2.1
Exterior Wall Envelope 202
  Addition and replacement 309
  Automatic sprinkler systems 309.2.1

Fire Alarm Systems 803.4, 904.2, 1011.2.2, 1305.2.9
Fire Escapes 504, 802.2.1, 804.4.1.2, 1305.2.11, 1305.2.11.1
Fire Protection 106.2.2, 202, 403, 703, 801.3, 803, 804.7.1, 804.7.2, 904, 1001.2, 1004, 1011.1, 1011.2, 1011.2.1, 1011.2.2, 1011.8.4, 1102.3, 1501.2.1, 1501.3, 1509
Fire Ratings 804.7.1, 804.7.2, 1011.6.1, 1011.6.1.1, 1011.6.3, 1011.7, 1011.7.1, 1011.7.2, 1011.7.3, 1011.8.2, 1011.8.3, 1011.8.4, 1302.1.2, 1305.2.3.2, 1305.2.3.3, 1305.2.4, 1305.2.4.1, 1305.2.5, 1305.2.5.1, 1305.2.6, 1305.2.16.1, Table 1306.1, Resource A

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

Fire Safety 101.6, 104.2.4, 107.2, 1101.2, 1305.1, 1305.1.1, 1305.1.3, 1305.2.1, 1305.2.2, 1305.2.3, 1305.2.4, 1305.2.5, 1305.2.6, 1305.2.7, 1305.2.8, 1305.2.9, 1305.2.14, 1305.2.16, 1305.2.17, 1305.2.18, 1305.2.19, 1305.2.20, Table 1306.1, Table 1306.2, Table 1307.1, A102.1
Fire Safety During Construction and Demolition (see Construction Safeguards)
Fire-Resistance Rating 802.2.1, 802.6, 803.1.1, 803.2.2.1, 902.2, 1011.6.1.1, 1011.6.3, 1011.7, 1011.8.2, 1302.1.2, 1305.1.1, 1305.2.4, 1305.2.4.1, 1305.2.5, 1305.2.5.1, 1305.2.6, 1305.2.16, 1305.2.16.1, 1306.1, Resource A
Flame Spread Resource A
Flood Hazard Area 104.3.1, 104.2.4.1, 109.3.3, 109.3.10, 202, 301.3, 401.3, 405.2.6, 502.2, 503.2, 507.3, 701.3, 1103.3, 1303.1.3, 1402.6

Glass 402.1, 406, 804.7.1, 804.7.2, 1011.8.2, 1305.2.10.1, Resource A
Gravity Loads (see Structural Loads/Forces)
Guards 802.5, 802.5.1, 802.5.2, 804.12, 804.12.1, 804.12.2
Guidelines for Structural Retrofit
Seismic Appendix A
Wind Appendix C

Handrails 503.1, 804.4, 1011.5.1, 1011.5.4
Hazard Categories 1011.5, Table 1011.5, 1011.6, Table 1011.6, Table 1011.7
Height (see Building, Height)
High-Rise Building 1011.6.1, 1305.2.17, 1305.2.19
Historic Building (see Building, Historic)

Incidental Use Areas 1002.2
Inspection 104.7.2, 104.4, 104.7, 105.2, 106.1, 106.3.1, 106.6, 109, 1402.7, A105.3, A105.4, A107.1, A107.4, A113.7, A205.3.1, A205.4, A304.4.3, A304.5, A406.3.4, A407.3
Interior Finishes 702.1, 702.2, 1011.3
Interior Trim 702.3

Live Load (see Structural Loads/Forces)
Load-Bearing Element 105.2.2, 202, Resource A

Maintenance 105.2, 1501.3, 1501.6.6
Means of Egress 101.2, 105.2.2, 106.2.3, 107.2, 115.1, 202, 404, 501.2, 504.1.1, 504.1.2, 704, 802.2.1, 802.2.3, 802.6, 804, 903.1, 905, 1005, 1011.5, 1011.5.1, 1011.5.2, Table 1011.5, 1101.2, 1305.1, 1305.1.2, 1305.1.3, 1305.2.1, 1305.2.10, 1305.2.11, 1305.2.12, 1305.2.14, 1305.2.15, 1305.2.17, 1305.2.18, 1305.2.19, 1305.2.2, 1305.2.20, 1305.2.21.1, 1305.2.21.2, 1305.2.21.3, 1305.2.3, 1305.2.4, 1305.2.5, 1305.2.6, 1305.2.7, 1305.2.8, 1305.2.9, Table 1306.1, Table 1306.2, Table 1307.1, 1505
Mechanical 105.1, 105.1.1, 105.2, 105.2.2, 108.3, 302.2, 308.1, 407, 503.4, 702.7, 801.3, 807, 1008, 1101.2, 1305.2.7.1, 1305.2.8, 1305.2.8.1, 1305.2.10, 1305.2.10.1, 1501.2.1, A102.1
Modifications 104.2.4
Moved Buildings (see Building, Relocated)

Noncombustible Material 202, 504.3, 804.4.1.2.2, Resource A

Occupiable Roof 202, 502.1, 804.14.2, 804.5.1.1, Table 804.5.1.1(1), Table 804.5.1.1(2), 1011.5.1, 1011.5.2, 1101.7, 1302.1.3
Openings 106.2.4, 116.2, 202, 504.5, 505, 506.4, 702.4, 702.5, 702.6, 802.2, 804.4.1.2.1, 804.6.3, 804.7, 804.7.3, 804.7.3.1, 804.7.4, 903.1, 1011.5.1, 1011.5.6, 1011.7.1, 1011.7.2, 1011.7.3, 1011.8, 1011.8.2, 1011.8.3, 1011.8.4, 1102.2, 1305.2.6, Table 1301.6.6(1), 1305.2.6.1, 1305.2.10.1, Table 1306.1, 1501.6.4

Peer Review 104.2.3.7, 202
Permits 101.4.1, 104.3, 104.3.2, 104.7, 105, 106.1, 106.2.6, 106.3.1, 106.3.2, 106.3.3, 106.6, 107.1, 107.4, 108.1, 108.2, 108.3, 108.4, 108.5, 109.1, 109.2, 109.3.11, 109.5, 109.6, 110.1, 110.2, 110.3, 111.1, 113.2, 113.4, 503.6, 706.1, 706.3, 706.3.1, A105.3
Photovoltaic Panel System 202, 503.4, 805.3
Plumbing 105.1, 105.1.1, 105.2, 108.3, 109.3.4, 202, 302.2, 308.1, 408, 702.7, 1009, 1101.2, 1302.1.6, 1501.7, A102.1, A304.1.3, A304.3.2, A304.4.2
Primary Function 202

Ramps 802.2.1, 1305.2.6, B101.3, B101.4
Referenced Standards Chapter 16
Refuge Areas 503.15, 804.10
Registered Design Professional 104.3.3, 106.1, 106.3.4, 106.6, 202, 405.2.3.1, A106.2.3.4, A301.1, A301.2, A301.3, A304.2.2, A304.2.3, A304.4.1, A405.3
Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge 106.3.4, 106.6
Rehabilitation 104.3.1, 202, 405.2.4
Relocatable Buildings (see Buildings, Relocatable)
Relocated Buildings (see Buildings, Relocated)
Repair Chapter 4, 101.2, 101.3, 101.4, 101.6, 104.3, 104.3.1, 104.3.2, 104.2.4.1, 105.1, 105.2, 105.2.1, 105.2.2, 105.2.3, 106.2.6, 113.1, 113.2, 115.3, 115.5, 116.1, 116.4, 116.5, 117.1, 202, 301.1, 301.2, 302.2, 302.2.1, 302.4, 308.1, 309.1, 1101.3, 1303.1, 1401.2, 1402.7, 1501.3, 1501.6.6, A105.2, A105.3, A106.1, A106.2.1, A106.2.3.9, A403.2, C101.1, C201.1
Reroofing 705
Risk Category 202, 304.3.1, Table 304.3.1, 304.3.2, Table 304.3.2, 506.5.2, 506.5.3, 506.5.4, 1006.2, 1006.3, 1006.4, A102.2, A401.2, A403.3, C201.2
Roof 308.1, 405.2.5, 503.3, 503.4, 503.7, 503.8, 504.3, 705, 906.4, 906.5, 1501.2.1, 1501.6.5, 1502.1
Diaphragms 503.12, 706.3.2, 906.4
Permit 706.1, 706.3, 706.3.1
Recover 202, 705.3, 705.3.1, 705.3.1
Repair 202
Replacement 202, 705.1, 705.2
Reroofing 202, 503.6, 705, 706.3.1
Roof Coating 705.3

Safeguards During Construction (see Construction Safeguards)
Safety Parameters 1305.1.3, 1305.2, Table 1306.1
Seismic Forces (see Structural Loads/Forces)
Seismic Loads (see Structural Loads/Forces)
Seismic Retrofit Appendix A
Shaft Enclosures 802.2.2, 1011.8, 1305.2.6
Smoke Alarms 307
Smoke Compartments 503.14, 503.15, 802.3, 902.3, 904.1.5, 1101.5, 1305.2, 1305.2.20, 1305.2.20.1, Table 1305.2.20, 1305.2.21, 1305.2.21.1, 1305.2.21.2, 1305.2.21.2.1, Table 1306.1
Smoke Control 1305.2.10, 1305.2.10.1, Table 1305.2.10, Table 1306.1
Smoke Detectors 803.4, 1011.8.4, 1305.2.8.1
Snow Load (see Structural Loads/Forces)
Special Use and Occupancy 802, 902, 1002
Sprinkler System (see Automatic Sprinkler System)
Stairway 503.1, 504.1.3, 504.2, 504.4, 504.5, 506.3, 802.2.1, 802.2.2, 802.2.3, 803.1.1, 804.4.1.1, 804.4.1.2.1, 804.4.1.2.3, 804.6.3, 804.6.3.1, 804.10.1, 804.12.1, 806.4.5, 903.1, 1011.5.1, 1011.5.2, 1011.5.4, 1011.8.2, 1011.8.3, 1011.8.4, 1102.2, 1305.2.3, 1305.2.6, 1305.2.10.1, 1504.1, 1505.1, 1506.1
Standpipe Systems 105.2.2, 1305.2.18, 1305.2.18.1, Table 1305.2.18, Table 1306.1, 1503.2, 1506
Storm Shelter 303
Structural 304.1, 405, 502.3, 502.4, 503.3, 503.4, 503.5, 503.6, 503.7, 503.8, 503.9, 503.10, 503.11, 503.12, 503.13, 506.5, 507.4, 706, 805, 906, 1006, 1103, 1304.1.1, 1402
Structural Loads/Forces
Gravity loads A403.10.1, A403.10.2, A403.5, 202, 304.1, 405.2.4, 405.2.4.1, 502.3, 503.3, 706.2, 805.2, 1007.1, 1103.1
International Building Code-level 506.5.3, 506.5.4, 1006.3, 1103.2, 1402.4
Live loads 804.4.1.2.2, A106.2.3.6, A403.7, A104.1, A108.3, A108.6, 202, 304.1, 405.2.4, 502.3, 503.3, 504.3, 506.5.1, 507.4, 706.2, 805.2, 1006.1, 1103.1, 1504.1.1, 1504.1.5
Reduced 304.3.2, Table 304.3.2, 405.2.3.1, 405.2.3.3, 503.10, 503.11, 503.4, 503.5, 503.6, 503.7, 503.8, 503.9, 506.5.3, 706.3.1, 805.3, 906.2, 906.3, 906.4, 906.5, 906.6, 906.7, 1006.3
Repairs 405
Seismic loads Appendix a, 202, 304.3, 405.2.3, 405.2.4.1, 502.2, 502.4, 503.10, 503.11, 503.13, 503.4, 503.5, 503.6, 503.7, 503.8, 503.9, 506.5.3, 506.5.4, 706.3.1, 805.3, 906.2, 906.3, 906.4, 906.5, 906.6, 906.7, 1006.3, 1006.4, 1103.2, 1402.4

Snow loads 304.2, 405.2.1.1, 405.2.4, 405.2.5, 502.3, 503.3, 506.5.2, 706.2, 805.2, 1006.2, 1103.1, 1402.5
Wind loads Appendix c, 303.1, 303.2, 405.2.3, 405.2.4.1, 503.12, 506.5.2, 706.3.2, 1006.2, 1402.3, 1504.1.7
Substantial Damage 202, 507.3, 1103.3
Substantial Improvement 104.3.1, 104.2.4.1, 109.3.3, 202, 401.3, 502.2, 503.2, 507.3, 701.3, 1103.3, 1201.4, 1303.1.3
Substantial Structural Alteration 202, 503.11, 906.2
Substantial Structural Damage 202, 405.2.1, 405.2.2, 405.2.3, 405.2.4, 405.2.4.1, 405.2.5, 502.2, 507.4

Technical Assistance 104.2.2
Technically Infeasible 202
Temporary Emergency Uses Appendix E
Temporary Structure 107
Testing 104.2.3.5, 111.2, 305, 1305.2.10.1, 1507.1, A104.1, A105.3, A105.4, A106.2.1, A106.2.3, A107.2, A107.3, A107.4, A107.5, A108.2, A108.5, A113.1.3, A114.1, A205.3.2, A205.4, A206.2, A304.2.2, A403.9.2.1, A405.3, A407.3

Unsafe 104.4, 105.2, 114.1, 114.4, 115, 116.1, 116.2, 116.3, 116.5, 117.1, 202, 302.3, 302.4, 1007.2, 1303.1.1
Utilities 111

Vertical Opening Protection 802.2, 903.1, 1011.8, 1305.2.6, Table 1306.1
Violations 101.6, 104.4, 105.2, 105.4, 105.6, 109.1, 110.1, 110.2, 110.4, 113, 114.4

Wind Load (see Structural Loads/Forces)
Windows
Emergency escape and rescue openings 505.3, 505.3.1, 505.4, 702.5, 702.5.1, 702.6
Glazing 402.1, 804.7, 804.7.2
Opening control devices 505.2, 505.3.1, 702.4, 702.5.1
Replacement 505.1
Work Area 202, 301.3.2, 503.5, 503.7, 503.8, 503.9, 503.10, 503.11, 503.16, 503.18, 506.6, 601.2, 603.1, 604.1, 801.3, 802.1, 802.2.1, 802.2.2, 802.2.3, 802.3, 802.4, 802.4.1, 802.5, 803.1, 804.1, 804.2, 804.10.1, 804.10.2, 804.6, 804.6.1, 804.6.1.1, 804.6.1.2, 804.6.2, 804.6.2.1, 804.6.3, 804.6.3.1, 804.6.4, 804.6.4.1, 804.7, 804.7.1, 804.7.2, 804.7.3, 804.7.3.1, 804.7.4, 804.8, 804.9, 804.9.1, 804.9.2, 804.10.1, 804.10.2, 804.4, 804.10.1, 804.12, 806.1, 806.2, 807.1, 901.2, 903.1, 903.2.1, 903.3, 903.4, 904.1, 904.2.1, 904.2.2, 905.2, 905.3, 906.7

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®

102102163

HISTORY NOTE APPENDIX

2025 California Existing Building Code
California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 10

HISTORY:

For prior code history, see the History Note Appendix to the *California Existing Building Code,* 2022 Triennial Edition, effective January 1, 2023.

1. (BSC 06/24, DSA-AC 01/24, DSA-SS 06/24, HCD 06/24, OSHPD 06/24, SFM 09/24)—Adoption by reference of the 2024 *International Existing Building Code* with necessary amendments to become the 2025 *California Existing Building Code*, and repeal of the 2021 edition of the *International Existing Building Code*. Approved by the California Building Standards Commission on February 26, 2025, filed with Secretary of State on March 7, 2025, and effective on January 1, 2026.
2. Erratum to address miscellaneous corrections throughout Chapters 1, 2, 3, 3A, 5, 8, 13, 15, 16, and Appendix E, effective January 1, 2026.

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Mahmud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further
BUFF

102102163

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL®
Copyright © ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Carl Malamud (carl@media.org), (-) Order Number #102102163 on Feb 02, 2026 12:12 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further